

GUIDE

NEW Hello & Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

1st Sec.
2025
FIRST TERM
عــــام - أزهــــر

الصــف الأول الثانوى
الفصــل الدراســى الأول



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى

CONTENTS

First Term توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الثانوي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤/٢٠٢٥

Months	New Hello! English for Secondary Schools Year One (SB+WB)
October	Unit 1 + Unit 2 + Unit 3
November	Unit 3 Cont. + Revision 1 + Unit 4
December	Unit 5 + Unit 6
January 2025	Revision 2 + General Revision



Getting away

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading :** An article about ecotourism; two blogs about the summer holidays
- **Writing :** An essay on ecotourism
- **Listening :** A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong
- **Speaking :** Describe an event
- **Language :** Past simple and past continuous
- **Life skills :** Collaboration

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 6 : 9 WB pages 88 & 89



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

conservation (n)	حماية البيئة - صيانة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	ينحني / يميل - يتكئ
conservationist (n)	من أنصار حماية البيئة	material (n - adj)	مادة خام - قماش - مادي
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئي	spicy (adj)	حار - متبّل بالبهارات
eco-tourism (n)	السياحة البيئية	sustainable (adj)	مستدام - صديق للبيئة
endangered (adj)	مُعرّض للخطر - مُهدّد بالانقراض	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	يتورّم - يتضخّم - يتزايد
environment (n)	البيئة	trek(ked) (n - v)	رحلة طويلة (سيرًا) - يسير لمسافة طويلة
environmentally (adv)	بيئياً		
impact (ed) (n - v)	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر		
isolated (adj)	بعيد / نائي - مُنعَزِل	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه / مُميَّز

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

annoyed (adj)	متضايق - منزعج	educate (d) (v)	يُعلِّم
attractions (n)	عوامل الجذب	internal (adj)	داخلي
beauty (n)	الجمال	introduce (d) (v)	يطرح - يُقدِّم - يُصدِر
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عضّة - يعض	Lemur (n)	قرد الليمور
considerate (of) (adj)	مُتَفَهِم - مُراعي لـ	limited (adj)	محدود
coral reefs (n)	الشِعاب المرجانية	locals (n)	السكان المحليين
council (n)	مَجلِس - قنصلية	orangutan (n)	انسان الغاب - الكسلان
create (d) (v)	يخلق- يبتكر - يُوجِد	otherwise (adv)	وإلّا
destination (n)	مَقصد - وِجهة سفر	path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
destroy (ed) (v)	يُدَمِّر	properly (adv)	بشكل ملائم /علي أكمل وجه
disaster (n)	كارثة - مُصيبة	provide (d) (v)	يوفِّر - يُزوِّد بـ
disconnected (adj)	منفصل / منعزل	public (adj)	عام - شعبي
dragon (n)	تنين	rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بناء
drop (ped) (v)	يُسقط - يوقِع	remote (adj)	بعيد / نائي
eco-hotel (n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	resident (n)	ساكن / نزيل
eco-trip (n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	site (n)	موقع
exist (ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد	solution (n)	حل
fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء في الطعام	sunbathe (d) (v)	يأخذ حمَّام شمس - يتعرض للشمس
giant (adj - n)	عملاق	victim (n)	ضحية
harm (ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر بـ	volunteer (ed) (n/v)	مُتطوِّع - يتطوع

historic (adj)	تاريخي	voluntourist (n)	سائح مُتطوِّع
including (prep)	بما في ذلك - مُتضمِّنًا	wildlife (n)	الحياة البَرِّية

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
conservation (n) حماية البيئة	the protection of natural life
conservationist (n) من حُماة البيئة	a person whose job is to help protect natural things such as wild animals الحيوانات البرية, forests, etc.
ecotourism (n) السياحة البيئية	a type of holiday that helps local people السكان المحلين and doesn't damage the natural environment
endangered (adj) مُعرَّض للخطر	in danger of disappearing الإختفاء forever للأبد
impact (n) أثر / تأثير	the effect أثر that an action or a person has on someone or something
isolated (adj) منعزل	disconnected from منفصل عن other people and places
lean (v) ينحني	to be in a sloping position وضع مائل
materials (n) مواد (خام)	the things that are used for making or doing something
spicy (adj) متَبل بالبهارات	containing chilli فلفل حار or other spices that give a burning حرّاق feeling with pleasantly strong taste
sustainable (adj) صديق للبيئة - مستدام	able to continue without بدون causing damage ضرر to the environment
swell (up) (v) يتورم / يلتهب	to get bigger and rounder أكثر إستدارة than normal
trek (n) رحلة طويلة (سيرًا)	a hike/walk on a difficult journey
unique (adj) فريد - مميَّز	special or the only one of its type or quality

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Definitions

1. .... is a type of holiday that doesn't damage the natural environment. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Ecosystem b. Ecotourism c. Conservation d. Impact
2. .... means in danger of disappearing forever. (الأقصر - الأقصر ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Crowded b. Endangered c. Lean d. Dangerous

3. Things that are used for making or doing something are ....
(أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
a. awards b. opportunities c. weeds d. materials

4. .... is the protection of natural life. (الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)
a. Conservation b. Reservation c. Organization d. Transportation

5. A/An .... is someone who works to protect animals, plants etc. or to protect old buildings. (القاهرة - النزهة ٢٠٢٤)
a. pharmacist b. physiatrist c. ecotourist d. conservationist

6. A/An .... is the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)
a. impact b. advantage c. lettuce d. load

2 Key Vocabulary

7. Pollution has some bad effects on the balance of our .... (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)
a. ecotourism b. economy c. ecosystem d. ecology

8. If you fill a balloon with water, it will .... up. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
a. trek b. swell c. isolate d. avoid

9. The tiger is an .... animal. It may die out soon. (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)
a. isolated b. endangered c. inaccurate d. insulated

10. We use .... friendly material to keep the surroundings.
(أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
a. environment b. environmental
c. environmentally d. environmentalist

11. The Komodo dragon is .... to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else. (سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٤)
a. familiar b. unique c. common d. usual

12. Heba wants to be a/an .... to protect animals and plants. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
a. tourist b. capitalist c. conservationist d. extremist

13. Being .... can cause feelings of loneliness and sadness. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)
a. insulated b. isolated c. located d. situated

14. The explorers spend the day .... through forests and over mountains. (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)
a. tricking b. tracking c. trekking d. tripping

15. It is obvious that smoking has a very bad .... on our health. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. contact b. cause c. happened d. impact

16. Water .... has become a necessity, as we will need each drop in the future. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)
a. donation b. conservation c. conversation d. destination

17. My father asked me not to .... over the balcony as I might fall.
(المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)
a. lean b. trek c. kneel d. limit

18. We should protect the .... so that we can live in a clean world.
(المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٤)
a. ecotourism b. environment c. location d. destination

19. Village people build their houses with local .... (قنا - دشنا ٢٠٢٤)
a. subjects b. materials c. environments d. animals
20. Although .... food is tasty, it can make you feel uncomfortable. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)
a. healthy b. spicy c. preserving d. local
21. Tourism is .... when we protect touristic places. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)
a. crowded b. sustainable c. unique d. noisy
22. Egypt is developing .... to protect the environment along the Red Sea coast. (الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)
a. physics b. ecotourism c. destination d. destiny

3 Important Vocabulary

23. Father! Let me .... my friend Ali. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. produce b. conclude c. dislike d. introduce
24. Mariam placed her name on the list of .... as she likes working for charities. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
a. veterans b. experts c. professionals d. volunteers
25. As soon as she saw her father in the airport, she .... her suitcases and ran towards him. (الاسماعيلية - الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
a. dropped b. fell c. filled d. dripped
26. I .... to look after my baby sister when my mother goes out.
a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
27. Luxor is an important tourist ....
a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
28. I am travelling to Aswan in three days. It is my next ....
a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism
29. In prison, criminals are .... from the outside world.
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
30. Try to be .... of other people's feelings.
a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. giant
31. When the food is .... prepared, it is both healthy and tasty.
a. spicy b. properly
c. otherwise d. environmentally
32. "............ " means related to the environment.
a. Re- b. Ex- c. Eco- d. In-
33. Some .... work in the tourist industry.
a. include b. including c. local d. locals
34. The tourists lay on the beach to ....
a. introduce b. blow c. sunbathe d. exist
35. Pollution .... the environment.
a. volunteers b. harms c. avoids d. leans
36. Air pollution is really a/an ....
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel

37. The heart is one of the .... organs.
    a. fussy   b. internal   c. spicy   d. disconnected
38. One of the .... in the hotel is an important man from Canada.
    a. solutions   b. attractions   c. residents   d. victims
39. A/An .... enjoys themselves without damaging the environment.
    a. volunteer   b. conservationist   c. resident   d. eco-tourist

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات	**go**	diving	يمارس رياضة الغوص
cause	problems	يسبب مشكلات	**have**	a holiday	يحصل على اجازة
catch	a flight (to)	يسافر بالطائرة (إلي)		an impact (on)	له أثر (علي)
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	**make/take**	notes	يُدون ملاحظات
find	a solution (to)	يجد حلًا (لـ)	**start**	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	**take**	a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advantage	ميزة	merit, upside
crowded	مُزدحم - مكتظ	congested, busy
impact	أثر - إنطباع	effect, influence
isolated	بعيد / نائي - مُنعزل	remote, faraway
material	قماش	fabric, cloth
spicy	متبّل بالبهارات	hot
sustainable	مُستدام	lasting, continuous
trek	رحلة طويلة (سيرًا)	hike, journey
unique	فريد من نوعه / مُميَّز	special, unusually good

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage, demerit, downside	عيب - سلبية
crowded	مزدحم - مكتظ	empty, deserted	فارغ - مهجور
giant (adj)	عملاق/ضخم	tiny, minute, small	صغير - ضئيل
isolated	بعيد / ناءٍ	close, nearby, neighbouring	قريب - مجاور
isolated	مُنعزِل / انطوائي	sociable	اجتماعي
sustainable	مستدام - صديق للبيئة	unsustainable	غير مستدام
unique	فريد - مميز	ordinary, everyday, common, normal	عادى

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

conservation	
conserve (d) (v) يصون - يحمي	- It is important to conserve the environment.
conservation (n) الصيانة	- The conservation of the environment is important.
conservationist (n) مِن حُماة البيئة	- Conservationists work hard to protect the environment.
conservative (adj) تقليدي - مُحافظ علي التقاليد	- My father is a conservative person.

endangered	
danger (n) الخطر	- A careless driver puts his life in danger.
endanger (ed) (v) يُعرِّض للخطر - يخاطر بـ	- A careless مهمل driver endangers his life.
endangered (adj) مُعرَّض للخطر	- The life of a careless driver is endangered.
dangerous (adj) خطير	- It is dangerous to travel with a careless driver.

environment	
environment (n) البيئة	- We all must protect يحمي the environment.
environmentalist (n) خبير بيئي	- Some environmentalists have talked to us about how to protect the environment.
environmental (adj) بيئي	- Pollution is an environmental problem.
environmentally (adv) بيئيا	- Cars that run on electricity are environmentally friendly.

isolated	
isolate (d) (v) يَعزِل - يَفصِل	- It is important to isolate coronavirus patients.
isolation (n) العُزلة - الفصل	- The isolation of coronavirus patients is important.
isolated (adj) منعزل - منفصل	- Coronavirus patients must be isolated from other people.

material	
material (n) مادة (خام)	- Wood is a hard material.
material (n) قماش	- This shirt is made of soft material.
material (adj) مادي - ملموس	- The police have material evidence دليل مادي that he is a thief.

lean	
lean (ed) - **leant** (v) يميل/ ينحني - يتكئ	- Don't lean on this dirty wall.
lean (adj) نحيف/ منحوت الجسد	- He was lean, tall, and muscular ذو عضلات.
lean (adj) خالي من الدهون	- My children like lean meat.
leaning (adj) مائل	- Don't go near this leaning wall.
spicy	
spice (d) (v) يُتبّل (يضع توابل)	- Mum has spiced the fish.
spice (n) تابل (مفرد توابل)	- Mum has put spices into the fish.
spicy (adj) حرّيف - حار - متبّل بالبهارات	- I like spicy food.
sustainable	
sustain (ed) (v) يحافظ على - يُبقي	- A speaker should sustain the listener's interest.
sustainability (n) استمرارية/ استدامة	- Conservationists are interested in environmental sustainability.
sustainable (adj) مُستدام - صديق للبيئة	- Cycling is a sustainable activity.
volunteer	
volunteer (ed) (v) يتطوع	- Sama and her friends volunteered to help the old woman.
volunteer (n) مُتطوِّع	- Sama and her friends were the volunteers who helped the old woman.
voluntary (adj) تطوعي	- We thanked Sama and her friends for their voluntary work.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at least	علي الأقل	go on holiday	يأخذ اجازة
close to	قريب من	in progress	مستمر
environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	keep ... safe	يُبقي ... في أمان
except for	فيما عدا	make sure	يتأكد - يتيقن
famous for	مشهور بـ	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
first of all,	قبل كل شيء	the local council	المجلس المحلي
for example,	علي سبيل المثال	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	introduce … to	يُعرِّف … بـ/علي
blow … off	يُسقِط - يُطَيِّر	keep … as	يحتفظ بـ … كـ
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر	lean … on / against	يسند … علي
disappear from	يختفي من	lean on /against	يتكئ على
educate … about	يُعلِّم … عن	lean out of	ينحني إلي خارج
find out (about)	يكتشف/يعرف (عن)	manage to	يتمكن أن
get … back	يسترد - يستعيد	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
get to	يصل إلي	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلي داخل / في
go back (to)	يَعُود/يَرْجِع (إلي)		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

arrive – reach – get to

• **arrive (v)** يَصِل (فعل لازم لا يتبعه مفعول)
- My father hasn't arrived yet.

• **arrive at (v)** يَصِل إلي (مكان صغير نسبيًا مثل المدرسة/المطار/المحطة ….)
- Rodayna arrived at Cairo Airport at 9:00.

• **arrive in (v)** يَصِل إلي (مكان كبير نسبيًا مثل مدينة/دولة ….)
- Rodayna arrived in Cairo at 9:00.

• **get to (v)** يَصِل إلي (مكان كبير أو صغير)
- Rodayna got to Cairo Airport at 9:00.
- Rodayna got to Cairo at 9:00.

• **reach (v)** يَصِل إلي (بدون حرف جر)
- Rodayna reached Cairo Airport at 9:00.

contain - include - consist of

• **… contain +** (شيء موجود بداخله) يحتوي علي
- This bag contains some books and pens.

• **… include +** (بعض مكونات الشيء) يتضمن/ يشتمل علي
- The program of the trip includes a visit to the High Dam.

• **… consist of +** (كل مكونات الشيء) يتكون من
- My flat consists of three bedrooms, a reception, a kitchen and two bathrooms.

educate - teach - learn - bring up

• **educate +** شخص/أشخاص **(v)** يُعلِّم/يُدرِّس لـ (غالبًا في مدرسة أو جامعة)
- This school educates disabled children.

• **teach (v)** يُدرِّس/يعمل بالتدريس (بدون مفعول)
- Mr Nasser teaches at a secondary school.

- **teach + المادة/الموضوع (v)** يُدرِّس (+ مفعول)
  - Mr Nasser teaches English at a secondary school.
- **teach + شخص + to/how to + inf. (v)** يُعلِّم ... كيف ...
  - Mr Nasser teaches students to speak English.
  - Mr Nasser teaches students how to speak English.
- **learn + المادة/الموضوع (v)** يتعلَّم (+ مفعول)
  - Ahmed learns English at a secondary school.
- **learn + to/how to +inf. (v)** يتعلَّم كيف ...
  - Ahmed learns to speak English at a secondary school.
  - Ahmed learns how to speak English at a secondary school.
- **bring up + شخص/أشخاص = raise (v)** يُربِّي/يهذب (+مفعول)
  - This great woman has brought up her children alone.
  = This great woman has raised her children alone.

else

١- تُستخدم **(else)** بعد أدوات الإستفهام بمعنى (أيضا):

- **Q.W. أداة استفهام + else أيضاً...?**
  - What else do you want?
  - Where else will you go?

٢- تُستخدم **(else)** بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية:

someone	somebody	something	somewhere
anyone	anybody	anything	anywhere
everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
no one	nobody	nothing	nowhere

- Ahmed didn't take your camera. Someone else took it.
- Do you want to eat something else ?

endangered / dangerous

- **endangered (adj)** مُعَرَّض للخطر
  - The workers in the cave الكهف are endangered.
- **dangerous (adj)** خطير
  - The scorpion العقرب is very dangerous.

national - international - local

- **national (adj)** قوميّ/وَطنيّ
  - Salah is the captain of the national team.
  - October 6th is a national holiday.
- **international (adj)** دَوْليّ/عالميّ
  - The Suez Canal is important for international trade التجارة.

- **local (adj)** إقليميّ/ مَحَلّيّ
  - He works in the local council.
- **local (adj)** مَكانِيّ/مَوضِعِيّ
  - There is a local pain ألم in my leg.
- **local (n)** من السكان المحليين (من أهل المنطقة)
  - One of the locals guided us to the bank.

unique - special - private

- **unique (adj) = unusually good or special** مميَّز جدا
  - I had a unique offer to spend two weeks in Paris.
- **unique (adj) = the only one of its kind** فريد من نوعه
  - Each person has unique fingerprints بصمات أصابع.
- **special (adj)** مميَّز /خاص
  - She has special language skills.
- **private (adj)** خاص (= شخصي)
  - Mr Ashraf has a private car.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. A good student .... notes of what his teacher says or explains. (الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. takes b. leaves c. makes
   d. understands e. does
2. It's not better to walk to an isolated area. The word "isolated" can be replaced by .... (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
   a. close b. remote c. smart
   d. distant e. violent
3. The tourist industry has had a big .... on the local town. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. affect b. impact c. affection
   d. infection e. effect
4. "This nature reserve is famous for its unique animals." "Unique" is an antonym for .... and .... (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
   a. common b. small c. normal
   d. strong e. cheap

5. "The government does its best to make tourism sustainable."
The synonym of "sustainable" is .... (الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. social b. continuous c. harmful
d. damaging e. lasting

6. "The room was empty and nobody showed up." The antonyms of the word "empty" are .... (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. vacant b. unoccupied c. crowded
d. full e. deserted

7. "Shopping online has a lot of advantages." The synonyms of "advantages" are .... and .... (الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠٢٤)
a. demerits b. upsides c. reasons
d. drawbacks e. merits

8. "The jungle is full of dangerous giant animals." The antonyms of "giant" are .... and .... (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)
a. smell b. gigantic c. tiny
d. minute e. huge

✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Eight people, ... two children, were injured in the explosion yesterday. (القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٤)
a. containing b. including
c. consisting d. concluding

2. We have to .... electricity to avoid paying much money. (البحيرة - أدكو ٢٠٢٤)
a. conserve b. conservation
c. conservationist d. conservative

3. Which of the following prefixes turns the noun "danger" into a verb ? (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
a. En- b. In- c. Dis- d. Non-

4. No one .... but my father provides me with money. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٤)
a. other b. another c. others d. else

5. My father is a hotel manager. He .... sure that everything in the rooms is tidy and clean. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)
a. takes b. does c. gives d. makes

6. The museum is open daily .... for Fridays. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
a. expect b. except c. accept d. exist

7. Plastic is used to .... electric wires. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)
a. isolate b. insulate c. burn d. break

8. Generous people are always ready to .... voluntary work. (الفيوم - ابشواي ٢٠٢٢)
a. do b. make c. give d. take

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Ecotourism – is this the future? *(SB page 6)*

What is ecotourism ?



Ecotourism[1] is about **providing**[2] holidays to places which are often **endangered**[3] and **isolated**[4]. The holidays are designed to have a **limited**[5] **impact**[6] on the local environment and to **educate**[7] tourists about **conservation**[8].

Egypt is **developing**[9] ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea **coast**[10]. Tourists can stay in hotels built of **environmentally friendly**[11] **natural**[12] **materials**[13]. When tourists go **diving**[14], they are taught how to **avoid**[15] **damaging**[16] the fish and keeping the special **coral reefs**[17] safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its **ecosystem**[18] (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't **exist**[19] anywhere **else**[20] in the world. **Lemurs**[21], for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos **Islands**[22] in Ecuador are famous for the **unique**[23] animals, such as the **giant**[24] **turtles**[25] which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is **sustainable**[26]. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo **National Park**[27] in Indonesia is a **popular**[28] ecotourism **destination**[29]. Much of Indonesia's endangered **wildlife**[30], **including**[31] the Komodo **dragon**[32], can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

(1) السياحة البيئية
(2) توفر
(3) مُعرَّض للخطر
(4) منعزل
(5) محدود
(6) أثر
(7) يُعلِّم
(8) حماية البيئة
(9) تنمّي
(10) ساحل
(11) صديق للبيئة
(12) طبيعي
(13) مواد
(14) الغوص
(15) يتجنب
(16) إتلاف
(17) الشِعاب المرجانية
(18) النظام البيئي
(19) يوجد
(20) آخر
(21) قرود الليمور
(22) جُزُر
(23) فريد
(24) عملاق
(25) سلاحف مائية
(26) ملائم للبيئة
(27) الحديقة الوطنية
(28) مشهور
(29) مقصد
(30) الحياة البرية
(31) بما في ذلك
(32) التنين

Unit 1

Working Together

(SB page 9)

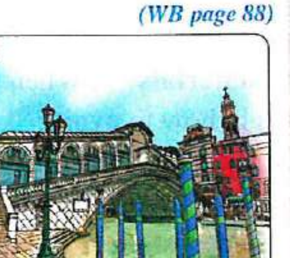
Last year, I went to the Faroe Islands for a few days as a (**voluntourist**)[1] – I was both a **tourist**[2] and a **volunteer**[3]. I helped the **locals**[4] to rebuild **paths**[5] and **walls**[6]. It was very hard work, but great **fun**[7] and I met other volunteers from all around the world.

While I was working on the islands, I talked to the people who live there about life in such a **remote**[8] place. On the second day, I **climbed**[9] to the top of a **hill**[10] when the wind **blew**[11] my hat off. **Fortunately**[12], the family I was staying with gave me another, much **warmer**[13] hat which I kept as a **souvenir**![14]

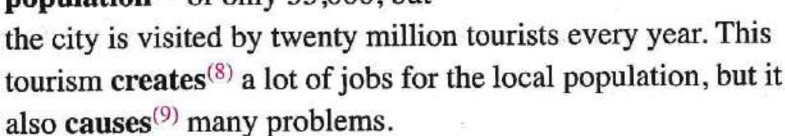
(1) سائح متطوع
(2) سائح
(3) متطوع
(4) السكان المحليين
(5) ممرات
(6) أسوار
(7) متعة
(8) بعيد / نائى
(9) يتسلق
(10) تَل
(11) طيّرت
(12) لحُسن الحظ
(13) أدفأ
(14) تذكار

A popular problem!

(WB page 88)



Venice is famous for being a city with many canals, **colourful**[1] **carnivals**[2], amazing **plazas**[3] and **historic**[4] buildings. However, the city is a **victim**[5] of its own **beauty**[6]. Venice has a **population**[7] of only 55,000, but

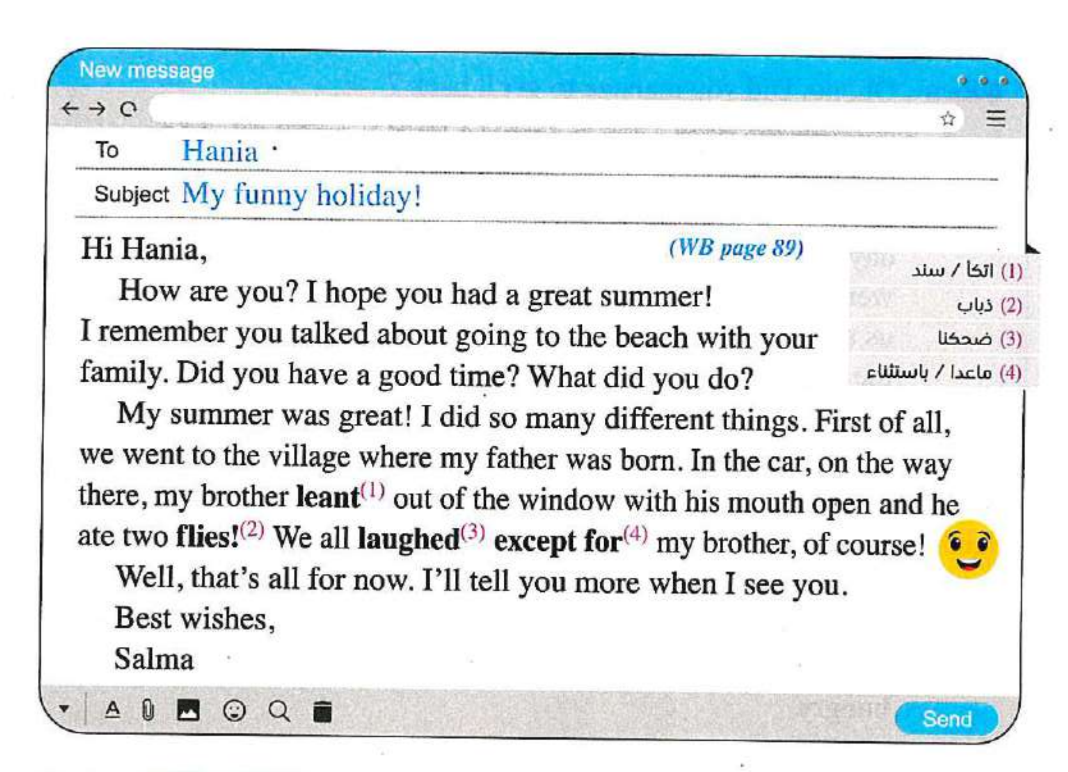


the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism **creates**[8] a lot of jobs for the local population, but it also **causes**[9] many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large **cruise ships**[10] can **damage**[11] the historic buildings. The **narrow**[12] streets can be very **crowded**[13] and it is difficult for local people to **move**[14] around the city.

The **local council**[15] are trying to find a **solution**[16] which keeps both the tourists and local **residents**[17] happy. They are also trying to **encourage**[18] tourists to visit other beautiful **sites**[19] around Venice.

(1) مثيرة / ملونة
(2) احتفالات
(3) أسواق - ساحات
(4) تاريخى
(5) ضحية
(6) الجمال
(7) السكان
(8) تخلق
(9) تسبب
(10) مراكب سياحية
(11) يُتلف
(12) ضيّق
(13) مزدحم
(14) يتحرك
(15) مجلس محلى
(16) حل
(17) سكان
(18) يشجع
(19) معالم / مناظر



New message

To Hania

Subject My funny holiday!

Hi Hania,

(WB page 89)

How are you? I hope you had a great summer!
I remember you talked about going to the beach with your family. Did you have a good time? What did you do?

My summer was great! I did so many different things. First of all, we went to the village where my father was born. In the car, on the way there, my brother **leant**[1] out of the window with his mouth open and he ate two **flies!**[2] We all **laughed**[3] **except for**[4] my brother, of course!

Well, that's all for now. I'll tell you more when I see you.

Best wishes,

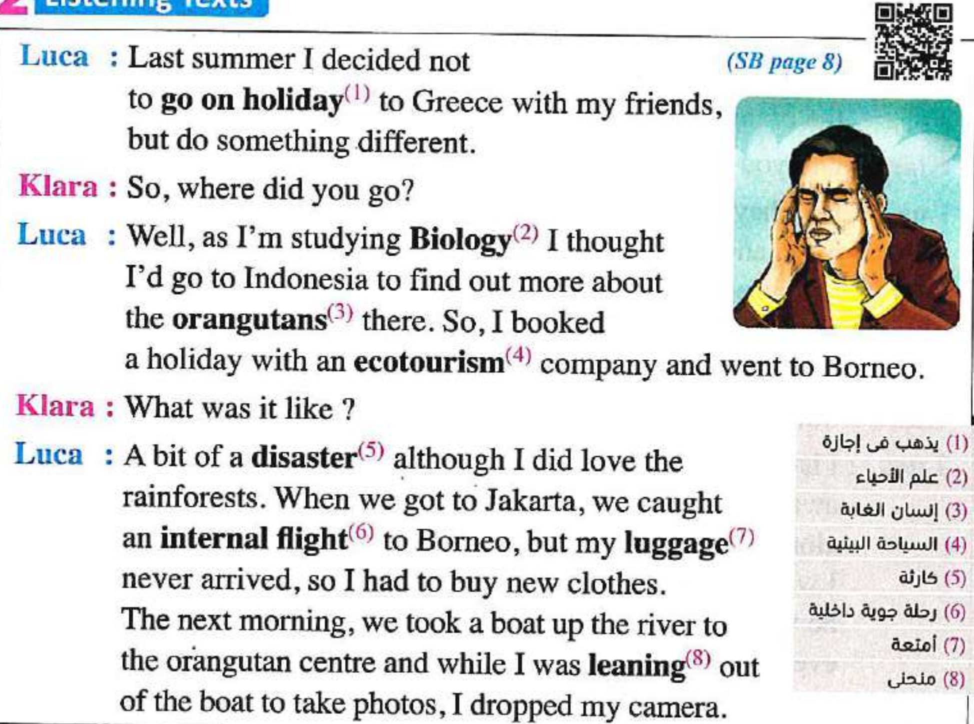
Salma

Send

(1) اتكا / سند
(2) ذباب
(3) ضحكنا
(4) ماعدا / باستثناء

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 8)



Luca : Last summer I decided not to **go on holiday**[1] to Greece with my friends, but do something different.

Klara : So, where did you go?

Luca : Well, as I'm studying **Biology**[2] I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the **orangutans**[3] there. So, I booked a holiday with an **ecotourism**[4] company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like ?

Luca : A bit of a **disaster**[5] although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an **internal flight**[6] to Borneo, but my **luggage**[7] never arrived, so I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre and while I was **leaning**[8] out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.

(1) يذهب فى إجازة
(2) علم الأحياء
(3) إنسان الغابة
(4) السياحة البيئية
(5) كارثة
(6) رحلة جوية داخلية
(7) أمتعة
(8) منحنى

Klara : Oh, no. Did you manage to get it back ?

Luca : No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very **annoyed**(9), but at least I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the **conservationists**(10) are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide **introduced**(11) us to the people working there and then we had dinner.

(9) متضايق
(10) حماة البيئة
(11) يقدم
(12) مُتبل بالبهارات
(13) شخص صعب إرضاؤه فيما يخص الأكل
(14) يسير فى رحلة
(15) عنكبوت
(16) يتورم
(17) بشكل صحيح

Klara : What was the food like ?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very **spicy**(12). I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.

Klara : Well, I'm glad to hear you're not such a **fussy eater**(13) anymore. What did you do every day ?

Luca : We got up about six every morning as that's when the sun rises, had breakfast and then **trekked**(14) into the forest to learn about the orangutans from the people who are looking after them.

Klara : Did you feed them ?

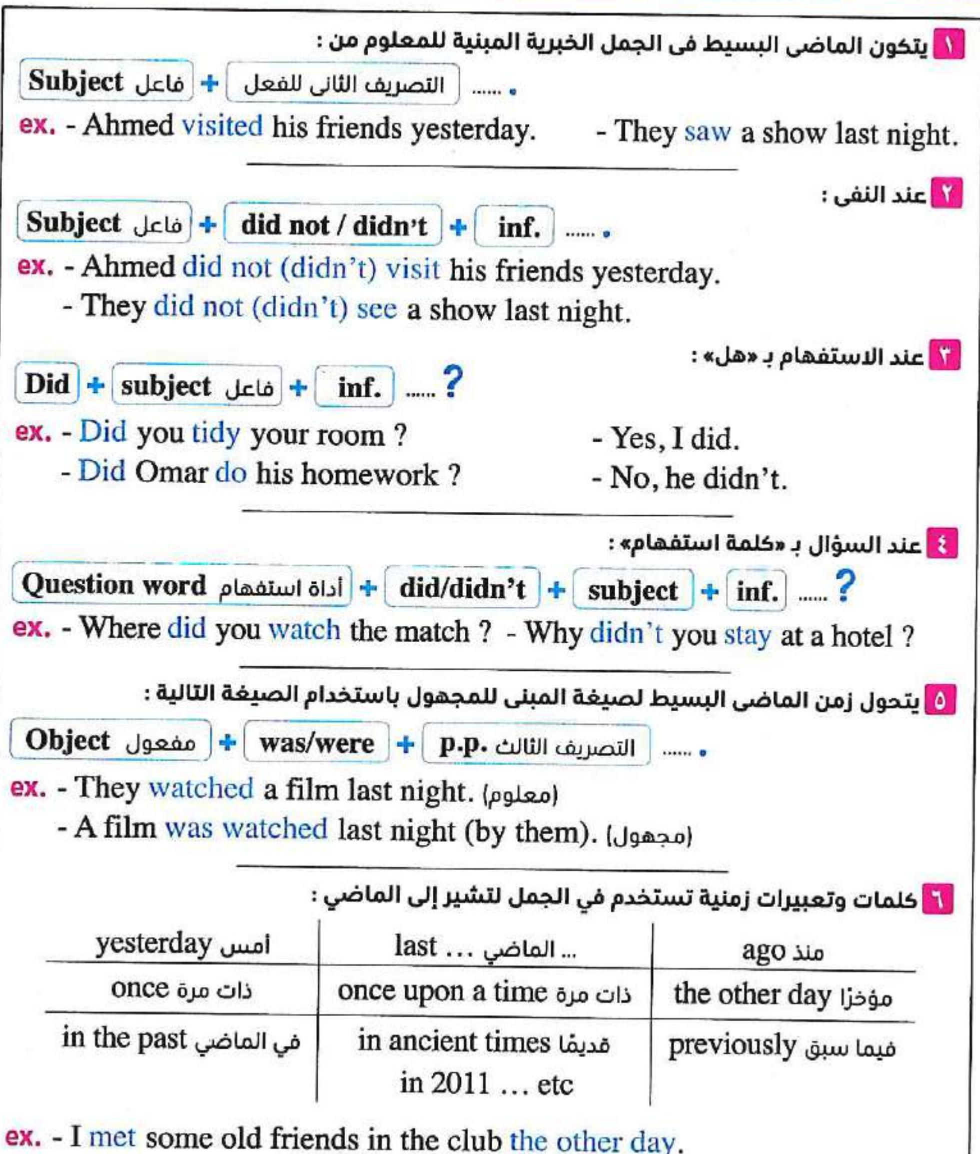
Luca : No, they're wild animals, not pets. We just observed them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a **spider**(15) bit me while I was sleeping and my arm **swelled up**(16).

Klara : So, what happened ?

Luca : I had to go to hospital-but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I had to go by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but as soon as I got back I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook. He didn't clean the fish **properly**(17) and everybody was sick. I'm staying at home this summer!

PART IV LANGUAGE

The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضى البسيط :



١ يتكون الماضى البسيط فى الجمل الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم من :

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل ....

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday. - They saw a show last night.

٢ عند النفى :

Subject فاعل + **did not / didn't** + **inf.** ....

ex. - Ahmed did not (didn't) visit his friends yesterday.
- They did not (didn't) see a show last night.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Did + **subject** فاعل + **inf.** ...... ?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.
- Did Omar do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

٤ عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + **did/didn't** + **subject** + **inf.** ...... ?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ? - Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

٥ يتحول زمن الماضى البسيط لصيغة المبنى للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

Object مفعول + **was/were** + **p.p.** التصريف الثالث ....

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

٦ كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

yesterday أمس	last ... الماضي ...	ago منذ
once ذات مرة	once upon a time ذات مرة	the other day مؤخرًا
in the past في الماضي	in ancient times قديمًا in 2011 ... etc	previously فيما سبق

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.

تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية مع عادات الماضى البسيط :

always – usually – sometimes – never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. A week ago, I .... an apple tree in my garden.
   a. plant b. have planted c. planted d. had planted
2. A week ago, an apple tree .... in my garden.
   a. plant b. were planted c. planted d. was planted
3. They .... their animals yesterday.
   a. didn't feed b. haven't fed c. don't feed d. hadn't fed
4. Their animals .... yesterday.
   a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed
5. Ahmed read an interesting story ....
   a. everyday b. ago c. now d. the other day

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ استخدام (was / were) فى الماضى البسيط :

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفي)
- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ'هل')
- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال بـ'أداة إستفهام')

٢ لاحظ استخدام (had) فى الماضى البسيط :

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (Not : hadn't) (نفي)
- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (Not : Had she) (سؤال بـ'هل')
- When did she have lunch? (Not : When had) (سؤال بـ'أداة إستفهام')

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Hassan .... at school yesterday.
   a. isn't b. doesn't be c. wasn't d. didn't be
2. .... at school yesterday?
   a. Was Hassan b. Did Hassan be c. Had Hassan d. Did Hassan have
3. Where .... yesterday?
   a. did Hassan be b. does Hassan be c. were Hassan d. was Hassan
4. I .... lunch at home yesterday.
   a. haven't b. hadn't c. don't have d. didn't have
5. .... lunch at home yesterday?
   a. Had you b. Did you have c. You had d. Do you have

Uses استخدامات

يُستخدم الماضي البسيط في حالات كثيرة منها :

١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي (عادة مع تعبير زمني ماضي) :

ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.
- My father built this house ten years ago.

٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي:

ex. The baby was called Oliver Twist. He was sent to the orphanage.

٣ بعد (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية:

ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.

Past Habits عادات الماضي

١ يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر :

1. Subj. + used to إعتاد أن + inf. ....

ex. - He used to swim in the sea. - She didn't use to wear glasses.

2. It was + someone's. / صفة ملكية + habit عادة + to + inf. ....

ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.

٢ الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن شئ كان معتاد في الماضي :

يمكن استخدام . subj. + was / were + used to + n / (inf. + ing)

ex. - They were used to working in the sun.
- I was used to (eating) salty food.

٣ للتعبير عن التعود على القيام بشئ في الماضي نستخدم :

subj. + got / became / grew + used to + n / (inf. + ing) .

ex. - I got used to the (freezing) weather in Canada.
- I grew used to working on a farm.

Mini Test 3 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. If we .... by the sea, we'd go swimming every day.
 a. live b. lived c. is lived d. was lived
2. When I was a student, I .... up early.
 a. get b. used to getting
 c. was used to get d. was used to getting
3. .... go for a walk every week?
 a. Was he used to b. Did he use c. Did he use to d. He used to

Notes for Advanced level ملاحظات للفائقين

١ يُمكن استخدام (did + inf.) في الجمل المثبتة للتوكيد :

- You saw who stole the money yesterday.
= You did see who stole the money yesterday.

٢ لاحظ استخدام جملة الماضي البسيط في الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن شيء غير متحقق في المضارع :

1. I wish + subject + past simple .
- I wish Sama had enough time to help me.
= Salma can't help me because she doesn't have enough time.

2. It is + (about/almost/high) + time + subject + past simple .
- It is high time you returned home. = You are still out.

3. Subj. فاعل + would + rather/sooner + فاعل مختلف عن الفاعل الأول + past simple .
- I'd rather you arrived on time. = You don't arrive on time.

في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (would rather / sooner) فيأتى بعدها الفعل في المصدر ويكون هذا أسلوب تعبير عن التفضيل :

Subj. فاعل + would + rather/sooner + inf. .
- I'd rather go shopping in the afternoon.

٣ يستخدم الماضي التام وليس الماضي البسيط فى حالة وجود تعبير زمنى يدل على الماضى بعد
(I wish / I'd rather / It's (about / almost) time)
- I'd rather she had arrived home earlier yesterday.

Exercises On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I .... prep. 3 exams two months ago.
   a. take b. took c. have taken d. was taken
2. Salah .... Liverpool and won Player of the Year Award.
   a. joined b. was joined c. joins d. was joining
3. I .... have many friends at my first school.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. never
4. I .... had many friends at my first school.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. never
5. Rokaya didn't .... the mobile ringing.
   a. hears b. hear c. heard d. hearing
6. Did Sama .... mum with the housework ?
   a. was helping b. helps c. helped d. help

7. What .... Karim do when he cut his finger?
a. did b. do c. does d. has
8. Why did Rahma look tired when she .... the door?
a. shuts b. shut c. was shut d. shutting
9. .... well yesterday!
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play
10. .... well yesterday?
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play
11. **A:** .... yesterday? **B:** Quite well.
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play
12. I .... off my tablet and I went out.
a. turn b. turned c. was turned d. was turning
13. My tablet .... off and I went out.
a. turn b. turned c. was turned d. was turning
14. I .... tired, so I went to bed.
a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c
15. I .... tired, so I worked for three more hours.
a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c
16. .... the best students at your first school.
a. They were b. Were they c. Did they be d. Are they
17. .... her lunch.
a. Did she have b. Had she c. She hadn't d. She didn't have
18. .... her lunch?
a. Did she have b. Had she c. She hadn't d. She didn't have
19. Why .... millions of people go to America in the 19th century?
(بورسعيد٢٠٢٣)
a. did b. do c. does d. have
20. We can't go home by bus. The last bus .... thirty seconds ago.
(بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. left b. has left c. have left d. will leave

2 Special cases

21. He .... to sit down until he had apologised. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
a. didn't allow b. don't allow c. wasn't allowed d. was allowed
22. Who .... ? (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
a. were the complaints made by? b. did you make the complaints?
c. were you made the complaints? d. was the complaint made?
23. My grandfather always .... to work when he was young.
(السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٣)
a. walk b. walks c. walked d. has walked

24. He got used to .... in an office. (القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. work b. works c. worked d. working

25. Before joining the university, I .... living away from my family. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
a. used b. didn't use to c. used to d. wasn't used to

26. I .... a car which cost me only 100,000 pounds.
a. offer b. offered c. was offered d. was offering

27. The door .... and we went in.
a. opened b. was opened c. a & b d. opens

28. I .... the door and we went in.
a. opened b. was opened c. a & b d. opens

29. At the age of five, I ....to swim. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)
a. learned b. learn c. have learnt d. was learnt

30. As a boy, Mr Mohammed .... for his good behaviour. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)
a. used to be praised
b. was praising
c. used to praise
d. praised

31. He used to be calm, but now he .... (الدقهلية - منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. doesn't b. isn't c. is d. does

32. She .... the money she needed. (المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
a. wasn't given b. didn't give c. gave d. gives

33. I'd rather you .... out alone late at night. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
a. haven't gone b. not to go c. didn't go d. not going

34. People used to be helpful but now they .... (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
a. don't b. haven't c. won't d. aren't

3 Check your understanding

35. He doesn't smoke any longer. This means that he .... smoke.
a. used to b. still c. any more d. didn't

36. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. I used to studying hard.
b. I was used to study hard.
c. I got used to study hard.
d. I became used to studying hard.

37. I don't have enough time for hobbies. I wish I .... enough time for hobbies.
a. had b. have had c. had had d. didn't have

38. I didn't have enough time for hobbies when I was a child. I wish I .... enough time for hobbies when I was a child.
a. had b. have had c. had had d. didn't have

39. "She wishes she were tall." What does this mean?
a. She was tall.
b. She wasn't tall.
c. She isn't tall.
d. She is tall.

40. "I'd rather you didn't use my mobile." This means that .... my mobile.
a. I wanted you to use
b. I didn't want you to use
c. I want you to use
d. I don't want you to use

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 10 & 11 WB pages 90 & 91



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active (adj)	نشيط	noisy (adj)	مُزعِج - صاخب
ancient (adj)	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	في منتهي السعادة
beautiful (adj)	جميل	old (adj)	قديم - عجوز
boring (adj)	مُمِل	peace (n)	السلام - السّكِينة
busy (adj)	مشغول - مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	هادئ / ذو سَكِينة
calm (adj)	هادئ - ساكن	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
crowded (adj)	مُزدحم	quiet (n - adj)	هدوء - هادئ
exciting (adj)	مثير	relax(ed) (v)	يسترخي
exotic (adj)	غريب / نادِر - أجنبي	relaxing (adj)	مُريح
loads of	الكثير من	stuck (adj)	عالق - محشور
modern (adj)	حديث		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually (adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	guide (d) (n - v)	مُرْشِد - يُرْشِد
adventure (n)	مغامرة	on board	علي مَتن (طائرة/سفينة)
awful (adj)	فظيع / شديد	paradise (n)	جَنّة
brilliant (adj)	رائع / خلّاب - ذكي	resort (n)	منتجع سياحي
castle (n)	قلعة	sight (n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم
cruise (n)	نزهة	steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق
damage (d) (v/n)	يتلف - يدمر - تَلَف	stressed (adj)	مُجهَد - مضغوط
distance (n)	مسافة - بُعد	stressful (adj)	مؤرّق - مُتعِب - مُجهِد
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	teenager (adj - n)	مُرَاهِق
fascinating (adj)	جميل / خلّاب	tiny (adj)	ضئيل الحجم
gardening (n)	بستنة / فِلاحَةِ البَساتِين	underwater (adj-adv)	تحت الماء
glad (adj)	مسرور / مبتهج	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
		worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
exotic (adj) غريب / نادِر - أجنبي	unusual and often from a different country

Exercises On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. .... is an adjective which means unusual or strange. (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Toxic b. Exotic c. Realistic d. Fantastic

2 Key Vocabulary

2. Tamer is fond of exploring .... places to discover unknown species. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. poetic b. exotic c. romantic d. economic
3. The store was .... with shoppers taking advantage of the sale. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. deserted b. crowded c. brilliant d. exotic
4. The elevator was .... between two floors. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. busy b. stick c. stuck d. beautiful
5. When Marwa passed her exams, she was .... (كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٤)
   a. wretched b. depressed c. over the moon d. miserable
6. The countryside is quiet and .... (القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. awful b. peaceful c. dreadful d. terrifying
7. You've worked too much. Just sit down and .... for some minutes. (القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)
   a. relax b. feel c. forget d. contact
8. The film was so ...., so many people left before its end. (كفر الشيخ - بيلا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. nice b. fine c. boring d. interesting
9. I have .... of tasks to achieve before leaving the office. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. loads b. pros c. cons d. impacts

3 Important Vocabulary

10. Because of the climate, the coastal .... are deserted in winter. (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)
    a. banks b. roads c. resorts d. streets
11. My son is still a/an .... He is only 15 years old. (المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)
    a. adult b. grown up c. teenager d. youth
12. It's very .... for me to stay up late working all time. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
    a. stress b. stressed c. stressful d. stressfully
13. I hate using social media. They make me .... (القاهرة - إدارة الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٣)
    a. pleased b. stressed c. dressed d. praised

14. I don't want to go to the park. .... , I am meeting some friends in the club.
   a. Environmentally b. Otherwise c. Actually d. Naturally
15. Smoking .... smokers' health.
   a. describes b. benefits c. develops d. damages
16. I find this novel extremely للغاية .... It interests me a lot.
   a. fascinating b. fascinated c. boring d. bored
17. While we were camping in the forest, some monkeys .... our food.
   a. fed b. protected c. stole d. benefitted
18. The tourists enjoyed the .... of the sun shining on the statue of Ramses.
   a. sight b. cruise c. turtle d. article
19. This fascinating island is a tourist ....
   a. mosquito b. paradise c. pool d. Sahara
20. People who go on holidays in mountains and rainforests like ....
   a. resorts b. designs c. adventures d. respect
21. I enjoyed the .... on the Nile from Luxor to Aswan.
   a. cruise b. ecotourism c. drive d. unique
22. When I visited London for the first time, I spent three days .... the city.
   a. swelling b. exploring c. leaning d. collaborating
23. Mohammed Salah is an absolutely .... footballer.
   a. little b. tiny c. ancient d. brilliant

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	activities	يمارس أنشطة	**take**	photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ
forget	your worries	تنسى مخاوفك		a cruise	يقوم برحلة بحرية
go	trekking يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا				

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
active	نشيط	energetic, dynamic
aboard	علي متن (سفينة/طائرة)	on board
ancient	قديم / عتيق	very old
beautiful	جميل	pretty, cute
boring	مُمل	dull, spiritless
busy	مزدحم	crowded, noisy

exotic	أجنبي	foreign
exotic	مُدهِش / مُذهِل	unusual, unconventional, strange
over the moon	سعيد جدًا	very happy, very excited, glad
quiet	هادئ	calm

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
active	نشيط - فعَّال	lazy, inactive, idle	كسول - خامل
ancient	قديم / عتيق	modern, new, recent	حديث - جديد
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
boring	مُمِل	exciting, interesting	مثير
busy	مشغول	free	متفرغ
quiet	هادئ	noisy	مُزعج - صاخب
crowded	مزدحم	empty, quiet	فارغ - هادئ
exciting	مثير	boring, dull	ممل - كئيب
exotic	أجنبي	native, local	محلي
exotic	مُدهِش / مُذهِل	usual, familiar, ordinary	عادي - تقليدي
over the moon	سعيد جدًا	sad, upset, disappointed	حزين - مُحبَط
relaxing	مُريح	stressful, tiring, tiresome	ضاغط / مؤرِّق

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

crowded	
crowd (ed) (v) يحتشد - يجتمِّع	- People crowd to help when there is an accident.
crowd (n) جمع من الناس - حشد	- A crowd of people came to help me.
overcrowding (n) التكدّس	- People in big cities suffer from overcrowding.
crowded (adj) مزدحم	- People in big cities suffer from crowded streets.
overcrowded (adj) مزدحم جدًا - مُتكدِّس	- People in big cities suffer from overcrowded streets.
peace	
peace (n) السلام - السَّكِينة	- I like the peace of the countryside at night.
peaceful (adj) هادئ / ذو سَكِينة	- It is peaceful in the countryside at night.
peacefully (adv) بسكينة - بسلام	- The baby is sleeping peacefully in its bed.
stick	
stick - stuck (v) يلصق - يلتصق - يَغلَق - ينحشر	- I used glue الصمغ to stick the picture.

stick (n)	عصا	- My grandfather uses a stick when he walks.
sticker (n)	مُلصَق	- There are some stickers which have some advice about coronavirus.
stuck (adj)	عالق - محشور	- I was stuck in a traffic jam. تكدس مروري

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا تُنسى	on board = aboard	علي متن سفينة او طائرة
be tired of	يمَلّ من	on the balcony	في البلكونة
busy with	مشغول بـ	on the way there	في الطريق إلى هناك
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما افعله
make good use of	يُحسِن استغلال		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add to	يُضيف إلي	learn about	يتعلم عن
decide to	يقرر أن	learn to	يتعلم أن
escape from	يهرب من	leave … behind	يغادر تاركاً …
escape to	يهرب إلي	stay with	يقيم مع
go away	يبتعد - يسافر	walk around	يتنزه سيراً
go down	يهبط - ينزل - تغرُب الشمس		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

old - ancient

- **old (adj)** قديم
  - My grandfather still lives in his old house.
- **old (adj)** عجوز
  - My grandfather is a very old man.
- **ancient = very old (adj)** قديم جداً/عتيق
  - The ancient Egyptians had a great civilisation حضارة.

لاحظ أن الصفة **(ancient)** صفة قوية لا تُستخدم في صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل:

- The Great Pyramid is more ancient than the citadel القلعة. (✗)
- The Great Pyramid is much older than the citadel. (✓)

Adjectives ending in -ed / -ing

- الصفات المنتهية بـ**(ed)** تعنى أن الموصوف (شاعر بالصفة - مُعرّض للصفة - يعانى من الصفة):

- I feel tired / excited / bored. إنني اشعر بالتعب / السعادة / الملل.

- الصفات المنتهية بـ**(ing)** تعنى أن الموصوف (مُسَبّب للصفة):

- This job is tiring / pleasing / boring. هذه الوظيفة مُتعِبة / شيقة / مملة.

little

• little + اسم لا يُعد — قليل (الكمية)
- We have little work to do.
- He gave us little information about the accident.

• little + اسم يُعد — صغير (الحجم أو السن)
- I saw a little boy selling flowers.

sight - site

• sight (n) — البَصَر (القدرة على الرؤية)
- Taha Hussein lost his sight when he was a child.

• sight (n) — مَنظَر (شيء يمكن رؤيته)
- I like the sight of green plants and colourful flowers.

• sights (n) — معالم (الأماكن المشهورة أو الهامة)
- The guide showed me the important sights in Aswan.

• site (n) — موقع (مكان - موقع إلكتروني)
- There are some tourists visiting the archaeological site موقع أثري.
- Mr Mohammed has an educational site. (= website) موقع إلكتروني

steal - rob

• steal (stole - stolen) + الشيء المسروق + (from) ... — يسرِق (+مفعول) مِن
- This gang العصابة stole money from the bank.

• rob (robbed) + المكان الذي يتم السرقة منه — يسرِق/يسطو على (+المكان)
- The gang robbed the bank.

• rob + الشخص + of + الشيء المسروق — يسرِق شيء من شخص
- A thief robbed me of my bike.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

• ✪ **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. "He was over the moon when he won the race." The phrase "over the moon" means .... (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. very happy b. disappointed c. very sad
   d. very excited e. very angry

2. Smoking .... your health seriously. (أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. dangerous b. damages c. danger
   d. endangers e. dangers

3. "The ancient civilization of Egypt has always fascinated people all over the world." The antonyms of "ancient" here are .... and .... (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)

a. new b. historic c. early
d. modern e. old

4. "There are exotic birds in the forest." These words give the same meaning of "exotic" EXCEPT .... (الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. common b. strange c. unusual
d. foreign e. ordinary

5. "I didn't enjoy reading that novel; it was boring." The antonyms of "boring" are .... and .... (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

a. handsome b. pleased c. interesting
d. confident e. exciting

6. "I don't like this music because it is very noisy." The opposites of the word "noisy" are .... (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

a. quite b. busy c. quiet
d. unique e. calm

7. I had been taught .... pictures when I was young. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)

a. draw b. how to draw c. to drawing
d. to draw e. draws

8. "Reading a story before going to bed is relaxing." The antonyms of the word "relaxing" are .... (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

a. modern b. tiresome c. cute
d. comfortable e. stressful

9. My sister was .... when her pet cat died. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)

a. disappointing b. disappointed c. encouraged
d. encouraging e. frustrated

✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The gang broke into the bank and .... a lot of money. (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)

a. stole b. robbed c. lent d. borrowed

2. **A:** What kind of stories do you like reading most? **B:** .... stories. (بني سويف - ببا ٢٠٢٤)

a. Adventurous b. Adventure c. Adverts d. Apps

3. Most of the people who were travelling with me .... the ship were so friendly. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)

a. board b. abroad c. broad d. on board

4. Egyptian people are famous .... their kindness and generosity.

(الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)

a. in b. at c. for d. of

5. On her .... home, Reham met her friends yesterday.

(الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)

a. road b. street c. away d. way

6. Unfortunately, the burglar .... the house. (الفيوم – يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٢)

a. stole b. took c. robbed d. guarded

7. 'Ancient' is to .... as 'boring' is to 'exciting'.

a. excited b. new c. modern d. b & c

8. You can .... a cruise or a boat trip.

a. decide to b. go away c. go on d. trek into

9. He escaped .... prison.

a. to b. with c. from d. on

10. It is over, Sama. There's nothing ....

a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing

PART III READING & LISTENING

Reading Texts



James's blog

(SB page 10)



This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant here and there are loads of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating and am really glad we went there.

Katy's blog

(SB page 10)



Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck here at home. The weather's awful and there's nothing to do.

Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening – maybe I'll have a new hobby!

Holiday Adverts!

(WB page 90)

A beach break

Do you want to **relax**[1] in a quiet and **peaceful**[2] place? **Escape**[3] from noisy streets and leave your busy city life **behind**[4]. Visit this amazing **paradise**[5]. Enjoy the **sunshine**[6] on **isolated**[7] beaches and swim in clean, **clear**[8] water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of **the same**[9] old, **boring**[10] places? Are you looking for an **active**[11] holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you **climbing**[12] in the beautiful **Alpine mountains**[13].

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of **traveller**[14]. You can go **trekking**[15] through the **Andes**[16] and **explore**[17] ancient Machu Picchu with a local **guide**[18]. You can enjoy **peace**[19] and **quiet**[20] or you can meet the local people, all without **damaging**[21] the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm **cruise**[22] around the **Caribbean**[23]? On **board**[24] our modern **cruise ship**[25], you can enjoy great food and **forget**[26] your **worries**[27] in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded **markets**[28] and see many unusual sights.

(1) يسترخى
(2) هادئ - ذو سكينة
(3) يهرب
(4) خلف / وراء
(5) جنة
(6) شروق (ضوء) الشمس
(7) مُنعزل
(8) صافى
(9) نفس
(10) مُمِل
(11) نشِط -مفيد
(12) يتسلق
(13) جبال ألباين
(14) مُسافِر
(15) تتنزه سيرًا
(16) جبال الأنديز
(17) يستكشف
(18) مُرْشِد
(19) السكينة-السلام
(20) الهدوء
(21) تدمير
(22) نزهة بحْرية
(23) البحر الكاريبى
(24) متن السفينة
(25) مركب سياحية
(26) ينسى
(27) مخاوف - هموم
(28) أسواق

PART IV LANGUAGE

The Past Continuous Tense : زمن الماضى المستمر :

١ فى الجملة المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) ....

ex. - Ahmed was reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were cooking lunch.

٢ فى الجملة المنفية :

Subject فاعل + was not(wasn't)/were not (weren't) + (inf. + ing) ....

ex. - Ahmed was not (wasn't) reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were not (weren't) cooking lunch.

٣ فى السؤال الذى يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى «هل» :

Was/Were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ...... ?

ex. - Was Ahmed reading a book? - Were you eating a cake?

٤ فى السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + was/were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ...... ?

ex. - What was Ahmed reading ?

٥ فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object مفعول + was/were + being + p.p. ....

ex. - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○ ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some people .... on the farm from morning to afternoon that day.
   a. was worked b. were worked c. was working d. were working
2. It was not polite of him to interrupt يقاطع what I ....
   a. was doing b. did c. had done d. was done
3. What .... you doing when I called ?
   a. are b. were c. did d. had
4. Some boys .... when the teacher entered the classroom.
   a. fought b. were fought c. was fighting d. were fighting

Uses of the past continuous استخدامات

١ يستخدم الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى وقت معين فى الماضى :

ex. - I was playing on the beach last Friday afternoon.

٢ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين فى نفس الوقت فى الماضى:

While / As / When + جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - While I was reading a story, Ali was watching TV.

٣ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما وقع حدث آخر:

While / As / When / Just as + جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى بسيط

ex. - While he was playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.
= He broke his arm while he was playing a tennis match.

While + **inf. + ing** + جملة ماضى بسيط

ex. - While playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.
(Not : While a tennis ...)

During + **noun** اسم + جملة ماضى بسيط

ex. - During a tennis match, he broke his arm. (Not : During watching ...)

When + جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - When I arrived, Shahd was watching a cartoon.

لاحظ أنه يمكن أن يأتى **(inf. + ing)** بعد **(during)** عندما تكون صفة :

ex. - During studying hours, I didn't waste any time.

On + **noun / (inf. + ing)** + جملة ماضى بسيط / جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - On my arrival at my office, the secretary was checking emails.

While + حرف جر + ... اسم

ex. - While in Alexandria, I ate fish for lunch every day.

٤ لاحظ استخدام المبني للمجهول في الصيغة التالية:

While / On + **being** + **p.p.** ......

ex. - While the food was being cooked, it smelled nice.
= While / On being cooked, the food smelled nice.

في المثال السابق استخدمنا **(being cooked)** وليس **(cooking)** لأن الجملة الثانية بدأت بـ **(the food)** الذي يُعتبر مفعول الجملة الأولى.

٥ يُستخدم الماضى البسيط بدلا من الماضى المستمر مع الأفعال التالية:

ex. - **Feelings** المشاعر : like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish … etc.
- **Senses** الحواس : hear, see, smell, feel, sound, taste, appear, seem, look … etc.
- **Mental state** الإدراك : realise, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine, recognise, remember, forget … etc.
- I was hearing a noise outside. (✗)
- I heard a noise outside. (✓)

لكن يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع بعض الأفعال السابقة في حالة استخدامها بمعاني أخري غير معانيها الأصلية:

ex. - I was seeing an old friend when you called. (= was meeting)
- I was having some pizza when the phone rang. (= was eating)

تذكر أن الماضي المستمر لا يُستخدم مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدة زمنية) :

ex. - My car broke down تعطل. **(Not: was breaking down)**

كما أن (**being**) لا تُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الماضي المستمر :

ex. - While we were in the park, our children were playing around us. **(Not: were being)**

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

○ ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My car .... down suddenly as I was driving to work.
   a. breaks b. broke c. was breaking d. was being broken
2. While I .... at the club, I played tennis.
   a. was b. was being c. am d. am being
3. Nada .... when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.
   a. slept b. was slept c. has slept d. was sleeping
4. .... the film, I ate popcorn فشار and drank juice.
   a. As b. While c. During d. When
5. .... watching the film, I ate popcorn فشار and drank juice.
   a. As b. While c. During d. As soon as
6. During yesterday's match, most players .... fit.
   a. hadn't been b. weren't c. weren't being d. have been
7. I .... my toys when I was young.
   a. was loving b. am loving c. was being loved d. loved

Exercises On Language ○ Apply

○ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. From 9 to 12 last Friday, I .... an important meeting.
   a. had attended b. was attended
   c. was attending d. was being attended
2. From 9 to 12 last Friday, an important meeting ....
   a. had attended b. was attended
   c. was attending d. was being attended
3. .... doing when I called you?
   a. Were you b. You were c. What you were d. What were you
4. .... doing homework when I called you?
   a. Were you b. You were c. What you were d. What were you
5. I .... my room when Mariam came to see me, so she offered to help me. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. decorated b. was decorating c. had decorated d. was decorated
6. On seeing the fire, the man .... the fire brigade. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. had called b. was called c. was calling d. called
7. While .... the experiment, Ahmed fell and injured his hand. (القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. were doing b. was doing c. doing d. do
8. I .... out of the boat when I dropped my camera. (السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. was leaning b. have leant c. lean d. am leaning
9. .... she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.
   a. Before b. After c. When d. On
10. .... my sleep, I had a nightmare كابوس.
    a. While b. As c. When d. During
11. The police arrested him as he............ the scene of the crime.
    a. had left b. was leaving c. was left d. has left
12. When Mariam was young, she used to .... in London.
    a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
13. On .... the monkey, my baby was frightened.
    a. was seeing b. had seen c. he was seeing d. seeing

2 Special cases

14. While I .... at home, my uncle suddenly knocked on the door. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
    a. was b. am c. was being d. will be
15. While .... , the baby was laughing to the doctor. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
    a. examining b. was examining c. being examined d. examined
16. While .... , I was staying in another room. (بني سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
    a. my room was being decorated b. my room was decorating
    c. decorated my room d. was my room being decorated
17. .... Alex, I met my friend by chance. (الدقهلية - منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
    a. While b. During c. While in d. Just as
18. I didn't hear the telephone .... I was having a shower. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. so b. since c. at d. but
19. .... working hours, employees mustn't use mobiles. (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
    a. While b. When c. During d. Why
20. I .... into a good family in the south of Egypt.
    a. bore b. was born c. was bearing d. have been born
21. Amira .... well yesterday.
    a. doesn't look b. didn't look c. wasn't looked d. wasn't looking
22. I .... ready to take the exam, so I postponed it أجّلته.
    a. didn't be b. don't be c. wasn't d. wasn't being
23. Everybody was at the office at 08:30 yesterday. The meeting .... at nine o'clock.
    a. starts b. has started c. was starting d. started
24. I wish I .... a better time.
    a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
25. I wish I .... a better time last year.
    a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
26. It's time you .... back my camera.
    a. gave b. give c. is given d. was given
27. I'd rather .... here than in Cairo.
    a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
28. I'd rather my grandma .... here than in Cairo before she died.
    a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
29. Rokaya always .... to her first school on foot.
    a. goes b. went c. was gone d. is gone
30. Every day, I .... my uncle when he was ill.
    a. am visited b. visit c. was visited d. visited
31. .... touching the hot pan, Sama cried in pain.
    a. While b. On c. When d. During

32. .... on holiday, I had a great time.
a. While b. After c. When d. During

33. I last met Ahmed while he .... off some of his British friend at the airport.
a. saw b. was seeing c. had seen d. was seen

34. When I visited my sister, she .... ill.
a. seemed b. was seeming c. had seemed d. was seemed

35. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils who .... a lot of noise soon became calm.
a. were making b. were being made
c. had been made d. were made

36. While climbing onto the mountain top, I .... a strange animal.
a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen

37. I couldn't watch the film because my brother .... a football match.
a. has watched b. was watching c. watched d. had watched

38. Abdu............ the tree when he suddenly fell down.
a. had been climbed b. was climbing
c. climbed d. was climbed

39. .... sleeping, I had a nightmare.
a. While b. As c. When d. During

3 Check your understanding

40. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. Was Sama being very tired? b. Was Sama very tired?
c. Did Sama be very tired? d. Sama was very tired?

41. I used to be overweight. This means I am .... now.
a. fat b. overweight
c. no longer thin d. not overweight

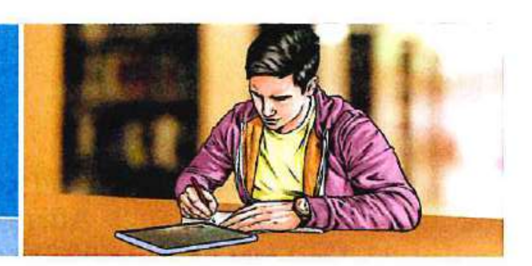
42. I wish I were taller. This means I ....
a. like my height b. don't like my height
c. would like to be short d. enjoy being short

43. "While on holidays, she read romantic novels." This is a .... habit.
a. past b. present c. future d. current

44. I didn't answer the phone because I .... my shower.
a. had taken b. was taken c. was taking d. had been taken

45. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means ....
a. Sama was drinking juice
b. Sama's friends were drinking juice
c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice
d. Sama said her friends were drinking juice

PART **THREE** | Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

So

١ تستخدم مع الصفة أو الظرف بمعنى (جداً) :

→ so + adj. / adv.

ex. - You can answer this question. It is not so difficult.

- We have enough time. I don't know why you are driving so quickly.

٢ تُستخدم (so + adj. / adv. + that) بمعنى (جداً لدرجة أن) :

→ so + adj. + that + جملة

ex. - The exam was so easy that all students passed it.

- He ran so slowly that he came last in the race السباق.

٣ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار صفة أو ظرف بمعني (هكذا / بهذه الطريقة) :

ex. - The weather is cold and I think it will remain يظل so (= cold) for another two days.

٤ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار عبارة بمعني (ذلك) :

ex. - **A:** Do you think Rokaya will come first ?
B: I think so. (= I think she will come first.)

٥ تُستخدم (so) في الصيغة التالية بمعني (وكذلك ...) :

so + فعل مساعد أو ناقص + فاعل

ex. - Mr Helmi felt sick after the meal and so did Mr Ashraf and Fady.

- My mother likes spicy food. So do I.

٦ تُستخدم (so) كرابط بين جملتين بمعني (لذلك / لهذا السبب) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :

so لذلك + جملة نتيجة

ex. - Mr Abdulrahman was tired, so he went to bed early.

٧ تُستخدم (so that) كرابط بين جملتين بمعني (حتي / لكي) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :

so that لكي / حتي + جملة غرض

ex. - I want to get an underwater camera so that I can take photos of the corals.

ing

أحياناً يُستخدم (inf. + ing) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

who / which / that + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = **(inf. + ing)**

ex. - I have a cousin who works for a tourist company.

= I have a cousin working for a tourist company.

with = who / which / that + have

لاحظ استخدام (with) كبديل لعبارة وصل:

who / whom / which / that + **have / has / had** + **noun** اسم

= **with** + **noun** اسم

ex. - I saw a little girl who has green eyes and long hair.

= I saw a little girl with green eyes and long hair.

- They live in a tiny village which has no shops.

= They live in a tiny village with no shops.

when + ing

يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (when) بمعني (عند / حين) للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة بشرط أن يكون الفاعل نفس فاعل الجملة الرئيسية :

When + جملة = **When** + **(inf. + ing)**

ex. - When Sama feels tired, she stops working.

= When feeling tired, Sama stops working.

or / otherwise وإلّا

يمكن استخدام (or) أو (otherwise) في جمل شَرطِية بمعني (وإلا) بدلاً من (if / unless) :

ex. - You must study hard, otherwise you won't pass the exam.

= If you don't study hard, you won't pass the exam.

= Unless you study hard, you won't pass the exam.

someone / anything ... + adj. صفة

تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها:

someone	somebody	something	somewhere
anyone	anybody	anything	anywhere
everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
no one	nobody	nothing	nowhere

ex. - I sat next to someone important on the plane. **(Not: important someone)**

- Children like everything new. **(Not: new everything)**

It + verb to be + ... مِن

It + be + adj. صفة + to + inf. ..... من ... أن ...

ex. - It is difficult to understand this lesson without your teacher's help.
- It is enjoyable to spend your free time in the club.

It + be + adj. صفة + of / for + subj. فاعل + to + inf. ..... من ... أن ...

ex. - It is easy for Ayman to do this work on his own بمفرده.
- It is kind of you to help me solve my problems.

help + inf. / to + inf.

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) أو (inf.) بعد (help) :

ex. - I helped Sama to do the cooking.
= I helped Sama do the cooking.
- The babysitter helps to look after the baby.
= The babysitter helps look after the baby.

busy

..... busy with + noun اسم

ex. - The manager is busy with some clients العملاء.

..... busy + (inf. + ing)

ex. - We were busy doing the housework.

verb + object + inf. / ing

الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على متابعة الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. +ing) ليدل على متابعة جزء من الحدث:

see - watch - hear - notice

ex. - I saw the sun go down. (شاهدت الغروب بالكامل)
- I saw the sun going down. (شاهدت جزء من الغروب)

including

تُستخدَم (including) كحرف جر بمعني (بما في ذلك / مشتملاً على) :

Including بما في ذلك ≠ excluding فيما عدا

ex. - I called all my family members, including my uncle who lives in Canada.

stop

تُستخدَم (stop) بمعني (يتوقف - يُوقِف - يمنع) كالتالي:

stop + to + inf. + يتوقف (عما يفعله) لكى

ex. - While Leen was doing homework, she stopped to make herself a cup of tea.

stop + (inf. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

ex. - Ashraf stopped chatting with his online friends to revise for the exams.

stop + obj. مفعول + (from) + inf. + ing　　　　يمنع ... من القيام بـ ...

ex. - Mr Ayman stopped us from talking to each other.
= Mr Ayman stopped us talking to each other.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Asmaa is hard-working and so .... (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
   a. I do　b. do I　c. I am　d. am I
2. Please, don't bother me. I'm busy .... my homework. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)
   a. to do　b. did　c. doing　d. to doing
3. I know the names of all people in our street, ... little children. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. include　b. including　c. includes　d. included
4. When .... the bank, the manager is usually exhausted.
   a. leaving　b. leaves　c. leave　d. had left
5. Children like Tom and Jerry cartoons because they are .... funny.
   a. such　b. such a　c. so　d. so much
6. She saw her father .... for work earlier than usual.
   a. leaving　b. to leaving　c. leaves　d. left
7. It is nice .... you to help her.
   a. in　b. with　c. for　d. of
8. I have to wear the uniform, ... I won't take part in أشارك في the game.
   a. as　b. so　c. otherwise　d. if
9. He writes so .... that I can't read anything.
   a. bad　b. badly　c. good　d. well
10. They are busy .... the preparations of the wedding تجهيزات الزفاف.
    a. from　b. to　c. for　d. with
11. Can you suggest .... to do?
    a. a something important　b. an important something
    c. something important　d. important something
12. Mum was .... tired that she slept in her chair.
    a. so　b. such　c. very　d. too
13. Mr Magdi helped us .... the experiment.
    a. doing　b. do　c. to doing　d. done

14. It is useful .... us to have a work plan.
 a. at b. about c. for d. of
15. He has a villa .... a swimming pool.
 a. of b. with c. into d. out of
16. I heard a bird .... beautifully before it flew away.
 a. to sing b. singing c. sings d. b & c
17. The horse .... by the gate is mine.
 a. stand b. stands c. standing d. to stand
18. Shaza helped all of us .... ready for the competition المسابقة.
 a. to getting b. got c. getting d. to get
19. Be careful .... you might fall.
 a. if b. unless c. or d. and
20. I know the girl .... the black skirt.
 a. with b. in c. of d. to

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

Recycling is the process of converting waste materials into reusable materials to reduce the consumption of new raw materials and **minimize** the amount of waste sent to landfills. **It** plays a vital role in preserving our environment and promoting sustainability. Recycling offers numerous benefits both for individuals and for the planet.

Firstly, recycling helps conserve valuable resources. By reusing materials like paper; plastics; glass; and metals, we can decrease the demand for virgin materials extracted from nature. This leads to the conservation of energy and the reduction of water consumption, air pollution and greenhouse gas emissions.

Secondly, recycling reduces landfill waste. Landfills are rapidly filling up, and open dumping of waste poses environmental risks. By diverting recyclable item from the normal waste stream, we can significantly reduce the amount of waste that ends up in landfills, preventing soil and water contamination and minimizing the release of harmful gases.

Moreover, recycling conserves energy. Producing goods from recycled materials requires less energy compared to manufacturing from scratch. For instance, recycling aluminum cans uses 95% less energy than producing new ones. By harnessing these energy savings, we can reduce our reliance on fossil fuels and mitigate the negative impacts of resource extraction. Furthermore, recycling helps create job opportunities and stimulates local economies.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. Recycling is used to .... raw materials to be used again.
   a. converse b. convert c. convey d. contact
2. We need to reduce the amount of waste sent to ....
   a. landfall b. rainfall c. landfill d. handful
3. We .... the demand for virgin material from nature if we do not recycle waste materials.
   a. decrease b. increase c. defend d. lead
4. The opposite of "**minimise**" is ....
   a. decrease b. maximize c. optimize d. disguise
5. The underlined word "**It**" refers to ....
   a. consumption b. amount c. recycling d. material
6. Energy can be .... from some recycled materials.
   a. introduced b. interacted c. deduced d. produced
7. Recycling leads to .... of pollution.
   a. deduction b. reduction c. introduction d. induction

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Model Essay

✪ Write an essay of about 150 words about voluntary work :

Voluntary work

What is voluntary work? Simply, voluntary work is work that you do for free. You do not expect or ask to be paid money or anything else for doing it. It is a type of help to the whole society or a certain group of people in society.

Voluntary work has always been very important. There are a lot of problems and challenges تحديات that face تواجه the society. The government cannot face all these problems and challenges without the people's help. We can say that the volunteering role is complementary مُكمِّل to that of the government.

What can people volunteer? Most people would say money. That's not an accurate answer. Money is a donation not volunteering. Volunteering is mainly أساسا taking part in doing something useful or necessary for the society or the people living in it. Those who volunteer have enough time and experience with which they can help.

Voluntary work is very important. It helps with difficult problems. It creates a type of unity الاتحاد and strength in society. If you haven't volunteered so far , you had better try now.

3 Writing

✪ **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :** (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)

Travelling is a useful and enjoyable hobby. Write about a place you have enjoyed visiting and another place you want to visit in the future. Give your reasons for both of them.

....

....

....

....

....

....

4 Translation الترجمة

A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

1. Sports protect people, especially the youth, from many social and psychological diseases. (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)

a. تحمي الرياضيات الناس وخصوصاً الشباب من الكثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.
b. تحمي الرياضة الناس وخصوصاً الكهول من الكثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.
c. تحمي الرياضة الناس وخصوصاً الشباب من الكثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.
d. تحمي الرياضة الناس وخصوصاً الشباب من الكثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والعصبية.

2. Practicing activities at school is important. Such activities help students learn some values like, cooperation, respect for others, self-confidence and perseverance. (الأقصر - الطود ٢٠٢٤)

a. إن ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمر هام، فهذه الأنشطة تساعد الطلاب على تعلُّم بعض القيم مثل التعاون واحترام الآخرين والثقة بالنفس والمثابرة.
b. إن ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمر غير ذي شأن، فهذه الأنشطة تساعد الطلاب على تعلُّم بعض القيم مثل التعاون واحترام الآخرين والثقة بالنفس والمثابرة.
c. إن مشاهدة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمر هام، فهذه الأنشطة تساعد الطلاب على تعلُّم بعض القيم مثل التعاون واحترام الآخرين والثقة بالنفس والمثابرة.
d. إن ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمر هام، فهذه الأنشطة تساعد الطلاب على تعلُّم بعض القيم مثل التعاون واحترام الآخرين واستعادة الثقة بالنفس والصيانة.

3. It is certain that you know that Eco-tourism is a type of tourism that pays great attention to the environment. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)

a. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة البيئية هي نوع من السياحة التي تجلب الكثير من المال.
b. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة البيئية تعتبر نوع من السياحة التي تهتم بالبيئة إلى حد ما.
c. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة المستدامة هي نوع من السياحة التي تهتم اهتماماً كبيراً بالبيئة.
d. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة البيئية هي نوع من السياحة التي تهتم اهتماماً كبيراً بالبيئة.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. تُعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدراً مباشراً من مصادر الدخل القومي في مصر، فمصر تمتلك الكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يرغب السياح في زيارتها. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

a. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of international income in Egypt as Egypt plenty of more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

b. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has plenty of isolated artificial places that tourists desire to visit.

c. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has plenty of isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

d. Ecotourism is considered indirect source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has plenty of isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

٢. مما لا شك فيه أن للتلوث آثار سيئة علي البيئة، سواء كان ذلك للإنسان أو الحيوان أو النبات.(أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)

a. Doubtless, pollution has nice effects on the environment whether it is on man, animal or plant.

b. Doubtless, pollution has bad affection on the environment, whether it is on man, animal or plant.

c. Doubtless, pollution has bad effects on the environment, weather it is on man, animal or plant.

d. Doubtless, pollution has bad effects on the environment whether it is on man, animal or plant.

٣. إن ممارسة الرياضة تُمكننا من مقاومة الأمراض والتمتع بحياة سعيدة، ولقد أثبتت أحدث الدراسات أن الشخص الرياضي تكون لديه القدرة على العمل لفترات طويلة دون تعب أو ملل. (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)

a. Doing sport makes us enable to resist diseases and enjoy happiness life. The latest studies have proven that an athlete has the ability to work for long periods without fatigue or boredom.

b. Doing sport enables us to cure diseases and enjoy life somehow. The latest studies have proven that an athlete has the ability to work for long periods without fatigue or boredom.

c. Practising sport enables us to resist diseases and enjoy a happy life. The latest studies have proven that an athlete has the ability to work for long periods without fatigue or boredom.

d. Practising sport enable us to resist diseases and enjoy happy life. The latest studies have proven that an athlete has the ability to work for long periods without fatigue or boredom.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

conserve

- **conserve (d) (v) = preserve (d) (v)** يحفظ / يصون / يحمي
  - We should conserve the environment.
- **conserve (d) (v)** يُرَشِّد / يقتصد في
  - Everyone must conserve energy الطاقة.
- **conserve = jam (n)** مربى
  - I like peach conserve مربي الخوخ.
- **conservation = preservation (n)** حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)
  - The conservation of wildlife الحياة البرية is very important.
- **conservation (n)** ترشيد / تقليل
  - Water conservation is necessary.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- wildlife conservation حماية الحياة البرية - nature conservation حماية الطبيعة
- conservation groups جماعات حماية الطبيعة

- **conservationist (n)** شخص محافظ علي أو صديق للبيئة
  - He is one of the conservationists who work hard to protect lions from extinction الإنقراض.

ecotourism

- **ecotourism (n)** سياحة صديقة للبيئة (تُراعي الحفاظ علي البيئة والحياة الطبيعية)
  - The Red Sea coast is a promising ذو مستقبل باهر area in ecotourism.
- **ecotourist (n)** سائح صديق للبيئة
  - Some areas are visited only by ecotourists.

danger

- **danger (n)** خطر
  - Don't expose يُعرِّض your life to danger.
- **endanger (ed) (v)** يُعرِّض للخطر
  - Don't endanger your life.
- **endangerment (n)** التعريض للخطر
  - Child endangerment is a crime جريمة.
- **endangered (adj)** مُعرَّض للخطر / للإنقراض
  - Some types of animals are endangered.

environment

• **the environment (n)** البيئة (الطبيعية)

- لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (environment) بهذا المعني :

- Pollution endangers the environment. **(Not: endangers environment)**

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- protect / conserve the environment يحمي البيئة
- harm / damage / destroy the environment يدمِّر البيئة
- pollute the environment يَلَوِّث البيئة
- the natural environment البيئة الطبيعية

• **environment (n)** وضع - وَسَط - جو عام

- In class, students must find a suitable مُناسبة environment to learn.

• **environmentally (adv)** بيئياً / من الناحية البيئية

- Ecotourism is environmentally friendly.

impact

• **impact (on / upon) (n)** تأثير / انطباع

- My friends have a great impact on me.

• **impact (n)** إرتطام / اصطدام

- The force قوة of the impact made the car turn over تنقلب.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- have an impact له تأثير   - make an impact يترك أثر / يؤثر
- a positive impact تأثير إيجابي
- a negative / damaging / adverse impact تأثير سلبي
- a long-term / lasting impact تأثير دائم
- a short-term / immediate impact تأثير لحظي
- an environmental impact أثر بيئي

• **impact (ed) (on / upon) (v)** يؤثِّر (على)

- The internet has impacted on life in the modern age.

isolated

• **isolate (d) .... (from) (v)** يُبعِد / يعزل............(عن)

- Parents always try to isolate their children from bad friends.

• **isolate (d) .... (from) (v)** يفصل ....(عن)

- This machine isolates butter الزبدة from milk.

• **isolation (n)** العُزلة

- No one can live in isolation.

• **isolation (n)** الانعزال / البُعد

- The isolation of the oasis الواحة gives it a unique فريدة culture.

- **isolated (adj)** بعيد / ناءٍ / منفرد
  - He lives in an isolated village.
- **isolated (adj)** شاعر بالعُزلَة أو الوحدة
  - Working alone on a farm makes him feel isolated.

crowded

- **crowded (with) (adj)** مُزدحِم (ملئ بالاشخاص)
  - The house was crowded with guests.
- **overcrowded (with) (adj)** مكتظ بـ / متكدس بـ (خاص بالأماكن والأشياء)
  - In feasts الأعياد, streets and parks are overcrowded.
- **overcrowding (n)** الزحام / التَكَدُّس
  - Overcrowding is a serious problem in cities.
- **crowd (n)** جمع / حشد من الناس
  - There's a crowd of students near the school gate.
- **crowd (ed) (v)** يحتشد / يتجمع / يتجمهر
  - Thousands of people crowded to welcome the winning team.

- لاحظ ما يلى :

- **crowd in on** + شخص تُغالبة / تتزاحم عليه
  - Fears المخاوف crowded in on her and she was very sad.

exotic

- **exotic (adj)** غريب / نادر - أجنبي / وافد
  - This park has some exotic plants.
  - I saw some exotic birds on the beach.

lean

- **lean – (leant – leant) / (leaned – leaned) (v)** ينحني / يميل
  - He leaned and looked down from the balcony.
- **lean ... (on / against) (v)** يتكىء (علي) - يسند ... علي
  - I leaned against the wall.
  - He leant his bicycle against a tree.
- **lean (adj)** نحيف
  - Abdulrahman is tall and lean.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- lean years سنوات الضنك
- lean meat لحوم قليلة الشحم
- lean production انتاج مقتصد

- **leaning (adj)** مائل / مُتكئ
  - He visited the Leaning Tower of Pisa برج بيزا المائل.

material

- **material (n)** مادة (تُستخدَم في صناعة الأشياء)
  - Building materials have become expensive.
- **material (n)** قماش (يُستخدم في صناعة الملابس)
  - She bought a good blouse made of soft material.
  - This material is made of Egyptian cotton.
- **material (adj)** مادي (متعلق بالمال أو المنفعة)
  - He is only interested in material benefit الفائدة المادية.
- **material (adj)** مادي = ملموس
  - The police have material evidence دليل مادي against him.

spicy

- **spicy (adj)** حرِّيف / حار - متبل بالبهارات
  - I like spicy sandwiches.
- **spice - spices (n)** توابل / بهارات
  - Fast food restaurants depend تعتمد on spices to make food more delicious.
- **spice (n)** اهتمام / إثارة (كلمة لا تُعد)
  - Our teacher of English usually adds spice to the reading lesson.
- **spice (ed) ... with (v)** يُتَبِّل .... بـ
  - Mum never forgets to spice the food with hot pepper.
- **spice (ed) up (v)** يُضفي نوع من الإثارة أو التنوع
  - Ahmed's funny talks أحاديث spiced (up) the long train journey.

sustainable

- **sustain (ed) (v)** يُحافِظ على / يُبقي على
  - It is important that a teacher sustains his student's interest اهتمام.
- **sustain (ed) (v)** يتعرض لضرر
  - Their company sustained some losses الخسائر.
- **sustainable (adj)** ملائم للبيئة / صديق للبيئة
  - Bicycles are sustainable means of transport وسيلة مواصلات.
- **sustainable (adj)** دائم / مُستدَام / قابل للبقاء
  - The government wants to achieve تحقق a sustainable economic growth نمو اقتصادى.

swell

- **swell – swelled – swollen (up) (v)** يتورم / يلتهب
  - He hit his head and soon it swelled (up).
- **swell – swelled – swollen (to) (v)** يتزايد / يزداد في العدد أو الكمية
  - Water in the river has swollen because of the floods الفيضانات.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- swell with pride يشعر بالفخر الشديد
- swell with anger يستشيط غضباً
- swell-headed = big-headed مغرور

• **swelling (in / on) (n)** ورم / التهاب (فى)
- She has a painful مؤلم swelling in her hand.

• **swollen (adj)** متورّم / ملتهب
- His knee is swollen.

trek

• **trek = hike (n)** رحلة طويلة (غالباً سيراً علي الأقدام كنوع من المغامرة)
- We went on a long trek (hike) through the countryside.

• **trek(ked) = hike(d) (v)** يقوم برحلة طويلة وصعبة سيرًا
- We trekked (hiked) through the countryside.

unique

• **unique (adj)** فريد من نوعه
- Everyone has unique fingerprints بصمات أصابع.

• **unique (adj)** مُمَيَّز / رائع جداً
- We had a unique time in France.

- لا تُستخدم الصفة (unique) في صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل :
- This horse is more unique than that one. (✗)

- لاحظ التعبير التالى :

• **be unique to** يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا فى
- The Komodo dragon is unique to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
eco-	مُتعلّق بالبيئة	ecotourism	السياحة البيئية
		ecofriendly	صديق للبيئة
		ecology	عِلم البيئة
		ecologist	عالِم متخصص في البيئة
		ecosystem	النظام البيئي
en-	تُكَوِّن فعل	endanger	يُعرِّض للخطر
teen-	بين سن ١٣ - ١٩	teenager	مُراهِق
under-	تحت	underwater	تحت الماء

3 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ing	تُكوّن اسم / صفة	relaxing (adj) مُريح overcrowding (n) الزحام
-ed	تُكوّن صفة	crowded مُزدحم endangered مُعرّض للخطر
-ism	تُكوّن اسم	tourism السياحة
-ist	تُكوّن اسم فاعل / صفة	tourist سائح / سياحى

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Never interrupt تقاطع us while the meeting is .... progress.
   a. for b. with c. on d. in
2. .... is the air, water, and land on Earth, which is affected by man's activities.
   a. Orangutan b. Soil c. Environment d. The environment
3. Thoughts .... in on me and I found it impossible مستحيل to sleep.
   a. encouraged b. isolated c. crowded d. endangered
4. My granddad sat in his armchair before .... his stick against the wall.
   a. impacting b. isolating c. crowding d. leaning
5. He always adds .... to our journeys with his funny comments.
   a. treks b. spices c. spice d. isolation

Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.
   a. During b. On c. While d. As
2. .... on holiday, I met a lot of my old friends.
   a. During b. Just as c. While d. As
3. My elder brother .... watching a movie on his computer last night.
   a. used to enjoy b. was enjoying c. enjoyed d. would enjoy
4. Don't open the door until I .... you.
   a. tell b. told c. had told d. was told
5. .... to hospital in the ambulance, the injured man was put on a ventilator جهاز تنفس صناعي.
   a. While taking b. When taking
   c. On taking d. While being taken

Test on Unit 1



تنويه
* التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب
* تدريبات الأزهر الشريف بنك الأسئلة

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. "Some wild animals are endangered now." .... are the antonyms of "endangered".
   a. Excited b. Exhausted c. Secured
   d. Protected e. Annoyed
2. "My grandparents live in an isolated place." This means they live in a/an .... place.
   a. close b. remote c. distant
   d. near e. familiar

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When he was bitten by a mosquito, his arm .... up.
   a. trekked b. leaned c. spelled d. swelled
2. He always .... money to charities.
   a. takes b. donates c. volunteers d. swells
3. He always does .... in the countryside.
   a. cruising b. trekking c. swelling d. leaning
4. Some animals like the African elephant are .... , so we must stop hunting them.
   a. in dangerous b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
5. Cycling is a very .... friendly means of transport. (الاسماعيلية - الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. formal b. official c. environmentally d. locally
6. I saw some .... birds on the beach. They don't belong to this area. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
   a. ancient b. crowded c. exotic d. active
7. Students complain about being .... in their classes for a long time. (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)
   a. struck b. stuck c. studied d. stunned
8. My uncle .... as a shop assistant for years. He is now a worker in a factory. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. have worked b. has worked c. worked d. had work
9. I .... to work every morning; it's my habit.
   a. am used to walking b. use to walk
   c. walked d. used to walk
10. Nasser .... to leave until he had apologized. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
    a. wasn't allowed b. was allowed c. didn't allow d. doesn't allow
11. I .... on a picnic with my family two days ago. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
    a. go b. goes c. went d. was going
12. I'd rather you .... this car. It's a bargain. (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)
    a. buy b. to buy c. bought d. will buy

13. At 7 o'clock yesterday, my son .... his homework. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

a. had done b. was doing c. were doing d. was done

14. .... our journey to Aswan, we saw a lot of monuments.

a. During b. When c. While d. As

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

One day we say, "I wouldn't be seen dead in it," and the next day we're wearing it! The big fashion houses in London, Paris and Milan decide what we should wear from year to year. For a time, it is **fashionable** for men to wear narrow trousers and wide ties until baggy trousers and narrow ties take their place.

Fashion is a term used to describe the creation of clothing, footwear, accessories, cosmetics and jewellery.

Fashion decides how we should appear; not only the clothes we wear but shoes, hair, handbags and jewellery. Even if we think we can ignore fashions, we have to buy the clothes that designers think we should wear.

Following fashion is important to the extent that it is part of who you are and where you are going. You can follow fashion, relate it to your personal life but not necessarily "be in **it**" or have a closet full of innovative designs. For example, you might follow trends and trendsetters, know what designers are doing for the following season but stick to your regular jeans and T-shirt attire but have that special bag that keeps your look sharp and smart. I would consider that fashion.

1. What is meant by "I wouldn't be seen dead in it"?
   a. I love it, and I advise everyone to wear it.
   b. It is impossible for me to die because I wear it.
   c. I hate it, and I'd never die.
   d. I hate it, and I'd never want to wear it.
2. According to the text, the big fashion houses ....
   a. are in all the big cities of the world
   b. are for people who think they can ignore fashions
   c. change fashions from one year to the next
   d. are concerned only with clothes
3. As used in the first paragraph, the word "fashionable" is similar in meaning to ....
   a. dated b. unfashionable c. stylish d. cheap
4. What is a suitable title for the passage?
   a. Baggy trousers and narrow ties b. I can ignore fashion
   c. Cosmetics and jewellery d. Changing fashions
5. According to the passage, people ....
   a. always buy unfashionable clothes.
   b. are not interested in fashionable clothes.
   c. cannot really ignore fashions. d. always wear unfashionable clothes

6. This passage could be part of a/an ....
   a. novel b. article c. interview d. poem
7. The underlined word "it" in the final paragraph refers to ....
   a. fashion b. personal life c. closet d. extent

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Peace leads to prosperity whereas wars lead to destruction. Wars destroy the civilization man has made. (البحيرة - أدكو ٢٠٢٤)

a. يؤدي السلام إلى الازدهار بينما تؤدي الحروب إلى التخلف، فالحروب تدمر الحضارة التي صنعها الإنسان.
b. يؤدي السلام إلى الازدهار بينما تؤدي الحروب إلى الاستعمار، فالحروب تدمر الحضارة التي صنعها الإنسان.
c. السلام يودي إلى الازهار بينما تؤدي الحروب إلى الدمار، فالحروب تدمر الحضارة التي صنعها الإنسان.
d. يؤدي السلام إلى الازدهار بينما تؤدي الحروب إلى الدمار، فالحروب تدمر الحضارة التي صنعها الإنسان.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

إن الطفولة هي مرحلة المرح، لذا يجب أن نشجع الأطفال على ممارسة الألعاب الآمنة التي تنمي قدراتهم ومواهبهم وتمنحهم الطاقة والقوة. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)

a. Childhood is the stage of fun, so we should encourage children to play safely games. This develop their abilities and talents and give them energy and strength.
b. Childhood is the stage of fun, so we should encourage children to play safe games that develop their abilities and talents and give them energy and strength.
c. Childhood is the stage of funny, so we should encourage children to play safety games that develop their abilities and talents and give energy and strength.
d. Childhood is the stage of fun as we should encourage children to play safe games that develop their abilities and talents and give energy and strength.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. In your opinion, why did Captain Bill choose this inn to stay in? (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
   ....
2. Why do you think the people in the village refused to help Jim when he asked for their help ? (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)
   ....
3. Why do you think Jim's father didn't dare ask the Captain for more money for his room ?
   ....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)

Hard work is the key to success

....
....
....

UNIT 2

Supporting the community

SB pages 16 : 25
WB pages 94 : 99



Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading** : A text about Egyptian people who help their communities
- **Writing** : Write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah
- **Listening** : An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah
- **Speaking**: Discussion about helping people; Making arrangements
- **Language**: Present simple and past simple; Present simple passive
- **Life skills**: Empathy

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 94 & 95



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agreement (n)	موافقة - اتفاق	long-term (adj)	طويل المدي
blood donation (n)	التبرُّع بالدم	pressure (n)	ضغط
blood pressure (n)	ضغط الدم	prestige (n - adj)	نُفُوذ / هَيْبَة / وَجَاهَة - عالي الجودة
desire (d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب		
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	roar (ed) (v - n)	يزأر - زئير
donation (n)	التبرُّع	role model (n)	قُدوة - نموذج يُحتَذَي
donor (n)	مُتَبَرِّع	speed (n)	سُرعة
generous (adj)	كريم - سَخِيّ	support (ed) (n - v)	دعم / مساندة - يدعم
intelligence (adj)	ذكاء	transplant (ed) (n - v)	نقل / زراعة أعضاء - يزرع عضو
iron level (n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability (n)	قُدرة	injured (adj)	مصاب
admire (d) (v)	يُعجَب بـ	inspire (d) (v)	يُلهِم - يَحثّ / يُحَفِّز
amongst (prep)	بين	instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
based in	يوجد مقره في	knowledge (n)	المعرفة
benefit (ted) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	maker (n)	صانع
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	movement (n)	حركة
cancer (n)	مرض السرطان	name (d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسَمِّي - يذكر اسم
chance (n)	فُرصة - الحظ	nickname (n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	persuade (d) (v)	يُقنِع
		praise (d) (n - v)	المديح - يُثني على / يمتدح
check (ed) (v)	يفحص / يتحقق	purpose (n)	غرض
compassion (n)	رحمة	regular (adj)	معتاد / مألوف -منتظم
cute (adj)	جذاب - جميل	relationship (n)	علاقة
documentary (n - adj)	فيلم وثائقي - وثائقي	reduce (d) (v)	يُقلل / يُخَفِّض
finals (n)	النهائيات	research (ed) (n-v)	بَحث - يُجري أبحاث
fondness (n)	غرام/إعجاب/حُب شديد	respect (ed) (n - v)	احترام - يحترم
found (ed) (v)	يؤسس - يُنشئ	role play (n - v)	(لعبة) تمثيل الأدوار - يُمَثِّل
founder (n)	مُؤسِّس	save (d) (v)	يدَّخر/يوفِّر - يُنقذ
generation (n)	جيل	score (d) (v - n)	يُحرز / يسجل - نقاط
go - went - gone (v)	يختفي/يَزُول	soccer (n)	كرة القدم
happiness (n)	السعادة	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح

hometown (n)	مسقط رأس	task (n)	مهمة
hunter (n)	صياد	the wild (n)	المناطق البرية
illness (n)	مرض	traditionally (adv)	بشكل تقليدي
income (n)	دَخل - مورد رزق	view (n)	وجهة نظر / رأي - منظر
injure (d) (v)	يُصيب - يؤذي	wish (ed) (v - n)	يتمنى - أمنية

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
agreement عقد - اتفاقية	an official document وثيقة رسمية that people sign يوقّع to show that they have agreed to something
blood pressure ضغط الدم	the force القوة with which blood travels يتحرك through your body
community المجتمع	all the people who live in the same area, city etc.
desire رغبة	a strong hope or wish
donate يتبرع	to allow يسمح some blood or a body organ عضو to be removed يُزال from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured
generous كريم	willing مُستعِد to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure سعادة
intelligence الذكاء	having a high level of mental عقلي ability, and good at thinking clearly التفكير بوضوح and understanding ideas
iron level مستوى الحديد	the amount or quantity of iron presence وجود in your blood
long-term طويل المدى	continuing for a long period of time, or relating مرتبط بـ to what will happen in the distant بعيد future
prestige نُفوذ / هَيْبَة / وَجَاهَة	the respect احترام and admiration إعجاب that someone or something gets because of their success or important position مكانة in society
roar زئير- يزأر	(to make) a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice
role model قدوة	someone whose behaviour سلوك, attitudes توجهات, etc. people try to copy يُقلِّد because they admire يعجب بـ them
transplant زراعة أعضاء - نقل	the operation عملية of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Definitions

1. A .... is a person who people can look up to and try to be like them. (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)
   a. rule model b. role model c. role medal d. roll model
2. .... is the operation of moving an organ or piece of skin etc. from a person to another. (القليوبية - شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Pressure b. Transplant c. Transport d. Transform
3. A/An .... is a strong hope or wish.
   a. desire b. track c. will d. ability
4. To .... is to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured.
   a. reduce b. protect c. score d. donate
5. .... means willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure.
   a. Intelligent b. Responsible c. Generous d. Safe
6. .... is the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society.
   a. Prestige b. Generosity c. Support d. Ability
7. A/An .... is an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something.
   a. admiration b. agreement c. pressure d. donation

2 Key vocabulary

8. Good education and wealth give people .... in society.
   a. shame b. prestige c. weakness d. greed
9. Mohammed Salah has a .... agreement to play for his team. (دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٤)
   a. friendly b. long-term c. stupidity d. first-term
10. People who have .... are smart. (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية ٢٠٢٤)
    a. intelligent b. intelligence
    c. stupidity d. misunderstanding
11. I have a strong .... to be one of the toppers this year. (الشرقية - أبو حماد ٢٠٢٤)
    a. headache b. disease c. desire d. dessert
12. Blood .... are checked before giving blood. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٤)
    a. doers b. donates c. honours d. donors

13. The argument was settled out of court by mutual .... (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)
a. appearance b. change c. agreement d. attack

14. My father is my role .... because he works hard and is kind to everyone. (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
a. modal b. medal c. module d. model

15. Blood .... should be checked regularly. (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)
a. pleasure b. treasure c. donation d. pressure

16. Blood .... is a voluntary procedure that can help save lives. (الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)
a. donate b. donor c. donation d. pressure

17. Every one of us has a role to play to .... our community. (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
a. ruin b. destroy c. support d. rise

18. Parents play an important .... in forming the character of their children. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)
a. reel b. rail c. rule d. role

19. If your parents don't want these clothes anymore, let's .... them to the poor. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
a. volunteer b. donate c. praise d. found

20. People who have a long-term illness usually need blood ....
a. cancer b. problems c. pleasure d. transplants
(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

21. My father likes to give freely to others; especially the needy ones. He is very .... (الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)
a. mean b. miser c. generous d. greedy

22. Doctors are doing tests to measure the iron .... in her blood. (الغربية - غرب المحلة ٢٠٢٤)
a. curtain b. aged c. level d. empire

23. I usually feel frightened when the lions .... (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٣)
a. roar b. shout c. whistle d. talk

24. His .... in making decisions makes him make mistakes.
a. support b. speed c. transplant d. prestige

3 Important Vocabulary

25. Mohamed Salah is famous for his speed and .... to score goals. (جنوب سيناء - الطور ٢٠٢٤)
a. able b. ability c. disable d. disability

26. My parents always .... me when I do well at school. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
a. bully b. defend c. praise d. raise

27. Our company is based .... Cairo, but we have other branches in other cities. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)
a. on b. for c. by d. in

28. I .... Mohamed Salah for his speed and cleverness in scoring goals.
a. detest b. donate c. relate d. admire

29. I saw many familiar faces .... the crowd in the street. (القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٤)
a. between b. below c. amongst d. above

30. Salah .... many young people to become professional footballers like him. (المنيا - بنى مزار ٢٠٢٤)
a. aspired b. inspired c. conspired respired

31. Resala is an Egyptian .... which helps the poor. (دمياط - دمياط ٢٠٢٤)
a. school b. pharmacy c. hospital d. charity

32. The place where you were born and grew is called your ....
a. downtown b. city centre c. town hall d. hometown

33. I had to travel abroad as my boss sent me on a .... to London. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
a. mission b. tusk c. mansion d. picnic

34. A lot of charities should be .... to help the poor and the needy. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
a. rhymed b. founded c. fond d. fined

35. Giving blood can have health .... and save lives. (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
a. prestige b. desires c. benefits d. admiration

36. Mohammed Salah's .... is "the Happiness Maker".
a. surname b. first name c. nickname d. pen name

37. I .... Aswan in winter as its weather is fantastic then. (أسوان – دراو ٢٠٢٢)
a. hate b. dislike c. admire d. leave

38. Eight teams play the quarter- .... of a championship. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)
a. rule b. final c. beginning d. role

39. I have a friend who works in a big company .... in Kuwait. (سوهاج – طما ٢٠٢٣)
a. laid b. lied c. based d. basis

40. Unfortunately, the old man died after a short .... (المنيا – ملوى ٢٠٢٣)
a. fun b. happiness c. condition d. illness

41. It was only later in her life that she found .... and peace of mind. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. happy b. happiness c. sad d. sadness

42. My father spares no efforts لا يدخر جهداً to .... me that having a job would give me a prestige. (الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)
a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	blood pressure يقيس ضغط الدم	have	a desire to لديه رغبة أن
	iron level يقيس نسبة الحديد في الدم		health benefits ذو فوائد صحية
donate	blood يتبرع بالدم		health problems يعاني من مشكلات صحية
	money يتبرع بالمال		long-term illness يعاني من مرض مُزمِن
get	a job يحصل علي عمل		nothing to do ليس لديه ما يقوم به
	angry with يغضب من		a game لديه مباراة
give	... a chance يمنح ... فُرصة		the ability to لديه القدرة علي
	a title يُلقِّب - يُسمِّي	make	friends يُكَوِّن صداقات
	blood يتبرع بالدم		movements يقوم بحركات
	work / jobs يُشغِّل	take	part in يشارك في

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	giving blood
desire	رغبة - يرغب	wish, preference, will إرادة
donate	يتبرع	give, supply
generous	كريم - سَخِيّ - جَوّاد	open-handed, big-hearted
long-term	طويل الأمد	durable, lasting
long-term illness	مرض مُزمِن	serious illness
praise	يُثني على - يمتدح	appreciate, flatter
prestige (n)	نُفُوذ / هَيْبَة / وَجَاهَة	influence, esteem
prestige (adj)	عالى الجودة/ثمين	smart, costly
support (v)	يدعم	aid, assist
take part in	يشارك في	participate, join, share

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
donate	يتبرع	keep, receive	يحتفظ بـ / يتسلم
generous	كريم - سَخِيّ - جَوّاد	mean, selfish, miser, stingy	بخيل / أناني
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity, dullness	الغباء

long-term	طويل المدي	short-term, temporary	قصير المدي - مؤقت
praise	يُثني على - يمتدح	criticise, disapprove of	ينتقد - يستهجن
support	يدعم / يؤيد	oppose, neglect	يعارض / يهمل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

intelligence		
intelligence (n)	الذكاء	- He is famous for his intelligence.
intelligent (adj)	ذكي	- He is intelligent.
intelligently (adv)	بذكاء	- He behaves يتصرف intelligently.
generous		
generosity (n)	الكَرَم / السخاء	- Generosity is a good quality.
generous (adj)	كريم/ سخي - وفير	- It is good to be generous.
generously (adv)	بسخاء	- It is good to behave generously.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

around the world	حول العالَم	happiness maker	صانع السعادة
away on holiday	مُسافر في إجازة	in a friendly way	بشكل ودود
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	love-hate relationship	علاقة حب أو كراهية
be badly injured	يُصاب بشدة	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	يصعد بمصر لنهائيات كاس العالم
community centre	مركز اجتماعي	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم
earn regular money	يحصل علي دخل منتظم		
working together	العمل معاً		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

admire … for	يُعجَب بـ ... بسبب	praise … for	يمدح ... بسبب
donate … for / to	يتبرع بـ ... لـ	run past	يسبق في الجري
hear (…) about	يسمع (...) عن	send (…) to	يُرسِل (...) إلى / يؤهل (...) لـ
hear of	يسمع بـ / يعرف عن	turn from … to	يتحول من ... إلي ...
move to	ينتقل إلي	work with	يعمل مع / علي

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

biography - autobiography

- **biography** السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها شخص عن حياة شخص آخر)
  - I read the biography of President Sadat written by Anees Mansour.
- **autobiography** السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها الشخص بنفسه عن حياته)
  - Al-Ayyam is Taha Hussein's autobiography.

blood transplant - blood transfusion

- **blood transplant (n)** عملية زرع الخلايا الجذعية (التي تنتج الدم)
  - It is not easy for a surgeon to do a blood transplant.
- **blood transfusion (n)** نقل الدم (من شخص سليم لشخص مريض أو مصاب)
  - This patient needs blood transfusion.

charity

- **charity (n)** جمعية خيرية (اسم يُعد)
  - There are some charities that help poor people.
- **charity (n)** العمل الخيرى - التبرعات (اسم لا يُعد)
  - Salah donates money to charity in Egypt.

forename - surname - pen name - nickname

- **forename = first name (n)** الاسم الأول (اسم الشخص نفسه)
  - My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My first name is Rodayna.
- **surname = last name = family name (n)** اللقب (اسم العائلة)
  - My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My surname is Dueshy.
- **pen name (n)** اسم مُستعار (يستخدمه بعض الكُتّاب بدلاً من الاسم الحقيقي)
  - She wrote under the pen name of Bint El-Shatei.
- **nickname (n)** اسم الشهرة
  - "King of Egypt" is one of Salah's nicknames.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ✪ **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. "I will always be grateful for my parents who support me." The word "support" can be replaced by .... (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

   a. assist b. aid c. ignore
   d. neglect e. maintain

2. It's important for people to .... friends. Man is sociable by nature.

   a. make b. do c. have
   d. reject e. kill (الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

3. "They donated blood to save the injured." The synonyms of the word "donated" are .... and .... (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)

   a. kept b. gave c. took
   d. hid e. supplied

4. Two antonyms for “praise” are .... and .... (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)
   a. reward b. encourage c. punish
   d. blame e. kill
5. The antonyms of "stupidity" are .... and .... (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)
   a. intelligence b. intelligent c. domestic
   d. tame e. cleverness
6. “The company has gained international prestige in recent years.” “prestige” is antonymous with .... (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)
   a. insignificance b. authority c. dignity
   d. disregard e. status
7. “We admire his new novel.” The synonyms of “admire” are .... (القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. appreciate b. criticize c. blame
   d. esteem e. support

● ✪ MCQ : **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I’m reading a recent .... about "Cleopatra". She was a great woman. (المنوفية - تلا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. photography b. geography c. autobiography d. biography
2. The word “desire” is a synonym for .... (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. disappointment b. suffering c. ability d. will
3. The film that I watched last night is based .... a true story. (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
   a. on b. in c. at d. into
4. Yassen won’t take .... the race as he is injured. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. place b. part in c. care of d. turns
5. He helps poor people in his area. He is known for his .... (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. stupidity b. generosity c. society d. reality
6. Blood .... is the process of putting blood into the body after an injury. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. transplants b. transfusion c. pressure d. donation
7. Elnenny moved to Europe .... the same time as Mohammad Salah. (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. in b. on c. at d. by
8. Parents should be the role models .... their children. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. to b. in c. with d. at
9. My teacher admired me .... helping the poor old man. (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. of b. with c. in d. for

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

People who help

(SB page 16)



Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous **footballers**[1]. He is **admired**[2] for his **speed**[3] and **ability**[4] to **score**[5] goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup **finals**[6] since 1990.

Salah has been **praised**[7] for his kind and **generous**[8] **donations**[9] to **charity**[10] in Egypt. He **donated**[11] money to his **hometown**[12] of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's **cancer**[13] hospital in Cairo.

Salah's **desire**[14] to help others is because he wants to give young people a **chance**[15] to **succeed**[16]. He is a **role model**[17] to millions of Egyptians who gave him the **nickname**[18] **"The Happiness Maker"**[19].

(1) لاعب كرة قدم
(2) يُعجَب بـ
(3) سرعة
(4) القُدرة
(5) يُحرِز
(6) نهائيات
(7) يمتدح
(8) سخى / كريم
(9) تبرعات
(10) العمل الخيرى
(11) تبرع بـ
(12) مسقط رأس
(13) السرطان
(14) رغبة
(15) فُرصة
(16) ينجح
(17) قُدوة
(18) لقب
(19) صانع السعادة

Blood[1] donors[2]

(SB page 17)

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world **take part in**[3] World Blood Donor Day to **share**[4] information about the importance of giving blood.



Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly **injured**[5] or need **regular**[6] blood **transplants**[7] because they have a **long-term**[8] **illness**[9]. Giving blood can also have health **benefits**[10]. All donors have their **blood pressure**[11] and **iron levels**[12] **checked**[13] before **donation**[14], so people who donate blood can **find out**[15] quickly if they have any health problems.

Giving blood can **save**[16] **lives**[17] and it is easy to do!

(1) الدم
(2) المتبرعين
(3) يشارك فى
(4) يتشارك
(5) مُصاب
(6) منتظم
(7) نقل
(8) مزمن - طويل المدى
(9) مرض
(10) فوائد
(11) ضغط الدم
(12) مستويات الحديد (فى الدم)
(13) يفحص
(14) التبرع
(15) يكتشف
(16) ينقذ
(17) الحياة

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 18)

Interviewer : In today's programme, we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation **biologist**(1) and **founder**(2) of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions ?

Martin : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions **roaring**(3) at night when he was sleeping on the **roof**(4) of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

(1) عالم أحياء
(2) مؤسس
(3) يزأر
(4) سطح
(5) بين
(6) أسباب
(7) تقليديًا
(8) حيوانات المزرعة
(9) الفلاحين
(10) هيبة / وجاهة
(11) ثقافة
(12) احترام

Interviewer : What happened next ?

Martin : She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions **amongst**(5) the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or so years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa ? But that number is under 20,000 now.

Interviewer : So, why are lions disappearing so quickly ?

Martin : There are several **reasons**(6). People have built houses in the areas that lions **traditionally**(7) hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the villager's **livestock**(8), you know, their cows and goats. The **villagers**(9) get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is **prestige**(10) - in Maasai **culture**(11), young men get a lot of **respect**(12) from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer : What did Leelah do ?

Martin : She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their **views**[13] about lions. She learnt that they have **a love-hate relationship with**[14] lions, they **admire**[15] their **beauty**[16], but hate them for eating their **cattle**[17]. She also understood the prestige that came from being **a lion killer**[18] and realised that she needed to **persuade**[19] the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the **advantages**[20] of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer : Is that when she started Lion Guardians ?

Martin : Yes. Lion Guardians is an **organization**[21] that **employs**[22] local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to **track**[23] lions in **the wild**[24], so they are taught to become lion guardians **rather than**[25] lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

Interviewer : How **successful**[26] is the programme ?

Martin : Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular **income**[27] and a sense of **purpose**[28]. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with **fondness**[29].

Interviewer : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians ?

Martin : The importance of listening to people in the **community**[30] and to **recognise**[31] how much **knowledge**[32] local people have. By working together, both **the locals**[33] and conservations can **benefit**[34].

Interviewer : Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ....

(13) وجهات النظر
(14) علاقة حب وكره معًا
(15) يعجب بـ
(16) جمال
(17) الماشية
(18) قاتل أسود
(19) يقنع
(20) مزايا
(21) منظمة
(22) توظف
(23) يرصد / يتابع
(24) الحياة البرية
(25) بدلاً من
(26) ناجح
(27) دخل
(28) هدف / غرض
(29) شغف / ولع
(30) جماعة / مجتمع
(31) يتعرف على
(32) معرفة
(33) السكان المحليين
(34) يستفيد

PART IV LANGUAGE

The Present Simple Tense : زمن المضارع البسيط :

١ فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

| Subject فاعل (I, We, They, You) | + | التصريف الأول للفعل | .... |

ex. - I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.

- يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

- Ahmed likes football very much.

- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهيًا بـ (ch - sh - ss - o - x).

- Aya watches action films every day.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهيًا بـ (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y).

- Mariam studies philosophy at Cambridge University.

---

٢ فى النفى :

| Subject فاعل | + | don't / doesn't | + | inf. المصدر | .... |

- نستخدم (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب :

ex. - I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.
- Ahmed doesn't like football very much.

- ونستخدم (never) أيضًا للنفى القاطع وفى هذه الحالة تبقى (s/es/ies) فى نهاية الفعل مع (he/she/it):

- He doesn't help the poor at all. = He never helps the poor.
- They don't get up late at all. = They never get up late.

---

٣ فى السؤال بـ «هل» :

| Do / Does | + | subject فاعل | + | inf. المصدر | .... ? |

ex. - Do you get up at six o'clock every morning ?
-Yes, I do. OR - Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- No, I don't. OR - No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.
- Does Aya watch action films ?
-Yes, she does. OR - Yes, she watches action films.
-No, she doesn't. OR - No, she doesn't watch action films.

---

٤ السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

| Question word أداة استفهام | + | do/does | + | subject فاعل | + | inf. المصدر | ... ? |

ex. - What do you eat for lunch ?
- How often does Mr Ashraf go to the club ?

٥ فى المبنى للمجهول :

- عند تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط إلى صيغة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم :

.... **التصريف الثالث p.p** + **am / is / are** + **المفعول Object**

ex. Farmers grow plants. (معلوم)

- Plants are grown by farmers. (مجهول)
- Some people don't eat meat at all. (معلوم)
- Meat isn't eaten at all by some people. (مجهول)

- لا تستخدم (have / has) كفعل أساسى فى المبنى للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى :

have = own - possess - eat - buy - spend - take ....

ex. - I have a car. - A car is (possessed - owned) by me.

- She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My son .... football and tennis in the club.
   a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
2. My sons .... football and tennis in the club.
   a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
3. Football and tennis .... in the club.
   a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
4. Football .... in the club.
   a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
5. Does Amir .... your birthday parties?
   a. attend b. attends c. is attended d. attending

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ بالنسبة للفعل (be) كفعل اساسى فى المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (am / is / are) بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) ولا تُستخدم (do / does) فى النفى أو السؤال.

- Ali is at school. (إثبات)
- Ali isn't at school. (نفي)
- Is Ali at school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Where is Ali? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)

٢ بالنسبة للفعل (have) كفعل أساسى فى المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (have / has) بمعنى (يمتلك / يتناول / يشترى .....) ونستخدم (do / does) غالباً معهما كأفعال مساعدة فى النفى أو السؤال.

- They have lunch at three o'clock. (إثبات)
- They don't have lunch at three o'clock. (نفي)
- Do they have lunch at three o'clock? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When do they have lunch? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Ali .... at home right now. He's at school.
   a. is   b. doesn't be   c. isn't   d. has
2. **A:** .... at home right now? **B:** No, he's at school.
   a. Is Ali   b. Does Ali be   c. Ali is   d. Does Ali have
3. We .... lunch before my father returns home.
   a. haven't   b. don't have   c. aren't   d. don't be
4. .... lunch before your father returns home?
   a. You have   b. Have you   c. Are you   d. Do you have

Uses استخدامات

يُستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (**Present simple**) فى :

١ التعبير عن حقائق ثابتة :

ex. - The sun gives us light and heat. - People don't live under water.

٢ التعبير عن شيء حقيقى فى المضارع (حقيقة تدوم لفترة) / مواقف دائمة :

ex. - Yousif lives in Assuit.   - My wife is an engineer.

٣ يدل المضارع البسيط على المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية لاحظ ما يلى :

when عندما - **while** بينما - **as / just as** بينما - **before** قبل -
the moment في اللحظة التي - **by the time** قبل - **after** بعد -
once / as soon as بمجرد أن - **until / till** حتي ....

Time connector رابط زمني + مضارع بسيط/ مضارع تام + جملة مستقبل

ex. - When I arrive (have arrived) home, I will take a shower.
- Before she goes (has gone) to bed, she will kiss her mother.
- I won't call you until I know (have known) the latest news.

٤ بعد (If) فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى و الحالة الصفرية :

ex. - If I get information about this subject, I'll tell you.

٥ التعبير عن جداول المواعيد الثابتة فى المضارع والمستقبل :

ex. - My train leaves at nine tomorrow morning.

٦ يستخدم المضارع البسيط بدلًا من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عما يحدث الآن مع الأفعال التقريرية (مثل أفعال الحواس و المشاعر و الإدراك.....) :

ex. - I am wanting to speak to the manager. (✗)
- I want to speak to the manager. (✓)

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lions .... meat.
   a. eats   b. eat   c. don't eat   d. are eaten
2. Lions .... grass.
   a. eats   b. eat   c. don't eat   d. are eaten
3. This soup .... very good.
   a. tastes   b. taste   c. is tasting   d. to taste
4. My father .... in a big company. He is an accountant there.
   a. works   b. work   c. is working   d. is worked
5. After I .... my lunch, I will take a short rest.
   a. will have   b. have   c. had   d. had had

Present Habits عادات المضارع

Subj. فاعل + **always / usually / sometimes ... etc.** + **فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط** ....

- Nada usually goes to the shops on Sunday.

It + **is** + **someone's habit to** + **inf.** ....

- It is Nada's (her) habit to go to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + **am / is / are** + **used to** + **(inf. + ing) / n.** ....

- Nada is used to going to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + **no longer** + **inf. / (inf. + s, es, ies)** **فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط** ....

- He no longer eats rice. = He used to eat rice.

Subj. فاعل + **don't / doesn't** + **inf.** + **any longer/anymore** ....

- He doesn't eat rice anymore. = He used to eat rice.

Adverbs of frequency with the present simple ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط

١ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلى أو بعد **(am / is / are)**.

always دائمًا - **usually / normally** عادةً - **regularly** بانتظام - **often** غالبًا
- **frequently** غالبًا - **sometimes** أحيانًا - **occasionally** بين حين و آخر - **little** قلما
- rarely نادرًا - **seldom** نادرًا - **hardly ever** بالكاد - **never** مطلقا

ex. - I always go to school on time. - I am always at school on time.

٢ كما يمكن أن تُستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار هذه فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف.

ex. - Sometimes, I play football. - I play football sometimes.

٢ تُستخدم تعبيرات التكرار التالية أيضا فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

- **once** مرة **/ twice** مرتين **/ three times .../ several times / many times + a / an / every + period of time**
- **every (morning - day - Monday - week - month - summer - year / on Fridays / in summer ....**

ex. - I go for a walk twice a week. - Once a month, I visit my parents.
- I take Arabic lessons on Wednesdays.
- Every morning, my mother wakes me up.

Mini Test 4 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father works as a doctor. He .... very busy examining patients.
   a. often is b. is often c. often has d. has often
2. Leen .... something to do. She is very busy.
   a. always have b. have always c. always has d. has always
3. I visit my grandparents .... month, in the beginning and in the middle.
   a. twice b. once c. once a d. twice a
4. Sama is used .... in Aswan.
   a. to living b. alive c. to live d. living
5. It is Omar's habit .... for walks on Fridays.
   a. going b. to going c. to go d. goes
6. Hussein .... working on the farm.
   a. is used b. is used to c. used to d. used

2 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضى البسيط :

تم شرح الماضى البسيط فى الوحدة الأولى.

Exercises On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It rarely .... in the Western Desert in the past millennium. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
   a. rain b. rains c. rained d. raining
2. The young men .... to be field biologists. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. teach b. teaches c. are taught d. is taught
3. What time .... the break start in this school? (بني سويف - الواسطى ٢٠٢٣)
   a. do b. is c. has d. does

4. She .... stays up late on school days. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
a. doesn't b. didn't c. hasn't d. never

5. My colleagues and I usually .... breakfast together. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
a. has b. have c. are having d. have had

6. My little sister .... meals outdoors. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
a. hasn't b. never has c. isn't had d. has never

7. The community............ to look after wild animals. (أسيوط – أبوتيج ٢٠٢٣)
a. encourages b. encouraged c. is encouraged d. encouraging

8. Tigers .... hunted as much as in the past.
a. aren't b. isn't c. have d. weren't

9. Kareem used to play chess, but now he .... (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
a. doesn't b. isn't c. hasn't d. wasn't

10. He .... hard work. He is strong. (البحيرة - أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. used to b. didn't use to c. gets used to d. uses to

11. When I was in Alexandria, I always .... to the beach. (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٣)
a. go b. went c. have gone d. will go

12. .... teaching students of mixed abilities? (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
a. Get you use to b. Have you use to
c. Are you used to d. Did you use to

13. Don't go out until your work .... (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
a. does b. did c. will do d. is done

14. Father is used to buying tasty sweets for us. This sentence means this .... (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
a. no longer happens b. never happened
c. is a present habit d. was a past habit



PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 20 & 21 WB pages 96 & 97



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biologist (n)	عالِم أحياء	livestock (n)	حيوانات المزارع
cattle (n)	الماشية	monitor (ed) (v - n)	يُراقب / يرصُد - جهاز عرض
community (n)	المجتمع	organisation (n)	مؤسسة - مُنَظّمة
guardian (n)	حارس - الوصىّ	party (n)	فريق - جماعة - حزب
hunting parties	فِرَق الصيد	track (ed) (v - n)	يرصُد - يتابع - ممر

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	locate (d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يَهدِف	missing (adj)	مفقود - ناقص
angle (n)	زاوية	nearby (adj-adv)	قريب - مجاور
appearance (n)	ظهور - مَظهَر	paw print	أثار أقدام الحيوان
disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى	paws (n)	براثن - مخالب الحيوانات
empathy (n)	تَعاطُف - تقدير ظروف الآخرين	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
employ (ed) (v)	يُوَظِّف - يُشَغِّل	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
estimate (d) (v)	يُقَدِّر - يفترض	safe (adj)	آمن
expert (n-adj)	خبير	sense (n)	حاسة
field (n)	مجال - حقل	sign (n)	علامة/إشارة - لافتة
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة - الفرع الرئيسى	tribe (n)	قبيلة
hunting (n)	الصيد	villagers (n)	القرويين
killings (n)	حالات القتل		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
community(n) مجتمع	people who live in a place or an area and have common مشترك interests
guardian (n) حارس - وَصِي	someone who is legally قانوني responsible مسئول for looking after someone or something
livestock (n) حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
monitor (v) يرصُد - يُراقب	to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses تتطور over عبر a period of time

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. A/An .... is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer
2. .... are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
   a. Livestock b. Parties c. Viewers d. Guardians
3. To .... is to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time.
   a. desire b. employ c. monitor d. transplant

2 Key vocabulary

4. He works for an international .... that helps poor people in Africa. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. maker b. provider c. presentation d. organization
5. Two members of the hunting .... were arrested for killing animals. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
   a. party b. monitor c. livestock d. cattle
6. Farmers usually care about their .... They feed them well. (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. livestock b. villagers c. planets d. kettles
7. The role of a/an .... is to study living things. (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. chemist b. biologist c. archeologist d. artist
8. The police managed to .... down the criminal. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
9. .... are important to the villagers, but they often go missing. (المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Kettle b. Cattle c. Battle d. Little
10. Try to be a good member of your .... (سوهاج - المنشاة ٢٠٢٤)
    a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism
11. The child's parents or .... must give their agreement before she has the operation. (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)
    a. monitors b. donors c. guardians d. designers
12. Adam was .... marine life from a boat. (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
    a. mentoring b. monitoring c. meaning d. sailing

3 Important Vocabulary

13. She is really kind. She showed much .... with my difficult situation. (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
   a. donation b. empathy c. admiration d. charitable
14. We should all work together to .... our environment. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. predict b. endanger c. protect d. destroy
15. The factories in the new cities will .... a large number of youth. (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. follow b. employ c. donate d. hunt
16. When a lion paw .... is discovered in the soil, it is a sign that the lion is close. (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. signal b. remark c. print d. signature
17. The police found a vital .... to the girl's disappearance. (سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. crew b. glue c. clue d. secret
18. We should encourage students to .... their goals in life. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. score b. achieve c. arrive d. get
19. I don't have to do your homework; it's your ....
   a. biography b. responsibility c. disease d. illness
20. A good citizen has a .... of duty.
   a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity
21. If there is a .... supermarket, we can shop easily.
   a. really b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely
22. " Not all that glitters is gold"; this means you shouldn't be deceived by............ .
   a. appearance b. personality c. politeness d. character
23. She is a doctor. She works in the medical طبي ....
   a. transplant b. party c. field d. interview
24. Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is a great ....
   a. loss b. movement c. achievement d. organisation

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	research يُجري أبحاث	go	missing	يتوه / يضل الطريق
	work with يقوم بأعمال مع	have	a negative impact on	له أثر سلبي علي
give	a sense of responsibility يعطي إحساس بالمسئولية	leave	school	يقطع أو يُنهي دراسته

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
empathy	تَعاطُف - تقدير ظروف الآخرين	togetherness, sympathy, understanding
monitor	يُراقب / يرصُد	track, observe, watch, explore, follow
nearby	قريب - مجاور	close, near, neighbouring
party	فوج - مجموعة	team - group
search for	يبحث عن	look for, hunt يتعقب

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
nearby	قريب - مجاور	remote, faraway, distant	ناءٍ - بعيد
wild	بَرّي	domestic / tame	أليف / مستأنس

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

	biologist	
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	- He is an expert in biology.
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	- He is an experienced biologist.
biological (adj)	حيوي - خاص بالكائنات الحية	- This is a biological substance مادة.
	guard	
guard (ed)(v)	يحرس	- He guards this farm.
guard (n)	حارس	- He is a guard of this farm.
guardian (n)	حارس - وصي	- He is one of the nature guardians.
	kill	
kill (ed) (v)	يقتل	- This criminal killed three people.
killing (n)	القتل	- This criminal is responsible for the killing of three people.
killings (n)	حالات القتل / الضحايا	- This criminal is responsible for three killings.
killer (n)	قاتل	- This criminal is the killer of three people.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all over	في كل أنحاء	expert at/in/on	خبير في
as much as	بنفس الكَمّ	in groups	في مجموعات
be interested in	يهتم بـ	local communities	المجتمعات المحلية
early life	مرحلة مبكرة من العمر	thanks to	بِفضل

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

bring … into	يُخضِر ... إلي	look after	يرعي / يعتني بـ
compare … with	يقارن ... بـ	look for	يبحث عن
complete with	يُكمِل بـ	play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
deal with	يتعامل مع / يواجه	search for	يبحث عن
encourage … to	يُشجِّع ... لكي	teach …(how) to	يُعلِّم ... كيف
know about	يعرف عن	worry about	يقلق علي

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be based in / be based on

- **be based in** مقرّه فى/ مكانه فى
  - Our company is based in Cairo.
- **be based on** مؤسس على - قائم فكرياً على
  - This film has been based on a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.

every day - everyday

- **every day (adv) = daily** كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)
  - I play football every day. = - Every day, I play football.
- **everyday (adj)** يومى (صفة تأتى قبل الموصوف)
  - He feels bored because of his everyday routine.

hear of / about - hear from

- **hear of / about** يعرف / يسمع بـ
  - I haven't heard of / about this writer before.
- **hear from** يتلقى اتصالاً أو أخباراً من (رسالة / مكالمة / خطاب ...)
  - I haven't heard from Mr Ashraf lately. I hope he is well.

angle / angel

- **angle** زاوية - جانب
  - A square المربع has four angles.
  - Try to look at the subject from a different angle.
- **angel** مَلاك - شخص حسن الخُلُق
  - Children are little angels.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

✪ MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "The police are still following the thieves." "Follow" here means ………… . (الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)

a. monitor b. trick c. track
d. kill e. want

2. "Famous" is to "well-known" as "monitor" is to .... and ....

(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)

a. observe b. look after c. wish
d. track e. give

3. I have lost my book. Can you help me .... it? (الغربية - كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٤)

a. look for b. research for c. look after
d. search for e. worry about

• ✪ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

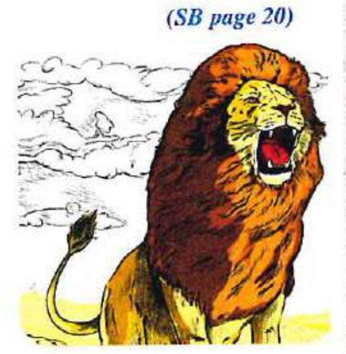
1. The word .... is an antonym to wild. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. dangerous b. young c. old d. tame
2. If something .... wrong with the car, call the garage.(الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. goes b. does c. makes d. has
3. Success in life is based .... hard work and determination. (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)
   a. on b. in c. at d. from
4. Lion Guardians .... an organization based in Kenya. (سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. are b. is c. were d. have been
5. To cope with developed countries, we need more experts .... different fields. (الغربية - كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٤)
   a. on b. in c. at d. all mentioned
6. My young brother is interested .... be a professional footballer. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. in b. on c. to d. of
7. The loss of his job .... a negative impact on him. (الجيزة – الدقي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. had b. took c. provide d. did
8. We need to .... more research into coronavirus.
   a. go b. do c. get d. leave
9. Young men join the army after .... school or university.
   a. going b. doing c. getting d. leaving
10. When I was young, I .... missing when I was shopping with my mum.
    a. went b. did c. had d. left
11. To .... wild animals is a crime.
    a. kill b. kills c. killing d. killings
12. .... wild animals is a crime.
    a. Kill b. Kills c. Killing d. Killings

PART III READING & LISTENING

Reading Texts

Working together

(SB page 20)



Lions are **disappearing**[1] all over Africa but there is some hope now after the **amazing**[2] work of an **organization**[3] called Lion **Guardians**[4], which is **based in**[5] Kenya, but Guardians help in **nearby**[6] Tanzania. The **aim**[7] of Lion Guardians is to help **local**[8] people to **protect**[9] their own **livestock**[10] and **reduce**[11] the number of lion **killings**[12] in the **area**[13].

Cattle[14] are important to the **villagers**[15] but they often **go missing**[16] or are **attacked**[17] by lions. Then the lions are killed **as**[18] villagers **worry**[19] about losing more livestock.

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organization works with the **community**[20] to help **both**[21] the lions and the livestock and this is done by **employing**[22] local people. **Maasai**[23] men are **chosen**[24] to become guardians as they understand lions and have the **skills**[25] needed to **monitor**[26] their **movements**[27], find **missing**[28] livestock and stop **hunting parties**[29] who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be **field**[30] **biologists**[31] and are given a **sense**[32] of **responsibility**[33].

Lions are **monitored**[34] every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then **make sure**[35] their cows are safe. Lion Guardians are very **successful**[36]. They help the future of lions **as well as**[37] the local communities.

(1) تختفى
(2) مُذهل
(3) مُنظمة
(4) حُراس
(5) مقرها فى
(6) قريب
(7) هدف
(8) محلى
(9) يحمى
(10) حيوانات المزرعة
(11) يقلل
(12) حالات القتل
(13) المنطقة
(14) الماشية
(15) القرويين
(16) تضل الطريق
(17) تُهاجم
(18) لأن
(19) يقلق
(20) المجتمع
(21) كل من
(22) يوظف
(23) شعب الماساى
(24) يُختار
(25) مهارات
(26) يراقب
(27) تحركات
(28) مفقود
(29) فرق الصيد
(30) ميدانى
(31) علماء الأحياء
(32) إحساس
(33) المسئولية
(34) يتتبع / يراقب
(35) يتأكد
(36) ناجح
(37) بالإضافة إلى

Maasai Tracking

(WB page 96)

The Maasai are **experts**[1] at **tracking**[2] animals and lions are the most **well-known**[3] animal that they **follow**[4]. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their **senses**[5] to follow them.

When a **paw print**[6] is **discovered**[7], it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a **recent**[8] one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for **signs**[9] to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. **Thanks to**[10] the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

(1) خبراء
(2) التتبع
(3) معروف
(4) يتتبع
(5) حواس
(6) آثار أقدام الحيوان
(7) يكتشف
(8) حديث
(9) علامات
(10) بفضل

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثانى.

Exercises On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Leen usually .... the 8 o'clock train to work.
   a. has caught b. is catching c. catch d. catches
2. Aya .... late for work.
   a. never is b. is never c. never has d. has never
3. When .... you usually finish studying your lessons?
   a. are b. have c. do d. does
4. Omar .... come to work late at all.
   a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
5. Omar .... comes to work late.
   a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
6. I always .... the piano after I come home from work.
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
7. I always .... the piano after I came home from work.
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
8. He usually .... very quickly, so we didn't understand him.
   a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
9. He usually .... very quickly, so we don't understand him.
   a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking

10. My friends often came to my birthday party and .... me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave

11. My friends often come to my birthday party and .... me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave

12. When I was on holiday, I .... tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played

13. When I am on holiday, I .... tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played

14. Sama .... an email to her friend but she has received no reply so far.
a. sends b. is sent c. sent d. was sent

15. Rubbish .... and burnt.
a. are collected b. collected c. collects d. is collected

16. Policemen .... criminals and arrest them.
a. hunt b. hunts c. are hunting d. hunted

17. They .... attend the conference last month.
a. wasn't b. weren't c. didn't d. don't

18. She .... the newspaper every morning. It is a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads

19. She .... the newspaper every morning. It was a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads

20. What time .... you usually arrive at school when you were a student?
a. do b. would c. did d. does

21. What time .... you usually arrive at school when you take a taxi?
a. do b. would c. did d. does

22. When I finished my work, I closed my office and .... home.
a. return b. returning c. had returned d. returned

23. The moon .... around the earth.
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved

2 Special cases

24. He phoned me once he .... the message.
a. has read b. will read c. reads d. read

25. He will phone me once he .... the message.
a. had read b. will read c. has read d. read

26. .... I was twelve, my family moved into this flat.
a. While b. When c. During d. As

27. It hardly............ in Egypt.
a. is raining b. rains c. have rained d. raining

28. As a schoolboy, my uncle always .... to school on foot.
a. gone b. went c. goes d. will go

29. Mum .... by all family members.
a. is loving b. is being loved c. is loved d. loves

30. I'll phone you as soon as I .... my work.

a. finishes　b. finish　c. will finish　d. had finished

31. We all .... in Allah.

a. believe　b. believes　c. is believing　d. are believing

32. It is time we .... home.

a. went　b. are going　c. go　d. have gone

33. .... the email sent before the office was closed?

a. Are　b. Was　c. Had　d. Does

34. During his last holiday, Tamer .... football every day.

a. is playing　b. played　c. plays　d. has played

35. He .... playing tennis.

a. use to　b. is used to　c. used to　d. was used

36. **A:** Have you seen her lately?

B: Yes, I .... her when I was on my way to work the other day.

a. saw　b. had seen　c. have seen　d. was seeing

37. All the information I read in this book .... very valuable and useful.

a. is being　b. has　c. is　d. are

38. Ten people .... to have been injured in the crash.

a. had reported　b. have reported　c. were reported　d. were reporting

39. Don't open the door until I .... you.

a. told　b. had told　c. tell　d. was told

40. I am sure he .... a Samsung laptop. He just doesn't want to lend it to you.

a. is having　b. is going to have　c. will have　d. has

41. When Salma read a story, she .... interested in its moral.

a. is usually　b. was usually　c. usually is　d. usually was

3 Check your understanding

42. "He used to work as a firefighter." This means ....

a. he is a firefighter　b. he works as a firefighter

c. he is no longer a firefighter　d. he never worked as a firefighter

43. "It is time Omar paid me back my money." This means ....

a. Omar had returned my money　b. Omar hasn't returned my money

c. Omar returned my money　d. Omar has just returned my money

44. "I'd rather Sama hadn't used my cream yesterday." This means ....

a. Sama used my cream yesterday

b. Sama didn't use my cream yesterday

c. Sama asked to use my cream yesterday

d. Sama agreed to use my cream yesterday

45. "Plants get their food from the sun". This is a ....

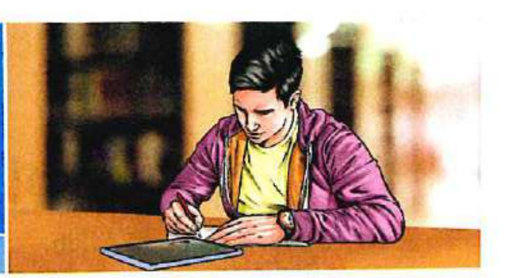
a. present habit　b. past habit　c. future fact　d. fact

46. "I don't smoke heavily any longer." I mean that I ....

a. smoke heavily　b. used to be a heavy smoker

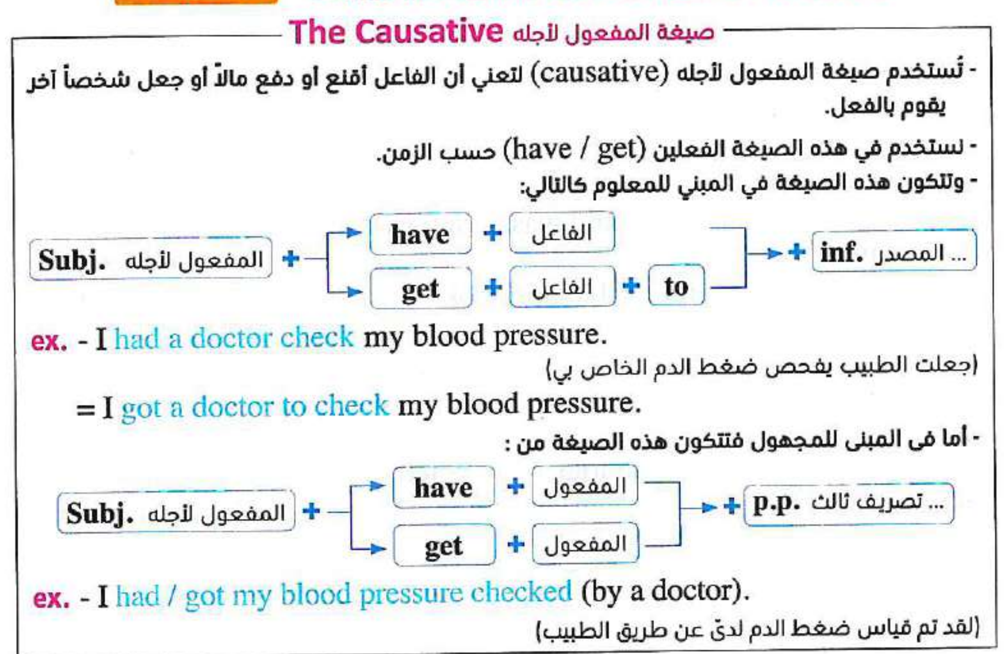
c. haven't stopped smoking　d. didn't use to smoke

PART THREE | Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS



The Causative صيغة المفعول لأجله

- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أقنع أو دفع مالاً أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.
- تستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن.
- وتتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:

Subj. المفعول لأجله + **have** + الفاعل / **get** + الفاعل + **to** → + **inf.** المصدر ...

ex. - I had a doctor check my blood pressure.

(جعلت الطبيب يفحص ضغط الدم الخاص بي)

= I got a doctor to check my blood pressure.

- أما فى المبنى للمجهول فتتكون هذه الصيغة من :

Subj. المفعول لأجله + **have** + المفعول / **get** + المفعول → + **p.p.** تصريف ثالث ...

ex. - I had / got my blood pressure checked (by a doctor).

(لقد تم قياس ضغط الدم لدىّ عن طريق الطبيب)

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

١ تُميِّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أي تقارن بين أكثر من طرفين) :

ex. - English is the easiest subject.
- The lion is the most dangerous animal.
- The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.

٢ تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the + **adj.** صفة + **est / st / iest**

ex. - fast → the fastest
- large → the largest
- big → the biggest
- lazy → the laziest
- old → the oldest
- close → the closest
- thin → the thinnest
- healthy → the healthiest

٣ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلي صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

the most الأكثر / **the least** الأقل + **adj.** صفة

ex. - beautiful → the most / the least beautiful

٤ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل بعد الاعداد الترتيبية مثل:

first / second / third/ fourth ...etc.

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Egypt.

٥ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - .....'s

ex. - Cairo is Egypt's largest city.
- Is Sama your youngest sister?

التصريف الثالث p.p.

أحياناً يُستخدَم (p.p.) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

who / whom / which / that + جملة مبنية للمجهول = **p.p.** التصريف الثالث

ex. - I have a cousin who is called Karim.
= I have a cousin called Karim.
- They have the skills which are needed to monitor wild animals.
= They have the skills needed to monitor wild animals.

as

١ تُستخدم (as) بمعني (كـ...) ويأتي بعدها اسم يدل على الوظيفة - المرحلة العمرية - الدور - المظهر :

ex. - As a student, Sama is very clever.
- Captain Bassem works as a police officer.

٢ يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون اختصارا لجملة مبنية للمجهول :

ex. - He works hard as planned.
= He works hard as it has been planned.

٣ تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة :

ex. - He fell asleep as he was watching a film. (as = when /while)
- As she was ill, she didn't go to school. (As = Because)

but / but still لكن

تُستخدم (but) للتعبير عن تناقض في الفكرة الرئيسية بين الجملتين:

ex. - I asked for another glass of orange juice, but there was no more.

تُستخدم (but still) للتعبير عن تناقض في التوقع أو الرأي بين الجملتين:

ex. - There was no more orange juice, but still she asked for another glass.

Thanks to بفضل / بسبب

تُستخدم (thanks to) فى سياق إيجابى للتعبير عن السبب مثل (because of) :

- thanks to / because of / due to / owing to بسبب **+ noun** اسم **/ (inf. + ing)**
= ... because / since / as لأن **+** جملة

ex. - We could solve our problems thanks to your help.
= We could solve our problems because you helped us.

Exercise On Language Hints

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Mohamed Salah is one of the world's .... players. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. better than b. least c. the best d. best
2. I want to get a carpenter .... the front door of my house. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. fix b. fixed c. to fix d. be fixed
3. That man had his kidney .... in his brother.
   a. transplants b. transplanted c. transplant d. transplanting
4. I went to the mechanic to have ....
   a. repaired my car b. my car repaired
   c. my car repair d. my car repairs
5. .... a teacher, I have the qualities and qualifications that make my students understand well.
   a. As b. Like c. Since d. When
6. Rodayna has a cousin .... Zamzam.
   a. was called b. called c. is called d. calling
7. .... she was busy, she refused to help me.
   a. Because of b. On c. As d. During
8. I did the job well .... agreed.
   a. like b. for c. since d. as
9. We have the equipment .... for our work.
   a. needed b. needing c. need d. needs
10. I have my blood pressure .... every week.
    a. check b. checks c. checked d. to check
11. I arrived home .... mum was preparing lunch.
    a. before b. as c. since d. on
12. .... I was very tired, I didn't finish studying unit 2.
    a. So b. Owing to c. Since d. Because of

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
(الإسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)

Many researchers, engineers, and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures.

The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment. Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of **its** weathering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the **ecological** balance, therefor some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth, 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space while the remaining is absorbed by oceans, air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.
   a. clearing   b. planting   c. irrigating   d. spraying
2. The underlined word" **its**" refers to ....
   a. desertification   b. global warming
   c. environment   d. CO_2
3. Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.
   a. causes of   b. results of   c. leads to   d. results from
4. The synonym of the underlined word "**ecological**" is ....
   a. environmental   b. biological   c. chemical   d. material
5. Using non-renewable sources of energy is not safe because it ....
   a. produces gases like carbon dioxide
   b. can be stolen easily
   c. can't be moved from a place to another
   d. can be flamed
6. According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of the global warming.
   a. will face   b. faced
   c. are already facing   d. have never faced
7. The best title for this passage is "............".
   a. National Disasters   b. Global Disasters
   c. Trees Nature   d. Anthropogenic Activities

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

*** Tips on writing a biography :** * إرشادات خاصة بكتابة السيرة الذاتية :

عند كتابة مقال عن السيرة الذاتية لشخص ما، يمكن الاسترشاد بالنقاط التالية :

Early life: المرحلة الأولى من العمر
- Where was he / she born?
- Where did he / she live as a child?
- What did his / her parents do?
- What did he / she study?
- Did anything important happen to him / her as a child?

Description: الوصف
- Describe his / her appearance and her personality.
- How did he / she help the community ?
- What did he / she do in the past to help the community?
- Where does he / she currently live and how is he / she helping the community now?

Conclusion: الخلاصة - الخاتمة
- What is your opinion of him / her?
- Why is his / her work so important?
- What is he / she admired for?
- Why is he / she a good role model?

Model Essay

✪ Write an essay of about 150 words about the person you admire :

The person I admire

Perhaps you think I am going to write about a football star or a famous actor. These are important people, of course. However, I admire professor Magdi Yacoub. For me, he is the best role model. He is a great man for everything he has done for mankind البشرية.

Professor Yacoub was the son of a doctor who had to move to a new town every few years. This helped young Yacoub to adapt to يتكيف مع different situations. When his aunt died of a heart problem, he decided that he wanted to be a heart surgeon.

He succeeded in achieving his goal. He became a surgeon. He travelled abroad and worked with great heart surgeons in Britain and the USA. That gave him a lot of experience. He was part of the team that did the first heart transplant زراعة القلب. Queen Elizabeth II awarded him the title "Sir" for his great achievements إنجازات.

When he retired, he returned to Egypt and set up أسس Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation in Aswan. This foundation helps people with heart problems for free.

In my opinion, Professor Magdi Yacoub is the best example of greatness among people. He doesn't think of himself. Instead, he thinks how to help the people of his own country. He doesn't care for money. He only cares for saving people's lives. He gives heart patient the hope to live. I hope we all do our best to follow his footsteps.

3 Writing

✪ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic: (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

The role of charities in the society

....

....

....

....

4 Translation الترجمة

A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Building good citizens and creating creative society are the main aims of education. This will teach them self-reliance. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

a. إن بناء مواطنين صالحين وخلق أمّة مُبدعة هما الهدفان الرئيسيان للتعليم، وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على الذات.

b. إن بناء مواطنين صالحين وخلق مُجتمع ناجح هما الهدفان الرئيسيان للتعليم، وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على الذات.

c. إن بناء مواطنين صالحين وخلق مُجتمع رائع هما الهدفان الرئيسيان للتعليم، وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على الذات.

d. إن بناء مواطنين صالحين وخلق مُجتمع مُبدع هما الهدفان الرئيسيان للتعليم، وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على الذات.

2. There's no doubt that education is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه أول ٢٠٢٤)

a. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من آثار الجهل.

b. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المتعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

c. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

d. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العالمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

3. Unemployment can threaten the security and stability of society. So, we have to create work chances for the newly graduated young people. (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

a. يمكن للعمالة أن تهدد أمن واستقرار المجتمع، لذا يجب علينا خلق فرص عمل للشباب حديثي التخرج.
b. يمكن للبطالة أن تهدد أمن واستقرار الجمعية الخيرية، لذا يجب علينا خلق فرص عمل للشباب حديثي التخرج.
c. يمكن للبطالة أن تهدد أمن واستقرار المجتمع، لذا يجب علينا خلق فرص عمل للشباب حديثي التخرج.
d. يمكن للبطالة أن تهدد أمن وأمان المجتمع، لذا يجب علينا خلق فرص عمل للشباب حديثي التخرج.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. من المتوقع ان يتضاعف عدد سكان مصر في العقود القليلة القادمة ولذلك لابد من اتخاذ تدابير أكثر فاعلية لمواجهة المشاكل الناتجة عن هذه الزيادة. (اسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)

a. The population of Egypt is expected to increase in the next few decades. Therefore, effective measures mustn't be taken to face the problems resulting in this increase.
b. The population of Egypt is expected to double in the next few years. Therefore, effective measures must be taken to face the problems leading to this increase.
c. The population of Egypt is expected to double in the next few centuries. Therefore, more effective measures must be discussed to face the problems resulting from this increase.
d. The population of Egypt is expected to double in the next few decades. Therefore, more. effective measures must be taken to face the problems resulting from this increase.

٢. إن وقت الفراغ كنز في حياتنا إذا أحسنا استغلاله في أنشطة مفيدة مثل ممارسة رياضة أو هواية أو المشاركة في العمل التطوعي. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

a. Free time is a treasure in our lives if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.
b. Free time is a treasure in our plays if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.
c. Free time is a treasure in our films if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.
d. Free time is a treasure in our programs if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

blood

• **blood (n)** الدم
- The heart pumps blood all over the body.

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- blood transplant / transfusion نقل الدم
- blood pressure ضغط الدم
- blood donation = giving blood التبرع بالدم
- blood donor مُتبرع بالدم

community

• community (n) مُجتَمَع

- The governor المُحافظ holds a meeting every month to discuss community problems.

• community (n) جالية / جَماعَة / طائِفَة

- The Egyptian community in France welcomed our team.

- لاحظ أن :

بصفة عامة يُستخدم فعل مفرد بعد كلمة (community) لكن فى الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع :

- The community is / are interested in the new educational system.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- the local community المجتمع المحلى
- a community leader قائد مُجتمعى
- community care رعاية اجتماعية
- minority communities الأقليات
- a community centre مركز اجتماعي
- community services خدمات اجتماعية
- a religious community طائفة دينية
- international community المجتمع الدولى

- لاحظ أن :

العلاقة بين (community) و (society) هى علاقة بين الجزء والكل، فكلمة (community) تدل على مجتمع أصغر داخل المجتمع الأكبر (society)

desire

• desire (d) (v) = want ... very much يرغب فى

- He desires to live in a villa, not a flat.

- لاحظ أن :

لا يُستخدَم الفعل (desire) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- The Egyptians are desiring peace السلام. (✗)
- The Egyptians desire peace. (✔).

• desire (to + inf.) / (for + n) = strong wish or hope رغبة / أمنية شديدة

- Sama has a strong desire to succeed.
= Sama has a strong desire for success.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- a strong / great / burning desire رغبة قوية
- have a desire لديه رغبة
- show a desire يُظهر رغبة
- express a desire يُعبِّر عن رغبة
- satisfy/ fulfill a desire يُلَبِّي أو يُشبِع رغبة

donate

• donate (d) (v) = give يتبرع بـ

- It is kind of you to donate blood.
- donate + شىء + to + شخص / شىء يتبرع بـ ... لـ ...
- Salah donates a lot of money to poor people.

- **donation (n)** تَبرُّع
  - Most charities الجمعيات الخيرية get money from donations.
- **donation to +** الطرف الذى يحصل على التّبرُّع
  - Salah made a donation to a children's hospital.
- **donation from +** الطرف الذى يُقدِّم التّبرُّع
  - A children's hospital got a donation from Salah.
- **donation of +** الشىء الذي يتم التّبرُّع به
  - The donation of blood is something very important.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- make / give a donation يتبرع
- receive a donation يتلقى تَبرُّع
- a generous donation تَبرُّع كريم / هائل
- charitable donation تَبرُّع خيرى
- anonymous donation تَبرُّع من فاعل خير (المتبرع مجهول)

- **donor (n)** مُتَبرِّع
  - Blood donors must be healthy people.

generous

- **generous (adj)** جَوّاد - كريم - سَخِىّ
  - People who donate money and other things are generous.
- **generous + to +** شخص كريم مع
  - He is generous to the poor الفقراء.
- **generous + with +** الشىء **(adj)** كريم بـ
  - Rodayna is generous with her effort الجهد.
- **generosity (n)** الكَرَم - الجود - السخاء
  - The people of Aswan are famous for their generosity.
  - Giving money to charities is an act of generosity. تصرف ينم عن الكرم

hunt

- **hunt (ed) (v)** يصطاد (حيوانات وطيور)
  - It is known that lions hunt in packs فى قطعان.
- **hunt (ed) = search (v)** يبحث عن - يفتش عن
  - She hunted for an hour but she couldn't find the lost ring خاتم.
- **hunt (ed) ... down (v)** يطارد - يتَعَقَّب - يُلاحق
  - The police hunted the gang العصابة down and arrested them.
- **hunt (n)** البحث - التفتيش عن
  - Some people helped in the hunt for the missing boy.
- **hunter (n)** صياد - قناص
  - It is not allowed for hunters to kill lions.

intelligence

- **intelligent (n)** ذكى
  - To be good at maths and physics الفيزياء, you need to be very intelligent.
- **intelligence (n)** الذكاء - الفِطْنة
  - To be good at maths and physics الفيزياء, you need much intelligence.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- show intelligence يُظهر ذكاء
- high / low intelligence ذكاء عالى / محدود
- artificial intelligence الذكاء الاصطناعى (الحاسوبى)

- **intelligence (n)** المخابرات
  - Our intelligence has found out a lot of secret plans الخطط السرية.

long-term

- **long-term (adj)** بعيد المدى / على المدى البعيد (تُستخدم قبل الإسم فقط)
  - This plan is long-term. (✗)
  - This is a long-term plan. (✔)

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- a long-term plan خطة طويلة المدى
- a long-term strategy استراتيجية طويلة المدى
- in the long term على المدى البعيد
- a long-term illness مرض مزمن

monitor

- **monitor (ed) (v)** يُراقب - يَرْصُد - يتجسس على
  - The situation is monitored carefully.
  - It is not legal قانونى to monitor people's phone calls.
- **monitor (n)** جهاز عرض
  - Don't look at the computer monitor for a long time.
- **monitor (n)** مُراقب (شخص يراقب وضع معين ليتأكد أن الأمور تسير بشكل صحيح)
  - There are peace سلام monitors between the two countries.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
bio-	خاص بعلم الأحياء أو الحياة	biology علم الأحياء biography السيرة الذاتية
dis-	تُكَوِّن العكس	disappear يختفي - يتلاشى
inter-	بين	interview يجرى مقابلة / مقابلة شخصية
trans-	عَبْر	transplant نقل أو زراعة الأعضاء

3 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ation	تُكوّن اسم	admiration	إعجاب
-ce	تُكوّن اسم	intelligence	الذكاء
-er / -r	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	villager	قروي
-ion	تُكوّن اسم	donation	تبرُّع
-ist	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	biologist artist scientist	عالم أحياء فنان عالم
-or	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	donor	مُتبرّع
-ure	تُكوّن اسم	pressure	ضغط
-ment	تُكوّن اسم	agreement	عقد - اتفاق

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The Egyptian .... in London welcomed and supported the Egyptian handball team.
   a. Frequency b. Stadium c. Maasai d. Community
2. Although he is rich, he works hard to .... his desire for success.
   a. satisfy b. donate c. conserve d. monitor
3. When we do not know who paid the money, we say it is a/an .... donation.
   a. antonym b. synonym c. synonymous d. anonymous
4. In the .... , eating too much food causes overweight.
   a. long term b. field c. hometown d. desire

Advanced Exercise on Language

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He no longer .... as he used to do.
   a. smoke b. smokes c. smoked d. doesn't smoke
2. He used to smoke but now he ....
   a. isn't anymore b. doesn't no longer
   c. doesn't any longer d. any longer doesn't
3. He was used to smoking, but now he ....
   a. is no longer b. no longer is c. does no longer d. no longer does
4. I wish you .... your time last year.
   a. wasted b. didn't waste c. had wasted d. hadn't wasted
5. .... to bed before 1 a.m.
   a. Rarely do I go b. Rarely I go c. I go rarely d. Rarely am I go

Test on Unit 2

• Understand ○ Apply • Create





1. Choose the TWO (2)correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. "There are a lot of students that will take part in the race." The antonyms "take part in" means ....
   a. divide b. attack c. share
   d. avoid e. abandon

2. Farmers keep .... to get meat and milk.
   a. cattle b. lions c. snakes
   d. livestock e. mosquitoes

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Before the operation, the doctor should check the blood .... of the patient. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
   a. treasure b. pleasure c. measure d. pressure

2. .... blood can protect people if they have been injured.
   a. Donate b. Donating c. Donated d. Donates

3. Our neighbour is .... He always buys our children sweets and helps the needy. (الاسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. unkind b. ambitious c. generous d. jealous

4. My parents always .... me in difficult times. They are helpful to me a lot. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. support b. discourage c. overlook d. charge

5. Salah, the happiness maker, has become the .... model to many young men. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. roller b. rule c. role d. ruler

6. The word "............" can be used as a verb and as a noun. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
   a. employ b. admire c. speedy d. desire

7. Egypt has great .... all over the world. (الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. disregard b. prestige c. disrespect d. indignity

8. He never .... with his friends. He feels lonely. (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. speak b. speaks c. speaking d. to speak

9. Peter no longer .... as he used to.
   a. has smoked b. smoking c. smoked d. smokes

10. My car .... twice a year. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
   a. serviced b. was servicing c. is serviced d. services

11. Food .... well for my grandmother whose teeth are weak. (الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. is always cooked b. always cook
   c. is always cooking d. have always cooked

12. How often does Omar .... to the school library? (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. goes   b. go   c. going   d. went
13. Ahmed .... late for school. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. come always   b. always is
   c. comes always   d. is always
14. I usually go to school by bus. This means I .... to it.
   a. used   b. am used   c. didn't used   d. didn't use

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

Developed countries take care of the health of their people. Therefore, many hospitals are equipped with the latest medical equipment. Specialized doctors are well prepared. **They** also provide medical service to all individuals without charge. States also provide periodic screening for people to detect the disease in its early stages, thus facilitating treatment.

There is a great deal of interest in the health of children, and there is constant examination of students in schools. Patients are treated and their health is monitored until they are cured.

So, everyone should know how to stay healthy and follow medical advice in maintaining health. One of the most important of these tips is hygiene because hygiene prevents us from many diseases. Hygiene is the most important behaviour a child must learn, so that hygiene becomes inherent behaviour for a person for life, and thus be healthy. Hands should be washed before eating and after eating. Care should be taken to clean and cover food and to prevent insects such as flies from standing on food. Developed countries are also interested in working to prevent people from disease by spreading health **awareness** and medical advice through various media.

1. The underlined pronoun "**They**" in the 1st paragraph refers to ....
   a. health awareness   b. developed countries
   c. facilitating treatment   d. inherent behaviour
2. The main idea of the passage is how to ....
   a. stay healthy   b. be doctor
   c. build hospitals   d. spread health
3. According to the passage, which of the following is correct?
   a. Hygiene causes us many diseases.
   b. Hygiene prevents us from many diseases.
   c. Hygiene does not become an inherent behaviour.
   d. Hygiene is not one of the most important of tips.
4. Which word is the antonym of "**awareness**"?
   a. being awake   b. ignorance
   c. consciousness   d. sensibility

5. How do developed countries take care of the health of their citizens?
   a. By building hospitals b. By preparation of doctors
   c. By free medical services d. a, b & c
6. Treatment must be provided to patients in order to ....
   a. play b. recover c. travel d. be fun
7. One of the methods of health protection is ....
   a. spreading health awareness b. art publishing
   c. spreading culture d. sports publishing

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Loving homeland and sacrificing for it is a national duty. To be a good citizen, carry out your duties before asking for your rights.

(أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)

a. إن حُبي كوطن والتضحية من أجلي واجب وطني، ولكي تكون مواطناً صالحاً قم بواجباتك قبل المطالبة بحقوقك.

b. إن حُب الوطن والتضحية من أجله واجب وطني، ولكي تكون مواطناً صالحاً قم بواجباتك قبل المطالبة بحقوقك.

c. إن حُب الوطن والتضحية من أجله واجب دولي، ولكي تكون مواطناً صالحاً قم بواجباتك قبل المطالبة بحقوقك.

d. إن حُب الوطن والتضحية من أجله واجب وطني، ولكي تكون مواطناً صالحاً قم بواجباتك بعد المطالبة بحقوقك.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

في بعض المجتمعات يتطوع الأطفال والشباب لمساندة كبار السن، لذلك لا يشعر كبار السن بالوحدة.

a. In some communities, children and young people volunteers to support older people, so the elderly don't feel so lonely.
b. In some communities, children and young people volunteer to support older people, so the elderly don't feel so lonely.
c. In some communities, children and young man volunteer to support older people, so the elderly don't feel so lonely.
d. In some communities, children and young people volunteer to support older people, as the elderly don't feel so lonely.

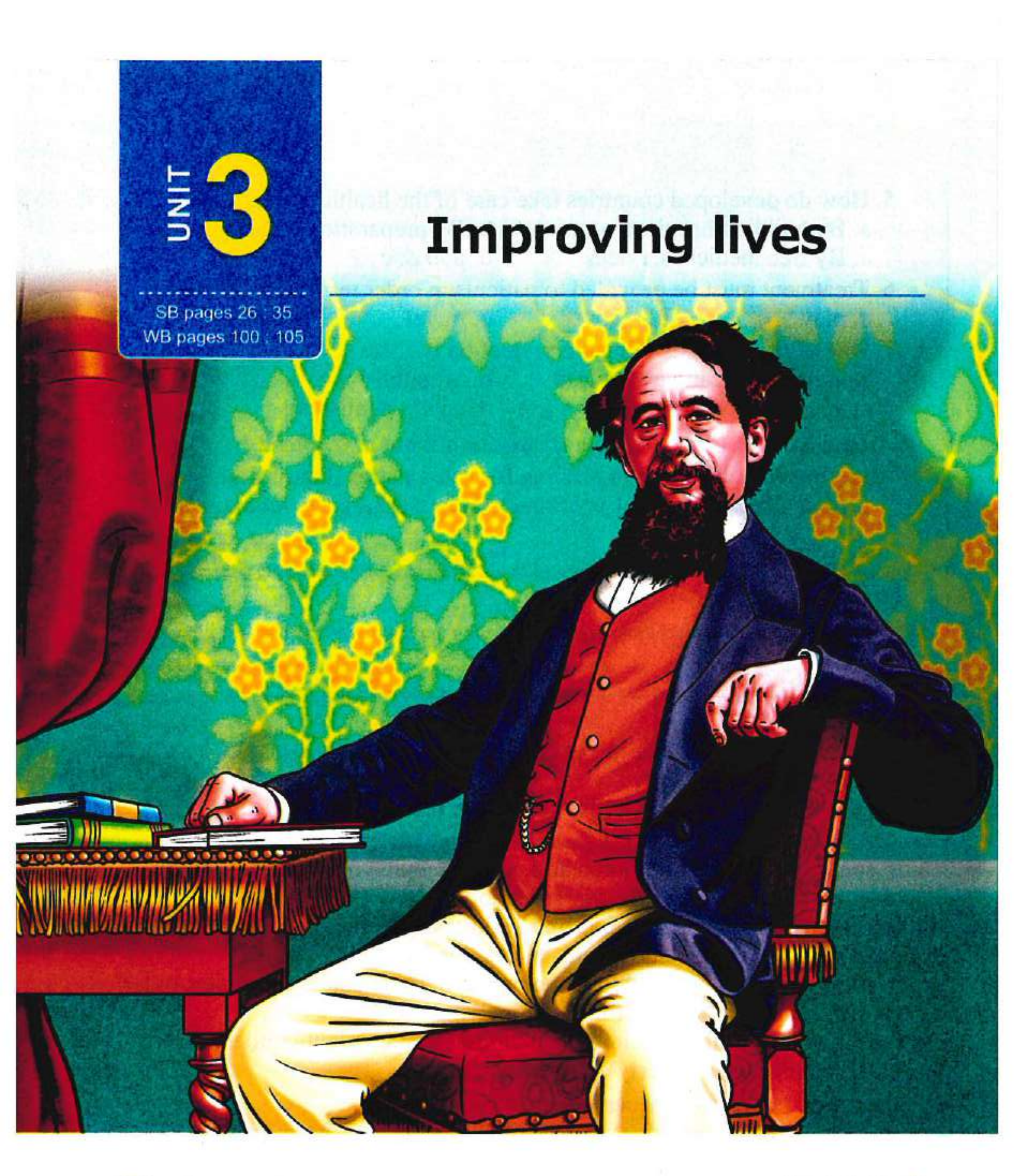
5. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think Jim wanted to give the papers he found in the Captain's box to Dr Livesy ? (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)
2. If you were Mr Trelawny, would you go to the island? Why? (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)
3. Why do you think Mr Trelawney didn't trust Captain Smollett?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

Voluntary work helps the community

....
....
....



Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading :** An extract from David Copperfield
- **Writing :** A paragraph on a book character; A summary of a story
- **Listening :** A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books
- **Speaking :** Discussing a topic
- **Language :** Past simple and present perfect
- **Life skills :** Empathy

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 100 & 101



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing (adj)	مُذهل - رائع جدًا	owe (d) (v)	يَدين - يكون مَدين
debt (n)	دَيْن (مديونية)	plump (adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً
earn (ed) (v)	يكسب - يجنى مال	prison (n)	السجن
merchant (n)	تاجر	rat (n)	فأر
miserable (adj)	تعيس - بائس	terrible (adj)	فظيع - سيء جدًا
miserably (adv)	بتعاسة - بشقاء		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

action (n)	حَدَث - فِعل	goods (n)	بضائع (دائماً جمع)
arrange (d) (v)	يُرتِّب - يوفِّر	high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية
beliefs (n)	مُعتقدات	honest (adj)	أمين
borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصيب
break - broke - broken (v)	يتعطل - يكسر - ينكسر	opportunity (n)	فُرصة
		penny (n)	بنس ($\frac{1}{100}$ من الجنيه الإسترليني)
character (n)	شخصية	realise (d) (v)	يُدرِك - يستوعب
childhood (n)	مرحلة الطفولة	review (ed) (v)	يُراجع
criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامى	reward (ed) (v/n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق - يساوى	section (n)	قِسم - جزء
die (d) (v)	يموت	similar (adj)	مشابه - متشابه
dirty(adj)	قَذِر	skill (n)	مهارة
discover(ed) (v)	يكتشف	society (n)	المجتمع
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلّي - يُرَفِّه عن	spend - spent (v)	يقضي وقت - ينفق مال
entertainment (n)	التسلية - الترفيه	storyteller (n)	رِوائي - قَصَّاص
exactly (adv)	تمامًا - بالتحديد	theatre (n)	المسرح
extract (ed) (n - v)	مُقتَطَف/اقتباس - يقتبس/يقتطف	tired-looking (adj)	يبدو عليه التعب
		twins (n)	توأم

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
debt (n)	دَيْن	money you must give to someone
earn (v)	يكسب/يتقاضى أجر	to receive money for doing work
merchant (n)	تاجر كبير	a person who buys and sells a lot of goods

miserable (adj)	تعيس	very sad
owe (v)	يَدين - يكون مَدين	money or things you have to pay back يُسدِّد/يرُدّ
plump (adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	slightly قليلاً fat in a nice way
prison (n)	السِجْن	a place to keep criminals for a period فترة of time as punishment عقاب
rat (n)	فأر - جرذ	an animal like a big mouse

Exercises On Vocabulary

● Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. A .... is a person who buys and sells a lot of goods. (الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)
 a. writer b. merchant c. volunteer d. miser
2. .... are money that you must give to someone. (الغربية - غرب المحلة ٢٠٢٤)
 a. Slices b. Debts c. Cards d. Roots
3. A/An .... is a person who commits a crime. (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)
 a. lawyer b. criminal c. engineer d. archaeologist
4. To .... means to receive money for doing work.
 a. earn b. win c. make d. get
5. To .... money or things means you have to pay them back.
 a. own b. owe c. lend d. donate
6. .... means very sad or unhappy.
 a. Misery b. Miserable c. Cheer d. Cheerful
7. A woman or a child who is .... is slightly fat in a nice way.
 a. plump b. fat c. obese d. overweight
8. A/An .... is a place to keep criminals for a period فترة of time as punishment.
 a. imprison b. prisoner c. imprisonment d. prison

2 Key Vocabulary

9. His performance was .... We all clapped for him. (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
 a. boring b. amazed c. amazing d. terrifying
10. I .... my life to the staff at the hospital who did their best to save me. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)
 a. owe b. give c. endanger d. rescue
11. Charitable organizations should help those who are forced to fall in .... (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)
 a. debt b. shift c. drift d. gift

12. He .... his living as a carpenter. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)
a. gains b. wins c. beats d. earns

13. We should avoid buying from greedy .... who raise prices illegally. (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
a. merchants b. shoppers c. customers d. buyers

14. Your performance is ....! Nobody has given you a good mark. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. miserable b. amazing c. fantastic d. fine

15. Criminals should go to .... to protect the society from them. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)
a. prison b. hospital c. hotel d. workshop

16. She tried a uniform but felt she was too .... to risk. (دمياط - السرو ٢٠٢٤)
a. plump b. deaf c. dumb d. blind

17. Global warming has a .... effect on everything on our planet.
a. fantastic b. healthy c. terrible d. positive

18. This child is the victim of her parents who .... failed to bring him up well.
a. amazing b. amazingly c. miserable d. miserably

19. Seeing a .... chasing a cat is against logic المنطق.
a. lion b. tiger c. rat d. dog

3 Important Vocabulary

20. He had a .... face as he had been working all day. (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)
a. tiring-looking b. tired-looking c. tired-looked d. tiring-looked

21. We always .... people who work hard. (جنوب سيناء - الطور ٢٠٢٤)
a. insult b. award c. ask d. reward

22. From the sad look on her face, I .... that there is something wrong. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
a. reviewed b. recognised c. realised d. reduced

23. Do you have the needed .... to take this new position, Mr Ali? (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. skills b. communications
c. money d. characters

24. Our team .... to win, they played very well. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)
a. reserved b. denied c. deserved d. observed

25. "My grandfather was a great .... When we were children, we would listen to his tales for hours. (كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٤)
a. storyteller b. poet c. playwright d. dancer

26. I have a .... that students should enjoy their learning.
a. believe b. belief c. believer d. believes

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	ill	يمرض	**have**	debts	عليه ديون
break	the law/rules	يخالف القانون		a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
change	your opinion	تُغيّر رأيك		bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة
do	the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي		time	لديه الوقت
	exciting things	يقوم بأشياء مثيرة		no opportunity	ليست لديه فُرصة
get	a better job	يحصل على وظيفة أفضل			
owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ		a role / a part	له دور يقوم به
pass	exams	ينجح في الامتحانات	**take**	to prison	يسجن - يحبّس

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
amazing	رائع - مذهل	astonishing, surprising, awesome, fascinating
earn money	يكسب - يجني مال	make money
honest	أمين	sincere, trustful, reliable
miserable	تعيس - بائس	sad, depressed, unhappy, poor
terrible	فظيع - سيء جذا	awful, horrifying, horrible

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
amazing	رائع - مذهل	believable, ordinary, unamazing, unremarkable	عادى - غير مذهل
earn money	يكسب - يجني مال	lose / waste money	يخسر/يبدد المال
miserable	تعيس - بائس	happy, contented, cheerful, merry	سعيد - راضي
plump	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	thin, slender, skinny	نحيف
borrow	يستعير - يستلف	lend	يُقرِض - يُسَلِّف
honest	أمين	dishonest, deceitful, insincere	مخادع - خائن
terrible	فظيع - سيء جذا	nice, delightful, lovely, pleasant	لطيف - جميل - سار

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

earn		
earn (v)	يكسب	- You can earn more money by working hard.
earning (n)	الكسب	- There's no problem in earning more money by working hard.

earnings (n) دخل / مكتسبات	- Be wise. Don't waste your earnings.
earner (n) كاسب / عائل	- This woman is the only earner for her children.
miser	
miser (n) بخيل / تعيس	- He is a miser.
misery (n) التعاسة / البؤس	- Poor people live in misery.
miserable(adj) تعيس - بائس	- Poor people have miserable lives.
miserably (adv) بتعاسة - بشقاء	- Our team failed miserably in their attempts محاولات to score a goal.
prison	
imprison (v) يحبس	- He is imprisoned because he is a criminal.
prison (n) السجن	- He is sent to prison because he is a criminal.
prisoner(n) سجين	- He is a prisoner because he is a criminal.
imprisonment (n) السجن / الحبس	- He is sentenced حُكِم عليه to life imprisonment because he is a criminal.
imprisoned (adj)محبوس	- He is now imprisoned because he is a criminal.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره ٤ سنوات	make ... worse for	يجعل ... أسوأ لـ
at this age	في هذا السن	none of them	لا أحد منهم
in this age	في هذا العصر	not ... any more	لن ... مرة أخري
difference in	فرق في	similar to	مشابه لـ
for the first time	لأول مرة	stay abroad	يبقي خارج البلاد
make ... better	يجعل ... أفضل	What kind of person	اى نوع من الأشخاص

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	learn from	يتعلم من
entertain ... with	يُسلّي ... عن طريق	look after	يرعي / يعتني بـ
help ... with	يساعد ... في	owe ... to	يدين بـ ... لـ ...
know ... for	يعرف ... بـ	pay back	يَرُد الدين - يُسَدِّد
		take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيداً

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

earn money / get money / make money

- **earn money** يكسب مال مقابل عمل
  - This doctor earns twenty thousand pounds a day.

- **get money** يحصل علي مبلغ معين من المال في مدة معينة
  - I get 4000 pounds a month.
- **make money** يكسب (كثير من المال بطريقة غير تقليدية)
  - Footballers make a lot of money.

own / owe / borrow / lend

- **own (ed)** يمتلك
  - He owns a farm in the countryside.
- **owe (d)** يدين بـ
  - I owe Ahmed a thousand pounds.
- **borrow (ed)** يقترض / يستلف / يستعير
  - I borrowed a thousand pounds from Ahmed.
- **lend - lent - lent** يُقْرِض / يُسَلِّف
  - Ahmed lent me a thousand pounds.

plump / fat / overweight / obese

كيف نقول أن شخص ما سمين / زائد الوزن :

- **plump** مكتنز - ممتلئ بشكل جذّاب (بالنسبة للنساء والأطفال)
  - She is a plump cheerful مبتهجة little girl.
- **fat** سمين
  - A fat person finds it difficult to do a sport.
- **overweight** لديه وزن زائد (أكثر من الوزن المثالي)
  - She wants to follow a diet because she is overweight.
- **obese** سمين جداً (بشكل خطير علي الصحة)
  - He was an obese teenager.

prison - jail - cell

- **prison** سجن (كبير)
  - Thieves are sent to prison.
- **jail** سجن (مكان للحجز المؤقت)
  - He was taken to jail.
- **cell** زنزانة (حجرة داخل السجن)
  - The dangerous criminal was kept alone in a cell.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. Sameer is a very honest person. The word "honest" is the synonym of .... (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)

   a. novel b. reliable c. available
   d. trusted e. crazy

2. "The lawyer was an honest man, so we felt safe." The antonyms of the word "honest" are .... and .... (المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)

a. trustful b. deceitful c. miserable
d. insincere e. sincere

3. The driver was fined because he had .... the traffic law. (الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

a. supported b. kept c. broken
d. issued e. disobeyed

4. She is a .... old woman who complains about everything. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

a. cheerful b. miserable c. happy
d. depressed e. glad

5. "I have a horrible feeling that we're going to miss the plane." "Horrible" is a synonym for .... and .... (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

a. active b. impossible c. terrible
d. terrific e. awful

6. "The miserable hungry look on the face of the orphan touched our hearts." The antonyms of the word "miserable" are .... and .... (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)

a. cheerful b. wretched c. upset
d. merry e. depressed

7. I have .... to play.

a. a role b. a part c. a problem
d. debts e. no parents

8. A girl .... can't look after herself.

a. in four b. of four c. from four
d. four e. who is four

• ✪ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He is a .... He has no desire to spend money even on his children. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)

a. miserable b. misery c. miser d. missing

2. I think classical songs are .... (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٤)

a. amazed b. amazing c. amazingly d. amaze

3. "We owe much" means we are .... (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)

a. doubtful b. regretful c. thankful d. hopeful

4. People who .... the law must be punished. (الإسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. break b. follow c. make d. do

5. "He's become rather plump since I last saw him." This means he became .... (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)

a. taller b. fitter c. taller d. fatter

6. There were no laws in some countries which made people's life .... (الإسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. worse b. better c. happy d. amazing
7. "Some plump children look nice." The word "plump" is antonymous with .... (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
   a. slender b. happy c. deceitful d. overweight
8. He's borrowed too much money and led a life of .... since then. (البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
   a. miserly b. miser c. miserable d. misery
9. If you spend too much money, you will get .... debt. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. on b. into c. over d. in

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

David Copperfield

(SB page 27)

"This is Mr Quinion, David," Mr Murdstone said. "You're going to **work for**[1] him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle **merchants**[2], in London. You'll **earn**[3] enough money to **pay**[4] for your food, and I've **arranged**[5] a place for you to live."

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was **hard work**[6]. I went to a **dirty**[7] old house **near**[8] the river where **rats**[9] lived under the **floors**.[10] There my job was to wash **empty**[11] bottles with three other boys, and I **hated**[12] it.

One morning, a **plump**[13] man came to see me with Mr Quinion.

"Ah, **Master**[14] Copperfield!" the man said. "This is Mr Micawber," Mr Quinion told me. "You will be living at his house."

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a **thin**[15], **tired-looking**[16] **lady**[17] – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of **twins**[18], and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon **discovered**[19] that the Micawbers were **poor**[20] and that Mr Micawber **owed**[21] money to **several**[22] people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to **prison**[23] because of his **debts**[24]. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

(1) يعمل لدي
(2) تُجّار
(3) تتقاضى
(4) تدفع
(5) يرتب / يوفر
(6) عمل شاق
(7) قذر
(8) بالقرب من
(9) فئران
(10) أرضيات
(11) فارغ
(12) يكره
(13) ممتلئ / مُكتنِز
(14) سيِّد
(15) نحيف
(16) يبدو عليها التعب
(17) سيدة
(18) توأم
(19) يكتشف
(20) فقير
(21) يدين بـ
(22) العديد من
(23) السجن
(24) ديون

"If a man earns twenty **pounds**[25] a year and **spends**[26] nineteen pounds, he'll be happy," he said. "But if he spends twenty pounds and a **penny**[27], he'll be miserable."

(25) جنيهات
(26) يُنفق
(27) بنس ١,٠ من الجنيه

Learning new skills

(WB page 100)

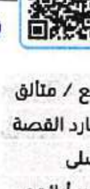


The book **character**[1] David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not **unusual**[2] for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. **Factories**[3] liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them **as much as**[4] they paid **adults**[5]. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. **For example**[6], they were **small**[7] so they could go under **machines**[8] when they **broke down**[9]. The children were often **miserable**[10]. They worked very long hours and most of them had no **opportunity**[11] to **improve**[12] their lives. However, some children **learned**[13] **a skill**[14] when they worked. They were the **lucky**[15] ones, as these new skills helped them to **get better jobs**[16] when they were older.

(1) شخصية
(2) غير مألوف
(3) مصانع
(4) بنفس القدر - كثيراً مثل
(5) الكبار
(6) علي سبيل المثال
(7) صغير الحجم
(8) آلات
(9) يتعطل
(10) تعيس / بائس
(11) فُرصة
(12) يُحسّن
(13) يتعلم
(14) مهارة
(15) محظوظ
(16) يحصلون على وظائف أفضل

2 Listening Texts





(SB page 29)



Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the **brilliant**[1] books that he wrote. He was a great **storyteller**[2]. But, Dickens didn't only want to **entertain**[3] people with his books, he also wanted to **change their opinions**[4] about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to **make the world a better place**[5].

(1) رائع / متألق
(2) سارد القصة
(3) يسلي
(4) يغير آرائهم
(5) يجعل من العالم مكان أفضل

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult **childhood**(6). When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to **support**(7) his family instead. The Poor **Law**(8) of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

(6) طفولة
(7) يساند
(8) القانون
(9) يكافئ
(10) يستحق

When he wrote David Copperfield between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often **rewarded**(9). For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and **deserved**(10) to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.

PART IV LANGUAGE

1 The Present Perfect Simple Tense : زمن المضارع التام البسيط :

١ فى الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + have / has + p.p. ......

تستخدم **(has)** مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب **(He / She / It)** وتستخدم **(have)** مع الفاعل الجمع **(We / They / You)** والضمير **(I)** :

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. - Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

٢ فى الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

Subject فاعل + hasn't / haven't + p.p.+ ......

ex. - They haven't watched the match yet.
- Rodayna hasn't done her homework yet.

٣ السؤال بـ «هل» :

Have /Has + subject فاعل + p.p ...... **?**

ex. - Have you tidied your room?
Yes, I have (tidied my room).
- Has Rodayna done her homework?
No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + p.p ...... ?

- Where have you played the match?
- How long have you stayed here?

٤ فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p ......

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)
My bedroom has been tidied (by me). (passive)
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour. (active)
Tennis has been played for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

Mini Test 1 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama .... my pen.
   a. take b. taking c. has taken d. have taken
2. I can't walk easily because I .... my leg.
   a. broke b. were breaking c. has broken d. have broken
3. .... your teeth, Omar ?
   a. You have brushed b. Have you brushed
   c. Are you brushed d. Were you brushed
4. He .... carefully.
   a. examines b. was examining
   c. has examined d. has been examined

Uses استخدامات

يُستخدم زمن المضارع التام البسيط فى الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت فى الماضى و لم تنتهى بعد) :

ex. - I have studied English since 2015. I'm in secondary one.

٢ التعبير عن مواقف مرت فى الماضى دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ولكن يكون المقصود ضمنيًا حتى هذه اللحظة/الآن :

ex. - I have visited the Pyramids three times.
- Scientists have discovered medicines for a lot of diseases.

٣ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية فى الماضى و لها أثر على الحاضر (جملة الأثر تكون مضارع) :

ex. - I've lost my mobile, so I can't phone my parents.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ الفرق بين:

1. have / has been to + مكان ذهب إلى مكان و عاد

- She has been to the market. Now, she is in the kitchen putting the vegetables in the fridge.

2. have / has gone (to) + مكان ذهب إلى مكان ولم يرجع بعد

- Bassem has gone to the club. He will come back after the match.

3. have been in + مكان + for / since .... متواجد في (لا يزال هناك)

- I have been in London for three years. (This means I am in London now.)

٢ لا يتم ذكر توقيت وقوع الحدث فى المضارع التام ، وعند ذكر التوقيت نستخدم الماضى البسيط:

- Ahmed has drunk two coffees.
- Ahmed drank two coffees yesterday.

٣ عند التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية ممتدة حتى الآن مثل:

this morning / this week / this month / today / in the last year ... etc.

- I have sent three emails today.

٤ يُستخدم المضارع التام مع (ever / never / since) للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب السابقة:

- I have never gone camping. (لم يسبق أن عشت هذه التجربة.)
- Sama is the most intelligent girl I have ever seen. (لأول مرة أرى طالبة بهذا الذكاء.)
- I have worked here since 2002. (لقد عملت هنا منذ ٢٠٠٢.)

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... English since I was in Primary one. I still study it.
   a. studied b. had studied c. have studied d. was studying
2. She .... the High Dam three times. She'll visit it again next week.
   a. has visited b. had visited c. was visiting d. has been visited
3. Hussein .... his leg. He can't walk without a stick.
   a. was breaking b. had broken c. has been broken d. has broken
4. Rodayna .... to the club. I'll join her there.
   a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been
5. Your mother .... to the market. Take the shopping bag to the kitchen.
   a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been
6. Mrs Noha .... that school two years ago.
   a. has left b. has been left c. had left d. left
7. Today, I .... three emails so far. I'm waiting for two more.
   a. have received b. was received c. had received d. was receiving

2 Time adverbs with the present perfect simple :
ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط :

تُستخدم ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط كالتالي:

١ ظروف الزمان تأتى بعد الفعل المساعد وقبل التصريف الثالث

just توا - **already** بالفعل - **never** أبدا - **ever** من قبل

ex. - My uncle has just arrived at the airport.
- I have never seen a real fox. - This is the tallest tree I have ever seen.
- Have you ever travelled abroad?
- I have already passed the driving test.
= I have passed the driving test already.

٢ لاحظ ما يلى :

has /have + **never** + **p.p.** ...... = **hasn't / haven't** + **ever** + **p.p.** ......

ex. - Nada has never been to Paris. = Nada hasn't ever been to Paris.

٣ ظروف زمنية تأتى فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة وأحيانًا قبل التصريف الثالث :

so far حتى الآن - **up till now** حتى الآن - **lately = recently** حديثًا / مؤخرا - **since** منذ
- **for** لمدة - **over the years** على مر السنين - **in the last months** فى الشهور الأخيرة
- **throughout the years** على مر السنين - **this week** هذا الأسبوع

ex. - I have written two essays so far. = So far, I have written two essays.

٤ تُستخدم (yet) فى نهاية الجملة المنفية و الاستفهامية وتدل على أنه من المتوقع حدوث الفعل :

ex. - Have you watered the trees yet?
- Marwa hasn't seen the new manager yet.

٥ يأتى بعد (since) تعبير زمنى يدل على وقت بداية الحدث مثل:

five o'clock / the morning / Monday / 26th September / March / summer / 2013 / yesterday / last month / then منذ ذلك **/ arrival** الحين **/ departure** وصول **/ birth** رحيل **/ death** ميلاد **/ ......** موت

ex. - He's been here since April.
- She has lived in Aswan since her birth.

٦ تكون الجملة بعد (since) ماضى بسيط غالبًا :

ex. - I have lived in this flat since I got married.
= Since I got married, I have lived in this flat.

٧ يأتى بعد (for) تعبير زمنى يدل على المدة الزمنية التى استغرقها الحدث:

a moment / a while فترة **/ two seconds/ three minutes / half an hour / four hours/ five days / six months / two seasons / ten years / a decade** عقد **/ two centuries** قرنين **/ ages** مدة طويلة **/ a long time / a short time / the last / as long as I can remember** على قدر ما أتذكر

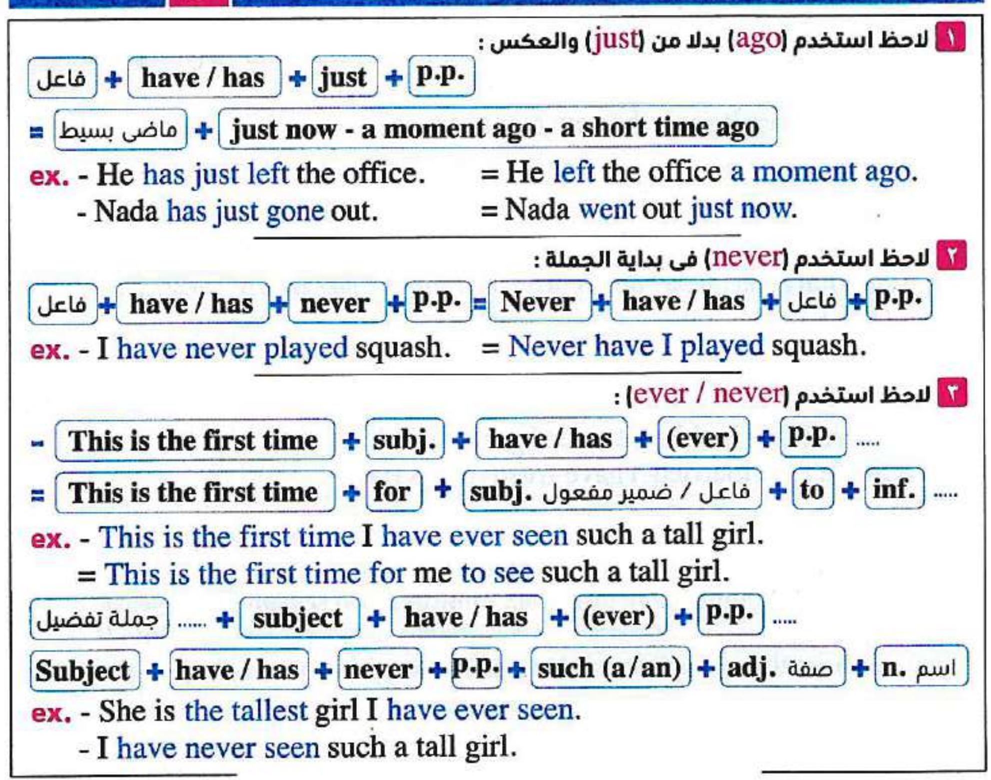
ex. - I've had this mobile for more than 10 years.
- He's been here for 6 months.

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Marwa .... to Aswan before.
   a. never has been b. has been never c. has never been d. was never going
2. Hossam .... to Hurghada. He plans to make his first visit next January.
   a. hasn't never been b. hasn't ever been
   c. has ever been d. has been never
3. My parents .... home yet.
   a. don't return b. weren't returning c. have returned d. haven't returned
4. Wonderful! Have you completed the report .... ? So, you can give it to the manager.
   a. already b. yet c. ago d. yesterday
5. I haven't travelled outside Egypt .... my birth.
   a. for b. since c. before d. last
6. I have felt great pain in my stomach since I .... a piece of biscuits.
   a. eat b. has eaten c. ate d. had eaten
7. I haven't seen my sister .... ages.
   a. for b. since c. before d. after

3 Notes for more understanding :



١ لاحظ استخدم (ago) بدلا من (just) والعكس :

فاعل + have / has + just + p.p.

= ماضي بسيط + just now - a moment ago - a short time ago

ex. - He has just left the office. = He left the office a moment ago.
- Nada has just gone out. = Nada went out just now.

٢ لاحظ استخدم (never) فى بداية الجملة :

فاعل + have / has + never + p.p. = Never + have / has + فاعل + p.p.

ex. - I have never played squash. = Never have I played squash.

٣ لاحظ استخدم (ever / never) :

- This is the first time + subj. + have / has + (ever) + p.p. .....

= This is the first time + for + subj. فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. .....

ex. - This is the first time I have ever seen such a tall girl.
= This is the first time for me to see such a tall girl.

جملة تفضيل ..... + subject + have / has + (ever) + p.p. .....

Subject + have / has + never + p.p. + such (a/an) + adj. صفة + n. اسم

ex. - She is the tallest girl I have ever seen.
- I have never seen such a tall girl.

٤ لاحظ استخدم (yet) بدلا من (still) والعكس :

- Subject + am / is / are + still + (inf. + ing)

= Subject + haven't /hasn't + finished / stopped + (inf. + ing) ..... yet.

ex. - He is still doing homework. = He hasn't finished doing homework yet.
- It is still raining. = It hasn't stopped raining yet.

٥ لاحظ الاختلاف بين (for) و (since) عند الاستخدام مع عدم تغيير المعنى :

أ. عند التحويل من (for) إلى (since) اطرح المدة من الوقت الحاضر:

ex. - He has lived in Aswan for 20 years.
= He has lived in Aswan since 2003.

ب. عندما لا يمكن حساب المدة نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

It is + مدة زمنية + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط

ex. - She has stayed with her aunt for a long time.
= It is a long time since she stayed with her aunt.

ج. لاحظ التحويل من (since) إلى (for) فى الصيغة التالية :

- It is + مدة زمنية + since + جملة ماضى بسيط مثبت

= Subject + haven't /hasn't + p.p. ..... + for + ... مدة زمنية

ex. - It is five years since I (last) saw Ali.
= I haven't seen Ali for five years.

د. لاحظ استخدام (ago) بدلا من (since / for) و العكس:

Subject + have /has + p.p. ..... + since / for .....

Subject + started / began + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) + مدة زمنية + ago

ex. - The boys have played football for two hours.
= The boys started playing (to play) football two hours ago.
- He has worked in this hospital since 2013.
= He began working (to work) in this hospital twelve years ago.

4 Present Perfect Simple Vs. Past Simple :

لفرق فى الاستخدام بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط :

Present Perfect المضارع التام	Past Simple الماضى البسيط
١. حدث تم في وقت غير معروف في الماضي: - Someone has broken the window.	١. حدث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي: - Someone broke the window yesterday.
٢. حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد: - I have received three emails today.	٢. حدث تم في وقت انتهي: - I received three emails last Monday.

٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر:	٣. حدث بدأ وانتهي في الماضي:
- I have learnt to drive. Now, I can drive my father's car.	- I learnt to drive. Mr Khalid was my driving teacher.
٤. حدث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل:	٤. حدث غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل:
- Salah has scored more than 100 goals in the Premier League. (صلاح لا يزال حياً ويمارس كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)	- Naguib Mahfouz wrote a lot of successful novels. (نجيب محفوظ توفي ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)
٥. حدث أو حالة بدأت فى الماضى لازالت موجودة:	٥. حدث أو حالة لم تعد موجودة:
- I have lived in Aswan since 2002. (وما أزال أعيش هنا)	- I lived in Aswan in 2002. (لم أعد أعيش هناك)

Mini Test 4



✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father is angry because I .... the door open.
   a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left
2. My father is angry. I .... the door open last night.
   a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left
3. He .... three coffees so far today.
   a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
4. He .... three coffees yesterday.
   a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
5. I .... to swim. Now, I swim as well as a swimming champion.
   a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
6. I .... to swim. That was during the summer holiday.
   a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
7. I .... a running champion as a child. Now, I can hardly walk.
   a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been
8. I .... a running champion. I will represent Egypt in the Olympics.
   a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been

Exercise On Language

Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Nadeen really loves this book. She............ it three times. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. is reading b. has read c. had read d. was reading
2. They .... finished their work yet. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. don't b. haven't c. won't d. didn't

3. I .... in Qena for seven years. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
a. has lived b. lives c. have lived d. was living

4. .... you ever broken your leg? (بورسعيد - شرق بورسعيد٢٠٢٣)
a. Do b. Has c. Did d. Have

5. Scientists .... ways to isolate genes in the last few years. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
a. develops b. have developed
c. will develop d. were developing

6. Sadly, my aunt has been ill .... she was a child. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
a. since b. for c. ago d. when

7. Zeyad is the most intelligent student I have .... known. (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٣)
a. ever b. never c. still d. rarely

8. .... I set up my company, I have employed a lot of skillful employees. (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
a. On b. Since c. Before d. As

9. It is the first time he .... America. (الدقهلية - منية النصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. visited b. had ever visited
c. has ever visited d. has never visited

10. I have not seen Ali .... the last time we met in Alexandria. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
a. since b.when c. while d. for

11. Nobody has .... said that to me before. (المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
a. ever b. never c. always d. yet

12. It's three weeks since we .... to live in Cairo. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)
a. move b. have been moved
c. is moving d. moved

13. My cousin has lived abroad .... his childhood. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
a. since b. for c. yet d. when

14. Have you finished your task .... ? WOW! You are very quick. (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
a. yet b. so far c. already d. since

15. Sami .... three coffees so far. (البحيرة - أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. has drunk b. drank c. was drinking d. drinks

16. Ali's been at home for a week now since he .... his leg. (البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
a. breaks b. was broken c. has broken d. had broken

17. He .... abroad since his graduation in 2000 and has no desire to return. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)
a. have been b. has gone c. didn't go d. will go

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 30 & 31 WB pages 102 & 103



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plan (ned) (n/v)	خطة - يخطط
community (n)	مُجتَمَع - جماعة	voluntary work	عمل تطوعى
culture (n)	الثقافة	youth (n)	الشباب
food bank	بنك الطعام	youth association	جمعية شبابية

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

admit (ted) (v)	يُقِرّ بـ / يعترف	include (d) (v)	يشمل/يتضمَّن - يُضَمِّن
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	later (adv)	فيما بعد
brainstorm (ed) (v)	يستثير الفِكر	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضِر	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال - يقوم بزيارة
common (adj)	عام - مُشتَرَك - شائع	solve (d) (v)	يحِلّ
crescent (n)	هِلال	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
disabled (adj)	مُعاق	steps (n)	خطوات
dreamer (n)	حالم	structure (n)	تركيب - بناء
ending (n)	نهاية - خاتمة	surprise (d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	tip (n)	نصيحة
experiences (n)	خبرات/تجارب حياتية	trick (ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
improve (d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يتحسَّن	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثِقة - يثق بـ

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
culture ثقافة	the beliefs معتقدات and traditions of a group of people
food bank بنك الطعام	a place where people collect food to give to others
voluntary work عمل تطوعي	a job that people do for no money
youth association جمعية شبابية	a group of young people who do things together

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. .... is a job we do for no money. (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Voluntary work b. Paid work c. Hard work d. Work force
2. The word "............" means the people who live in the same area.
   a. responsibility b. morals c. community d. colleagues
3. "............" means the beliefs, customs and traditions. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Capture b. Creature c. Religion d. Culture

2 Key Vocabulary

4. Do you have any suggestions for .... work I can do? (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Vacuum b. volume c. volunteer d. voluntary
5. The green colour of trees usually comes in .... with spring. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. cooperation b. corporation c. association d. competition
6. She enjoys listening to the music of other.............. . (المنوفية - تلا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. agricultural b. agriculture c. cultures d. cultural
7. The Egyptian Food .... helps people who haven't got enough money for food. (الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Shop b. Restaurant c. Bank d. Kitchen
8. Every member of the .... must respect the freedom of others. (سوهاج - البَلْينا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. experience b. beliefs c. community d. merchant
9. Working to a .... leads to true success.
   a. plan b. bank c. work d. culture

3 Important Vocabulary

10. Swimming with dolphins was an unforgettable .... for her. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)
    a. experiment b. expire c. expert d. experience
11. She took a course to .... her skills in programming. (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
    a. move b. remove c. disapprove d. improve
12. It is the role of .... to give advice to young people. (الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)
    a. teenagers b. adults c. teens d. infants

13. Does the price of the car .... sales tax? (الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)
a. contain b. include c. share d. consist

14. This job requires a lot of .... which is necessary to get it. (الإسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)
a. experiments b. experiences c. experts d. experience

15. Your shoes will be repaired and ready for you to .... in five minutes.
a. collect b. walk c. buy d. mend

16. **A:** Can you tell me about the .... of the essay?
B: Introduction, body and conclusion.
a. situation b. twins c. structure d. ending

17. The thief .... stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.
a. admitted b. arranged c. included d. stopped

18. He succeeded in .... back all his debts.
a. repairing b. respecting c. turning d. paying

19. I don't like films that have a sad ....
a. ending b. ends c. an end d. ended

20. Volunteers help the needy المحتاجين .... their problems.
a. cause b. do c. make d. solve

21. My teacher gave me some useful .... on how to improve my English.
a. sorts b. kinds c. tips d. types

22. It was not funny playing a .... on the poor old man. It was impolite.
a. role b. rule c. goal d. trick

23. Follow these .... and you will learn how to do the experiment.
a. masters b. mistakes c. repairs d. steps

24. Ayman and I have some interests in .... We both like reading and fishing.
a. common b. difference c. success d. expert

25. .... people need more interest and care.
a. Able b. Disabled c. Criminal d. Plump

26. I asked you to do this difficult job because I .... you.
a. trust b. change c. hurt d. revise

27. The Egyptian Red .... helps people in difficult situations.
a. Tape b. Association c. Present d. Crescent

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a job يقوم بعمل	make	a difference يُحدِث فرقًا / يصنع الفارق
	voluntary work يقوم بعمل تطوعي		money يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة
	something to help يفعل شيء لمساعدة		brief notes يُدوّن ملاحظات قصيرة
follow	the steps يتّبع الخطوات		a suggestion يقدم اقتراح
have	a happy ending ذو نهاية سعيدة	play	a trick on يخدع
	a suggestion لديه اقتراح		a role يلعب دورًا
	common interests لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة	go	travelling يذهب في رحلة
			wrong يتعطل
	nowhere to live ليس لديه مكان يعيش فيه	get	the main idea يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
admit	يُقِرّ بـ / يعترف	confess
adult	شخص بالغ - راشد	mature, grown up
common	عام - مُشترَك - شائع	widespread, usual, ordinary, customary
improve	يُحسن	enhance, develop
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	unpaid

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
admit	يُقِرّ بـ / يعترف	deny, conceal, renounce	يُنكِر
common	عام - مُشترَك - شائع	unusual, rare	غير مألوف / نادر
trust	ثِقة - يثق بـ	doubt, disbelieve	يشك / لا يصدق
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	compulsory, obligatory, paid	إجباري / مدفوع

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

association	
associate (d) (v) يُصاحب - يَقرِن	- Students and teachers associate El-Moasser with high quality.

association (n) جمعية/اتحاد	- I joined a youth association last summer.
association (n) تلازم - ارتباط	- There is a clear association between El-Moasser and high quality.
associated (adj) مُصاحب - متلازم	- El-Moasser is associated with high quality.
culture	
culture (n) الثقافة	- It is important to respect other peoples' cultures.
culture (n) الزراعة	- Culture is the main producer of food.
cultural (adj) ثقافي	- It is important to respect cultural differences.
cultured (adj) مُثقَّف	- Mr Ali is a cultured man.
culturally (adv) ثقافيًا	- The Egyptian history is culturally important.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the end of	في نهاية	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
for no money	مجاناً	It's a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن
= for free		It's important to	من المهم أن
free/spare time	وقت فراغ	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
health problem	مشكلة صحية	Why don't you ?	لِم لا ؟
how about	ما رأيك في	young people	الشباب

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

give ... back to	يَرُد ... لـ	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
happen to	يَحْدُث لـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
put ... into	يضع ... بداخل	think of	يفكر في
pay (...) back	يسدد - يرد	work for	يعمل لدى
return to	يعود إلى	work in	يعمل في
run away	يهرب	work with	يعمل مع / في
send ... away	يطرد	write down	يُسجِّل - يُدوِّن

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

at the age of / in the age of

- **at the age of** في سِن / في عمر
  - I could swim at the age of nine.
- **in the age of** في عصر
  - In the age of Mohammed Ali, Egypt was a very large empire إمبراطورية.

work - job

• work عمل / مكان العمل (كلمة لا تُعد)

- He did much work in the office yesterday.
- I go to work in my car.

• a work – works عمل أدبي أو فني أو هندسى (كلمة تُعد)

- El-Karnak is a work by Naguib Mahfouz.

• a job – jobs وظيفة - مهمة (كلمة تُعد)

- My first job was a teacher. **(Not: My first work)**
- I have finished all today's jobs.

Exercises Vocabulary study

• ✪ MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. When something is common, this means it is........... (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
   a. uncommon b. unusual c. usual
   d. rare e. widespread
2. "She does a lot of voluntary work for the Red Crescent". "Voluntary" is an antonym for .... and .... (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. optional b. willing c. obligatory
   d. compulsory e. unpaid
3. "The government aims to improve public services."
   The word "improve" can be replaced by .... (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. enhance b. spurn c. decline
   d. damage e. develop
4. In a charity, the poor are looked after and helped for .... (البحيرة - ايتاى البارود ٢٠٢٤)
   a. free b. much money c. some money
   d. no money e. cash money

• ✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I followed the recipe exactly, but something .... wrong with the cake. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. did b. made c. got d. went
2. Do you have any suggestions for the voluntary work I could ....? (دمياط - السرو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. do b. make c. refuse d. think
3. Amal suffered from many .... problems during her childhood. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. healthy b. health c. death d. earth

4. The inventions and discoveries of our great scientists have .... a difference to our lives. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. done b. played c. made d. paid
5. Every time I .... a suggestion at work, my boss overrides it. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. make b. take c. do d. get
6. Which company do you work ....? (بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. up b. off c. for d. out
7. It is not always easy to .... new friends nowadays. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. take c. make d. give
8. My sister and I .... common interests.
   a. play b. solve c. make d. have
9. "He admitted the mistake he'd made." The word "admitted" in this sentence can be replaced by ....
   a. denied b. concealed c. confessed d. a & b

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

A summary of David Copperfield

(WB page 102)

David Copperfield **grew up**(1) with his mother and his **stepfather**(2), Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother **died**(3) and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to **leave**(4) school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had **nowhere**(5) to live.

Without(6) a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his **daughter**(7), Agnes, but David didn't **trust**(8) him.

Some time **later**(9), Uriah Heep **played a trick**(10) on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her.

When David found Uriah Heep, he **admitted**(11) that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him **give it back**(12) to her. Then David went travelling around **Europe**(13).

When David **returned**(14) to England, he **married**(15) Agnes and he became a **successful**(16) **writer**(17).

(1) يكبر
(2) زوج الأم
(3) يتوفى
(4) يترك
(5) لا مكان
(6) بدون
(7) ابنة
(8) يثق بـ
(9) فيما بعد
(10) يخدع
(11) يُقر بـ / يعترف
(12) يَرُد
(13) أوروبا
(14) يعود
(15) يتزوج
(16) ناجح
(17) كاتب

Three Egyptian teenagers

(WB page 103)

Tarek : In my opinion the Egyptian **Food Bank**(1) (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got **enough**(2) money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more carefully about food. I agree with what they are doing, and sometimes I give them food to help.

Samira : I have **experienced**(3) the work of Tomorrow's **Dreamer**(4) **Youth**(5) **Association**(6).

In my opinion, it **shows**(7) young people that they can **make a difference**(8), and it teaches them about other **cultures**(9) and **communities**(10). They are **doing a great job**(11) by helping to **educate**(12) a lot of young people.

Maher : The Egyptian **Red Crescent**(13) helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop **health problems**(14) from happening.
One day, I want to do some **voluntary work**(15) for them.

(1) بنك الطعام
(2) كافي
(3) يُجرِّب
(4) حالم
(5) شباب
(6) جمعية
(7) توضح / تُبيِّن
(8) يُحدِث فرقاً
(9) ثقافات
(10) مجتمعات
(11) يقوم بعمل رائع
(12) يُعلِّم
(13) الهلال الأحمر
(14) مشاكل صحية
(15) عمل تطوعي

2 Listening Texts




(SB page 30)

B. Let's talk about how to write a great **short story**(1). It's important to **plan**(2) your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the **main characters**(3).



Don't spend too much time describing places and people - your characters need to do something from the start.
In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something **goes wrong**(4). It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a **surprise for**(5) the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

(1) قصة قصيرة
(2) يخطط
(3) الشخصيات الرئيسية
(4) يفسد / يتعطل
(5) مفاجأة لـ

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثانى.

Exercises On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Karim is in the USA. So I haven't seen him .... the age of ten.
   a. for b. since c. already d. ever
2. Salma has never .... to go to hospital.
   a. needed b. needs c. need d. needing
3. Omar has lived in this house since he .... a child.
   a. had been b. was c. will d. is
4. I only bought my new camera last week, but I .... hundreds of photos with it so far.
   a. already take b. already took
   c. have already taken d. already taking
5. Hany can't play football because he .... his leg.
   a. broke b. has broken c. breaking d. had broken
6. Mona is in Cairo now. She .... to Alex.
   a. has gone b. go c. has been d. goes
7. I .... for five hours every day last week.
   a. has worked b. had worked c. worked d. have worked
8. .... you enjoyed your time at the museum ?
   a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Are
9. She has lived in London .... three years.
   a. since b. ago c. for d. during
10. He .... to Cairo. I'll wait for him until he comes back.
    a. goes b. has gone c. has been d. was going
11. Noha has .... cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
    a. already b. yet c. never d. ever
12. I haven't met him .... he moved to a new house.
    a. yet b. since c. ago d. when
13. We .... in Cairo since 1993.
    a. had living b. have lived c. lived d. are living

14. He .... come back home.
a. never b. has just c. already has d. just has

15. **A :** How long .... worked in Cairo ? **B :** Since 2008.
a. has he b. he has c. had he d. he had

16. He .... there for ten years. He intends to retire next year.
a. 'd worked b. worked c. 's working d. 's worked

17. **A :** .... yourself today? **B :** Yes, I've had a great time.
a. Have you enjoyed b. Are you enjoying
c. Do you enjoy d. Had you enjoyed

18. I .... my exam. I am celebrating my success with my family.
a. 've passed b. 'd passed c. 'll pass d. am passing

19. I .... Brazil twice up till now.
a. was visited b. visited c. 've visited d. am visiting

20. .... a long time since I last played football.
a. For b. It's c. It has d. It'll be

21. Nothing interesting .... since I last saw him.
a. has happened b. happen c. have happened d. had happened

22. The writer .... his book yet.
a. didn't finish b. has finished c. hasn't finished d. isn't finished

23. Wahid and Mohammed .... friends all their lives. They are often together.
a. will be b. has been c. have been d. were

2 Special cases

24. It is .... since we met.
a. three weeks b.1980 c. yesterday d. school days

25. Mustafa has .... the club. He is on his way there.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in

26. Mustafa has .... the club. He looks as if he has had a great time there.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in

27. Mustafa has .... the club for three hours. I wonder when he will return home.
a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in

28. I .... Brazil in 2014.
a. had been to b. have been in c. have been to d. went to

29. I last met him .... he moved to a new house.
 a. yet b. for c. since d. when

30. My grandfather .... ill over the last year. I hope he will get better soon.
 a. has been b. had been c. was d. was being

31. Ali and his family have never travelled since ....
 a. he gets married b. he marries c. his marriage d. married

32. He's been on holiday .... the last two weeks.
 a. while b. for c. when d. since

33. Now, Huda lives in extreme poverty فقر شديد because all the money she earned .... lost.
 a. had been b. had c. has been d. has

34. Have you finished reading that novel ....? That's amazing!
 a. ever b. just c. already d. yet

35. Since you .... your homework, you won't be allowed to go out.
 a. didn't do b. hadn't done c. haven't done d. had done

36. It has .... been the main concern إهتمام of parents to maintain a good future for their children.
 a. never b. ago c. just d. always

37. I didn't feel that a thief entered the flat since I .... the match on TV.
 a. watched b. had watched c. was watching d. have watched

3 Check your understanding

38. This is my house. I .... here for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived c. had lived d. had been lived

39. That was my house. I .... there for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived c. lived d. had been lived

40. He has just taken an aspirin. This means that he ....
 a. has taken an aspirin a moment ago b. has never taken an aspirin
 c. has taken an aspirin for ages d. took an aspirin a moment ago

41. Yara has never eaten shrimps. This means ....
 a. she doesn't eat shrimps b. she had never eaten shrimps
 c. she hasn't ever eaten shrimps d. she wasn't ever eaten shrimps

42. I have lived here in this city for ten years. What does this mean ?
 a. I no longer live in this city. b. I didn't live in this city.
 c. I have always lived in this city. d. I still live in this city.

PART THREE | Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه | للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

Extreme adjectives الصفات القوية

١ هي صفات ذات معني قوي مثل :

ex. - amazing رائع / مُذهل - terrible فظيع / رهيب - gigantic ضخم
- furious ساخط - ancient عتيق / قديم جداً - excellent ممتاز
- miserable بائس

٢ لا تستخدم (very / fairly) قبل الصفات القوية :

ex. - very amazing (✗) - fairly miserable (✗)

٣ لاحظ أن : صفة عادية + very = صفة قوية

ex. - ancient = very old - amazing = very good
- miserable = very unhappy

٤ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely بشكل مُطلَق - **utterly / entirely** كُليًا - **completely** تماما

ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient.

a / an كل / لكل

١ تُستخدم (a / an) بمعني (كل) قبل الكلمات الزمنية :

ex. - We go to school five days a week. - This car goes at 130 km an hour.

٢ تُستخدم (a / an) بمعني (لكل) قبل أسماء المقاييس والأوزان :

ex. - The apples are 25 pounds a kilo.

the + adj. صفة

عند استخدام (the) قبل الصفة التي ليس بعدها موصوف فإنها تتحول لإسم جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع:

the + **adj.** صفة = **the** + اسم جمع + **adj.** صفة

ex. - Poor people are not able to buy everything they need.
= The poor are not able to buy everything they need. **(Not: The poor is)**

the + اسم انسان

عند استخدام (the) قبل اسم إنسان مضافًا له (S) فإن ذلك يدل على الأسرة كلها وتأخذ فعل جمع :

- The Hassans were busy last week. **(Not: The Hassans is)**

the police

كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - The police have arrested some criminals.

one - ones

تُستخدم كلمة (one - ones) كضمير فاعل أو مفعول:

ex. - One should work hard to succeed. (One = A person / A student ...)
- I don't need this tablet. I want the black one. (one = tablet)
- Some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones. (ones = children who learned a skill)
- These are not my books. Mine are the ones on the table. (ones = books)

make + obj. + inf. / adj.

لاحظ استخدام الفعل (make) فى الصيغ التالية بمعنى (يجعل) :

Subj. فاعل + **make** + **obj.** مفعول + **adj.** صفة

= **Obj.** مفعول + **be** + **made** + **adj.** صفة

ex. - Sama's birth made them happy. = They were made happy by Sama's birth.

Subj. فاعل + **make** + **obj.** مفعول + **inf.** (معلوم)

= **Obj.** مفعول + **be** + **made** + **to** + **inf.** (مجهول)

ex. - I make Ahmed water the flowers. = Ahmed is made to water the flowers.

make + **adj.** صفة + **job** وظيفة

ex. - A sportsman makes a good police officer.

Nouns ending in (f / fe)

تتحول النهاية (f/ fe) في المفرد إلى (ves) في الجمع لبعض الحالات - لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

Singular		Plural
half	نصف	halves
knife	سكين	knives
leaf	ورقة نبات	leaves
life	حياة	lives
thief	لص	thieves
wife	زوجة	wives
wolf	ذئب	wolves
dwarf	قزم	dwarves / dwarfs
scarf	إيشارب (طرحة)	scarves / scarfs
calf	صغير البقر (عجل)	calves

وهناك استثناءات لهذه القاعدة مثل :

ex. - belief اعتقاد - beliefs - chief رئيس – chiefs - brief اختصار – briefs
- safe خزانة - safes - roof سقف - roofs - gulf خليج - gulfs

Making suggestions

لعمل اقتراحات نستخدم :

Let's + inf. .... هيا بنا ....

ex. - Let's go to the cinema.

We / You could + inf. .... يمكننا / يمكنك أن ....

ex. - We / You could go to the cinema.

I suggest + (inf. + ing) .... أقترح ....

ex. - I suggest going to the cinema.

I suggest + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) .... أقترح أن ....

ex. - I suggest (that) we / you go to the cinema.

What / How about + (inf. + ing) .....? ما رأيك في .....؟

ex. - What / How about going to the cinema?

Why don't we / you + inf. .....? لِمَ لا .....؟

ex. - Why don't we / you go to the cinema?

Exercise On Language Hints



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She was made .... all the house alone. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. clean b. to clean c. cleaning d. to cleaning
2. Leila usually .... twice a year. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
   a. checks her teeth b. get her teeth checked
   c. has her teeth checked d. has checked her teeth
3. .... are a small family.
   a. Ragab b. Ragab's c. Ragabs d. The Ragabs
4. The poor man is .... miserable.
   a. fairly b. absolutely c. absolute d. fair
5. I suggest .... the Plants' Island in Aswan.
   a. visit b. visiting c. to visit d. visited
6. Your success has .... us happy.
   a. made b. caused c. let d. allowed
7. The police .... looking for some escaping criminals.
   a. is b. has c. are d. have

8. Why don't you .... a dentist?
   a. to see   b. seeing   c. saw   d. see
9. Rodayna has two aunts. .... is a teacher and the other is a doctor.
   a. Another   b. One   c. Ones   d. Other
10. I suggest Sama .... to the park with us. She'll enjoy it there.
   a. go   b. went   c. has gone   d. was going
11. The disabled .... more care and interest.
   a. needs   b. has needed   c. need   d. were needed
12. How about .... the match in the stadium?
   a. to watch   b. watch   c. watching   d. to watching
13. I go to the park once .... week.
   a. in   b. a   c. at   d. on
14. The poor never .... enough money.
   a. have   b. has   c. are   d. is
15. An accountant محاسب .... a good manager.
   a. makes   b. does   c. scores   d. gives
16. My mobile rings at least three times .... hour.
   a. a   b. an   c. at   d. all

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

• ✪ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:** (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)

With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more **complicated**. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. However, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets. Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours, streets are so blocked that it takes a driver ages to get to their destination.

Despite these problems, most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than **they** deserve.

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. According to the passage, taking a public bus is a problem because ....
   a. it is expensive b. it is very fast
   c. bus drivers drive carelessly d. getting on and off the bus is difficult
2. The main idea of the passage is "........................".
   a. Traffic Rules b. Types of Cars
   c. Transport in cities d. Driving carelessly
3. According to the writer, possessing a car can be a trouble because ....
   a. traffic is incredible b. cars have to be left in the streets
   c. drivers are careless d. cars take a space in the garage
4. According to the passage, it takes drivers a long time to reach their destination when ....
   a. the streets are empty b. the drivers drive quickly
   c. it's rush hour d. the garages are full
5. The pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. taxi drivers b. taxis c. buses d. passengers
6. According to the passage, some taxi drivers are ....
   a. honest b. good c. greedy d. funny
7. The antonym of the word "**complicated**" is ....
   a. complex b. simple c. difficult d. impossible

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

عندما يُطلب منك الكتابة عن قصة ، يمكنك التركيز على النقاط التالية :

1 Which story have you chosen?
- ما القصة التى قمت باختيارها ؟

2 Who is the main character in the story? What is he/she like?
- من هى الشخصية الرئيسية فى القصة ؟ كيف يبدو / تبدو؟

3 Where does he / she live? What is his /her life like?
- أين تقيم تلك الشخصية ؟ وكيف هى حياته / حياتها ؟

4 Who are the other characters? How did they know the main character?
- من هى الشخصيات الأخرى ؟ كيف عرفوا الشخصية الأساسية ؟

5 How does the story start? What happens first? What happens next? And then?
- كيف تبدأ القصة ؟ ماذا يحدث أولًا ؟ ماذا يحدث بعد ذلك؟

6 What is the moral of the story?
- ما هو الدرس الأخلاقى فى القصة ؟

Model Essay

✪ **Write an eassy of about 150 words about a story you have read :**

The Old Man and the Sea

Reading is one of my favourite hobbies. In fact, I find reading both interesting and useful. I like reading novels. In this essay I'm going to write about a great novel called "The Old Man and the Sea".

The novel was written by Ernest Hemingway. It is about an old fisherman called Santiago. This fisherman was very poor. He wanted to catch a big fish to sell it for a lot of money.

Santiago had to sail far away into the sea. He was alone in his boat. The rod الصنارة caught a very big marlin. The marlin was bigger than the boat itself. It was impossible for Santiago to pull the fish into the boat.

Santiago waited until the fish was tired and pulled it behind the boat. Unfortunately, some sharks attacked the marlin and ate it. When Santiago reached the beach, the marlin was just a skeleton. Santiago was very tired. He went home and slept.

I like this story because it has a moral. One المرء should be patient. We should have determination إصرار. Despite being old and weak, Santiago tried and didn't give up يستسلم. We also learn that people need cooperation التعاون. To succeed in life, you need to work with others.

3 Writing

✪ **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:** (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)

Hard work is the key to success

....

....

....

....

....

4 Translation الترجمة

○ **A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

1. Try to draw a roadmap for your ambitions because a goal without a plan remains just a wish. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

a. حاول أن ترسم خارطة طريق لطموحاتك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.

b. حاول أن ترسم خريطة واضحة لطموحاتك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.

c. حاول أن تصمم خريطة مرنة لأمنياتك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.

d. حاول أن ترسم خارطة مستقبلية لأمانيك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.



2. To work in a team, you need to be sociable and cooperative. In a team, each member plays a role to achieve the whole task. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

a. يجب أن تكون اجتماعياً ومتعاوناً لكي تدير فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دوراً لتحقيق المهمة بأكملها.

b. يجب أن تكون اجتماعياً ومتعاوناً لكي تعمل ضمن فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دوراً لتحقيق كل المهام.

c. يجب أن تكون اجتماعياً ومتعاوناً لكي تعمل ضمن فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دوراً لتحقيق المهمة بأكملها.

d. يجب أن تكون جامعياً ومتعاوناً لكي تعمل ضمن فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دوراً لتحقيق المهمة بأكملها.

3. It can be useful to do more than one job in your career because you can have new experiences and learn new things. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)

a. قد يكون من المُفيد القيام بأكثر من وظيفة في حياتك العلمية، لأنه يمكنك اكتساب خبرات جديدة وتَعَلُّم أشياء جديدة.

b. قد يكون من المُفيد القيام بأكثر من وظيفة في حياتك العملية، لأنه يمكنك اكتساب خبرات جديدة وتَعَلُّم أشياء جديدة.

c. قد لا يكون من المُفيد القيام بأكثر من وظيفة في حياتك العملية، حيث لا يمكنك اكتساب خبرات جديدة وتَعَلُّم أشياء جديدة.

d. قد يكون من المُفيد القيام بوظيفة في حياتك المهنية، لأنه يمكنك اكتساب خبرات جديدة وتَعَلُّم أشياء جديدة.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. فوائد التكنولوجيا عديدة، وعلينا أن نختار ما يفيدنا وينفعنا ونترك ما يضرنا. (الإسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

a. The benefits of technology are various. However, most of it is no longer useful for us.
b. The benefits of technology are various; we have to choose useful ones and avoid harmful ones.
c. Technology varies in its benefits and we don't have to make use of it anymore.
d. Technology gives us various benefits; we've to avoid what is harmful for us.

٢. تلعب التنمية البشرية دوراً هاماً في تطوير مهارات الإنسان وقدراته وهذا يُمكّننا من الوصول إلى الاستفادة القصوى من إمكاناته في مختلف المجالات. (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

a. Human investment plays an important role in developing human skills and abilities. This enables us to reach the most benefit from their power in various fields.
b. Human development plays an important role in developing human skills and abilities. This enables us to get the most benefit from their abilities in various fields.
c. Human development plays an important rule in developing students' skills and abilities. This enables us to get the most benefit from its capabilities in various fields.

d. Human development plays an important role in developing human scales and abilities. This enables us to get the most benefit from its capabilities in a lot of fields.

٣. كثير من الشباب متحمسون للمشاركة في العمل الاجتماعي لكي يطوروا بلادهم، فالشباب هم أساس التطور لأي أمة لذلك تُولي الدول المتقدمة اهتماماً خاصاً بالشباب. (الإسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. A lot of young are interested in taking part in socialist work to develop their country. Young are the top of the development of any nation. Though, the developing countries pay special interest to youth.
b. A lot of youth are keen on taking part in social work to develop their country. Youth are the basis of the development for any nation, so the developed countries pay special attention to them.
c. Many youth are keen on participate in social work to develop their country. Youth are the basis of the development for any nation, so the underdevelopment countries pay special respect to youth.
d. Most young people are eager to participate in sociable work in order to develop their country. Young are the main for the development of any nation. Therefore, developing countries pay special attention to young.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

life

- **life - lives (n)** حياة - حيوات
  - My goal in life is to be a successful doctor.
  - Prices الأسعار have an effect أثر on people's lives.
- **live (d) (v)** يعيش / يحيا - يَسْكُن
  - I think people who lived in the past were happier.
  - Mohammed lives in Aswan.
- **alive (adj)** حَيّ / على قيد الحياة (لا تأتي قبل الموصوف)
  - This fish is alive. **(Not: This is an alive fish)**
- **live = living (adj)** ميّت dead ≠ حَيّ / على قيد الحياة (قبل الموصوف فقط)
  - People don't eat live animals. **(Not: ... animals that are live)**
- **live (adj)** مُسَجَّل prerecorded ≠ مُباشِر / على الهواء مباشرة
  - We all prefer watching live matches on TV.
- **lively (adj)** ملئ بالحيوية والنشاط
  - Sama is a lively child.
- **livelihood (adj)** مصدر دَخْل - مصدر رزق
  - Farming is the source مصدر of livelihood in villages.

association

- **association (n)** — إتّحاد / مُنظّمة / جمعية
  - This youth association helps poor people.
- **associate (n) = colleague** — زميل عمل / شريك
  - You need to work with your associates to finish the report التقرير.

- لاحظ التعبير التالي :

- **in association with** — بمصاحبة / بالتزامن مع
  - The green colour of trees usually comes in association with spring.
- **associate (d) (v)** — يُلازم / يُصاحِب / يأتي مع
  - Bad cough associates smoking.
- **associate (d) ... with (v)** — يربط بين ... و ...
  - People usually associate high price السعر with quality الجودة.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- be + associated with + شخص / شئ — يكون مُصاحِب أو مُلازِم لـ
  - Overweight الوزن الزائد is associated with health problems.
- associate with + شخص — يُلازِم / يُرافِق / يُصاحب
  - Don't associate with bad friends.

culture

- **culture (n)** — ثقافة
  - The culture of Arab people is different from European culture.
- **culture (n)** — حضارة
  - We are all proud فخورين of ancient Egyptian culture.
- **culture = cultivation (n)** — الزراعة
  - Rice culture needs a lot of water.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- western culture الثقافة الغربية - local culture الثقافة المحلية
- national culture الثقافة القومية - common / dominant culture الثقافة السائدة
- culture shock صدمة ثقافية

- **cultural (adj)** — ثقافي
  - There are cultural differences اختلافات between countries.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- cultural heritage الموروث الثقافي - multicultural society مجتمع متعدد الثقافات

- **cultured = cultivated (adj)** — مُثقَّف
  - Mr Nasser is a cultured person.

debt

- **debt (n)** — دَيْن
  - He found a second job to pay back his debts.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

• **be in debt to** — مَدين لـ
- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he is in debt.
- He was in debt to the bank.

• **be + heavily / deeply + in debt** — عليه ديون كثيرة
- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he is heavily in debt.

• **get / fall / run into debt** — يُصبح مديناً
- The old man can't retire يتقاعد because he got / fell / ran into debt.

• **owe debt of gratitude / thanks** — مدين بالشكر أو الامتنان
- I owe a debt of gratitude to my parents.

- ولاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a debt عليه دين
- clear the debts يسدد كل الديون
- write off / cancel a debt يتنازل عن الديون
- pay off debts يسدد الديون
- service a debt يسدد فوائد الديون
- a heavy debt دين كبير

• **indebted (to) (adj)** — مَدين / غارم
- He is indebted to a car company.

earn

• **earn (ed) (v)** — يكسب مال مقابل عمل
- Not many farmers earn a lot of money.

• **earn (ed) (v)** — يربح / يحقق أرباح
- This book earned two million dollars.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية :

• **earn (respect / a reputation ...)** — ينال (الاحترام / سمعة طيبة ...)
- He has earned the respect of all his friends.

• **earn a living** — يكسب رزقه من / مصدر رزقه هو
- He earns a living by selling fruit and vegetables.

- ولاحظ أيضاً :

- earn good money يكسب الكثير من المال
- earn a fortune يكسب ثروة

• **earner (n)** — كاسب / ذو أجر / مصدر دخل
- My father is the only earner in our family.
- This shop is our chief رئيسي earner.

• **earnings (n)** — دخل / ربح (دائماً جمع)
- His earnings are not enough for his family.

experience

• **experience (of / with) (n)** — تجربة حياتية / موقف (كلمة تُعد)
- I learned a lot from my childhood experiences.

- **experience (of / in / with) (n)** الخِبرة (كلمة لا تُعد)
  - Mr Ashraf has a lot of experience in teaching.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
  - have experience لديه خبرة
  - get / gain experience يكتسب خبرة
  - lack experience تنقصه الخبرة
  - past / previous experience خبرة سابقة

- **experience (d) (v)** يمر بتجربة - يتأثر بموقف / مشكلة - يُجَرِّب
  - People should experience things to learn from them.

- **experienced (in) (adj)** ذو خبرة / مُحَنَّك ≠ **inexperienced** عديم الخبرة / غير مُجَرِّب
  - Ashraf is an experienced teacher.

merchant

- **merchant (n)** تاجِر (شخص / شركة)
  - He makes a lot of money as a merchant.
- **merchandise (n)** بضائع - سلع
  - His stores مخازن are full of high-quality merchandise.

miserable

- **miserable = very unhappy (adj)** بائِس / تَعِيس / شَقِيّ
  - She has lost her job and family. She looks miserable.
- **miserable = very little / very bad (adj)** ضئيل / سيء جداً (قبل الاسم فقط)
  - His miserable income دَخل isn't enough for his family.
  - I was angry because of my team's miserable performance أداء سيئ.
- **misery (n)** تعاسة / شقاء / بؤس / معاناة
  - You don't know the misery of war الحرب and poverty الفقر.
- **miser (n)** بخيل
  - I'm sure he won't donate any money. He is a miser.

owe

- **owe (d)** + شخص + مبلغ مالى يدين لـ ... بـ ...
  - Omar owes Ali ten pounds. = Omar needs to pay ten pounds to Ali.
- **owe (d)** + مبلغ مالي + to + شخص يدين بـ ... لـ ...
  - Omar owes ten pounds to Ali.
- **owe (d)** + شخص + for + شيء يدين لـ ... مقابل ...
  - You owe me for the drinks.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- **owe** + شخص + a debt يدين بالفضل لـ
  - We owe our parents a debt.
- **owe** everything (it all) to + شخص يدين بكل شئ لـ
  - I owe everything to my family.
- **owe** + شخص + a lot / a great deal يدين لـ ... بالكثير من الفضل
  - She owes her mother a great deal.

prison

• prison (n) السِجْن

- Prison is the right place for criminals. **(Not: The prison …)**

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (prison) عند الحديث عنه كمكان لعقاب المجرمين كما في المثالِ السابق، لكن يمكن استخدام (the) في أي سياق آخر:

- Visitors to the prison wait here.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- go to prison يتم حبسه
- send … to prison يضع ... في السجن
- put … in prison يضع ... في السجن
- escape from prison يهرب من السجن
- be released from prison يُطلق سراحه من السجن
- let ……. out of prison يُخرِج .... من السجن
- get out of prison يخرج من السجن
- a prison sentence (term) حُكم بالسجن

• prisoner (n) سجين

- In this prison, there is a library for prisoners who like reading.

• imprisonment (n) عقوبة الحبس - مدة الحبس

- No one has seen him since his imprisonment.

• imprison (ed) (v) يحبس / يسجن - يقيد حرية

- He was imprisoned for selling drugs المخدرات.

youth

• youth (n) مرحلة الشباب (لا تُعدّ)

- I was very fit in my youth.

• youth (n) الشباب بوجه عام (اسم الجمع)

- The youth of Egypt are ready to help their country.

• youth – youths (n) شاب - شباب (تُعدّ)

- A group of youths were arrested for troublemaking إثارة الشغب last week.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis-	تُكَوِّن العكس	disabled	مُعاق
mis-	تعطى معنى بطريقة خاطئة	mistake misunderstand misspell	خطأ - يخطئ يُسئ فهم يتهجى بطريقة خاطئة
re-	يُعيد	review rewrite	يُراجع يُعيد كتابة
step-	أحد الأقارب (نتيجة الزواج من أحد الوالدين)	stepfather stepmother stepfamily	زوج الأم زوجة الأب أسرة زوج الأم أو زوجة الأب

3 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-able	تُكَوّن صفة	miserable	تعيس - بائس
-er	تُكَوّن اسم فاعل	dreamer	حالم
-ful	تُكَوّن صفة	successful	ناجح
-ing	تُكَوّن صفة / اسم	ending (n) amazing (adj)	نهاية مذهل
-ly	تُكَوّن ظرف	exactly	تماماً - بالتحديد
-al	تُكَوّن صفة / اسم	criminal factual (adj) arrival (n) refusal (n)	مجرم - إجرامي واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق وصول رفض

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The police .... his sudden fortune الثروة with the bank robbery السطو.
   a. paid b. mistook c. planned d. associated
2. .... animals are kept on farms.
   a. Alive b. Live c. Life d. Lives
3. Egypt was famous for cotton ....
   a. culture b. association c. capture d. section
4. I .... a feeling of nausea غثيان when I am on a boat.
   a. pay b. brainstorm c. feel d. experience
5. He applied for .... as a tour guide in a tourist company.
   a. work b. a work c. job d. a job

Advanced Exercise on Language

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I injured my knee and I haven't played football ....
   a. already b. never c. for d. since
2. We have lived here .... fall.
   a. yet b. already c. since d. for
3. Omar is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that ....
   a. I have seen many clever students like Omar
   b. I have seen many students as clever as Omar
   c. It is the first time for me to see a student who has this degree of cleverness
   d. Omar is not as clever as the students I have ever seen

Test on Unit 3

• Understand ○ Apply • Create





1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "My aunt is very generous." The antonyms of "generous" are ....
   a. wasteful b. miser c. jealous
   d. mean e. awful
2. "You can depend on him to do this job." He is .... (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. dishonest b. truthful c. unreliable
   d. honest e. lying

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I .... you an apology. I'm afraid I forgot to send Amanda that report. (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
   a. owl b. roar c. own d. owe
2. He has been doing three jobs to get out of .... (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
   a. debt b. debit c. doubt d. count
3. My father .... a good salary. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)
   a. beats b. earns c. gains d. wins
4. My uncle is a very famous .... He sells household appliances in large quantities.
   a. customer b. biologist c. criminal d. merchant
5. I really feel tired; too much work always makes me look ....
   a. deadly b. empty c. happy d. miserable
6. I have joined a youth .... to help with local community.
   a. treaty b. association c. hostel d. culture
7. Criminals are .... for their crimes.
   a. awarded b. rewarded c. honoured d. imprisoned
8. I'm over the moon; I .... the race. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. was winning b. have won c. had won d. won
9. My teacher is angry with me because I .... the same mistake twice. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. am making b. am made c. had made d. have made
10. Have you finished your task .... ? - Wow! You are very quick. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
    a. yet b. so far c. already d. since
11. Hany has .... the club. He is on his way there. (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
    a. gone to b. gone in c. been to d. been in
12. Dad .... to Paris. Let's see the presents he bought for us.
    a. has been b. has gone c. is going d. is being

13. **A :** Has your aunt ever been to Italy? **B :** Yes, she .... there a week ago. (الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. had b. has c. was d. has been

14. I haven't seen Ahmed .... the last meeting.

a. for b. since c. ago d. just

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)

There are many periods in a person's life. Each period has its pleasures and pains. The happiest person is the one who enjoys what each period gives them without wasting their time in useless things.

Childhood is a time when a child **relies** on parents who offer them everything they need such as food, clothes and money. During this period, there are few responsibilities. A child finds pleasure in playing in the rain, on the beach sand or even in the parks. But a child has pains since he is not free to do what they wish and they are always told what to do or to be punished for what they have done wrong.

When a child becomes a young man, he or she starts to earn his or her own living, and becomes free from the control of school and parents, and accepts more responsibilities. However, if they work hard, they can have the great happiness of seeing themselves make sustainable progress and build up themselves well in the society.

Wisdom and the ability to help other people come with the old age. Old people can enjoy seeing their children doing great things in life. Also, they may feel the happiness of having passed their life safely. At the same time, they may suffer from loneliness and illness.

1. This passage is mainly about "..............".

a. Childhood and its trouble b. Old age and loneliness
c. Periods of life d. Youth and hardworking

2. The underlined word "**relies**" can be replaced by ....

a. refuses b. depends c. rejects d. declines

3. The last paragraph can be summarized in "..............".

a. You're not free to do what you wish
b. The older you grow, the wiser you are
c. The elderly should be kept at home
d. Old people learn from children

4. Which period has fewer responsibilities? ....

a. Childhood b. Youth c. Old age d. Teenage

5. According to the passage, there are .... stages of life mentioned in the passage .

a. 2 b. 3 c. 4 d. 5

6. Compared to the child, the young man has .... responsibilities.
   a. fewer b. the same c. no d. more
7. In the writer's opinion, the happiest people are those who ....
   a. spend much time in bed b. waste time
   c. enjoy the merits of each life stage d. play all the time

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

There is no doubt that the only way to do great work is to love what you do. That's a common principal. (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)

a. لا يوجد شك أن الطريقة الأفضل للقيام بعمل رائع هي أن تحب ما تفعله، فهذا قانون عام.
b. لا يوجد شك أن الطريقة الشائعة للقيام بعمل مُبدع هي أن تحب ما تفعله، فهذا مبدأ عام.
c. لا يوجد شك أن الطريقة الوحيدة للقيام بعمل رائع هي أن تحب ما تفعله، فهذا مبدأ عام.
d. ما من شك أن الطريقة الوحيدة للقيام بعملية رائعة هي أن تحب ما تفعله، فهذا مبدأ شائع.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لابد أن يكون لكل فرد هدف عظيم في الحياة، ولابد أن يخطط جيداً ويعمل بجد من أجل تحقيق هذا الهدف. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

a. Everyone must have a great goal in life. They must also plain well and work hard in order to achieve this goal.
b. Everyone must have a great goal in life. They must also plan well and work hard in order to achieve this goal.
c. Everyone must have a great goal in life. They must also plan well and work hard in order to fail this goal.
d. Everyone must have a great goal in life. They must also plan well and work hardly in order to achieve this goal.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. How do you think Jim's luck saved him from Silver and his men? (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
2. Do you think that Silver was a good person? Why? (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)
3. "Looking for treasure always means danger". Why do you think Captain Smollett said this? (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)

The role of youth in building up our country

....
....
....
....
....
....

Revision 1 Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 106 : 109

PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

beat - beat - beaten (v)	يهزم	lying (adj)	ممدد - راقد
beginning (n)	بداية	marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية
boyhood (n)	صِبا - صبيانية	marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
champion (n)	بطل	move (d) (v)	ينتقل
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	national team (n)	المنتخب الوطني
competition (n)	مسابقة	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
completely (adv)	بالكامل	pocket (n)	جيب
dream - dreamed / dreamt	حلم - يحلم	puzzle (n)	لُغز
end (n)	نهاية / خاتمة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلي
final (n)	نهائي	recording (n)	التسجيل
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يَلي	run – ran - run (v)	يُدير - يجري
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	squash (n)	رياضة الاسكواش
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	strange (adj)	غريب
join (ed) (v)	ينضم	success (n)	النجاح
junior (n) (adj)	الناشئين	tiring (adj)	مُتعِب
lay - laid - laid (v)	يضع - تبيض	top (n)	أفضل - قمة
lie - lay - lain (v)	يرقد / يتمدد	twice (adv)	مرتين
lie - lied (v)	يَكذِب	vote (d) (v - n)	يُصوِّت / يقترع - تصويت / اقتراع

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Arsenal (n)	نادي أرسنال الإنجليزى	readers (n)	القُرّاء
Basel (n)	نادي بازل السويسرى	still (adv)	لا يزال
describe (d) (v)	يَصِف	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	team (n)	فريق
interesting (adj)	شَيِّق	times (n)	مَرّات
low (adj)	مُنخفض	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
main (adj)	رئيسي	wife (n)	زوجة

PART II READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Raneem El Weleily

(SB page 36)

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous **faces**[1]. She was world **champion**[2] of the **squash**[3] World Open in 2017, when she **beat**[4] another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also **twice**[5] **reached**[6] the **final**[7] in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's **top**[8] women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash **team**[9] when she was only ten. She became World **Junior**[10] Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first **competition**[11] as an **adult**[12] in 2009. She is now **married**[13] to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and **do puzzles**[14], but it is her **success**[15] at squash that has **inspired**[16] many young Egyptians to play the game.

(1) شخصيات
(2) بطل
(3) رياضة الاسكواش
(4) يهزم
(5) مرتين
(6) يصل إلي
(7) نهائي
(8) أفضل
(9) فريق
(10) الناشئين
(11) مسابقة
(12) راشد / بالغ
(13) متزوجة
(14) يحل الغاز
(15) النجاح
(16) يُلهم

Mohamed Elneny

(SB page 36)

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian **footballer**[1]. He is a **strong**[2] player, and he has played for the Egyptian **national team**[3] more than 60 **times**[4]. He has **scored**[5] more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and **moved**[6] from his **boyhood**[7] **club**[8] Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010. He played for Al-Mokawlon at the **same**[9] time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to **Switzerland**[10] and **joined**[11] **Basel**[12], one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join **Arsenal**[13].

He is **still**[14] good friends with Salah. "I'm happy to have been with him since the **beginning**[15] and he has not **changed**[16]," he says.

(1) لاعب كرة قدم
(2) قوي
(3) المنتخب الوطني
(4) مرّات
(5) يُحرز
(6) ينتقل
(7) صباً
(8) نادي
(9) نفس
(10) سويسرا
(11) ينضم إلي
(12) نادي بازل
(13) نادي أرسنال
(14) لا يزال
(15) بداية
(16) يتغير

How to write a short story ?

(SB page 38)

Why you write a long book when you can write a **short story**(1)? A short story can have 200 words or **less**(2). The writer can't **describe**(3) many people or places and so there aren't so many **adjectives**(4) in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a **middle**(5) and an **end**(6) to the story. And the story needs to be **interesting**(7), so we **include**(8) important information and an interesting **main**(9) character, but **perhaps**(10) only one. **In fact**(11), it can be interesting to write in **the first person**(12) (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the main **character**(13).

Readers(14) can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even his name, but something has to happen to him. This might be a **surprise**(15), a problem or something that **goes wrong**(16). Readers don't always **find out**(17) what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to **imagine**(18) the end of the story.

(1) قصة قصيرة
(2) أقل
(3) يَصِف
(4) صِفات
(5) وسط
(6) نهاية / خاتمة
(7) شَيِّق
(8) يُضمِّن
(9) رئيسي
(10) ربما
(11) في الحقيقة
(12) ضميرالمتكلم
(13) شخصية
(14) القُرَّاء
(15) مفاجأة
(16) يتعطل-يختل
(17) يكتشف
(18) يتخيل

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 37)

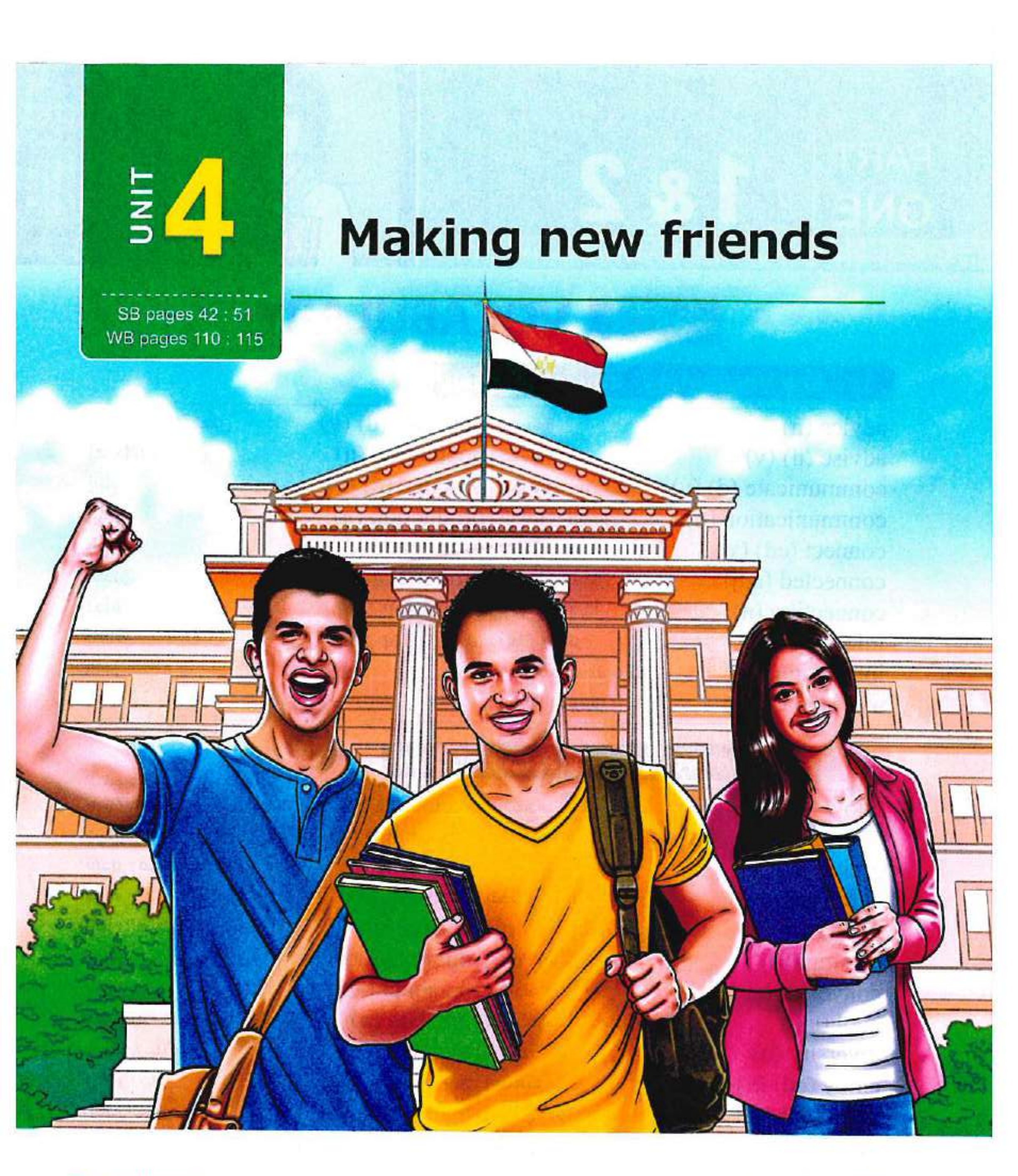
Presenter : Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam : Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists now that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are causing. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas.

It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara : My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs ! The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So, when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach ! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir : I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem ! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now, I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants !



Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading** : A magazine article about moving to a new town
- **Writing** : An email to a magazine's problem page
- **Listening** : A radio phone-in about bullying at school
- **Speaking** : Having a debate
- **Language** : Articles, Countable/ uncountable nouns
- **Life skills** : Respect for diversity; Communication

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 42 : 45 WB pages 110 & 111



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advice (n)	نصيحة	populate (d) (v)	يُعَمِّر مكان/يَقطُن
advise (d) (v)	ينصح	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	produce (d) (v)	يُنتِج
communication (n)	تواصل - اتصال	production (n)	إنتاج
connect (ed) (v)	يوصل - يربط	pronounce (d) (v)	ينطق
connected (adj)	مرتبط - متصل	pronunciation (n)	النُطق
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال	salutation (n)	تَحِيَّة
inform (ed) (v)	يُعلِم - يُخبِر	take ... for granted	يُسَلِّم ... بـ / يتقبل ... كأمر مُسَلَّم به
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات		
noticeboard (n)	لوحة الإعلانات		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	feel - felt (v)	تبدو/تُعطي إحساس
allowed (adj)	مسموح به	friendship (n)	صداقة
article (n)	مقال	grade (n)	تقدير - مرتبة - درجة
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	greeting (n)	تَحِيَّة
body (n)	مَتْن (صُلب الموضوع)	header (n)	راس الصفحة
closing (n)	إنهاء - خِتام	optional (adj)	اختياري
conversation (n)	محادثة	personal (adj)	شخصي
cool (adj)	علي الموضة - جميل / جذاب	practice (n)	ممارسة - تدريب
diversity (n)	التنوع	recipient (n)	متلقِّي - مُتَسَلِّم
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع	serious (adj)	خطير - جادّ
extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر	teammates (n)	زملاء الفريق
face (d) (n - v)	وجه - يواجِه	wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
advice نصيحة	an opinion someone gives to help you
connection رابط - علاقة	something that brings people together
noticeboard لوحة الإعلانات	a board on a wall that people put information on
take ... for granted يُسَلِّم ... بـ / يتقبل ... كأمر مُسَلَّم به	to think something is true or will stay the same

Exercises On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. An opinion someone gives to help you is a piece of ....

(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

a. advice b. advise c. noticeboard d. connection

2. A/An .... is something that brings people together.

a. cheating b. phone-in c. address d. connection

3. A .... is a board on a wall that people put information on.

a. list b. noticeboard c. circle d. contraction

4. When you think something is true or will stay the same, then you ....

a. find it difficult b. find it easy
c. take it easy d. take it for granted

2 Key vocabulary

5. The results of the exam will be pinned on the school ....

(الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. playground b. dairy c. noticeboard d. activity

6. It is believed that there is a .... between pollution and the death of trees. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)

a. collection b. communication
c. connection d. tradition

7. Most people take clean water for ...., but not all places have it.

(أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)

a. granted b. given c. having d. done

8. It is known that working hard is .... to stress. (الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. connected b. contacted c. commented d. communicated

9. Use electronic dictionaries to know the .... of new words.

(البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

a. production b. population c. salutation d. pronunciation

10. Consult your dictionary if you can't .... a word correctly.

(الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)

a. produce b. pollute c. pronounce d. answer

11. Ask for your teacher's .... on how to prepare for the exam.

(القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٤)

a. a advise b. advises c. advisor d. advice

12. There should be some kind of .... between you and your relatives.

(كفر الشيخ - بيلا ٢٠٢٤)

a. conservation b. condensation c. communication d. pollution

13. Most of the world's .... live in cities. (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٤)
a. production b. pronunciation c. pollution d. population
14. I was .... that I got the best marks in the exam. (الفيوم - سنورس ٢٠٢٣)
a. asked b. advised c. performed d. informed
15. The .... of solar energy depends on light from the sun. (البحيرة - دمنهور ٢٠٢٣)
a. pronunciation b. salutation c. population d. production
16. The old family house is .... by grandparents. (الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٣)
a. polluted b. populated c. pollution d. population
17. Whales are killed for the oil and the food they ....
a. eat b. get c. drink d. produce
18. You start an email with the opening ....
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
19. Our teacher always .... us to study hard to get high marks. (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٢)
a. advises b. devise c. device d. advice

3 Important Vocabulary

20. It is important to respect the .... of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours. (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
a. diversity b. leader c. friendship d. punctuation
21. Please, don't add your .... details to a website. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
a. person b. personality c. personal d. persons
22. This question is ....; you can leave it. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
a. compulsory b. easy c. social d. optional
23. He is wearing .... new clothes. I like them. (البحيرة - أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. coal b. call c. cool d. clay
24. If you want to .... good health, avoid smoking. (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٢)
a. follow b. be c. enjoy d. having
25. Did you form any close .... while you were at school? (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. friendly b. a friend c. friendships d. friends'
26. Some parents have bad memories of their own .... years. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٤)
a. teenage b. teenager c. marvellous d. splendid
27. You won't succeed if you don't have support from other ....
a. contractions b. diversity c. salutations d. teammates
28. He becomes nervous when he .... a difficult situation.
a. stresses b. faces c. welcomes d. drops
29. His .... clothes make a lot of people admire him.
a. fashioned b. fashionable c. cold d. old-fashioned

30. People who are sociable اجتماعي find it easy to start .... with others.
a. contractions b. problems c. conversations d. diversity

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do/take	extra practice	يقوم بتدريبات إضافية	**get**	easier	يُسَهِّل/ يجعل ... أسهل
do	team sports	يمارس رياضات جماعية	**give**	advice on	ينصح بخصوص
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة	**go**	online	يدخل على الإنترنت
feel	better	يشعر بتحسُّن	**join**	clubs	ينضم لأندية
	at home	يشعر بالراحة	**make**	friends	يُكَوِّن صداقات
	connected to	لديه ارتباط بـ		a connection	يربط/يُدرك العلاقة
	like	يرغب فى / يريد - يشعر كأنه	**pass**	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	so hard	تبدو صعبة/صلبة جدًا	**start**	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
	stressed	يشعر بضغوط		a new school	ينتقل لمدرسة جديدة

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
avoid	يتجنب	ignore, neglect
communicate	يوضح	convey
closing (n)	إنهاء - خِتام	conclusion, end, ending
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال	link, relationship, relation
cool (adj)	علي الموضة / جميل / جذاب	fashionable
diversity	التنوع - التعددية	variety

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
agree(d) (v)	يوافق	disagree, refuse, turn down	يرفض
angry(adj)	غاضب	contented, satisfied, pleased	راضي - سعيد
avoid	يتجنب	confront, face	يواجه
connection	ارتباط - اتصال	disconnection, separation	انفصال
forget	ينسي	remember	يتذكر
heating	التسخين - التدفئة	cooling, freezing	التبريد / التجميد
kind(adj)	طَيِّب - عطوف	unkind	سيء / قاسي
optional(adj)	اختياري	compulsory, obligatory	إجباري
personal(adj)	شخصي / خاص	public	عام

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	part of a team	عضو في فريق
ask ... to your house	تدعو ... لمنزلك	pieces of advice	نصائح
at breaktime	في الفسحة	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عال
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
instead of	بدلًا من	revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات
make it easier	يجعل من الأسهل	show the reason for	يوضِّح السبب
nursing people	تمريض/رعاية الناس	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
on my own	بمفردي	stressed about	مضغوط بشأن

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

address ... by	يخاطب ... بـ	go out (with)	يخرج (مع)
ask for	يطلُب	move to	ينتقل إلي
check ... for	يفحص ... من أجل	revise for	يراجع من أجل
come out	يخرج - تَصْدُر	talk about	يتحدث عن
connect with	يرتبط بـ - يربط بـ	talk to	يتحدث إلي
focus on	يُرَكِّز علي		

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

practice / practise

- **practice (n)** ممارسة - تدريب
  - You need more practice to achieve more progress .تحقق المزيد من التقدم
- **practise (v)** يمارس - يتدرب

- لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية الأمريكية تُستَخدَم (practice) كإسم وفعل:

  - I practised / practiced speaking English by talking to my online English friends.
- **do / take practice** يؤدي تمرين
  - He did the guitar practice.

advise / advice / a tip

- **advise (on / about / to) (v)** ينصح ... بخصوص / أن
  - I advised her to work hard.
- **advice (on / about) (n)** نصيحة بخصوص
  - I gave him advice about his future.

- لاحظ أن كلمة (advice) لا تُعد وتُعامل معاملة المفرد.

- I gave him an / one advice. (✗)
- I gave him some many / a few / several advices. (✗)
- I gave him two / three advices. (✗)
- I gave him some advice. (✓)
- I gave him a piece of advice. (✓) - I gave him pieces of advice. (✓)

• **tip - tips (n)** نصيحة - نصائح
- I gave him a tip about his future.

noticeboard (n)

• **noticeboard (n)** لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية البريطانية)
- You can find the company's email on the noticeboard.

• **bulletin board (n)** لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)
- You can find the company's email on the bulletin board.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

• ✪ MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "Check your internet connection, please." "Connection" is the opposite in meaning to "............" and "............". (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)
   a. contact b. disconnection c. touch
   d. separation e. interaction
2. I think I'll take your .... and buy the blue shirt. (الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)
   a. ability b. time c. suggestion d. means e. advice
3. Tourism enables us to see .... of customs and traditions around the world. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. anxiety b. variety c. society d. vacancy e. diversity
4. "This room has under floor heating, isn't it wonderful?" The antonyms of the word "heating" are .... and .... (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
   a. warming b. cooling c. signing d. deleting e. freezing
5. I was .... when my computer stopped working properly. (أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. pleased b. careful c. furious d. glad e. angry
6. "You shouldn't avoid your problems." The antonyms of "avoid" in this sentence are .... and .... (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. ignore b. confront c. follow d. improve e. face
7. I haven't decided yet which club I should .... (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. join b. member c. apply d. support e. attend

8. "He must be happy because he has .... his final exams.
(الإسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)
a. passed b. succeeded c. succeeded in
d. failed e. managed to

9. After some time, I started to feel .... and I calmed down.
a. at home b. better c. stressed d. so hard e. like

10. "My father is angry with my brother." The adjective 'angry' here is antonymous with ....
a. contented b. discontented c. satisfied d. dissatisfied e. hungry

11. You can address someone by their ....
a. dress b. money c. title d. skill e. name

• ✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your kindness is sometimes taken .... by people. (سوهاج - البَلْينا ٢٠٢٤)
a. for granted b. by granting c. for granting d. by granted

2. My sister is always shy and finds it difficult to .... friends.
(الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
a. give b. make c. do d. look

3. The novel .... in 2005 and then there were many editions.
(الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)
a. received b. came out c. published d. introduced

4. Optional and compulsory are .... (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)
a. opposites b. antonyms c. synonyms d. a & b

5. Check the text .... mistakes.
a. for b. on c. with d. by

6. Stevenson's "Treasure Island" was a great .... (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)
a. successful b. success c. succeed d. succession

7. Many people feel .... when they start a new school. (الإسماعيلية أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
a. stressed b. stress c. stressful d. stressfully

8. "It's taken for granted" means .... (البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٤)
a. unfortunately, b. undoubtedly, c. unwillingly, d. unsafely,

9. I don't know the reason .... his frequent absence these days.
(الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. for b. with c. why d. at

10. He can't .... a connection between them.
a. do b. make c. have d. take

11. I don't .... online until I have finished all my jobs.
a. do b. go c. have d. make

12. .... team sports helps you mix تختلط with others and be sociable اجتماعي.

a. Doing b. Going c. Calling d. Making

13. Civilized مُتحضر people show respect .... diversity.

a. for b. from c. at d. without

14. We went to a .... to buy flowers. (سوهاج – المراغة ٢٠٢٣)

a. nursery b. nursing c. planets d. plants

15. You need some more .... to be better at goalkeeping.

a. practice b. practise c. practises d. practised

PART III READING & LISTENING

Reading Texts

New in town

(SB page 43)

It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the **paper**[1] and pens you need. You're **wearing**[2] **cool**[3] new clothes. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school **feels**[4] so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel **stressed**[5], but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.



Don't **take it for granted**[6] that other students will start a **conversation**[7]. Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves.

Try[8] asking them about their **favourite**[9] **subjects**[10] or which sports they like and don't ask too many **personal**[11] questions. You can only **make friends**[12] if you **spend**[13] time with them! The best way to do this is to **join**[14] clubs or do **team sports**[15] you like. **Go online**[16] or look at the **noticeboard**[17] at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your **teammates**[18] will feel **connected**[19] to you and that **connection**[20] could become a **friendship**[21].

(1) ورق
(2) يرتدي
(3) جميل / جذاب
(4) تبدو / تُعطي إحساس
(5) مضغوط (نفسيًا)
(6) يكون على يقين / يظن أنه من المُسلَّم به
(7) محادثة
(8) يُجرِّب - يحاول
(9) مُفضَّل
(10) موضوعات
(11) شخصي
(12) يُكوِّن صداقات
(13) يقضي
(14) ينضم إلى
(15) رياضات جماعية
(16) يدخل على الإنترنت
(17) لوحة الإعلانات
(18) زملاء الفريق
(19) مرتبط
(20) الارتباط
(21) صداقة

While you're **busy**[22] talking to other students, don't **forget**[23] to study. **Remember**[24] to do your homework, so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

(22) مشغول
(23) ينسى
(24) يتذكر

(SB page 44)

To : problems@teen-magazine.com
Subject : Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!
Dear **Aunt**[1] Carol,

I think it is difficult to make friends. I don't have any friends at my school. I am always **on my own**[2] at **break-time**[3]. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me, but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

(1) عمة / خالة
(2) وحيد
(3) وقت الفسحة

(SB page 44)

To : problems@teen-magazine.com
Subject : Help! I'm really stressed!
Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard at school, but I'm really **stressed**[1] about some **exams**[2] I have next week. The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very difficult. The last exam is in a **subject**[3] I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better. I need some advice about how to **relax**[4], please.

(1) مضغوط
(2) امتحانات
(3) موضوع / مادة
(4) يسترخي

(WB page 111)

If you want to **pass**[1] your exams, my advice is to always do your homework. Remember the information that your teacher gives you about the exam because it will help you. For a week or two before any exams, don't go out with your friends. **Save**[2] your money and do some **extra**[3] practice instead. It'll be really useful!

(1) تجتاز
(2) يوفر - يدخر
(3) زائد - إضافي




It is not easy to be a **teenager**[1] and students often need some help when they are at school. So, what problems do they have? Some students **feel like**[2] they don't have time to **revise**[3] for exams. They can also feel stressed about the work they get for homework.

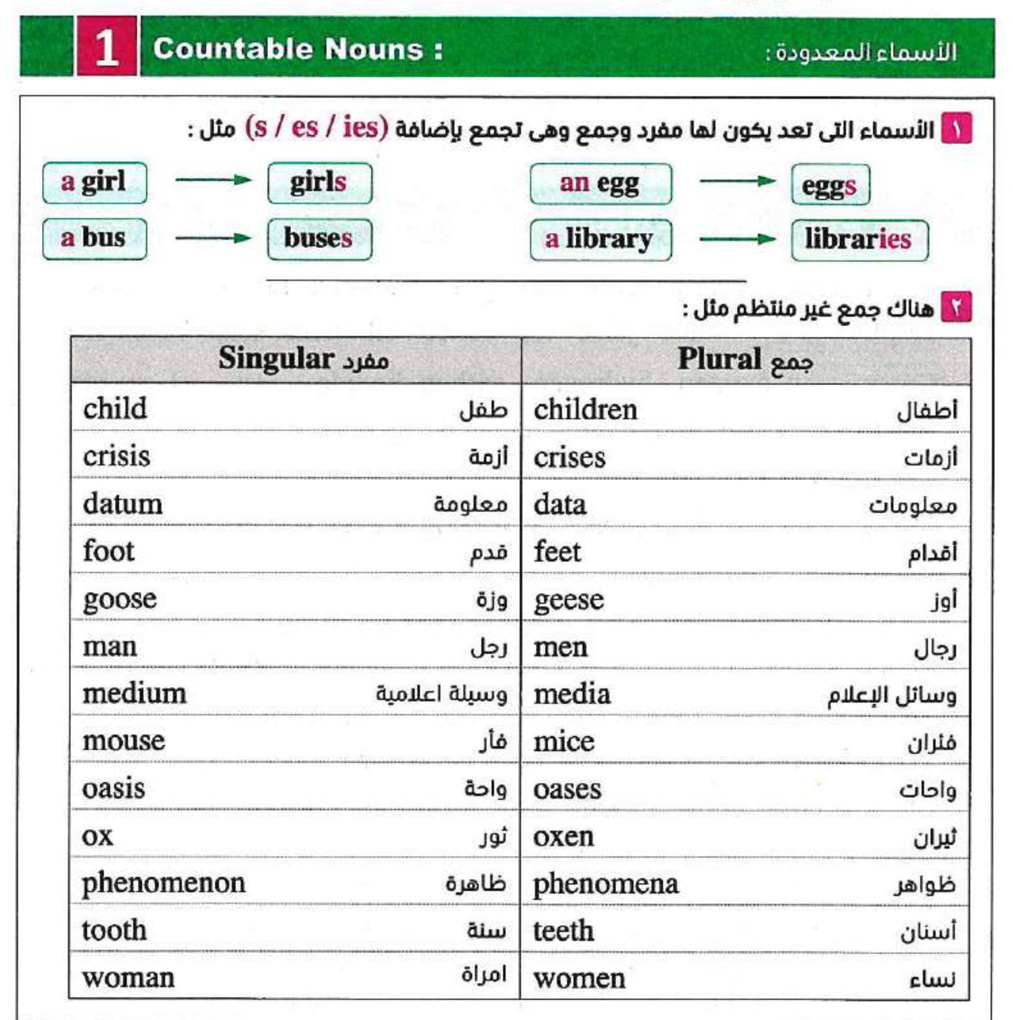
So, who can they ask for some advice? They can always ask a teacher or their family. If they have a good friend, he or she can help too.

(WB page 111)

(1) مُراهِق
(2) يشعر كأنه
(3) يُراجِع

PART IV LANGUAGE

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة



1 Countable Nouns : الأسماء المعدودة :

١ الأسماء التى تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهى تجمع بإضافة (s / es / ies) مثل :

a girl → girls
a bus → buses
an egg → eggs
a library → libraries

٢ هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular مفرد		Plural جمع	
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة اعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات
ox	ثور	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امرأة	women	نساء

٣ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتى :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
one	- One student got the full mark.
every / each	- Every player in the team should train hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
this / that	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

٤ قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتى :

these هؤلاء - **those** أولئك - **some** بعض - **any** أي - **many** كثير - **a few** قليل - **a lot of** كثير من - **lots of** كثير من - **several** عديد - **two** - **three** ....

ex. - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

2 Uncountable Nouns : الأسماء غير المعدودة :

١ الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد، وتشمل ما يلى :

1. **Liquids** السوائل water - juice - tea - coffee.- oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.
2. **Gases** الغازات oxygen - hydrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون...etc.
3. **Meals** الوجبات breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper
4. **School subjects** المواد الدراسية
history - mathematics - physics الفيزياء - biology الأحياء ... etc.
5. **Languages** اللغات English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.
6. **Different activities** الأنشطة المختلفة
reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.
7. **Sports** الرياضات football - volleyball -basketball - swimming... etc.
8. **Materials** أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام coffee - glass - gold - iron الحديد - lime stone الحجر الجيرى - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.
9. **Natural phenomena** الظواهر الطبيعية
lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain ... etc.
10. **Abstract nouns** الأسماء المجردة honesty امانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية - confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم - evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر ... etc.

11. Other nouns jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish - equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work - clothing الملبس - electricity الكهرباء - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب - luggage امتعة - machinery ماكينات - news - information - oil - advice - water - music - bread - cloth القماش .... etc.

٢ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات والتعبيرات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that.....

ex. - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

٣ لا يمكن استخدام (an - a - one - those - these) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

ex. - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

٤ يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الاسماء التي لا تُعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

ex. - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

٥ الأسماء غير المعدودة يأتى معها فعل يُستخدم مع صيغة المفرد :

ex. - Meat is cooked better at home. - Has milk got a lot of proteins ?
- Does exercise make you healthy ?

3 Quantifiers : التعبيرات الكمية والعددية :

1. a lot of - lots of كثير من **+ plural** جمع **/ uncountable** لا يُعد

- تستخدم (a lot of / lots of) في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد :

ex. - I have a lot / lots of books. - She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

2. many كثير من - عديد **+ plural** جمع

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد فى صيغة الجمع وتفضل فى النفي والاستفهام :

ex. - Have you got many books ?
- Yes, I have got a lot of books. - No, I haven't got many books.

3. much كثير من **+ uncountable** لا يُعد

- تأتى قبل اسم لايعد وتفضل فى النفى والاستفهام :

ex. - Did you drink much coffee ?
- Yes, I drank a lot of coffee. - No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4. a few - few قليل **+ plural** جمع

a few = some / a small number
few = not many / almost none

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل :

ex. - There are a few people sitting at the back of the hall.
- He has few interests outside his work.

5. **a little - little قليل** + **uncountable لا يُعد**

a little = some / a small amount
little = not much / almost nothing

- تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة :

ex. - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6. **some بعض**

- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Affirmative الإثبات
ex. - There are some apples in the kitchen.
- The doctor gave me some medicine.

2. Offering الأسئلة فى حالة تقديم عروض
ex. - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?

3. Request الأسئلة فى حالة الطلب
ex. - Can you give me some paper and some pens?

7. **any أى**

- تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Negative النفى
ex. - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام
ex. - Is there any cheese in the fridge?

3. hardly .... any = almost no
ex. - There is hardly any milk left.

4. any .... at all
ex. - I don't have any money at all.

- لاحظ ما يلى :

no + فعل مثبت = **any** + فعل منفى

ex. - He hasn't got any friends. = He has got no friends.

اسم + **no** + **verb to be** = اسم + **verb to be** منفى

ex. - I am not a teacher. = I am no teacher.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 عندما تربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فإن الفعل بعدهما يكون جمعًا في كل الاحوال :

ex. - Meat and chicken are sources of protein.
- You and I have to leave early.

٢ الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول مفرد أو لا يُعد هي (is/was/has/inf. + s/es/ies):
ex. - This man is kind. - The car was repaired. - Milk makes us healthy.

٣ الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول جمع هي(are / were/ have / infinitive):
ex. - These men are kind. - The cars were repaired.

Notes for Advanced level ملاحظات للفائقين

١ يُمكن أن تُستخدم (many - much) في الجملة المُثبتة في الحالات التالية :
أ. تستخدم (many - much) فى الجمل المثبتة إذا جاء قبلهما ما يلي :

so / very / as / too + much

ex. - I have so much work to do. - She has put too much salt in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many

ex. - I saw too many people in the street. (Not : too a lot of)
ex. - He has so many friends on Facebook. (Not : so lots of)

ب. اذا كانت many / much فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة :
ex. - Many students find maths difficult. = Many find maths difficult.

٢ بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل فى المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى المقصود:

sheep خروف - غنم / **deer** غزال - غزلان / **fish** سمكة - سمك / **aircraft** طائرة - طائرات / **spacecraft** مركبة فضاء - مركبات فضاء

ex. - A deer is running away from a tiger.
- Some deer are standing in the shade ظل of a tree.

٣ عند استخدام the قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلي اسم جمع و تأخذ دائما فعل جمع :

the poor الفقراء / **the rich** الأغنياء / **the disabled** المعاقين / **the deaf** المصابين بالصمم ...

ex. - The poor are in need of our help. = Poor people are in need of our help.

٤ هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل :

cattle	ماشية	jeans	بنطلون جينز	scissors	مقص
clothes	ملابس	people	الناس	shorts	بنطلون قصير
congratulations	مبروك	pliers	زردية	trousers / pants	بنطلون
glasses	نظارة	police	الشرطة		

ex. - Your clothes are dirty. - Many congratulations, Rody.

٥ الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضهما البعض دائما تأخذ فعل جمع (الأمثلة فى الجدول السابق):
ex. - My glasses were broken yesterday.
- Your trousers are very fashionable.

ويمكن استخدام (a pair of) قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة (pair) :
ex. - A pair of sunglasses was on the table.
- Five pairs of socks were bought for me.

٦ بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل :

Uncountable (لا تُعد)		Countable (تُعد)	
business	عمل	a business - businesses	شركة / مشروع
chicken	لحم الدجاج	a chicken - chickens	دجاجة
coffee	قهوة	a coffee - coffees	فنجان قهوة
cold	البرد عموما	a cold - colds	نزلة برد
experience	خبرة	an experience - experiences	تجربة حياتية
glass	الزجاج	a glass - glasses	كوب زجاجي
hair	الشعر	a hair - hairs	شعرة
iron	الحديد	an iron - irons	مكواة
light	الضوء	a light - lights	مصباح كهربي
orange	اللون البرتقالي	an orange - oranges	برتقال
paper	ورق الكتابة	a paper - papers	جريدة / وثيقة
time	الوقت	a time - times	مَرّة

ex. - I don't like orange. I like green. - I ate an orange.
- Iron conducts heat and electricity. - I need an iron to press my shirt.

٧ يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالاتي :

استخدام (a bit - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه في المفرد وفى الجمع (bits - pieces) :
- She gave me a piece (a bit) of advice.
- She gave me pieces (bits) of advice.

Exercises On Language ○ Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I told the customs officer that I didn't have .... luggage. (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. many b. plenty c. much d. few
2. Would you like .... soup before the meal? (بني سويف - الواسطى ٢٠٢٣)
   a. some b. a c. any d. few
3. Money .... into the area by the tourists, so they are a source of the national income. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)
   a. brought b. brings c. are brought d. is brought
4. My pair of glasses .... nowhere to be found. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)
   a. are b. is c. aren't d. isn't
5. Physics .... played a very important role in invention. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. was b. were c. has d. have

6. My pants............ some holes in them. (البحيرة - أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

a. are b. is c. have d.has

7. Fortunately, the news .... as bad as we had expected. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)

a. wasn't b. weren't c. haven't been d. don't

8. This species of animals .... in danger of being extinct nowadays. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)

a. is b. are c. has d. have

9. I used my brother's glasses while mine .... (أسوان - كوم أمبو ٢٠٢٣)

a. were repairing b. was being repaired
c. were being repaired d. was repairing

10. **A:** How .... chocolate do you need for your friends?
B: Ten bars, please. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)

a. often b. heavy c. many d. much

11. Ahmed bought a lot of .... for his new flat.

a. new furnitures b. new furniture c. a new furniture d. furnitures

12. How .... kilos of meat do you need, Madam?

a. long b. many c. much d. often

13. Hossam doesn't like city life as there's always too much ....

a. voices b. noise c. cars d. shops

14. .... people live in the country today than in the past.

a. Little b. Less c. Few d. Fewer

15. I've had so many jobs to do and so .... time.

a. a few b. few c. a little d. little

16. There .... three pairs of scissors in the drawer.

a. is b. are c. was d. has

17. How .... money do you have?

a. much b. few c. several d. many

18. He bought .... blue shorts.

a. a b. an c. some d. any

19. There .... plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.

a. is b. are c. was d. were

20. I don't have .... time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.

a. few b. much c. no d. many

21. Could I have only .... orange to eat?

a. some b. no word c. many d. an

22. There .... a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing.
    a. is b. was c. have d. are
23. .... there many hotels in Aswan?
    a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had
24. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take .... photographs.
    a. a b. some c. any d. many
25. Her clothes .... to be ironed.
    a. has needed b. needs c. need d. is needing
26. There .... only a little accommodation إقامة available in this hotel.
    a. are b. were c. do d. is
27. We met .... interesting people at the party.
    a. some b. any c. much d. a little
28. Ashraf has a lot of good ....
    a. an idea b. idea c. ideas d. some ideas
29. I haven't got .... money left. I need to borrow some.
    a. a few b. many c. little d. much
30. I must buy some bread. I hardly have .... left in the kitchen.
    a. much b. any c. many d. some
31. Try to reduce the .... of cups of tea you drink a day.
    a. amount b. quantity c. number d. some
32. There aren't .... in this town. Only two.
    a. some hotels b. any hotels c. many hotels d. much hotels
33. The money of the books .... on the table.
    a. are b. were c. has d. is
34. How .... are coming to the party?
    a. many peoples b. many people c. much people d. any people
35. The police .... questioning some people.
    a. is b. was c. are d. have
36. He failed to carry out his duties يقوم بواجباته as a manager as he didn't have ....
    a. many experience b. few experiences
    c. some experiences d. much experience
37. .... congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.
    a. A b. Any c. Much d. Many

38. There wasn't .... traffic on the road. Only a few private cars.

a. many   b. much   c. little   d. a few

39. My .... are in my bag.

a. a glass   b. pair of glasses   c. glass   d. glasses

40. Those sheep .... fat.

a. is   b. are   c. was   d. has been

41. There .... a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.

a. is   b. are   c. has   d. were

42. My reading glasses .... missing.

a. had   b. was   c. is   d. are

43. This poor woman has ....

a. child   b. a few child   c. little children   d. much children

44. We hardly heard .... news of him since he left the company.

a. any   b. some   c. many   d. much

45. Knowledge of foreign languages .... necessary.

a. is   b. are   c. have   d. were

2 Check your understanding

46. "Little children travel on the train for free." This means ....

a. not many children travel on the train for free

b. a few children travel on the train for free

c. little number of children travel on the train for free

d. young children travel on the train for free

47. " I have got no money left." I mean that ....

a. I have little money left   b. I have very little money left

c. I don't have any money left   d. I have some money left

48. "Ali is not a doctor." Which of the following gives the same meaning?

a. Ali is no doctor.   b. Ali has no job.

c. Ali doesn't like doctors.   d. Ali is a professor.

49. Some people like watching basketball, but .... prefer football.

a. any   b. many   c. people   d. everyone

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4





PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bully (ied) (v)	يتنمَّر - يُبلطِج	nurse (n)	ممرضة
bully (n)	بلطجي - مُتنمِّر	nursing (n)	التمريض
bullying (n)	البلطجة - التنمُّر	phone-in (n)	بَرنامَج يُشارِك فيه الجمهور هاتِفيًا
cheat (ed) (v - n)	يغش - غشاش	police (d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط
cheating (n)	الغش	police (n)	الشرطة
nurse (d) (v)	تُمَرِّض - ترعي المرضي	policing (n)	فَرْض الأمن والانضباط

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

behave (d) (v)	يتصرف/يَسلك	laugh (ed) (v/n)	يضحك - ضحكة
concerned (adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	list (ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يضع في قائمة
copy (ied) (n - v)	نُسخة - ينسخ	lonely (adj)	وحيد - منعزل
debate (d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يناقش	nasty (adj)	قبيح - ذميم
effect (n)	أثر	rucksack (n)	حقيبة الظَّهر
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل / يتشاجر مع	scared (adj)	مرعوب
hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخفِي - يَخْتَبِئ	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
highlight (ed) (n - v)	الجزء الأهم - يُبْرِز	welcome (d) (v)	يُرَحِّب
host (ed) (n - v)	مضيف - يستضيف		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
bully (ied)(v) يتنمَّر - يبتز	to threaten يهدد to hurt someone or frighten يخيف them, especially someone smaller or weaker
bully (n) بلطجي - مُتنمِّر	someone who uses their strength قوة or power to frighten or hurt يؤذي يُخيف someone who is weaker أضعف
bullying (n) البلطجة - التنمُّر	the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker
cheat (ed)(v) يغش	to act in a dishonest غير أمينة way in order to gain يحصل علي an advantage, especially خاصة in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheat (n) غشاش	someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.

cheating (n) الغش	acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
nurse (d)(v) تُمَرِّض - ترعى المرضى	to look after someone who is ill or injured
nurse (n) ممرضة	someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital
nursing (n) التمريض	the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old
phone-in (n) بَرنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفيًا	a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary عادي people expressing يعبّر عن opinions or asking questions over the telephone
police (d)(v) يفرض الأمن والانضباط	to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property الملكية are protected محمي, using a police force قوة
police (n) الشرطة	the people who work for an official organisation هيئة رسمية whose job is to catch criminals القبض علي المجرمين and make sure that people obey يُطيع the law القانون

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. When you use your muscles to scare someone, this is called ....
(القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية ٢٠٢٤)

a. tolerance b. patience c. bullying d. kindness

2. A/An .... is the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something. (البحيرة - أدكو ٢٠٢٤)

a. impact b. advantage c. lettuce d. load

3. A/An .... is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)

a. expert b. bully c. archaeologist d. role model

4. .... is someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.

a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating

5. .... means to act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
   a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheater
6. .... is the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old.
   a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse
7. A .... is a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary people expressing opinions or asking questions over the telephone.
   a. talk show b. phone-in c. programme d. film
8. To .... is to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected , using a police force.
   a. police b. policed c. the police d. policing

2 Key vocabulary

9. .... are cowards. They only look strong against the weak. (أسوان ادفو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Heroes b. Bullies c. Donors d. Merchants
10. We want our students to feel safe at school, so .... is not allowed. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)
    a. nursing b. bullying c. cheating d. copying
11. My son is always .... by his classmates at school. I will complain to the headmaster. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
    a. bullied b. killed c. imprisoned d. punished
12. Good people never .... or tell lies. They are respected characters. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
    a. behave b. beat c. cheat d. wear
13. It is always easy to .... this village as everyone is friendly. (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)
    a. reward b. police c. persuade d. nurse
14. .... is forbidden during the exam. (القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٣)
    a. Connection b. Nursing c. Cheating d. Concentration

3 Important Vocabulary

15. I can't give you my opinion about this player as I am not .... (الاسكندرية - المنتزه اول ٢٠٢٤)
    a. concerned b. useful c. fortunate d. favourite
16. My father travelled abroad, so I felt really .... for the first time. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)
    a. only b. lonely c. alone d. scary

17. My company offered to .... the conference in a five-star hotel.
(القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٤)

a. host b. guest c. take d. express

18. The students engaged in a/an .... about climate change.
(الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)

a. debate b. translation c. conclusion d. association

19. There are some .... of working abroad as you miss your close friends.
(الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)

a. pros b. benefits c. disadvantages d. causes

20. She .... on her hot soup to make it cool. (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)

a. drank b. grew c. drew d. blew

21. Staying up late may have an .... on your performance the next day.

a. affect b. effect c. impacted d. effective

22. It's not wise to .... bullies because they have nothing to lose.

a. call b. populate c. fight d. avoid

23. Sama .... her father's car keys in her bag.

a. wore b. hid c. saluted d. fought

24. Tell this unkind person that he is not .... in our organisation.

a. personal b. concerned c. physical d. welcome

25. In this programme, we have two scientists to .... the issue القضية.

a. debate b. believe c. think d. agree

26. .... have made communication easier.

a. Facebook b. Twitter c. WhatsApp d. Social media

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	different to / from	يكون مختلف عن	have	an effect on	له أثر علي
	not welcome here	غير مُرَحَّب به هنا		exams	لديه امتحانات
	right to	يكون مُحِق في		a class debate	يُنظِّم مناظرة بين الطُلَّاب
feel	safe	يشعر بالأمان			
fight	the bullies	يقاتل المتنمرين		a class vote	يجري اقتراع بين الطُلَّاب
get	good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	make	... clear	يوضِّح
	along with	يُحسِن التعامل مع - يتناغم مع	take	a photo	يلتقط صورة
				turns to	يتبادلون الأدوار لكي

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advantage	ميزة	merit, upside
cheat(ed) (v)	يغش	deceive, trick
concerned(adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	interested, involved, affected, connected
nurse(d) (v)	تُمرِّض - ترعي المرضي	care for, take care of, look after
police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط	control, keep in order, keep under control, regulate

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage, demerit, downside	عيب - سلبية
effect(n)	أثر	cause, reason	سبب
positive(adj)	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
right(adj)	صواب - صحيح	wrong	خطأ
save(d) (v)	يُنقِذ	endanger	يُعرِّض للخطر
with (prep. - adv)	بـ - ذو	without	بدون

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور تليفونيًا	good for	مفيد/صالح لـ
angry with	غاضب من	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعًا نضحك
any more	مرة أخرى	on social media	علي وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	on the line	علي الخط (الهاتف)
debate the good things and the bad things about	يناقش إيجابيات وسلبيات	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
find advice for	يجد نصيحة لـ	sure about	متأكد من
good at	جيد في	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
		where to go	أين يذهب

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

get along (with)	يجيد التعامل (مع)	point at / to / towards	يُشير إلي
get to	يصل إلي	reply to	يرد على
list ... in	يُدرِج ... في	say ... about	يقول ... عن

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

nursing - nursery

- **nursing (n)** التمريض / رعاية المرضي
  - It is known that nursing is very important for patients.
- **nursery (n)** حَضَانَة (مكان تعليمى)
  - My wife had to find a nursery for our little daughter.
- **nursery (n)** حَضَّانَة
  - After Ahmed was born, he was put in a nursery because he had difficulty in breathing كان لديه مشكلة في التنفُّس.
- **nursery (n)** مَشْتَل (مكان لزراعة النباتات والأشجار لبيعها)
  - I went to a nursery to buy some plants for my garden.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

✪ MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Good people never ...., ... or tell lies. (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. behave b. cheat c. bully
   d. advance e. communicate
2. It's a crime to cheat others." The synonyms of the word "cheat" are .... and .... (الاسكندرية - المنتزه اول ٢٠٢٤)
   a. chat b. deceive c. trick d. shake e. shock
3. "Smoking has bad effects on health." The noun "effects "here is the antonym of .... (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. causes b. outcomes c. results d. reasons e. products
4. What are the .... and .... of the internet? (المنيا - مَلوى ٢٠٢٤)
   a. merits b. disadvantages c. valueless
   d. danger e. costs
5. The little boy pointed .... the picture of the bully who frightened him.
   a. at b. of c. off d. to e. from
6. It took me about half an hour to .... my home.
   a. arrive at b. go out c. get to d. come out e. talk to

✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The word "behave" is close in meaning to ....
   a. train b. live c. perform d. believe
2. As .... as I'm concerned, Maradona is the best football player ever. (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
   a. soon b. many c. far d. many

3. This medicine has a positive .... on me. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. effect b. affect c. effective d. effectiveness
4. The good manager is the one who can get .... well with his employees. (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. up b. away c. along d. off
5. Tourism plays a .... role in our national income. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٢)
   a. positive b. passive c. negative d. destructive
6. My sister and I usually .... turns to do the washing-up غسيل الأواني.
   a. are b. feel c. give d. take
7. He left his job because the manager told him that he .... not welcome there.
   a. was b. felt c. gave d. took
8. "You must not waste your time." In this sentence, the words "not waste" can be best replaced by ....
   a. rescue b. spend c. save d. waist
9. "This area is policed by the army الجيش." The verb "policed" here means ....
   a. disagreed b. controlled c. nursed d. freed
10. "She nurses her old mother. "Nurses" here is a synonym of ....
    a. looks for b. takes turns c. looks after d. takes off
11. Wait a moment and I will tell you where .... good clothes.
    a. to buy b. buy c. do you buy d. b & c
12. Don't believe everything people post .... social media.
    a. of b. on c. out d. down

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

(WB page 112)

Maged : Hassan is a good friend. Last week, **however**[1], he **borrowed**[2] my phone **without**[3] asking. Then he **dropped**[4] the phone. **Fortunately**[5], the phone did not **break**[6], but I was very **angry**[7] with him. Now, he's not talking to me.

(1) مع ذلك
(2) يستعير / يستلف
(3) بدون
(4) يُسقط
(5) لحُسن الحظ
(6) ينكسر
(7) غاضب

Omar : Fawzi always gets good **marks**(8) at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all **laugh**(9).
Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the **classroom**(10). Now, he doesn't want to make us laugh **any more**(11).

Hoda : There is a girl in my class and she always says **unkind**(12) things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on **social media**(13). Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today, she was **pointing**(14) at me and laughing with her friends.
It makes me feel very unhappy.

(8) درجات
(9) يضحك
(10) حجرة الدراسة
(11) بعد الآن / مرة أخرى
(12) سيء / قاسي
(13) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
(14) يشير

(WB page 113)

Salem : Do you think it is a good or bad thing to move to a new school in **another**(1) town ?

Sayed : As far as I'm **concerned**(2), it can be a good thing. You can meet new people and learn different things.

Salem : I'm not so sure about that. I think I'd find it very difficult at a new school. Everything would be new and **different**(3).

Sayed : I agree, but new things can be exciting, and you'll soon have new friends too.

Salem : **In my opinion**(4) your old friends are your best friends.

Sayed : Yes, but I think, you can never have too many friends. One day, your new friends will be your best old friends!

Salem : **That's true**(5).

(1) أخرى
(2) بقدر اهتمامي
(3) مختلف
(4) من رأيي
(5) هذا صحيح

2 Listening Texts



Radio phone - in about bullying

(SB page 46)

Radio show host : Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about **bullying**(1). **Unfortunately**(2), a lot of **teenagers**(3) are bullied at school, and this can have some very **negative effects**(4) on them.

(1) بلطجة / تنمر
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) المراهقين
(4) آثار سلبية

We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied. Ali... are you **on the line**(5)?

Ali : Hi, Seleem. How are you?

Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali : I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid my **rucksack**(6). It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

(5) متصل / على الخط
(6) حقيبة الظهر
(7) البلطجية/المتنمرين
(8) يوضح
(9) يتصرف / يسلك
(10) ينسجم مع / يتعاطف مع

Radio show host : Oh no! That's terrible. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host : Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the **bullies**(7) and **make it clear**(8) that they shouldn't **behave**(9) like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.

Ali : Yes... you're right... There's one teacher that I **get along well**(10) with. I'll talk to him.

Ola and Lina giving their opinions

(SB page 47)

Ola : So, do you think **moving to**(1) a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers?

Lina : **As far as I'm concerned**(2), it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to **make new friends**(3).

Ola : I'm not so **sure about**(4) that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and **start conversations with**(5) them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

(1) الانتقال إلى
(2) على حد علمي/ في رأيي
(3) يكون صداقات جديدة
(4) متأكد من
(5) يبدأ حديث مع
(6) يستغرق وقت
(7) منعزل
(8) تجربة جيدة
(9) تجعلك قويًا

Lina : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it **takes time**(6). You'll be really **lonely**(7) for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's **a good experience**(8) to have because it **makes you stronger**(9).

Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

PART IV LANGUAGE

Articles a /an and the with singular nouns :

a / an

تُستخدم (a/an) فى الحالات التالية :

١ قبل اسم مفرد معدود يتم ذِكره لأول مرة:

ex. - I saw a cat in front of the door. - There is an apple on the table.

٢ قبل اسم وظيفة معدود مفرد عند التحدث عن وظيفة شخص ما :

ex. - Mustafa is a doctor. - My uncle is an astronaut.

٣ قبل الاسم المعدود المفرد الدال على عدد :

a pair زوج **- a couple** زوج **- a dozen** دستة **- a hundred - a thousand - a million... etc.**

ex. - He paid a million dollars for this car.

٤ مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والثمن :

ex. - 80 kilometres an hour ٨٠ كم فى الساعة

- two days a week يومان فى الأسبوع - 10 pounds a kilo ١٠ جنيهات للكيلو

٥ قبل الصفة إذا سبقت اسم مفرد معدود :

ex. - We have got a new car.

٦ لاحظ أن (a - an) لا تستخدم قبل الاسماء الجمع و الاسماء غير المعدودة :

ex. - Cats eat fish and drink milk. **(Not: A cats....)**

- The bottle is full of oil. **(Not: an oil....)**

كيفية الاختيار بين (a/an) :

١ تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بصوت ساكن :

a table - a house - a boy - a girl - a doctor - a plant - a window .... etc.

٢ تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بالحروف (u – eu - ew) عندما تُنطق كحرف (y) :

a university - a uniform - a union - a useful book -
a European team - a ewe انثى الخروف **......etc.**

٣ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد يبدأ بصوت متحرك :

ex. - an egg / an orange / an apple / an eagle / an elephant.........etc.

٤ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق يليه صوت متحرك :

ex. - an hour / an honest person.

٥ يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد لإعطاء تعريف للكلمات :

ex. - A doctor is someone who works in a hospital to help and treat patients.

٦ قبل الإختصارات التى تُنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف :

ex. - My friend sent an SMS to me.

- There is an "m" letter in the word "man".

٧ قبل كلمة (one) كصفة نستخدم (a) لأن (one) تبدأ بصوت ساكن ينطق مثل /w/ :

ex. - I found a one-dollar banknote on the floor.
- This is a one-way street.

The

تُستخدم (the) فى الحالات التالية :

١ قبل إسم سبق ذكره فى سياق الحديث:

ex. - His father works in an office. The office is in the city centre.
- She bought a book by Dickens yesterday. The book is called Oliver Twist.

٢ قبل اسم لا يوجد منه سوى واحد فقط بالنسبة لعامة الناس :

the sun - the moon - the sky - the country -
the countryside - the ground - the world - the horizon الأفق **....etc.**

ex. - The moon goes around the Earth. (هناك قمر واحد وأرض واحدة)

٣ قبل اسم معروف للقارىء او السامع :

ex. - "Make the bed and open the window," said mum.
(معروف بالنسبة لك أى فراش سترتب وأى نافذة ستفتح)

٤ قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية :

- the tallest - the oldest - the most beautiful - the least expensive....etc.
- the first - the second - the millionth - the only - the last....etc.

ex. - That's the best film I've ever seen.
- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
- The first letter of the alphabet is A.

- لكن فى حالة وجود صفات الملكية (**my / his / her / its / your / our / their /....'s**)
قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية فلا نستخدم (**the**) :

- Nasser is my best friend. **(Not: the best ...)**
- Omar is Sama's oldest uncle. **(Not: the oldest ...)**

٥ قبل أسماء المحيطات والبحار و معظم أسماء الأنهار و القنوات (لكن ليس قبل أسماء البحيرات):

- البحر المتوسط **the Mediterranean** - المحيط الهادى **the Pacific**
- قناة السويس **the Suez Canal** - نهر النيل **the Nile** - نهر الأمزون **the Amazon**
- لكننا نقول :
Lake Nasser بحيرة ناصر - **Lake Victoria** بحيرة فيكتوريا **..... etc.**

٦ لا تستخدم (**the**) قبل أسماء الدول :

Egypt - Britain - France - Spain - Germany - Iraq .... etc.

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة أو الهيئة على إحدى الكلمات التالية فهى تأخذ (the) :
(Republic جمهورية - Union / Federation اتحاد - Kingdom مملكة - State ولاية ...etc.)

the Arab Republic of Egypt (the ARE) جمهورية مصر العربية
the United Arab Emirates (the UAE) الإمارات العربية المتحدة
the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (the KSA) المملكة العربية السعودية
the United States of America (the USA) الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
the United Kingdom (the UK) المملكة المتحدة
the United Nations (the UN) الأمم المتحدة

ex. - Egypt is a great country.
- The Arab Republic of Egypt is a great country.

- و أيضا إذا كان اسم الدولة جمع فهو يأخذ (the) :

the Netherlands هولندا - **the Philippines** الفلبين

٧ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء السلاسل الجبلية :

the Himalayas جبال الهيمالايا - **the Rocky Mountains** جبال روكي **the Alps** جبال الألب...**etc.**

- أما أسماء القمم الجبلية المنفردة فعادة لا تأخذ (the) :

Mount Everest قمة إفرست - **Kilimanjaro** جبل كليمنجارو .... **etc.**

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

تُستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية أيضًا :

١ تستخدم (the) قبل اسم مفرد يعد للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام خاصة مع فصائل الحيوانات والطيور:

ex. - The giraffe is my favourite animal.

- كما يستخدم الاسم الجمع بدون (the) للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:

ex. - Giraffes are my favourite animals.

٢ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الاختراعات المفردة للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:

ex. - The computer is the most important invention.

- لكن عند الحديث عن الأجهزة في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :

ex. - I have bought a tablet and a laptop. The tablet is white, but the laptop is black.

٣ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الآلات الموسيقية المفردة مع أفعال مثل:

(play / practise / learn / study / appreciate / listen to ...)

ex. - Can you play the guitar ?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.

- أما عند الحديث عنها في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة:

ex. - My brother has a guitar and a piano. The guitar is old and doesn't work well.

٤ تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات **(theatre / cinema / radio / post office / internet / shops) :**

ex. - Do you go to the theatre ?
- We listen to the news on the radio.

٥ تستخدم (**the**) قبل بعض الصفات التى لا يتبعها أسم لتدل على اسم جمع دائما و تأخذ فعل جمع:
the rich الاغنياء / the poor الفقراء / the blind المكفوفين / the disabled المعاقين ..... etc.
ex. - The disabled are in need to our help.
- He is collecting money for the blind.

٦ تستخدم (**the**) قبل أسماء الأقاليم والمناطق :
the Middle East / the Far East / the north of Egypt ...etc.

٧ تستخدم (**the**) قبل بعض الأماكن الجغرافية مثل :
the Sahara الصحراء الكبرى / the Gobi صحراء جوبي

٨ تستخدم (**the**) غالبا قبل الاسم الذى تتبعه عبارة وصل أو الاسم المُعَرَّف بحرف الجر (**of**) :
ex. - The man who lost his son was very sad.
- He opened the door of the room.

- لكن لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات:
ex. - Do you have a dictionary that I can borrow ?
(هنا يقصد بها أى قاموس (أحد القواميس))
ex. - Ashraf told me about a man who can eat glass. (هنا يقصد بها أحد الرجال)

٩ تستخدم (**the**) قبل العدد الذى يدل على فترة عشر سنوات :
the fifties الخمسينيات / the nineties التسعينيات

١٠ تستخدم (**the**) قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :
the government الحكومة / the climate المناخ / the weather الطقس /
the environment البيئة / the press الصحافة / the police الشرطة / the army الجيش...etc.

١١ تستخدم (**the**) مع العبارات الدالة على المقارنة (صيغة كلما ...... كلما):
ex. - The more you practise, the better you get. كلما تدربت كلما تحسنت.

لا تستخدم (**the**) فى الحالات التالية :

١ لا تستخدم (**the**) قبل الاسم الجمع إذا كنا نقصد المعنى العام :
ex. - Rabbits are nice animals. (هنا يقصد الأرانب بشكل عام)
- The rabbits have eaten the carrots. (هنا الحديث عن مجموعة محددة من الأرانب)

٢ لا تستخدم (**the**) قبل أسماء الأماكن التالية إذا كانت تستخدم للغرض الاساسى منها :
prison / school / university / college / church / hospital / market /
court /mosque...etc.
ex. - He went to university. He studies medicine there.
- أما إذا استخدم المكان لغرض آخر فيأخذ (**the**) :
ex. - Marwa went to the hospital to visit her uncle.
(She didn't go there as a patient)

٣ غالبًا لا تستخدم (**the**) قبل الكلمات (**bed / work / home**) :
ex. - He went to bed. - She left work. - I arrived home.

- لا تستخدم (a – an – the) فى الحالات التالية :

١ قبل أسماء المواد (الخامات):

wood / wool / metal / milk / iron / plastic / meat ..... etc.

٢ قبل أسماء القارات : Asia / Africa / Europe / North America ...... etc.

٣ قبل أسماء المدن: Cairo / New York / London / Madrid ..... etc.

٤ قبل أسماء الوجبات : **ex.** - We have lunch at three o'clock. **(Not: the lunch)**

- لكن عند وصف الوجبة نستخدم **(a/an/the)** :

ex. - The breakfast I ate yesterday was horrible.

٥ قبل أسماء اللغات Arabic / English / Chinese / Turkish .... etc.

- لاحظ أنه إذا جاءت بعد اسم اللغة كلمة **(language)** نستخدم **(the)** :

the English language / the French language

٦ قبل أسماء المواد الدراسية : mathematics / biology / political science

٧ قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم شخص:

ex. - King Ramses built a lot of temples. **(Not: the king Ramses ...)**

ex. - President Sadat was a great politician. **(Not: the President Sadat ...)**

٨ قبل كلمة **(space)** عندما تعنى الفضاء:

ex. - NASA sends spaceships into space.

- عندما نستخدم **(the)** قبل كلمة **(space)** فهى تعنى مكان فارغ أو مساحة:

ex. - The space in the class isn't enough for ten more students.

٩ لا تستخدم **(a/an/the)** قبل الاسم المتبوع برقم كتمييز له:

ex. - I booked seat 25 in carriage 2. **(Not: the seat.../ the carriage...)**

Exercises On Language ○ Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. My sister has a flat on .... 2nd floor. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
2. They think .... exams they have next week will be very difficult. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. no article c. an d. the
3. England and France are .... European countries. (المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. no article d. the
4. She plays .... piano well. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article

5. My brother had an important exam yesterday but he spent .... hour watching TV. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٣)
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
6. My father came to .... school as the headmaster wanted to meet him because of my troubles. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. Seif has bought a book and a pen. .... book he bought was expensive. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. A b. An c. The d. No article
8. .... sun has been shining all day.
   a. A b. An c. The d. No article
9. My grandma cannot walk easily, so she has to use .... stick.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
10. Salah is one of .... best footballers in the world.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
11. I've bought .... new computer.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
12. We're staying in .... room on the first floor of our large villa.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
13. My uncle was staying in a new hotel which overlooks .... Red Sea.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. His cousin is .... journalist. He works for a newspaper in Cairo.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. She wants to have .... holiday next to the sea.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
16. I had .... dream last night. In the dream, I was a bride عروسة in a white dress!
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
17. Adel is a space scientist. At the moment, he is studying .... moon.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
18. The best way for a person to get fit is to do exercises two or three times .... day.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
19. He has ....meat and soup for lunch.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
20. Could you close .... front door, please?
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
21. There were no............ chairs, so we had to sit on the floor.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
22. There are two cars parked outside, ...expensive one and a cheap one.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article

23. The plane has made .... world a smaller place.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

24. Where is .... pen that I bought yesterday ?

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

2 Special cases

25. You mustn't lose .... hope to reach your goals. (البحيرة - أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

26. .... is developing so fast. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)

a. Technology b. A technology c. The technology d. Technological

27. My father bought me ....uniform for the new school year. (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٣)

a. a b. an c. no article d. the

28. They placed .... African elephant on their endangered list. (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. a b. an c. no article d. the

29. My friend wants to buy a car but .... cars are too expensive nowadays. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

30. "The English are clever." The word 'English' here means .... (الجيزة - الدقى ٢٠٢٣)

a. language b. people c. school subject d. translated text

31. If the Earth had a blue moon and a white moon, I'd prefer .... white one.

a. a b. an c. the d. some

32. Egypt has .... unique location in the world.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

33. There is going to be .... 300-seat dining room on the second floor of the hotel.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

34. .... water is essential for all people.

a. A b. No article c. The d. An

35. For lunch, I made an order for half............ chicken and some salad.

a. some b. a c. the d. no article

36. He gave me a pen and a ruler ; .... pen didn't work.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

37. My uncle will arrive on .... Sunday which is after my birthday.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

38. When dealing with difficult situations, one should be .... patient.

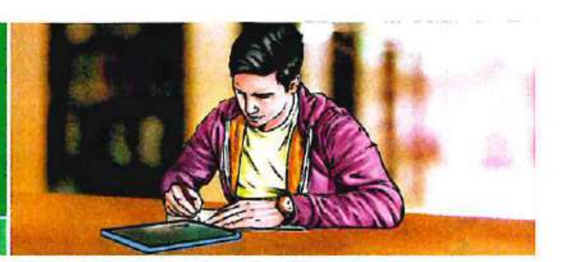
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

39. Come on, Rodayna. It's .... due time to go to bed.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
40. They all went to .... lunch organized by their aunt.
    a. any b. an c. the d. no article
41. I want you to choose .... day we can meet.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
42. A new spaceship will be sent into .... space next month.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
43. .... space in my room is not enough for another bed.
    a. A b. An c. The d. No article
44. The Sun went down .... horizon.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
45. You will find the information you need at the top of .... page 41.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
46. Fear is .... universal weakness.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
47. I dislike .... towns, but I love the countryside.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
48. .... pomegranates الرمان are good for health.
    a. A b. An c. The d. No article
49. Look at .... oranges on that tree.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
50. My son has started .... school this year.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article

3 Check your understanding

51. "Doctors help people who feel sick." This means ....
    a. the doctors help people who are sick b. doctors help the sick
    c. a doctor helped the sick d. the sick need help
52. "People should help those who are homeless." This means ....
    a. people should help homeless b. people should help a homeless
    c. people should help the homeless d. people should have a home
53. "This film is exciting." I mean that this ....
    a. is an exciting film b. is an excited film
    c. film makes me exciting d. film is excited
54. "All lions are meat-eating animals." This is the same meaning as ....
    a. the lions are meat-eaters b. the lions are meat-eating animals
    c. the lions eat meat d. the lion is a meat-eating animal
55. "He is hard working." What does this mean?
    a. He does work that is hard. b. He is hard-working person.
    c. He is a hard-working person. d. He hardly does any work.

PART **THREE** | Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

Giving instructions

١ لإعطاء الأمر المُثبَت (أفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

.... + المصدر **inf.**

ex. - Stop !
- Remember to do your homework.
- Put your lunchbox in the bag.

لإعطاء قوة للمعني أو لإعطاء نصيحة قوية لشخص مُقرَّب نستخدم (**Always**) قبل الصيغة السابقة :

ex. - Always follow your parents' advice.

٢ لإعطاء الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

.... + المصدر **inf.** + **Don't / Never**

ex. - Don't stop.
- Don't forget to do your homework.
- Never break the law.

٣ يمكن وضع المُنادي (المُخاطَب) في بداية أو نهاية الجملة كالتالي:

ex. - Don't waste your time, Ahmed.
- Ahmed, don't waste your time.

Indefinite pronouns

١ يتم استخدام فعل مفرد بعد الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع :

(someone / somebody - anyone / anybody - everyone / everybody - no one / nobody)

ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who they are.
- Everybody has prepared themselves to the meeting.

ينطبق نفس الشيء على الأسماء غير محددة الجنس التي تحتمل التذكير والتأنيث مثل:

a child - a person - a teacher - a traveller ... etc.

ex. - A traveller has parked his car in front of my house. They must have entered the opposite restaurant.

٢ يمكن استخدام (ضمير مفرد مذكر مضافًا إليه ضمير مفرد مؤنث) ليحل محل ضمير الجمع :

ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who he or she is.

٣ يمكن استخدام (ضمير مفرد مذكر فقط أو ضمير مفرد مؤنث فقط) في حالة معرفة جنس الشخص الذي للتحدث عنه:

ex. - This child will do better if he joins a school for boys only.

another

another + اسم مفرد — آخر/ أخرى

ex. - We found another shop in a small street.
- I want another bag of macaroni, please.

another + **(few - one, two, three,....)**

ex. - Give me another two days to finish the report.
- She has another few jobs to do.

other

other + اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد — آخر / آخرين

ex. -Ahmed likes helping other people.
- Any other knowledge will be available online.

- وتستخدم (**other**) أيضا بعد الكلمات الآتية :

the - some - every - each - many - any - no - two, three,..........etc.

ex. - Five chairs will be in the office. The other chairs will be moved to the teachers' room.
- Like any other child, Rodayna wants to play.

others ضمير (تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول) — الآخرين

ex. - Some children like fish. Others prefer chicken.

compound adjectives with numbers

١ يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة:

ex. - Omar is a forty-year-old man.

٢ يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

ex. - We're going on a two-day trip.

٣ في حالة وجود كلمة **time** بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و (s') في حالة الجمع :

ex. - In two weeks' time, I will travel to Aswan.

own

on + **(my - his - her - its - your - our - their)** + **own** = **alone**

= **without help** بمفرده - دون مساعدة

ex. - I did the housework on my own.
= I did the housework alone / without help.

of + **(my - his - her - its - your - our - their)** + **own** مِلكه - خاص به

ex. - I have a car of my own.

right

be right to = **have the right to** محق فى

ex. - She is right to ask for a break.
- She has the right to ask for a break.

Asking for and Giving Advice

Asking for Advice طلب النصيحة

Can you give me some advice about ...? أيمكنك أن تنصحني بخصوص ..... ؟
Can I ask your advice about ...? أيمكنني أن أسالك النصح بخصوص ....؟
What should I do about ...? ما الذي يمكنني فعله فيما يتعلق بـ ....؟

Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

You should / shouldn't + inf. ... . ينبغي أن / ألّا ...
You ought to / ought not to + inf. ... . ينبغي أن / ألّا ...
If I were you, I would / wouldn't + inf. ... . لو كنت مكانك ، (ما) كنت ...
You'd (had) better + inf. ... . من الأفضل لك أن ...
I advise you (not) to ... . أنصحك أن / ألّا...
The best thing to do is (not) to .... أفضل شيء تفعله هو أن / ألّا ...

Exercise On Language Hints

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. In .... time, I will travel to London. I will stay for two weeks there. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
   a. two week b. two week's c. two weeks d. two weeks'
2. Some people like Al-Ahly team. .... like Al-Zamalek. (الاسماعيلية - أبوصوير ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Another b. Other c. Others d. The other
3. The dogs barked on seeing .... on the water. (سوهاج - البَلْينا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. themselves b. himself c. herself d. itself
4. Surprisingly, the crime was done by a 15-............-old boy. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. years b. year's c. year d. years'
5. Someone is knocking at the door. I will see who ....
   a. you are b. she is c. he is d. they are
6. You can take this pen. I have .... one.
   a. other b. others c. the other d. another

7. You can take this pen. I will use .... one.
   a. other b. others c. the other d. an other
8. You can take this pen. I have two .... ones.
   a. other b. others c. the other d. another
9. You can take this pen. I have .... two ones.
   a. other b. others c. the other d. another
10. Amir made this cupboard .... his own. I didn't help him.
   a. from b. off c. of d. on
11. Amir has a cupboard .... his own. No one else uses it.
   a. from b. off c. of d. on
12. You both should do this activity on .... own.
   a. you b. your c. yours d. yourselves
13. You .... right to slow down when you drive on these ups and downs.
   a. are b. is c. has d. have
14. You .... the right to ask for help.
   a. are b. is c. has d. have
15. Never .... your secrets to anybody.
   a. telling b. tell c. told d. to tell
16. Someone rang the doorbell. When I opened the door, ... there.
   a. he was b. she wasn't c. they weren't d. I wasn't
17. Somebody .... taken my glasses.
   a. have b. has c. is d. are

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

*** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

(الإسكندرية - المنتزه أول ٢٠٢٤)

In a small village, there lived a little girl whose name was Sophia. Her uncle gave her a few pennies to share with her twin brother John. She looked at the pieces and said, "What shall we do with them, mother?" "You mustn't spend them foolishly," said her mother. They want to buy candy. **<u>They hardly knew how it tasted</u>** since there were three boys older than them and two little younger sisters.

They met a larger boy who was blowing a flute. "I wish I had that flute," John said. The big boy looked at them and blew it and said," Oh, what

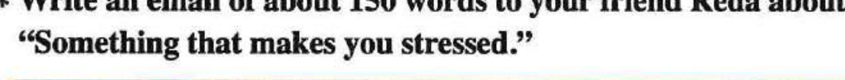
a pretty sound it made!" Sophia showed the money to the boy. "You may have them if you give us the flute." "All of them?" The boy asked. She looked at her brother and then nodded. "Well, it's a deal," said the boy, and he gave the flute to them and took the pennies. Little John was very happy. They ran home quickly.

"You might have bought half a dozen of such flutes with the money," said his mother. The twins saw what a mistake they had made. John threw it upon the floor and began to cry. "Never mind," said the mother very kindly. "You will learn a great deal as you grow bigger".

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. According to the passage, the big boy took advantage of the children and ....
   a. tried to steal the money
   b. played the flute again
   c. took all their money
   d. gave them the flute for free
2. The central idea of this passage can be ".............".
   a. The older you grow, the wiser you will be
   b. The more people you meet, the more money you will get
   c. The more money you get, the fewer things you will buy
   d. The more relatives you have, the more money you will earn
3. Although the mother advised her children to spend money wisely, she didn't get .... when they didn't follow her advice.
   a. delighted b. happy c. upset d. satisfied
4. .... liked to have the flute.
   a. The flute boy b. The mother c. Sophia d. John
5. "**<u>They hardly knew how it tasted.</u>**" This sentence shows that the twins ....
   a. lived in poverty b. didn't like candy
   c. had to inform their mother d. preferred to taste it
6. After john's experience of buying the flute, he might learn to ....
   a. waste his money b. stop crying
   c. ask his father for money d. value things
7. How many children did the mother have? ....
   a. Three b. Seven c. Two d. Five

Unit 4



* **Write an email of about 150 words to your friend Reda about "Something that makes you stressed."**

New message

From : aliselim@gmail.com

To : reda2020@elmoasser.com

Subject : Something that makes me stressed!

Dear Reda,

How are you? I hope you are well. I'm writing to tell you about something stressful I have to face. I've started my secondary school recently and things aren't so easy or smooth as they used to be. I am supposed to work hard not only at school but at home as well.

It's completely new routine. The school subjects are not that easy. I meet new teachers and new classmates that I must get along with. I find it difficult to keep up with this new community yet not impossible. I made few friends anyway. However, I've got some problems with quite a few students who are difficult somehow and the new subjects I have to study and understand. The lessons are so many that I can't get back home until late in the afternoon. What a nuisance!

In addition, the school has no room for activities which makes matters worse and as a result, most students get bored and even frustrated.

At home, life is not that easy one as it was when I was at prep school.

Parents argue with me to study all the time, there is no space for play or entertainment. They believe that entertainment or practising activities should be during summer holiday only.

Isn't it a problem? Send me your advice. I'm badly in need of your help. I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours,

Ali



Send

3 Writing

✪ **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:** (اسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

Friendship

....

....

....

....

....

....

4 Translation الترجمة

A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

1. Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and communicative member in the society. (سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٤)

a. إن تطوير مهارات التواصل الفعال يساعدك في فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك مذكوراً أفضل وأكثر تواصلاً في المجتمع.

b. إن تطوير مهارات التواصل الذكي يساعدك في فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل وأكثر تواصلاً في المجتمع.

c. إن تطوير مهارات التواصل الفعال يساعدك في فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل وأكثر تواصلاً في المجتمع.

d. إن تطوير مهارات التواصل الفعال يساعدك في فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل وأكثر وصولاً في المجتمع.

2. Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. So, we must try to solve these serious problems. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)

a. قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاقتصادية في أن يعيش بعض الأطفال في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوي، لذلك يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشكلات الخطيرة.

b. قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية في أن يعيش بعض الأطفال في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوي، لذلك يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشكلات الخطيرة.

c. قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية في أن يعيش بعض الشباب في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوي، لذلك يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشكلات الخطيرة.

d. قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية في أن يعيش معظم الأطفال في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوي، لذلك يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشكلات الخطيرة.

3. We should play a positive role in solving society's problems. No one is exempted from responsibility towards society, so sharing in different social activities is a duty. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)

a. يجب أن نلعب دوراً هاماً في حل مشاكل المجتمع، فلا أحد معفي من المهمة تجاه المجتمع، لذلك من الواجب المشاركة في الأنشطة الاجتماعية المختلفة.

b. يجب أن نلعب دوراً هاماً في حل مشاكل المجتمع، فلا أحد معفي من المهمة تجاه المجتمع، لذلك من الواجب المشاركة في الأنشطة الاجتماعية المختلفة.

c. يجب أن نلعب دوراً إيجابياً في حل مشاكل المجتمع، فلا أحد معفي من المسئولية تجاه المجتمع، لذلك من المُحبَّب المشاركة في الأنشطة الاجتماعية المختلفة.

d. يجب أن نلعب دوراً إيجابياً في حل مشاكل المجتمع، فلا أحد معفي من المسئولية تجاه المجتمع، لذلك من الواجب المشاركة في الأنشطة الاجتماعية المختلفة.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. يُعد التنمر في المدارس مشكلة خطيرة يمكن أن تؤثر على الصحة العقلية للطلاب. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)

a. Playing in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

b. Bullying in schools is a series problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

c. Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

d. Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the physical health of students.

٢. إنني أحب وأحترم من هم أكبر مني سناً، حيث أنهم أكثر حكمة وخبرة، كما أقدر أيضاً دور الشباب في بناء الأوطان. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه أول ٢٠٢٤)

a. I am loved and respect the old as they are wise and experience, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.

b. I am like and respect older as they are wiser and experienced, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.

c. I love the oldest as they are wise and less experienced, and I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.

d. I love and respect my elders as they are wiser and more experienced. I also appreciate the youth's role in building countries.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

cheat

- **cheat (at / in) (v)** يغش
  - He used a mobile to cheat in the test.
- **cheat (v)** يخدع - يحتال على - يخون
  - He was arrested because he cheated an old woman out of her money.
- **cheat (n)** غشاش - نصّاب
  - Don't trust this cheat.
- **cheating (n)** غش - نصب
  - Cheating is a crime.

connect

- **connect (to / with) (v)** يربط - يُوَصِلُ
  - Connect the charger الشاحن to the mobile, please.
- **connect (with) (v)** يرتبط - يكون على علاقة بـ
  - This parliament member connects with his voters الناخبين.
- **connected (to / with / by) (adj)** متصل بـ / مرتبط - على علاقة بـ
  - The computer is connected to the internet.
- **connection (to / with / between) = link (n)** اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة
  - The connection between the computer and the printer has failed.

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- have a connection to / with على علاقة بـ - متصل بـ
- see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...
- make a connection يُوجد علاقة - يربط بين
- stop a connection ينهى العلاقة - يفصل

debate

- **debate (over / about / between) (n)** مُناظَرَة / مُناقَشَة
  - The new law is still under debate in the parliament.
  - There's a debate over the solutions حلول of the traffic problem.
- **debate (with) (v)** يتباحث / يناقش - يفكر بحرص
  - The new law is still debated in the parliament.
  - He debates with his friends on how to spend the weekend.

nurse

- **nurse (n)** مُمَرِّضة - مُمَرِّض
  - She is still a student nurse in the local health care centre.

- **nurse (d) (v)** يرعى مريض - يُمَرِّض
  - He was nursed by a good woman called Hana.
- **nurse (d) (v)** تعمل بالتمريض
  - She nurses in a big hospital in Cairo.
- **nurse (d) (v)** تُرضِع - تقوم بإرضاع
  - Mothers nurse their babies until they are two.
- **nurse (d) (v)** يَرضَع
  - Babies nurse until they are two.
- **nursing (n)** التمريض
  - She studies nursing at Assuit University.

police

- **police (n)** الشُّرطة
  - The police have arrested some criminals.

- لاحظ أن الاسم (police) دائمًا جمع ويأخذ فعل جمع:
  - The police are responsible مسئول for law enforcement فَرض القانون.

ولاحظ المتلازمات التالية:

- call the police يتصل بالشرطة / يستدعي الشرطة
- tell / inform the police يُبَلِّغ الشرطة
- report … to the police يُبَلِّغ الشرطة عن ...

- **police (d) (v)** يفرض الأمن والانضباط - يتحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير
  - The officer asked for more soldiers to police the city centre.
- **policing (n)** فَرض الأمن والانضباط - التحَقُّق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير
  - Policing is the responsibility of the government.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis-	لا - غير	disagree(d)	يرفض
extra-	إضافى - زائد	extraordinary	استثنائى / خارق
pre-	قبل	prefix	بادئة
semi-	نصف	semi-final	نصف نهائى

3 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-hood	تُكَوِّن اسم	boyhood	الصبا
-tion	تُكَوِّن اسم	pronunciation information production	النُطق معلومة / معلومات انتاج

-ess	تُكَوِّن اسم مؤنث	hostess waitress	مضيفة نادلة
-ion	تُكَوِّن اسم	connection communication population	ارتباط / اتصال تواصل - اتصال (عدد) السكان
-ship	تُكَوِّن اسم	friendship	الصداقة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

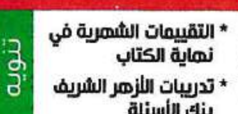
1. Getting the Nobel Prize was the .... of Naguib Mahfouz's life.
   a. addressee b. project
   c. highlight d. punctuation
2. The flowers and plants on my balcony have been bought from a nearby ....
   a. contraction b. concern
   c. nursing d. nursery
3. It is the right of a baby to ....
   a. contain b. nurse
   c. fight d. host
4. The use of guns and other weapons must be ....
   a. connected b. closed
   c. policed d. listed
5. A secretary is supposed to have the ability to .... with all staff members.
   a. police b. pronounce
   c. connect d. salute

Advanced Exercise on Language

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The dead man's .... include no will.
   a. paper b. a paper c. papers d. newspaper
2. Everyone should depend on ....
   a. itself b. himself c. herself d. themselves
3. **A:** How .... television do you watch a week? **B:** About ten hours.
   a. much b. many items of c. many d. few items of
4. I think you can't sit in this row as there isn't .... room for you.
   a. no article b. the c. an d. a
5. I can't go out with you today. I've got too .... and it all has to be finished by nine o'clock.
   a. many tasks b. much work
   c. many jobs d. many pieces of work

Test on Unit 4





● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. I thanked my sister when she .... me to use her mobile.
(سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)
a. allowed b. let c. borrowed d. permitted e. warned

2. "My father is angry." The antonyms of "angry" are .... and ....
a. unfair b. bored c. contented d. cross e. satisfied

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In our school, instructions are usually written on a .... on the wall.
a. noticeboard b. tablet c. notebook d. booklet

2. It is taken for .... that tourism is important for Egypt. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
a. a ride b. a sign c. granted d. a joke

3. No doubt that there is a .... between smoking and cancer.
a. communication b. contact c. collection d. connection

4. .... with my friends is really important to me. I talk to them as often as I can. (الدقهلية - منية النصر ٢٠٢٤)
a. Security b. Communication
c. Possibility d. Password

5. My friend gave me some .... about how to finish the project.
a. advice b. advices c. advises d. advise

6. They all have smartphones, so they are all .... to the internet.
a. disjoined b. decorated c. connected d. corrected

7. You should accept the .... of opinions about the same subject. Everyone has theirs. (الإسماعيلية - أبوصوير ٢٠٢٤)
a. diversity b. difference c. differently d. diverse

8. Would you like to get .... help with this project? (الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. some b. many c. a lot d. lots

9. My brother has .... experience, so he didn't get the job.
(الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)
a. a little b. a few c. little d. few

10. He hasn't got .... furniture in his house. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)
a. some b. much c. many d. a lot

11. I must buy some bread. I hardly have .... left in the kitchen.
a. many b. some c. any d. much

12. To get the plural of a noun, we usually add .... "s" to the end of the noun. (الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٤)
a. a b. an c. some d. many

13. Don't drink .... milk in the bottle. It's your sister's. (الإسكندرية -برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. a b. some c. the d. no article

14. .... is full of ups and downs. (الإسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. The life b. A life c. Living d. Life

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

The honeybee is a very unusual kind of insect. Unlike other insects, which live alone, the honeybee lives as a member of a community. These bees live together in what is known as a bee colony.

The head of the colony is called the queen bee. She is larger than the rest of the bees. Her main task in the colony is to lay eggs. Most of the other bees are the worker bees. These bees collect nectar and pollen from flowers. The nectar that is carried by the worker bees is deposited on the hive and then converted into honey. The worker bees also help look after the young bees.

As soon as the eggs are hatched, the worker bees feed the young bees with pollen and nectar. The third type of bee found in the colony is the drone or male bee. The main task of such a bee is to mate with a new queen.

The queen bee has a lifespan of about three years. During this period, she would have laid more than half a million eggs. When the queen bee is dying, a new queen would be groomed. This new queen would eventually take over the duties of the old queen when the **latter** dies.

Bees are small but they play a big role in the ecosystem. **They** play an important role as a pollinator for crops. It is vital for food security of human beings. Hence, we must control our activities and help protect honeybees.

1. The thing that distinguishes the honeybee from other insects is that ....
   a. it can't live apart from its community
   b. its sting is stringer and deadly
   c. it can't live among trees and flowers
   d. it can live alone
2. The main mission of the queen bee in the colony is to ....
   a. look after the young bees b. collect nectar and pollen
   c. kill the worker bees d. lay eggs
3. The life of honeybees can teach us ....
   a. co-operation b. how to live among trees
   c. selfishness d. laziness
4. The word '**latter**' is the antonym of the word ".............".
   a. last b. second c. former d. next
5. What is the best title for the passage?
   a. How honey is formed b. Honeybees' life
   c. Bees and other insects d. Bees and our ecosystem

6. The underlined word "**They**" refers to ....
   a. bee queens b. worker bees c. male bees d. bees
7. When the queen bee dies, ...
   a. the other bees will be sad and cry b. another one takes over
   c. the rest stay without a queen d. there aren't any more nectar

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Millions of children experience violence, bullying and threats in and around schools. This can have lifelong effects on their physical and emotional health. (الاسماعيلية - ابو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

a. يعاني ملايين الأطفال من العنف والتنمر والتهديدات داخل مدارسهم وحولها، وهذا يمكن أن يكون له آثار دائمة على صحتهم البدنية والعاطفية.

b. يعاني ملايين الأطفال من العنف والتنمر والتهديدات داخل مدارسهم وحولها، وهذا يمكن أن يكون له آثار لحظية على صحتهم البدنية والعاطفية.

c. يعاني ملايين الأطفال من العنف والتسلط والتهديدات داخل مدارسهم وحولها، وهذا يمكن أن يكون له آثار مؤقتة على صحتهم البدنية والعاطفية.

d. يعاني ملايين الأطفال من العفن والتنمر والتهديدات داخل مدارسهم وحولها، وهذا يمكن أن يكون له آثار دائمة على صحتهم البدنية والعاطفية.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن الصداقة قيمة عظيمة يجب علينا جميعاً أن نحافظ عليها، والصديق الحقيقي هو من يدعمك عند الحاجة إليه.

a. Friendship is a terrible value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who I supports you when you need help.
b. Friendship is a great value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who supports you when you need help.
c. Friendship is a great value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who deceives you when you need help.
d. Friendship is a great value we all should keep. A true friend is the one who bullies you when you need help.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. "You were right and I was wrong," What do you think Mr Trelawney mean by this? (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
2. Why do you think Silver killed Tom? (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
3. Captain Smollett was a wise man. Do you agree? Why / Why not? (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)

"Taking part in charities is a must to help the needy"

....
....
....
....
....
....



Communication

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading :** A science article on how we may communicate in the future
- **Writing :** An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online
- **Listening :** A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet
- **Speaking :** Give a presentation
- **Language :** Future forms will, be going to and present continuous
- **Life Skills :** Self-management; Decision making

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 52 : 55 WB pages 116 & 117



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

app = application(n)	تطبيق (رقمي)	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
break into (phr. v)	يقتحم	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل	security (n)	الأمن
connect (ed) (v)	يربط	smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكي
hack (ed) (n - v)	يخترق - يُقرصِن	technology (n)	التكنولوجيا
hacking (n)	اختراق - القرصنة	the internet (n)	الانترنت

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

book(ed) (v)	يحجز	lighting (n)	الإضاءة
businesses (n)	شركات	major (adj)	كبير - رئيسى - بارز
camping (n)	الإقامة في معسكر	management (n)	إدارة
cause (d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسبب	medicine (n)	الطب - دواء
control (led) (v)	يتحكم في	network (ed) (n - v)	شَبَكَة - يعمل على الشبكة
creative (adj)	مُبدع - خلّاق	online (adj / adv)	مُتصِل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت
develop (ed) (v)	يتطور	particular (adj)	مُحَدَّد - مُعيَّن
device (n)	جهاز	petrol (n)	البنزين
driverless (adj)	بدون سائق	possibility (n)	إمكانية
electric (adj)	كهربي	power station (n)	محطات توليد الطاقة
electronic (adj)	إلكتروني	recent (adj)	حديث
empty (ied) (v - adj)	يُفرّغ - فارغ	rubbish (n)	القمامة
evidence (n)	دليل	self-management(n)	إدارة الذات
flexible (adj)	مَرِن	survey (n)	بحث استبيانى
heating (n)	التدفئة - التسخين	system (n)	نظام
illegally (adv)	بشكل غير قانونى	use (d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	worldwide (adj)	عالمى / دولى
intention (n)	نية		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise		Understand
app (n)	تطبيق	a computer programme designed to perform / do a specific function
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل	systems to send and receive information

connected (adj)	مُتَّصِل - مُرْتَبِط	when more than one thing is joined or linked
hack (ed) (n - v)	يُقرصِن	to break into a computer system illegally
the internet (n)	الإنترنت	a worldwide computer network
link (n)	رابط	a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website
security (n)	الأمن	protecting a place or person
smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكى	a device that can connect to the internet
technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	the use of science to create devices for everyday use

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Definitions

1. .... means protecting a place or a person from danger. (الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Security   b. Communication   c. Policy   d. Technology
2. .... are systems to send and receive information.
   a. Possibilities   b. Organizations   c. Accounts   d. Communications
3. .... is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.
   a. Technology   b. Management   c. Evidence   d. Document
4. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are ....
   a. created   b. developed   c. connected   d. performed
5. The .... is a worldwide computer network.
   a. security   b. internet   c. presentation   d. environment
6. A .... is a device that can connect to the internet.
   a. web   b. smartphone   c. network   d. blog
7. A/An .... is a computer programme designed to perform/do a specific function.
   a. satnav   b. advert   c. app   d. IOT
8. To .... is to break into computer illegally.
   a. hack   b. download   c. upload   d. lock
9. A/An .... is a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website.
   a. blog   b. website   c. link   d. online

2 Key Vocabulary

10. You need to have a strong .... to protect your computer. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. lock   b. link   c. antivirus   d. click

11. I have a useful .... on my smartphone that helps me to learn English. (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
    a. machine b. instrument c. security d. app
12. Some thieves .... into the bank's database and could steal a lot of money. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
    a. sacked b. packed c. backed d. hacked
13. Speech is the fastest method of .... between people. (الوادى الجديد - الخارجية ٢٠٢٤)
    a. communication b. impression c. correction d. expression
14. We can't send an email as the laptop is not .... to the internet. (القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)
    a. enjoined b. phished c. linked d. communicated
15. He has some of the products of the latest ....; he has a tablet and a smartphone. (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٤)
    a. internet b. copy c. security d. technology
16. " IOT" stands for .... (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
    a. Information of Technology b. Information of Things
    c. International of Things d. Internet of Things
17. A uniformed .... man met them at the gate and asked for their identity cards. (السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٣)
    a. property b. priority c. security d. minority
18. More and more people shop on the .... (البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)
    a. leader b. lock c. internet d. password
19. A thief broke .... the old man's house yesterday. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)
    a. in b. into c. onto d. on
20. The .... of the manager's ideas to the staff is important.
    a. communicate b. communication
    c. hack d. hacking
21. Your computer has very important information. Protect it against ....
    a. hack b. hacking c. hacker d. hacked
22. If you have a/an ...., you can surf the internet on it.
    a. smartphone b. technology c. advert d. online
23. My laptop is .... to the internet through Wi-Fi.
    a. commented b. communicated c. connected d. contacted

3 Important Vocabulary

24. It will be common to see .... cars to reduce human drivers. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)
    a. human b. driverless c. gaming d. highway

25. Cyberbullying has become a .... problem for most internet users. They lose a lot because of it. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)
a. minor b. major c. safe d. weak

26. Ahmed .... two train tickets to Alexandria. (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)
a. booked b. tested c. rang d. read

27. Thanks to modern technology, people can .... each other easily. (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
a. isolate b. divorce c. contact d. evacuate

28. It is our duty to give the world the rightful .... of our beloved country. (سوهاج - البَلْيَنا ٢٠٢٤)
a. image b. damage c. passage d. bridge

29. In the past, people burnt wood for .... and cooking.
a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting

30. A team of researchers are doing a/an ....
a. network b. organisation c. evidence d. survey

31. Watching too many videos .... the battery of the mobile.
a. imagines b. steals c. empties d. charges

32. New laws have been .... to stop cyberbullying.
a. taken b. warned c. done d. introduced

33. Electricity is produced in .... stations.
a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting

34. I have strong .... that this thief has stolen my motorbike.
a. network b. organisation c. evidence d. survey

35. Small .... help young people to have jobs and start their lives.
a. businesses b. business c. diaries d. messages

36. In some situations, you should behave in a/an .... way to avoid making matters worse تتجنب زيادة الأمر سوءاً.
a. flexible b. electric c. electronic d. recent

37. The smart mobile is a wonderful ....
a. website b. device c. blog d. helmet

38. "The battery is empty." In this sentence, the word "empty" is a/an ....
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	my satnav	أتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	**collect**	someone	يصطحب/يوصّل بسيارة
make	life better	تجعل الحياة أفضل		information	يجمع معلومات
	a decision	يتخذ قرار	**lose**	money	يخسر مال
be	known as	يكون معروف كـ	**send**	messages to	يراسل ...

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
app	تطبيق	application
book	يحجز	reserve
recent	حديث	new, modern, late

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
correct	صحيح	incorrect, wrong	غير صحيح
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor, little, unimportant	صغير - غير هام
online	مُتصِل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline, disconnected	غير مُتصِل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
send	يُرسل	receive	يستقبل
security	الأمن	danger, insecurity	الخطر - انعدام الأمن

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

app	
apply (ied) (v) يُطبِّق - يتقدم	- It is difficult to apply this design. - She applied for a job.
application (n) طلب انضمام	- I sent my application by mail.
application = app (n) تطبيق	- The application of this design is difficult
applied (adj) تطبيقي	- We study applied maths in secondary two.
communication	
communicate (d) (v) يتصل - يتواصل	- We communicate with foreign customers in English.
communication (n) اتصال - تواصل	- We use English as the language of communication with customers.
connect	
connect (ed) (v) يربط - يوصِّل - يتصل	- You need to connect to the internet to send the file.
connection (n) اتصال - صِلة / علاقة	- Connection to the internet is necessary ضرورى to send the file.
connected (adj) مُتصِّل	- You need to be connected to the internet to send the file.
hack	
hack (ed) (v) يخترق - يُقرصِن	- Protect your computer or it will be hacked into.

hacking (n) اختراق - القرصنة	- Protect your computer from hacking.
hacker (n) قرصان إلكترونى	- Protect your computer from hackers.
hack (n) عملية قرصنة	- Some important files have been stolen in a hack.
hacked (adj) مُخترَق - مُقرصَن	- Our computer system is hacked.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as often as I can كثيرًا لأقصى حد ممكن	on the computer / smartphone علي الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكى
be able to يكون قادر علي	on the moon على القمر
be connected to يكون مُتصِل أو مُرتبِط بـ	particular tasks مهام مُعيَّنة
be known as معروف كـ	possible problems مشاكل محتملة
be well protected/defended محمى جيداً - حصين	posting photos إرسال الصور
daily life الحياة اليومية	talking to one another يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
decision making صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	the outside world العالَم الخارجى
flying taxi التاكسى الطائر	true for you صحيحة بالنسبة لك
major security problems مشكلة أمنية كبيرة	with no evidence دون دليل
no longer لم يعُد	worldwide web الشبكة الدولية
no more driving لا مزيد من القيادة	
on all our flights علي جميع رحلاتنا الجوية	

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

communicate with يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	hack into يخترِق - يُقرصِن (يهكر)
connect … to يربط / يوصِّل … بـ	live on يعيش على - يتغذى علي
connect to يتصل بـ	steal … from يسرق … من
(dis) advantage to/of ميزة/عيب لـ	

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

app = application

- **app = application** تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)
  - Google play is full of free apps / applications.
- **application** طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)
  - To join this club, fill in this application form.

communicate - contact

- **communicate** يتصل / يتواصل (عن طريق اللقاء / التليفون / الرسائل ...إلخ)
  - I usually communicate with my friends by phone.
- **contact** يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع (عن طريق التليفون / الرسائل ...إلخ لطلب أو إعطاء معلومة)
  - When I saw the smoke, I contacted the fire brigade المطافي.

security - safety

- **security** الأمن / التأمين (يتعلق بحماية الأشخاص والممتلكات)
  - The match was postponed تأجل for security reasons.
- **safety** الأمان (عدم الخوف وعدم وجود خطر)
  - The airline is taking steps to ensure safety on its aircraft.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. "Security is maintained by the police." The word "security" in this context is the antonym of .... and .... (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. dangerous b. endanger c. danger
   d. insecurity e. secure
2. The letters IOT .... the "Internet of Things". (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. stand for b. replaced by c. are similar as
   d. are short for e. are used
3. I have a new .... on my smartphone which helps me practise foreign languages. (الشرقية - ههيا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. malware b. app c. application
   d. engineer e. employee
4. When a house isn't easy to break into, it is well-................ . (الشرقية - أبو حماد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. furnished b. dressed c. protected
   d. defended e. known
5. The girls tried to .... their smartphones using Bluetooth to transfer some songs.
   a. delete b. link c. trick
   d. upload e. connect
6. The verb "make" collocates with .... (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
   a. right b. life better c. like
   d. a decision e. wrong
7. Something that is recent is .... (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. ancient b. modern c. old
   d. late e. native
8. "Advantages" is to disadvantages as .... is to .... (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. correct b. truth c. left
   d. exactly e. incorrect

✪ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I want to live here; I feel .... (دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٤)
   a. secure b. insecure c. security d. insecurity
2. Self- .... is necessary to the success of any person. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
   a. manage b. manager c. managed d. management
3. We'll .... a survey to find out what people like and dislike about TV shows. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. ignore b. sell c. make d. conduct
4. Our teacher is very .... as he has a very wonderful technique in teaching. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. imagination b. imagine c. imaginary d. imaginative
5. I don't know where I am. I'll .... my satnav.
   a. stay b. check c. go d. take
6. .... help some people work from home.
   a. Communicate b. Communication
   c. Communications d. Communicative
7. I don't know how he .... passwords.
   a. hack b. hacking c. hacker d. hacks
8. The police forces broke .... the cave and arrested the criminals.
   a. in b. out c. into d. onto
9. I have the latest applications .... my smartphone.
   a. at b. from c. to d. on
10. The thief stole a lot of money .... a supermarket.
    a. of b. from c. with d. for
11. I connected his absence غياب from school .... his illness.
    a. at b. on c. by d. to
12. What is true .... you may be wrong from my point of view.
    a. as b. of c. for d. at
13. Someone has hacked .... my Facebook account and posted false news about me.
    a. into b. from c. of d. about
14. There're some disadvantages .... modern technology.
    a. into b. to c. on d. a & c
15. I handed my .... form to the secretary.
    a. app b. application c. apply d. a & b
16. She .... me about the time of the meeting.
    a. communicated b. attached c. connected d. contacted

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

The Internet of Things

(SB page 52)

1. Linking[1] the world

Communication[2] is **no longer**[3] about people talking to one another, but about **machines**[4] talking to machines. This is **known as**[5] the **Internet of Things (IOT)**[6]. **Technology**[7] is **developing**[8] so fast that **experts**[9] believe everyone will be **connected to**[10] the IOT in a few years.



2 . Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. **Already**[11], people can **control**[12] their **heating**[13] and **lighting**[14] from their phones, but in the future computers will make the **decisions**[15] for us. They'll even be able to say when the **rubbish**[16] bins need to be **emptied**[17] and control how much water we use!

3. No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using **smartphones**[18], but **imagine**[19] if you can get a **driverless**[20] car to come and **collect**[21] you using an **app**[22] on your phone. All driverless cars will be **electric**[23] and much **cleaner**[24] than **petrol**[25] ones. Experts think our roads will be **safer**[26] as there will be fewer **accidents**[27] using driverless cars.

4 . Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough **yet**[28]. Computers collect information about people and **businesses**[29] which **criminals**[30] can **steal**[31]. They use this information to **hack**[32] into **organisations**[33] like hospitals, **power stations**[34] and airports, and **cause**[35] **major**[36] **security problems** [37].

(1) التواصل / الارتباط بـ
(2) الاتصال
(3) لم يعُد
(4) الآلات
(5) معروف كـ
(6) إنترنت الأشياء
(7) التكنولوجيا
(8) تتطور
(9) الخبراء
(10) مُتَّصِل بـ
(11) بالفعل
(12) يتحكم في
(13) التدفئة
(14) الإضاءة
(15) القرارات
(16) القمامة
(17) يُفرِّغ
(18) الهواتف الذكية
(19) يتخيل
(20) بدون سائق
(21) يُحضِر - يجمع
(22) تطبيق
(23) كهربي
(24) أنظف
(25) البنزين
(26) أكثر أمانًا
(27) حوادث
(28) حتى الآن
(29) الشركات
(30) مجرمين
(31) يسرق
(32) يخترق
(33) المؤسسات
(34) محطات الطاقة
(35) يُسبب
(36) أساسي / رئيسي
(37) مشكلات أمنية

Internet use in Egypt *(WB page 116)*



Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A **recent**(1) **survey**(2) found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication, so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones, so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the **possibility**(3) that their computer might be hacked.

(1) حالى / حديث
(2) إحصاء / استبيان
(3) إمكانية / احتمالية

2 Listening Text

(SB page 54)

Boy : I don't think we'll ever live on the moon.
Girl : Lots of people are going to study online in the future.
Boy : Did you know that in 2039 the worldwide web will be 50 years old ?
Girl : I can't find the restaurant. I'll check my satnav.
Boy : My mum is buying a new flexible smartphone next week.

PART IV LANGUAGE

Future Forms

1 The "will" Future

Formation التكوين

يتكون المستقبل البسيط أو (will + inf.) فى هذه الصيغة فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

١ فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject فاعل + will / shall + inf. ......

- لاحظ استخدام **(will)** مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام **(shall)** مع **(I / we)** فقط.

ex. - I will (shall) help you do your homework.
- Nada will be four next March.

٢ عند النفى :

Subject فاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf. ......

ex. - We won't be ready before he comes back.
- Ahmed won't attend the party.

٣ عند السؤال بـ «هل» :

Will / Shall + subject فاعل + inf. ...... ?

ex. - Will you wait for the bus ?
- Yes, I will (wait for the bus). - No, I won't (wait for the bus).

٤ عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + will / shall + subject فاعل + inf. ...... ?

ex. - When will you go to bed ? - What will they do next ?

٥ يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبنى للمجهول من :

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ......

ex. - A camera will be bought (by Rodayna) tomorrow.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. She will .... 21 next Monday.
   a. am b. is c. be d. being
2. .... show me your new tablet ?
   a. You will b. What will you c. You won't d. Will you
3. .... show me on your tablet ?
   a. You will b. What will you c. You won't d. Will you
4. I think he .... for returning home late.
   a. will punish b. will be punished c. won't punish d. is punishing

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (أحداث ليس للفاعل أو رغباته أو إرادته دخل فيها):

ex. - It's my birthday next Tuesday. I'll be 17.
- The school will be ten years old this year.

٢ التعبير عن قرار سريع (رد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام) :

ex. - Oh, that's the doorbell. I'll open it.

٣ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل، ويمكن في هذه الحالة أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل :

think يعتقد / **expect** يتوقع / **hope** يأمل / **be sure** متأكد / **be afraid** يخشي / **wonder** يتساءل / **suppose** يفترض / **guess** يخمن / **fear** يخشى ....

ex. - I expect they will stay for dinner. - I think it will rain.

- ومن الممكن أن يصاحب ذلك بعض الظروف مثل :

perhaps - probably - possibily, may be ...etc.

ex. - Perhaps I'll go home early today.
- She will probably refuse to take any money.

٤ عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة أو الدعوة :

ex. - You look very thirsty. I'll get you a cold drink.

٥ عند طلب خدمة :

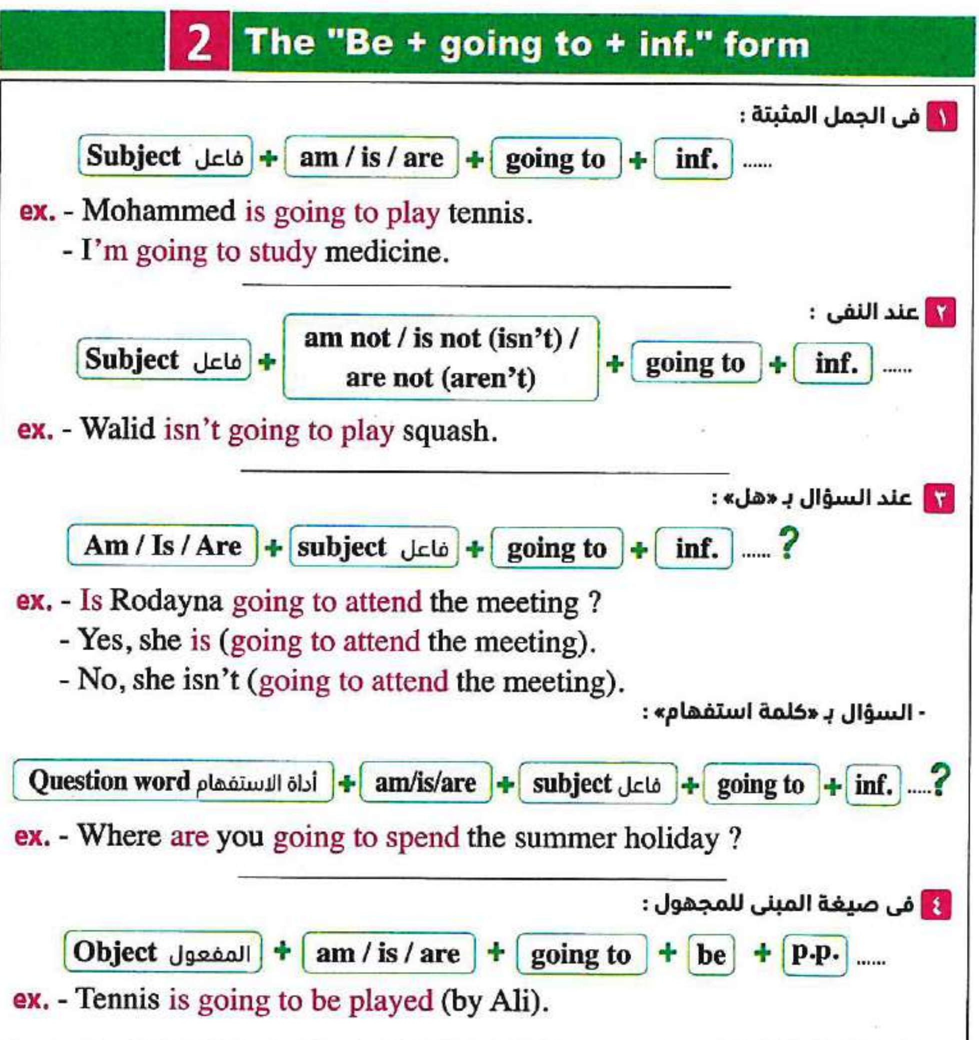
ex. - Will you let me use your mobile, please?

٦ التعبير عن الوعود :

ex. - My father has promised that we will spend a month in Sharm El-Sheikh.

٧ توجيه تهديدات :

ex. - Do your homework or I'll punish you.



2 The "Be + going to + inf." form

١ فى الجمل المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + **am / is / are** + **going to** + **inf.** ......

ex. - Mohammed is going to play tennis.
- I'm going to study medicine.

٢ عند النفى :

Subject فاعل + **am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't)** + **going to** + **inf.** ......

ex. - Walid isn't going to play squash.

٣ عند السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + **subject** فاعل + **going to** + **inf.** ...... ?

ex. - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting ?
- Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).
- No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).

- السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة الاستفهام + **am/is/are** + **subject** فاعل + **going to** + **inf.** ......?

ex. - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday ?

٤ فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + **am / is / are** + **going to** + **be** + **p.p.** ......

ex. - Tennis is going to be played (by Ali).

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Ashrafs .... the next summer holiday in Alexandria.
   a. will be spent b. going to spend
   c. are going to be spent d. are going to spend
2. .... the office ?
   a. When are you going to leave b. You are going to leave
   c. Are you going to be left d. You are going to be left
3. This man .... to prison for this crime.
   a. is going to send b. is going to be sent
   c. will send d. going to send

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن الخطط الشخصية المسبقة **"plans"** :

ex. - I am going to decorate my house.

٢ التعبير عن النية **(intend / intention)** لعمل شيء في المستقبل:

ex. - He is going to study medicine at university. That's his intention.

٣ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلًا في حالة وجود دليل (أي يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء) :

ex. - His leg is broken. He is going to have an operation.

- وبهذا المعني يمكن استخدام **"going to"** بعد أفعال مثل :

be sure / be afraid / believe / think ...etc.

ex. - Mum is very ill. I think she is going to see a doctor.

- لاحظ ان الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلا وتستخدم معها **(will)** :

ex. - He will win the running race. He's very fast.

٤ وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل علي ذلك كلمات مثل:

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

ex. - He is going to have lunch outdoors. He has already decided.

٥ وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن أشياء علي وشك الحدوث :

be going to + **inf.** = **be about to** علي وشك + **inf.**

ex. - I'm going to leave right now. = I'm about to leave.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من :

Subj.			
I	am	+	(inf. + ing) .....
He / She / It	is		
You / We / They	are		

ex. - Sama is watching a video. (إثبات)

- Sama isn't watching a cartoon. (نفى)

ex. - Is Sama watching a video ? (سؤال بـ«هل»)

- Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.

ex. - What is Sama doing ? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

- A video is being watched (by Sama). (مبنى للمجهول)

Uses استخدامات

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن المستقبل القريب في حالة وجود ترتيبات نهائية مسبقة ، و يدل علي ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / made arrangements / prepared / made preparations

ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

٢ لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My brother is getting married next Thursday.

٣ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

ex. - My class are going on a school trip next week.

٤ إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فان ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له وبالتالى نستخدم المضارع المستمر :

ex. - I can't go out with you tonight because I'm meeting my uncle at the airport.

٥ لاحظ أن المضارع المستمر لا يدل على المستقبل إلا فى حالة وجود تعبير زمنى أو سياق يدل على المستقبل :

ex. - I am having lunch with my uncle. (حدث مستمر الآن)

- I am having lunch with my uncle tomorrow. (ترتيب مستقبلى)

4 The Present Simple for Timetables

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث أو المواقف المرتبطة بجداول مواعيد ثابتة مثل الطائرات والقطارات والمباريات والحصص والامتحانات ومواعيد العمل:

ex. - My train arrives at 7:15 tomorrow morning.
- The match starts at 9 p.m. next Friday.

Important Notes on Future Forms ملاحظات هامة على صيغ المستقبل

١ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية تدل علي المستقبل ، وتأتي في نهاية الجملة ، لكن عندما تأتي في بداية الجملة نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) بعدها:

tomorrow / in the future / soon / one day / next القادم **(year , month , week , Friday.....) / this time** في مثل هذا الوقت **(next week / tomorrow........) / in** بعد / خلال **(a year, month, week.........) / by** بحلول / قبيل **(next week , tomorrow morning , 2030.........)**

- She will do the shopping tomorrow.
- Next Monday, I am visiting my uncle.

٢ يستخدم المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

After / As soon as / When / The moment + (مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- After I arrive (have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.
- Tell Ahmed to call me the moment you see (have seen) him.

Before + (مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- Before we leave (have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.
- Don't leave here before you finish (have finished) all your jobs.

مستقبل بسيط منفي (غالبا) / جملة أمر + **till / until** + (مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام)

- Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (has arrived) home.
- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools (has cooled).

Exercise On Language ● Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't worry. I .... you the money you need. (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
   a. am lending b. am going to lend c. will lend d. lend
2. My brother .... be 14 next month. (بورسعيد - بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. would b. is going to c. could d. will
3. **A:** I'm thirsty. **B:** Just a minute! I .... some cold water. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. will get b. am going to get c. am going d. got

4. She is stubborn. It .... easy to make her agree to this plan. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)

a. won't be b. isn't going to c. isn't being d. is

5. He hasn't studied hard. I think he .... this exam. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)

a. will fail b. fails c. is going to fail d. failed

6. Arrangements for the wedding have completed, we .... it next Friday. (بني سويف - بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)

a. will celebrate b. celebrate
c. are going to celebrate d. are celebrating

7. Batol got top marks. She .... the faculty she likes. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٣)

a. joins b. will join c. is joining d. is going to join

8. Akram is filling up the bucket with water. He .... the car. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)

a. will be washed b. is washed
c. washes d. is going to wash

9. Ali .... go out until he finishes his work. (المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)

a. didn't b. will c. won't d. wouldn't

10. We intend to meet some friends after .... our study. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)

a. finishing b. will finish c. had finished d. finishes

11. Study hard or the teacher .... you. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)

a. is punishing b. will punish
c. punishes d. is going to punish

12. Salma already packed her bag. She .... tomorrow. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٣)

a. travels b. will travel
c. is going to travel d. is travelling

13. The train .... at 5 o'clock. (الجيزة - الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)

a. arrives b. arrive c. will arrive d. is arriving

14. I have just decided to buy a new mobile. This means I .... a new mobile. (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)

a. am buying b. am going to buy c. buy d. will buy

15. Students will go to the club as soon as they .... their homework. (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)

a. finish b. had finished c. finishing d. finished

16. Once I ...., I will eat lunch. (البحيرة - أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

a. had arrived b. arrives c. have arrived d. arrival

17. Look! It is very cloudy. It .... (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)

a. will rain b. is raining c. is going to rain d. rains

18. It is roaring with thunder and lightning. I think there .... a terrible storm. (اسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)

a. will be b. has been c. is going to be d. had been

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 56 & 57 WB pages 118 & 119



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	password (n)	كلمة المرور
		personal details (n)	التفاصيل الشخصية
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	phishing (n)	النصب الإلكتروني
click (ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	post (ed) (v)	يرسل
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	satnav (n)	التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي
download (n)	ملف مُنَزَّل	scam (n)	احتيال - غِشّ
download (ed) (v)	يُنَزِّل	scam (med) (v)	يغش - يحتال على
downloading (n)	التنزيل	software (n)	برنامج - برمجيات
Google (n)	مُحرِّك البحث جوجل	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
google (d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل عن	upload (ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
lock (ed) (n - v)	يقفل - قِفل	uploading (n)	الرفع
malware (n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

account (n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على الإنترنت)	frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف
		furious (adj)	ساخط / غاضب جدًا
almost (adv)	تقريبًا	horrible (adj)	فظيع
careful (adj)	حريص/حَذِر	impossible (adj)	مستحيل
change (d) (v)	يُغيِّر - يتغير	media (n)	أجهزة الإعلام - وسائل الإعلام
comment (ed) (n-v)	تعليق - يعلق		
credit card (n)	بطاقة ائتمان	mention (ed) (v)	يَذكُر - يقول
delete (d) (v)	يحذف - يلغى	recognise (d) (v)	يتعرف علي
details (n)	تفاصيل	remove (d) (v)	يُزيل - يُبْعِد
dishonest (adj)	غير أمين - مُخادِع	rude (adj)	وَقِح/غير مهذَّب
document (n)	وثيقة	scary (adj)	مُخيف/مُرعِب
embarrassing (adj)	مُخرِج	share (d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر
employment (n)	توظيف/تشغيل - استغلال	socialise (d) (v)	يختلط (بالآخرين)
fly - flew - flown (v)	يطير - يُطيِّر - يُسرِع	trouble (n)	مأزق / مشكلة
free (free of charge)(adj)	مجاني	ugly (adj)	قبيح المنظر
		unwanted (adj)	غير مرغوب فيه

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
anti-virus software (n) برنامج مكافحة الفيروسات	software that removes يزيل unwanted programs from a computer
click (v) ينقر	to press a button زر on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen شاشة that you want the computer to do
cyberbullying (n) التنمر الإلكترونى	sending messages online to frighten or worry someone
downloading malware تنزيل البرامج الخبيثة	putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it
lock (v) يقفل	to do something to stop other people using your phone or social media accounts
phishing (n) النصب الإلكتروني	- trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them - a dishonest plan to get money
posting photos إرسال الصور	putting photographs online
scam (n) احتيال - غش	a dishonest plan to steal money
uploading personal details تحميل البيانات الشخصية	copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet

Exercises On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Definitions

1. .... means to transfer information from the internet to your computer. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Unloading b. Loading c. Downloading d. Uploading
2. A .... is someone who illegally copies and sells someone else's work. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. pirate b. pipe c. plot d. pilot
3. Someone has tried to trick me into giving confidential information over the internet. This is called .... (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. bullying b. phishing c. scamming d. virus
4. Sending messages to frighten people is called .... (المنوفية - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
   a. phishing b. scamming c. cyberbullying d. scanning

5. A/An .... software removes unwanted programs from a computer.
a. hacker b. database c. virus d. anti-virus

6. To .... is to press a button on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.
a. cause b. link c. click d. network

7. To stop other people using your phone or social media accounts, you should .... them.
a. offer b. lock c. post d. design

2 Key Vocabulary

8. You should .... the door before you leave. (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
a. look b. lake c. lock d. leak

9. Don't interfere with people's affairs and don't ask them .... questions. (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
a. personal b. personality c. personnel d. person

10. This webpage is full of job .... I found my current job here. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)
a. anti-virus b. malware c. survey d. adverts

11. I received an email saying I have won a million dollar. I think it's a .... (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
a. scam b. scan c. skim d. scream

12. Don't .... on a link you don't recognize to be safe. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)
a. click b. pick c. sick d. sink

13. You need to have a strong .... to protect your computer. (الإسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
a. block b. link c. antivirus d. click

14. Don't .... programmes from untrusted websites to your computer. (الإسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
a. upload b. load c. overload d. download

15. I .... my teacher's name and found out he is very famous. (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
a. googled b. connected c. linked d. hacked

16. This programme protects your computer against .... and phishing attacks. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)
a. malware b. software c. hardware d. nowhere

17. The email looked like it came from my bank but it was an example of .... (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)
a. phishing b. uploading c. downloading d. cyberbullying

18. Using someone's photos or personal information to hurt them online is an example of ....
a. support b. socialising c. cyberbullying d. malware

19. Your computer .... is easy to guess; it's 1, 2, 3, 4! (دمياط - كفر البطيخ ٢٠٢٤)
   a. app   b. password   c. virus   d. software

20. My friend Shahd uses her smart phone to .... photos to her friends. (الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٤)
   a. post   b. shoot   c. close   d. overload

21. He realized he was .... when he found no money in his account. (القليوبية - القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
   a. scanned   b. scammed   c. skimmed   d. skin

22. Both anti-viruses and malwares are computer............... (دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٤)
   a. hardware   b. hard wares   c. software   d. soft wares

3 Important Vocabulary

23. If you don't have enough money, you can .... a room with another person. (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)
   a. divide   b. share   c. take part   d. collect

24. He didn't .... the place; it had changed so much over the years. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. recognize   b. sterilize   c. realize   d. organize

25. Other people can make .... on my blog. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. comments   b. comrades   c. commas   d. combs

26. I always advise my children not to watch .... movies as they make them fearful. (المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)
   a. comic   b. funny   c. exciting   d. scary

27. Most people find it .... to ask others for money.
   a. embarrassing   b. furious   c. free   d. unwanted

28. Black cats .... some babies.
   a. socialise   b. frighten   c. comment   d. mention

29. Pilots have the ability to .... aircraft.
   a. flow   b. flee   c. fly   d. flea

30. One must always .... their password to keep their accounts safe.
   a. change   b. charge   c. recharge   d. exchange

31. He was .... because his new tablet had just been broken.
   a. embarrassing   b. furious   c. free   d. unwanted

32. It is important for a child to .... with other people.
   a. socialise   b. frighten   c. comment   d. mention

33. He is a short-tempered حاد الطبع person, so be .... about what you say to him.
   a. careless   b. care   c. cares   d. careful

34. He wants to .... a malware from his tablet.
    a. remove b. recognize c. develop d. design
35. Children under six have their meals .... of charge in this restaurant.
    a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted
36. She .... that she turned off the laptop before leaving the office.
    a. socialised b. frightened c. tricked d. mentioned
37. You need to protect your Facebook ....
    a. network b. account c. evidence d. intention
38. The officer asked me about the .... of the accident.
    a. details b. organisations c. offers d. networks
39. This programme deletes .... data to save memory.
    a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

build	friendships	يُكوّن صداقات	**look**	like	يبدو كأنه / يشبه
do	wrong	يُخطئ		heavy	تبدو ثقيلة
give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية		right	يبدو على ما يُرام
	a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي	**stay**	safe	يبقى بأمان
go	online	يدخل على الإنترنت	**take**	photos	يلتقط الصور
keep	a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة عن			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advert	إعلان	advertisement, ad
malware	برمجيات خبيثة	malicious software
scam	احتيال - غِش	fraud, trick

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
download	تنزيل - يُحَمِّل (من الإنترنت)	upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الإنترنت)
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
security, safety	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

advert	
advertise (d) (v) يُعلِن عن	- We pay a lot of money to advertise our products.
advert = ad = advertisement (n) إعلان	- We pay a lot of money for adverts for our products.
advertiser (n) مُعلِن	- We pay a lot of money for advertisers to promote يروج لـ our products.
advertised (adj) مُعلَن عنه	- This product is advertised on TV.
cyberbullying	
cyberbully (ied) (v) يتنمر على الإنترنت	- It is a crime to cyberbully people.
cyberbullying (n) التنمر الإلكتروني	- Cyberbullying is a crime.
cyberbully (n) متنمر إلكتروني	- It is a crime to be a cyberbully.
download	
download (ed) (v) يُنزِّل - يتم تحميله	- The file downloaded slowly.
download (n) ملف مُنزَّل	- I keep all downloads in this file.
downloading (n) التنزيل	- Downloading large files takes some time.
downloadable (adj) قابل للتنزيل	- This file is not downloadable.
lock	
lock (v) يقفل	- I use a symbol to lock the screen.
lock (n) قفل	- I use a symbol as a lock for the screen.
locked (adj) مقفول	- The screen is locked with a symbol.
scam	
scam (med) (v) يحتال على / يغش	- She was scammed by an online friend.
scam (n) احتيال / غش	- She was the victim ضحية of a scam.
scammer (n) محتال / غشاش	- She was the victim of a scammer.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a comment about	تعليق على	on the internet	على الإنترنت
an advert for	إعلان عن	on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى
an example of	مثال على	plenty of	كثير من
careful about	حريص على	Social Media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
disadvantages to	مساوئ لـ	stop its working	يجعله يتوقف عن العمل

in trouble	فى مأزق	the space provided	الفراغ المتاح
key points	النقاط الرئيسية	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هى
nothing happened	لم يحدث شىء	write in clear simple words	يكتب مستخدمًا كلمات بسيطة وواضحة

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

choose from	يختار من بين	delete … from	يحذف ... من
click on	ينقر على	remove … from	يُزيل ... من
complete … with	يُكمل ... بـ	socialise …with	يختلط اجتماعياً بـ - يتواصل عبر وسائل التواصل مع

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

scam - spam

- **scam** نصب / احتيال على الإنترنت (للاستيلاء على أموال الغير)
  - The police have warned حذر people about internet and phone scam.
- **spam** رسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تحتوي على إعلانات غير مرغوب فيها
  - I don't know how to delete all this spam.

advertisement

- **advertisement / advert / ad** إعلان عن سلعة / خدمة (كلمة عامة)
  - Don't believe adverts. Ask people who have already bought the products المنتجات.
- **commercial** إعلان تجارى (في التليفزيون / الإذاعة)
  - This actress ممثلة started her career in commercials.
- **trailer** إعلان عن فيلم
  - This web page is full of trailers.
- **promotion** حملة دعائية (للترويج لمنتج معين)
  - The company spent 2 million dollars on promotions for the new product.
- **announcement** إعلان / تنبيه (نشر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تحذيرات - قرارات)
  - We are waiting for the announcement of the decisions.

virus - anti-virus - malware - hacker

- **virus** فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
  - He is infected with مصاب بـ Coronavirus.
- **virus** فيروس إلكترونى (يسبب ضرر للأجهزة الحاسوبية)
  - A virus has destroyed the data on my tablet.
- **anti-virus software** مُكافح فيروسات (برنامج لإزالة البرامج الضارة)
  - Don't trust تثق بـ a free anti-virus software.

• **malware** البرمجيات الخبيثة (برنامج يقوم بتدمير وإتلاف أجهزة الحاسب والهواتف الذكية)
- Malware is a malicious software برنامج خبيث.

• **hacker** قرصان إنترنت (شخص يخترق خصوصية أجهزة الكمبيوتر والبرامج الخاصة بالآخرين)
- A hacker has deleted the data from the central computer.

software - hardware

• **software (un countable noun)** برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)
- I bought this anti-virus software.

• **hardware (uncountable noun)** مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره)
- I need some kitchen hardware.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

• ✪ MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. I was asked to give ....
   a. personal details b. heavy c. online
   d. a presentation e. sat-nav
2. You can .... online.
   a. give b. go c. do d. take e. study
3. "............" is short for advertisement.
   a. P.P. b. Ad c. DOB d. AD e. Advert
4. Scam is a synonym of ....
   a. trek b. trick c. found d. fraud e. afraid
5. "I locked the front door." The verb "lock" here is an antonym for ....
   a. open b. repair c. fix d. paint e. unlock

• ✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Children should socialise with others to gain experience." "Socialise" means .... (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. mix b. donate c. separate d. shut
2. Apologise when you .... wrong.
   a. do b. look c. make d. write
3. Her face is pale. She does not .... right.
   a. do b. look c. make d. lock
4. Danger is antonymous with .... (سوهاج – المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. safe b. safety c. secure d. insecurity
5. "I have just uploaded a video." In this sentence, the word "uploaded" is the antonym of ....
   a. unloaded b. overloaded c. downloaded d. a & c

6. "Be careful of malicious software." The speaker is warning us against ....
   a. software b. hardware c. adverts d. malware
7. My children keep the .... on desktop.
   a. downloaded b. downloads c. uploaded d. cyberbullying
8. I had given him 5000 pounds before I realised that he was a ....
   a. scam b. scams c. scammed d. scammer
9. I pressed the red button to stop the machine ....
   a. working b. to working c. work d. to work
10. Sama asked me to remove the peel .... the orange.
   a. with b. for c. from d. at
11. .... conclude, hard work is necessary for success in life and work.
   a. In b. By c. Of d. To
12. The processor of the computer is part of its ....
   a. software b. hardware c. malware d. a & b

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Hassan's blog

(SB page 57)

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert for a free game. I clicked on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!

My dad was furious because they stole money from his bank account and my computer stopped working properly! Don't click on links you don't recognise and never give your personal details on a strange website. Oh, and remember to use **anti-virus software** to stop thieves!

Stay safe online

(SB page 57)

Don't add your personal details to a website.
Do change your **password**(1) often.
Don't **click on a link**(2) you don't **recognise**(3).
Do **lock**(4) your phone.
Do lock your **social media accounts**(5).
Don't upload **embarrassing**(6) photos.
Don't save bank details on a website.
Do use anti-virus software.
Do use different passwords on different websites.
Don't write **unkind comments**(7) about other people.

(1) كلمة سر
(2) ينقر على رابط
(3) يتعرف على
(4) يغلق
(5) حسابات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
(6) محرج
(7) تعليقات سيئة

2 Listening Text

(SB page 56)

Hassan : Last week, I was reading about a new **online game**[1] and saw an **advert**[2] that said I could get this game for free. All I had to do was **complete a form**[3] with my name, email **address**[4] and **credit**[5] card **details**[6]. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course, it was a **scam**[7]. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

Laila : I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that **employers**[8] often look online to see what we've **posted**[9], so I decided to **google**[10] my name to see what they might find. It was scary. All the photos and the "funny" **comments**[11] I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't **delete**[12] them. I didn't **realise**[13] it's almost impossible to remove **personal data**[14] from the internet.

Saeed : I love reading my friend's **social media posts**[15], but some people write really **horrible**[16] things about other teenagers. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of **rude comments**[17] about how he looked and how **ugly**[18] his bike is. I couldn't believe it ! These kids would never, never **bully**[19] my friend at school, so why they do online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now !

(1) لعبة على الإنترنت
(2) إعلان
(3) يملأ / يكمل استمارة
(4) عنوان
(5) حساب بنكى
(6) تفاصيل
(7) احتيال / غش
(8) أصحاب العمل
(9) يرسل منشور
(10) يبحث على جوجل
(11) تعليقات
(12) يحذف
(13) يدرك
(14) بيانات شخصية
(15) منشورات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى
(16) فظيع / رهيب
(17) تعليقات وقحة
(18) قبيح
(19) يتنمر / يبلطج

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

Exercises On Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I won't do anything until I .... something to eat.
   a. have   b. will have   c. had had   d. had

2. Oh, the water is boiling. I .... off the gas.
   a. will turn
   b. am going to turn
   c. am turning
   d. turn
3. **A:** We haven't got any sugar. **B:** I .... some this evening.
   a. will buy
   b. am going to buy
   c. will be buying
   d. will have bought
4. A party .... in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.
   a. is giving
   b. is being given
   c. gives
   d. is going to give
5. It's the first time I've ever seen this hotel. I've decided that I .... in it next month.
   a. am going to stay
   b. will stay
   c. am staying
   d. have stayed
6. The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. It looks as if it .... down.
   a. will fall
   b. is falling
   c. is going to fall
   d. falls
7. **A:** How old are you? **B:** I .... 44 next February.
   a. am
   b. am going to be
   c. will be
   d. am being
8. I have made up my mind. I .... a new house.
   a. am going to buy
   b. will buy
   c. am buying
   d. buy
9. **A:** I don't know how to use this camera.
   B: It's quite easy. I .... you.
   a. am showing
   b. am going to show
   c. will show
   d. show
10. Our school .... part in the sports competition next week. That has been arranged.
    a. will take
    b. takes
    c. is taking
    d. is going to take
11. I expect that Reem .... married next year.
    a. get
    b. will get
    c. has got
    d. gets
12. Watch out! You .... the flower vase.
    a. would drop
    b. are going to drop
    c. drop
    d. are being dropped
13. I .... work early today. I have arranged that with the manager.
    a. leave
    b. am going to leave
    c. am leaving
    d. will leave
14. The train .... Aswan at 8:00 o'clock. It's on the timetable.
    a. is going to leave
    b. will leave
    c. is leaving
    d. leaves
15. I expect that my team .... the match.
    a. is winning
    b. is going to win
    c. will win
    d. wins
16. **A:** Why are you taking down all the pictures? **B:** I .... the room.
    a. paint
    b. am going to paint
    c. will paint
    d. am being painted

2 Special cases

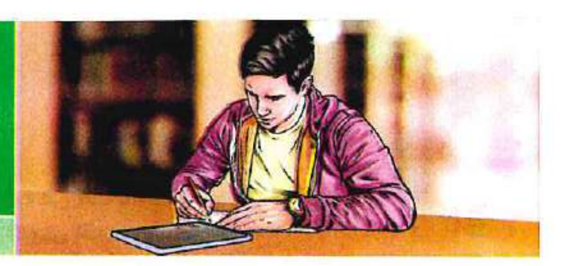
17. The agent says my flight .... at 7 o'clock tomorrow.
    a. is b. shall be c. will be d. is being
18. She looks extremely pale شاحبة. I think she ....
    a. will faint b. is fainting c. is going to faint d. faint
19. I think my cousin .... law. He is keen on defending people.
    a. would study b. is going to study
    c. studying d. will study
20. **A:** I've decided to set up a business.
    B: Oh, have you? When .... start?
    a. shall you b. do you c. are you going to d. will you
21. I .... dinner today, mum. You look tired.
    a. prepare b. will prepare
    c. am preparing d. am going to prepare
22. **A:** What are your personal plans for the next two years?
    B: I .... a new house.
    a. build b. will build
    c. am building d. am going to build
23. Twenty years from now, I think my country .... a fantastic place.
    a. is b. is going to be c. will be d. shall be
24. He is going to catch the bus when it ....
    a. arrives b. will arrive c. arrived d. arrive
25. When you arrive, ... me at once.
    a. are going to call b. are calling c. will call d. call
26. Don't wash the dishes if you .... in a hurry.
    a. were b. are being c. are d. will be
27. I can't go out with you this afternoon. I .... the doctor at 5 pm.
    a. see b. going to see c. will see d. am seeing
28. **A:** When are you going to leave for Rome?
    B: I .... tomorrow on the 6:00 o'clock plane. Here is the ticket.
    a. leave b. am leaving
    c. am going to leave d. will leave
29. It is raining heavily. Don't go out or you .... wet.
    a. get b. will get c. are going to get d. are getting
30. **A:** Make a prediction about your life ten years from now.
    B: I .... married.
    a. will be b. am
    c. am getting d. am going to get
31. He is brave by nature. He .... the problem.
    a. face b. facing
    c. is going to face d. will face

32. You won't leave the office until the manager .... you.
    a. called b. had called c. has called d. call
33. In ten years' time, my father .... even older.
    a. will look b. is looking c. going to look d. looks

3 Check your understanding

34. "I won't go to bed until my father returns home." I mean that ....
    a. I will go to bed before my father arrives home.
    b. once I go to bed, my father will arrive home.
    c. once my father arrives home, I will go to bed.
    d. I won't go to bed after my father arrives home.
35. "Everything is arranged for my brother's wedding tomorrow." What does this mean?
    a. My brother will get married tomorrow.
    b. My brother gets married tomorrow.
    c. My brother will be got married tomorrow.
    d. My brother is getting married tomorrow.
36. "My father has made up his mind about selling the old car to the mechanic for 70,000 pounds." What does this mean?
    a. My father is going to sell the old car to the mechanic.
    b. My father won't sell the old car to the mechanic.
    c. My father isn't selling the old car to the mechanic.
    d. My father sells the car to the mechanic.
37. "I am about to leave soon." This means ....
    a. I'm being left soon. b. I am going to leave soon.
    c. I will leave soon. d. I leave soon.
38. "Omar has decided to redecorate his flat." This means ....
    a. Omar will redecorate his flat. b. Omar is going to redecorate his flat.
    c. Omar is redecorating his flat. d. Omar redecorates his flat.
39. "I'm going to look for a better job." This is a/an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
40. "Karim will come first this year." This is a/an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
41. "I will buy you a tablet for your birthday." This is a/an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
42. "Keep calm or I'll send you out." This is a/an ....
    a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
43. "This school will be 70 years old next year." This is a/an ....
    a. fact b. future fact c. plan d. arrangement
44. Watch out! You're going to step into a hole. This means that the addressee المُخاطَب .... into a hole.
    a. will step b. will be stepped
    c. is about to step d. has stepped

PART THREE | Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

on

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) مع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

on (TV, the radio, the telephone, the internet, social media, mass media, a social networking site, a website ....)

ex. - People share information about themselves on social networking sites.

spend + money / time

spend money on + **n. / inf.** + **ing** = **spend money to** + **inf.**

ex. - He spent a lot of money on (buying) clothes.
= He spent a lot of money to buy new clothes.

spend time + **n. / (inf. + ing)**

ex. - She spent two days preparing for the party.

It's a waste of time / money + **(inf. + ing)** ... مضيعة للوقت / المال ...

ex. - It's a waste of money cooking all this food for two people.
- It's a waste of time watching films again and again.

verb + obj. مفعول (inf. + ing)

هناك أفعال يأتى بعدها (obj. + ing)، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

catch - discover - feel - hear - leave - notice - observe - see - watch - find - overhear يتنصت

ex. - The police caught him hiding the money he had stolen.
- I saw him running in the street.

ومع أفعال أخرى يكون (inf. + ing) اختصار لـ (by + inf. + ing) :

ex. - People connect to the internet by using their smartphones.
= People connect to the internet using their smartphones.

yet

١ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) فى الجمل المنفية فى المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً فى نهاية الجملة، وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتي الآن :

ex. - My father hasn't arrived yet. (I expect he will arrive.)

٢ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) فى الجمل الاستفهامية فى المضارع التام وتأتى غالباً فى نهاية السؤال، وهى تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن :

ex. - Has Amira called yet? (I expect she will call.)

٣ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) بعد صفات التفضيل :

ex. - As a writer, this is my best book yet.

٤ تُستخدم (yet) كأداة ربط بمعني (لكن / ومع ذلك) وفى هذه الحالة تساوي (but) فى المعني :

ex. - He is very intelligent, yet too lazy to do anything.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I haven't done the shopping ....
   a. just b. already c. ago d. yet
2. She spent the weekend .... her mother.
   a. helping b. helped c. help d. helps
3. They spent a lot of money .... their new flat.
   a. on b. to c. with d. of
4. She spent all her savings .... a modern car.
   a. buys b. buy c. to buying d. to buy
5. This is Salah's best goal ....
   a. never b. yet c. but d. however
6. There will be better education .... modern technology.
   a. use b. used c. to use d. using
7. It is a waste of time .... online for three hours.
   a. chatted b. to chatting c. chatting d. a chat
8. She is stupid , ... very beautiful.
   a. yet b. although c. since d. as
9. Listen to these people .... about modern technology.
   a. talks b. be talked c. talking d. talked
10. You can find information about everything .... the internet.
    a. of b. on c. for d. about

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)

Cyberbullying is when someone uses technology to send mean, threatening, or embarrassing messages to or about another person. **It** might be in a text, e-mail, message, or in a post online. If someone is bullying you at school, when you leave for the day it's over. But cyberbullying can

follow you home, and continue all night. Imagine a classmate posts a photo of themselves online. Someone else makes a mean, mocking comment about it. Soon, that photo has been shared, liked, or reposted. Thousands of people have seen it. That's why cyberbullying can be extra hurtful: it's public and it spreads quickly.

Here are some tips to protect yourself from cyberbullying: Never share your passwords, private photos, or personal data online, not even with friends. Think before you post. If you're upset, sad, or angry, wait to post or respond. Give yourself some time to cool down.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cyberbullying can follow you ....
   a. nowhere b. everywhere c. few places d. no places
2. Cyberbullying can be extra ....
   a. hurtful b. useful c. good d. wonderful
3. The passage offers some .... to protect you from cyberbullying.
   a. cons b. disadvantages c. tips d. demerits
4. If someone is upset, sad, or angry, they .... wait to post or respond.
   a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. needn't d. should
5. Cyberbullying can include sending threatening, or .... messages.
   a. good b. available c. embarrassing d. related
6. Never .... your passwords, private photos, or personal data online.
   a. share b. prevent c. protect d. stop
7. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. message b. email c. cyberbullying d. technology

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Model Essay

✪ Write an eassy about 150 words about your plans for the future :

My plans for the future

Everyone has his / her future plans. It is a good thing to have your own future plans. These plans are the goals that you want to achieve. In this essay, I'm going to write about both my work and family plans.

My work plans are very simple. I want to have a good job which pays me enough money. My dream job is to be an accountant in a bank. Although accountants work hard for many hours, they earn a lot of money. As an accountant, I won't need to look for extra work. As soon as I leave my work, I will give the rest of the day to my family.

My family plans are very ambitious. I intend to have a small family. My wife must have a good education. I prefer that she should be a housewife, but I don't mind if she has her own job. I wish I could live in a villa, not

a flat. I want my villa to have a large garden with a swimming pool.

However, plans don't achieve themselves. I must work hard to reach my dreams. Without hard work and good planning, my plans will stay in the world of dreams.

3 Writing

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic: (الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

Your ambitions and goals for the future

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

4 Translation الترجمة

A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

1. People nowadays need to understand that learning must be lifelong. This is necessary because the world of work is changing very fast.
(البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. علي الناس في الوقت الحاضر ان يُدرِكوا أن التعليم يجب أن يستمر مدي الحياة، وهذا أمر ضروري لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة.
   b. علي الناس في الوقت الحاضر ان يُدرِكوا أن التعليم يجب أن يستمر مدي الحياة، وهذا أمر ضروري لأن سرعة عالم العمل تتغير تغيراً كبيراً.
   c. علي الناس في الوقت الحاضر ان يُدرِكوا أن الثقافة يجب أن يستمر مدي الحياة، وهذا أمر ضروري لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة.
   d. علي الناس في الوقت الحاضر ان يُدرِكوا أن التعليم يجب أن يستمر مدي الحياة، وهذا أمر ضروري لأن عامل العلم يتغير بسرعة كبيرة.

2. Research says that we must have a hobby to refresh ourselves and ease the bad effects of work stress. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
   a. تؤكد الأبحاث انه يجب ألا تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السلبية لضغوط العمل.
   b. تقول الأبحاث انه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السلبية لضغوط العمل.
   c. تقول الأبحاث انه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنقاذ أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السلبية لضغوط العمل.
   d. تقول الأبحاث انه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتدعيم الآثار السلبية لضغوط العمل.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. تُستخدَم التكنولوجيا الحديثة هذه الأيام في مجالات متنوعة كالطب والهندسة الوراثية، كما تُستخدَم أيضاً في استكشاف الفضاء، التعليم، الاتصالات وصناعة الأفلام. (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

a. Nowadays, modern technology is used in different fields such as medicine and genetic engineering. It is also used in exploring space, education, communications and movie making.
b. Nowadays, modern technology is used in different fields such as medicine and genetic engineering. It is also used in discovering space, education, communications and movie making.
c. Nowadays, modern technology are used in different fields such as medicine and genetic engineering. It is also used in exploring space, education, communications and movie doing.
d. Nowadays, modern technology is used in different fields such as medicine or genetic engineering. It is also used in exploring space, education, connections and movie making.

---

٢. لا تكن متسرعاً في تصديق كل ما تسمع، فالأكاذيب والشائعات تنتشر أسرع من الحقائق.
(أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

a. Don't be so fast in believing all what you hear as lies and rumours publish faster than truth.
b. Don't be so quick in believing all what you hear because lies and rumours spread faster than truth.
c. Don't be so quick in believing all what you hear because liars and rumours spread faster than facts.
d. Don't be so fast in conveying all what you listen because lies and tricks spread faster than facts.

---

٣. إن السبب الرئيسي لإنشاء العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو تخفيف الازدحام في القاهرة التي تعد بالفعل واحدة من أكثر المدن ازدحاماً. (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

a. The secondary reason for building the New Administrative Capital is to emphasise congestion in Cairo, which is already one of the most crowded cities in the world.
b. The minor reason for demolishing the New Administrative Capital is to relieve congestion in Cairo, which is already one of the most crowded cities in the world.
c. The main reason for establishing the New Administrative Capital is to relieve congestion in Cairo, which is already one of the most crowded cities in the world.
d. The main reason for constructing the New Administrative Capital is to relieve flow in Cairo, which is all ready one of the most crowded cities in the world.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL ◀للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

click

• **click (n)** نقرة - صوت طقطقة

- With a single click on the mouse, you can get the information you need.
- The door shuts with a click.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
- shut / close -with a click يُحدِث صوت تَكّة عند القفل

• **click (on) (v)** ينقر - يُحْدِث صوت طقطقة على

- I clicked on the link but it did not open.

communicate

• **communicate (with) (v)** يتواصل - يتصل مع

- People from all over the world communicate with each other using emails.

• **communicate ... to** يُبَلِّغ ... لـ / ينقل ... إلى

- The manager communicated the decisions to the secretary by email.

• **communicate (to) (v)** يَعْدِي / ينقل مرض

- His flu was communicated to all his friends.

• **communication (n)** اتصال / تواصل - القدرة على التواصل

- Ayman's good communication makes him successful.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- be in communication with يكون علي تواصل مع
- a means of communication وسيلة اتصال أو تواصل
- a lack of communication انعدام التواصل
- poor communication علاقة أو تواصل ضعيف
- direct communication اتصال مباشر
- establish communication with يقيم علاقات مع
- communication skills مهارات التواصل

كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت والراديو والتليفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية، و بهذا المعني فهي جمع دائمًا:

- Modern communications help us learn and work from home.

the internet

• **the internet (n)** شبكة الإنترنت

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام **(the)**:

- You can find all the information you need on the internet.

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- on the internet علي الإنترنت - go on the internet يدخل علي الإنترنت
- buy ... on the internet يشتري ... من علي الإنترنت
- surf the internet يتصفح الإنترنت - an internet connection اتصال بالإنترنت
- internet shopping التسوق عبر الإنترنت
- internet banking الأعمال المصرفية علي الإنترنت

password

• **password (n)** كلمة السر - كلمة المرور
- You need to enter your password to check your email.

• **password-protected (n)** محمى باستخدام كلمة المرور
- All the data on the central computer are password-protected.

phishing

• **phishing (n)** الاحتيال أو النصب الإلكتروني (خداع الناس للاستيلاء علي أموالهم)
- He was arrested for phishing.

• **phisher (n)** نصاب / محتال عبر الإنترنت
- He was arrested because he was a phisher.

scam

• **scam (n)** عملية نصب أو احتيال - غش
- There was no flat for sale. It was just a scam.

• **scam (med) (v)** ينصب علي - يغش
- It is easy for evil شرير people to scam simple people.

• **scammer (n)** نصاب - مٌحتال - غشَّاش
- Don't believe him. He is a scammer.

security

• **secure (d) (v)** يحمي - يُؤمِّن
- The police secure citizens and their property أملاك.

• **secure (d) (v)** يضمن (يستخدم شيء كضمان)
- He used his farm to secure the loan القرض.

• **secure (adj)** آمِن - محمي ≠ **insecure** في خطر / غير محمي
- Your money is secure in the bank.

• **security (n)** الأمن - التأمين ≠ **insecurity** انعدام الأمن
- The security forces قوات الأمن protected the building.

software

• **software (n)** برنامج حاسوبي (كلمة لا تُعد)
- I downloaded the new software.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- install software يُثبِّت برنامج - anti-virus software برنامج مكافح للفيروسات
- a piece of software برنامج حاسوبي

technology

• **technology (n)** التكنولوجيا (الآلات والمعدات و الأساليب التي تعتمد علي التطور العلمي والحاسوبي)
- Modern technology has made life easy.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- Information Technology (IT) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
- advanced technology التكنولوجيا المتطورة
- digital technology التكنولوجيا الرقمية
- advances / developments in technology التطور التكنولوجي

• **technologist (n)** أخصائي / خبير تكنولوجيا
- In our school, Mr Mohammed Omar is a real technologist.

• **technological (adj)** تكنولوجي - متعلق بالتكنولوجيا
- Life has become faster thanks to بفضل technological development.

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
anti-	ضد	anti-virus antibiotic	مُكافح الفيروسات مضاد حيوي
cyber-	متعلق بالحواسيب وتكنولوجيا المعلومات	cyber bullying cyber-crime	التنمر الإلكتروني الجريمة الإلكترونية
dis-	تُكَوِّن العكس	dishonest	غير أمين - مُخادع
down-	أسفل	downstairs	بالطابق الأسفل
down-	من الانترنت	download	تنزيل - يُحَمِّل (من الإنترنت)
mal-	سيء - خبيث - مُصاب	malware	البرمجيات الخبيثة
self-	الذات - ذاتي	self-management	إدارة الذات
up-	أعلي	upstairs	بالطابق العلوي
up-	إلي الإنترنت	upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الإنترنت)

3 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ing	تُكَوِّن اسم / صفة	cyberbullying (n) embarrassing (adj)	التنمر الإلكتروني مُخرِج
-ise / ize	تُكَوِّن فعل	summarise / summarize	يُلخص
-ive	تُكَوِّن صفة	creative	مُبدِع - خلّاق
-ment	تُكَوِّن اسم	management	إدارة
-ology / -logy	تُكَوِّن اسم له علاقة بالعلم أو التكنولوجيا	technology	التكنولوجيا

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To join this club, fill in this ....
   a. app b. application c. malware d. bucket
2. If I don't hear the .... of the lock, I know the door isn't locked.
   a. comment b. possibility c. post d. click
3. His intelligence .... itself to us in everything he does.
   a. contacts b. connects c. communicates d. receives
4. .... is a giant digital library.
   a. An internet b. Internet c. Net d. The internet
5. My father refused to use the family house to .... my brother's loan from the bank.
   a. borrow b. lend c. secure d. endanger

Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I can see you are busy, so I .... long.
   a. am not staying b. will stay
   c. won't stay d. am not going to stay
2. I .... some old friends at the club tomorrow evening.
   a. will see b. am seeing
   c. am going to be seen d. see
3. I'll try to advise her but I know she ....
   a. doesn't listen b. isn't listening c. won't listen d. isn't going to listen
4. You .... so lazy. Stop it, please. It's annoying.
   a. will be b. are being c. are going to be d. are to be
5. Being intelligent, she .... first next year.
   a. comes b. is coming c. is going to come d. will come

Test on Unit 5





• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. "Eating a lot of sweets is a major cause of tooth decay." The synonym of "major" are ".............. and ...." .
   a. leading b. minor c. warming
   d. secondary e. important

2. "Some amazing animals are in danger". Danger is antonymous with .... (القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)
   a. risk b. safety c. hazard
   d. security e. endangered

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. I have a new .... on my smart phone which helps me practise foreign language. (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)
   a. hack b. app c. connection d. scam
2. Internet criminals .... into organizations like hospitals, airports and power stations. (البحيرة - أدكو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. pack b. sack c. hack d. mock
3. There should be some kind of .... between you and your relatives. (كفر الشيخ - بيلا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. conservation b. condensation c. communication d. pollution
4. My smartphone is .... to the internet now, so I will send the email at once.
   a. enjoined b. phished c. linked d. collected
5. There will soon be the .... for us all to travel in cars without drivers.
   a. speed b. technology c. scientist d. medal
6. .... programs can cause your device not to work properly.
   a. Software b. Hardware c. Malware d. Digital
7. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big .... (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)
   a. skim b. scare c. scam d. scan
8. They............ a party next week. Everything is arranged. (الأقصر - الأقصر ٢٠٢٤)
   a. have b. are having c. had d. have had
9. My son's birthday .... next Sunday. (أسيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. is going to be b. is being c. will have been d. will be

10. **A:** We haven't got any sugar? **B:** I know. I .... some this evening.
(أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

a. will buy
b. will be buying
c. am going to buy
d. will have bought

11. I can't meet you tonight because I .... my brother at the airport.

a. had met
b. am meeting
c. will meet
d. going to meet

12. Nader is very intelligent. I am sure he .... tomorrow's exam.
(البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)

a. will pass
b. is going to pass
c. is passing
d. passes

13. Mona's made up her mind to set up a business. She .... next month.
(البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

a. shall start
b. will start
c. is starting
d. is going to start

14. After she .... writing the report, she will deliver it to her boss.

a. finish
b. is finishing
c. had finished
d. finishes

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :
(الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

People born in ten years from now will probably never learn how to drive. Why ? Because our cars won't need drivers and computers will do all the work for us. There are already driverless cars in many places, but at the moment, they are only being tested. The computers they use must be able to recognise other vehicles, respond to people and things on the road, and know when the car must slow down or stop. For some people, the idea of a car without a driver is a frightening thought. However, experts say that 90% of accidents is because of mistakes made by people. Often it is because people are talking on their phones or feeling tired. With driverless cars, people are free to send texts, or even sleep, without danger. The computers in driverless cars should also make it faster to travel around cities because they will choose the best way. **They** will also cause less pollution because there will be less traffic. But how safe are these cars ? Some people say that they do not work well in bad weather.

So far, there have been at least 12 accidents with driverless cars in America (although 11 of these were caused by other cars. So, it might take a long time for people to feel relaxed enough to read a book while they travel. In the near future, driverless cars will probably become as familiar as the cars of today. In the past, people were also very worried by the idea of cars with engines. In the nineteenth century in England, when cars became popular, the law said that a man had to walk in front of them with a red flag to warn people. The law didn't change until 1896 .

1. The main reason why people born in ten years from now will probably never learn how to drive is that ....
   a. they don't want to learn how to drive.
   b. computers will drive for them.
   c. they will be too busy with other things.
   d. they will be bad drivers.
2. The function of the computers in driverless cars is to ....
   a. recognise other vehicles.
   b. respond to people and things on the road.
   c. choose the best way to travel around cities.
   d. all the above answer.
3. What is the main advantage of driverless cars ? – They ....
   a. are faster to travel around cities. b. cause more pollution.
   c. are safer than cars with drivers. d. cause more accidents.
4. What is the main disadvantage of driverless cars ? – They ....
   a. don't work well in bad weather. b. are too expensive.
   c. are too slow. d. are too fast.
5. Driverless cars are safer than cars with drivers because ....
   a. they don't cause accidents.
   b. they are faster than cars with drivers.
   c. 90% of accidents is because of mistakes made by people.
   d. people are free to send texts, or even sleep.
6. What does the underlined word "**They**" refer to ?
   a. computers b. driverless cars
   c. businessmen d. drivers
7. The main reason why people were worried by the idea of cars with engines in the nineteenth century in England was that they were ....
   a. too expensive b. too slow c. too dangerous d. useful

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Egypt has always been known as the "Birthplace of Civilization" because of its long and rich history. Throughout history, it has given great examples of great achievements.

a. لقد عُرفت مصر على أنها مهد الحضارة بسبب تاريخها الطويل والثري، فعبر التاريخ أعطت أمثلة كبيرة على الإنجازات العظيمة.

b. كانت مصر تُعرف على أنها مهد الحضارة بسبب تاريخها الطويل والثري، فعبر التاريخ أعطت أمثلة كبيرة على الإنجازات الحضارية.

c. لقد عُرفت مصر على أنها مقبرة الغزاة بسبب تاريخها الطويل والثري، فعبر التاريخ أعطت أمثلة كبيرة على الإنجازات الحضارية.

d. لقد عُرفت مصر على أنها مهد الحضارة بسبب تاريخها الطويل والثري، فعبر التاريخ أعطت أمثلة كبيرة على الإنجازات الحضارية.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

للتكنولوجيا الحديثة بعض الإيجابيات كما أن لها بعض السلبيات، ومن الأفضل ألا تشارك تفاصيل حياتك الشخصية على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي.

a. Modern technology has a lot of positives; it also has some negatives. It is also better not to share your personal life's details on social media.

b. Modern technology has some positives; it has some negatives. It is also better to share your personal life details on social media.

c. Modern technology has some positives; it also has some negatives. It is also better not to share your personal details on social media.

d. Modern technology has many positives, it also has many negatives. It is also better not to share your personal details on social media

5. Answer the following questions :

1. "I haven't spoken to anyone for three years." Do you think Ben Gun was happy on his journey to find the treasure? Why? Why not? (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)

....

2. Do you agree that Flint was an evil man? Why? Why not?

....

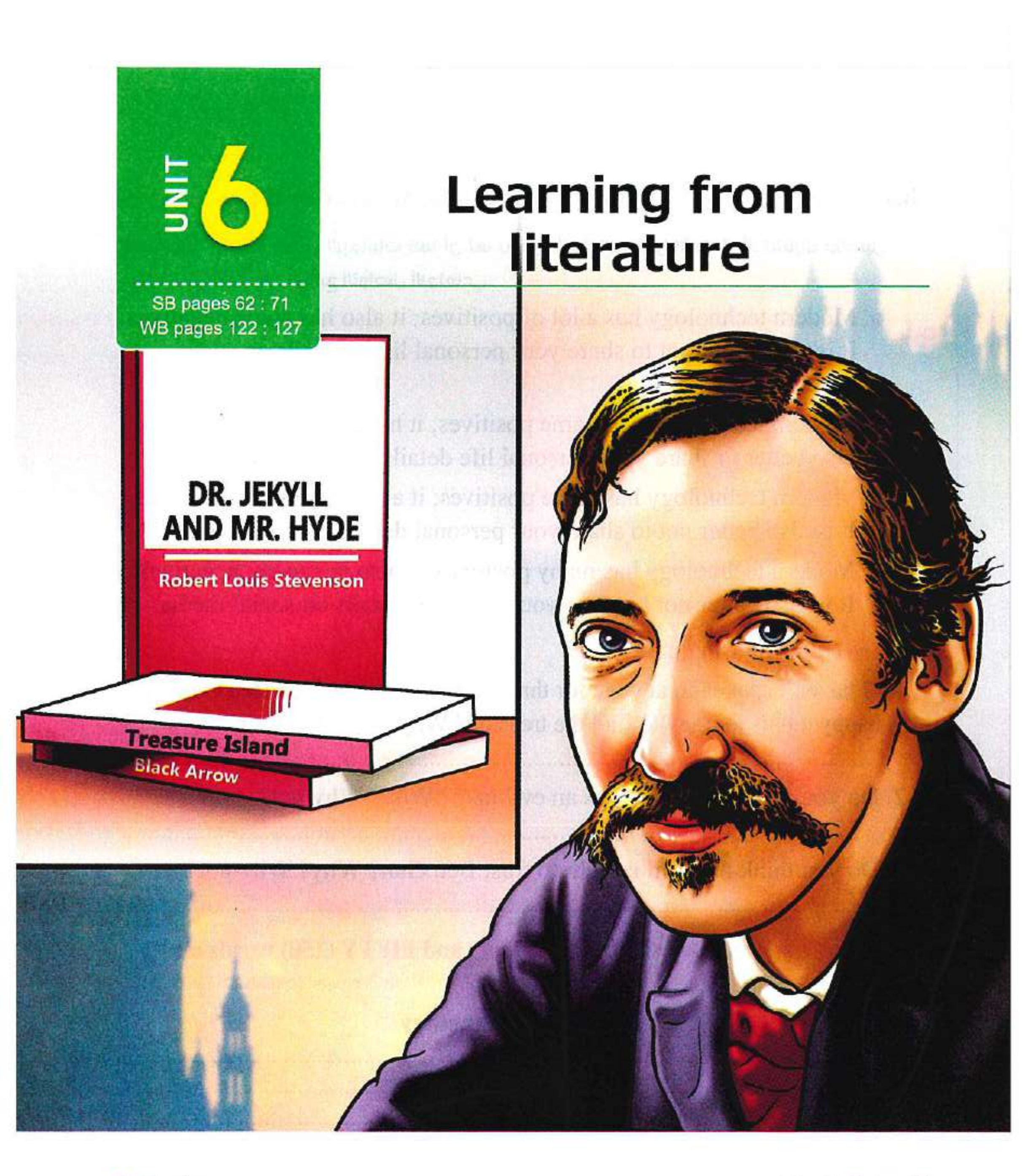
3. Do you think that Jim is right to trust Ben Gun? Why? Why not?

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)

Modern Technology

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading** : A biography on Stevenson; A poem, The Gardener
- **Writing** : A short review of a poem; A book review
- **Listening** : A conversation about Robert Louis Stevenson
- **Speaking** : Polite requests
- **Language** : Verbs + infinitive or -ing form
- **Life Skills** : Communication; Critical Thinking

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 122 & 123



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

currant (n)	الكِشمِش (أحد أصناف العنب الخالي من البذر)	plot (n)	قطعة أرض - جبانة(مقابر)
		plot (n)	الحَبْكة (ذروة الأحداث في القصة/الرواية)
currant row	صف من نبات الكِشمِش		
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس	plot (ted) (v)	يتَواطأ/ يتآمر - يخطّط
gravel (n)	الحَصَي	poem (n)	قصيدة
hay (n)	تِبن / قَش	poet (n)	شاعر
keep the gravel walk	يسير على الطريق الممهد بالحصي	poetic (adj)	شِعرِيّ
literature (n)	الأدب	poetry (n)	الشِعر - النَظم
lock (ed) (n - v)	قِفل - يقفل	row (n)	صف
novel (n)	رواية	walk (n)	مَمشي - ممر

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

case (n)	حالة - قضية	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر
choice (n)	اختيار	regret (ted) (n - v)	الندم - يندم - يأسف
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	request (ed) (n - v)	طَلَب - يطلب
consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر - يفكر في	romantic (adj)	رومانسي - حالم
discussion (n)	مناقشة	rule (d) (n - v)	قاعدة - يَحكُم
favour (n)	معروف - إحسان	sailing (n)	الإبحار
feed - fed (v)	يُطعِم	Scottish (adj)	أسكتلندي
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتتبع	sentence (n)	جملة
form (n)	شكل - صيغة	serious (adj)	جادّ
full-time (adj)	ذو دوام كامل	strange (adj)	غريب
helpful (adj)	مفيد - متعاون	suppose (d) (v)	يفترض
joy (n)	بهجة - فرحة	tools (n)	أدوات
kidnap (ped) (v)	يخطف	treasure (n)	كنز
lawyer (n)	محامي	unwell (adj)	مريض - ليس علي ما يرام
path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر	warm (adj)	دافئ
pirate (n)	قرصان	well (adj)	بصحة جيدة
popular (adj)	ذو شعبية - محبوب	while (n)	فترة من الوقت

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
dig (v) يحفر	to break up and move earth with your hands or a machine
gravel (n) الحَصَى	small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.
hay (n) تِبن / قش	dried grass that people use to feed animals
lock (v) يُقفِل	to close something using a key
novel (n) رواية	a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary
plot (n) قطعة ارض	a small piece of land for growing things on
poem (n) قصيدة	a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme
poet (n) شاعر	someone who writes poems
poetry (n) الشِعر - النظم	a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts تحاول to stir تثير a reader's imagination خيال or emotions مشاعر
treasure (n) كَنز	gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. A .... is a person who writes poetry.
   a. poem b. poet c. pot d. poetic
2. .... row is a line of plants that have small fruits. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Current b. Currant c. Bad d. Fruitless
3. .... is a type of dried grass that is used as food for animals. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Hay b. Grass c. Leaves d. Branches
4. The lines that form one part of a poem are .... (القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٤)
   a. titles b. coins c. mobs d. verses
5. A .... is a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.
   a. hay b. verse c. line d. novel
6. A .... is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme.
   a. poet b. poem c. poetry d. poetic
7. To .... is to move something in or under soil using a tool.
   a. lock b. swing c. uncover d. dig
8. The word .... means gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden.
   a. treasure b. money c. gemstone d. property

9. To .... is to close something using a key.
a. lock b. close c. shut d. book
10. A .... is a small piece of land for growing things on.
a. rock b. plot c. ground d. soil
11. .... is small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads etc.
a. Sand b. Stone c. Rock d. Gravel

2 Key Vocabulary

12. She ran up the .... road leading to the castle. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)
a. gravel b. plot c. digging d. rhyme
13. Farmers use .... as food for cattle. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
a. clay b. hay c. pie d. gravel
14. A good friend of yours is not expected to .... against you. (البحيرة - أدكو ٢٠٢٤)
a. look b. regret c. plot d. consider
15. There are gravel .... among trees and plants in parks. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
a. walks b. candles c. raws d. talks
16. It's true that the word "better" .... with word "letter". (الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
a. pronounces b. populates c. says d. rhymes
17. Ahmed Shawky was a famous .... (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)
a. novelist b. journalist c. poet d. officer
18. There are several .... of land for sale. (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)
a. pots b. belts c. boats d. plots
19. Sara's love for .... made her become a librarian. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)
a. treasure b. literature c. wealth d. hacking
20. Before we plant a tree, we'll need to .... a hole. (سوهاج - سوهاج ٢٠٢٤)
a. get b. dig c. want d. plot
21. You should .... the door before you leave. (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)
a. look b. lake c. lock d. leak
22. The .... of European football matches is so fast. (الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)
a. rhythm b. poem c. rhyme d. verse

3 Important Vocabulary

23. Some .... attacked the ship and stole many things a week ago. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)
a. sailors b. parents c. pilots d. pirates
24. Could you do me a .... and go there for me? (الأقصر - الطود ٢٠٢٤)
a. favourite b. favour c. duty d. help
25. Literature comes in .... forms: poetry, novels, etc. (الأقصر - الطود ٢٠٢٤)
a. vary b. different c. much d. variety

26. The young boy was ....; the gang asked for a ransom. (الجيزة - القناطر ٢٠٢٤)
a. hijacked b. disappeared c. plotted d. kidnapped
27. He always buys red roses for his fiancée, How ....! (المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)
a. romantic b. horrible c. funny d. comic
28. Life is full of situations which we must accept as we have no ....
(الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
a. appetite b. choice c. desire d. need
29. .... a hungry family can be very expensive. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)
a. Failing b. Feeding c. Falling d. Feeling
30. In .... you need help, call me at once.
a. case b. rule c. adventure d. joy
31. A group of words that start with a capital letter, end with a full stop and give some meaning is known as a ....
a. word b. line c. sentence d. verse
32. "He kept the gravel walk". In this sentence, "walk" means a ....
a. journey b. path c. trip d. movement
33. She is still .... the issue. She hasn't made a decision yet.
a. kidnapping b. supposing c. ruling d. considering
34. Football is the most .... game all over the world.
a. popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful
35. Don't .... yourself to others. Everyone is different.
a. regret b. review c. compare d. request
36. Never .... anything good you have done to anybody.
a. regret b. grow c. feed d. lie
37. This .... problem needs time and collaboration to be solved.
a. handy b. easy c. simple d. serious
38. My father has a/an .... job as the manager of a bank.
a. part-time b. full-time c. polite d. impolite
39. President Sadat started to .... Egypt in 1970.
a. kidnap b. suppose c. rule d. consider

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	best known for مشهور أكثر بـ	**keep**	the gravel walk يمشي على الطريق الممهد بالحصي	
do	a job يُؤدي مهمة - يقوم بعمل			
	a favour يصنع معروفًا	**make**	a film	ينتج فيلم
	something for يقوم بشيء لأجل		a request	يطلب
follow	rules يتبع القواعد		a surface	يمهد سطح
improve	(his) health يُحسّن صحته		preparations for	يقوم باستعدادات لـ

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
lock-up	سجن صغير (التخشيبة)	small prison
walk	طريق للتنزه سيرًا	route, path
well-known	معروف - مشهور	famous, known, familiar

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
avoid	يتجنب	confront, face	يواجه
formal	رسمى	informal	غير رسمى - دارج
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
joy	بهجة - سعادة	sorrow, sadness, gloom	حزن - كآبة
lock	يقفل	unlock, open	يفتح
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular	غير شعبى
well-known	معروف - مشهور	unknown, nameless	مغمور - غير معروف

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

gravel		
gravel (n)	حصى	- The paths in the park are covered with gravel.
gravelled / gravelly (adj)	مُغطى بالحصى	- The paths in the park are gravelled/gravelly.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a book of facts	كتاب علمي	In particular	بالتحديد - على وجه الخصوص
a full-time writer	كاتب مُتَفَرِّغ	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
a piece of writing	عمل كتابي	not feeling very well	يشعر أنه ليس بخير
be best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
different from/to	مختلف عن	this was where	لقد كان ذلك هو المكان الذي
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	travel books	أدب الرحلات
I'm afraid I can't	يؤسفني أنني لا أستطيع	wedding party	حفل زفاف

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arrange ... in	يُرَتِّب ... على شكل	learn from	يتعلم من
break up	يُفَتِّت	make ... into	يُحوِّل ... إلي
come from	يأتي من	mix with	يختلط بـ - يتعامل مع
compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ	put ... away	يضع ... جانبًا - يُرتِّب
get away from	يبتعد عن	sail from ... to ...	يُبحر من ... إلي ...
learn about	يتعلم عن		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

row / raw

- **row** صف (جنباً إلي جنب)
  - In class, I sit in the third row.
- **raw** نيء / غير مطهي / خام
  - People can't eat raw meat.

currant / current

- **currant (n)** نبات الكشمش (له ثمار تشبه العنب أو الزبيب)
  - There are some currant trees in the garden.
- **current (adj)** حالي / جاري
  - I follow current events on the internet.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. I think I .... the door but I'll go back and check just to make sure. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)
   a. locked b. shot c. closed d. clicked e. seeds
2. When I read two .... of the poem, I liked it very much. (دمياط - كفر البطيخ ٢٠٢٤)
   a. lines b. poets c. rhymes d. plots e. verses
3. "Most people jumped with joy when he scored a goal." The antonyms of the word "joy" are .... (سوهاج - البلَينا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. sadness b. charm c. declined d. sorrow e. happiness
4. He was taken to hospital because his injury was .... (الوادي الجديد - الخارجة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. simple b. serious c. exciting d. dangerous e. exhausting
5. A person who is popular is not ....
   a. small b. unknown c. adult d. famous e. unpopular
6. "Clear" is to "pure" as "walk" is to ....
   a. route b. go c. step d. path e. come
7. "Giza Pyramids are well-known all over the world." The antonyms of the word "well-known" are ....
   a. celebrated b. nameless c. well-built d. unknown e. famous
8. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are ....
   a. annoying b. interesting c. terrifying d. exciting e. frightening

9. Some types of sand are .... into glass.
   a. thrown   b. turned   c. fallen   d. made   e. done
10. I asked my friend to wait for .... until I get dressed.
   a. good   b. ever   c. some time   d. while   e. a while

• ✪ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. "Far in the plots, I see him dig." "Plots" is similar in meaning to .... (سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٤)
   a. fields   b. plans   c. dreams   d. seeds
2. His ideas are not traditional. The antonym of "traditional" is "............". (كفر الشيخ - كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤)
   a. Conventional   b. novel   c. old-fashioned   d. b & c
3. I have been writing stories and .... for years. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)
   a. poets   b. poems   c. old novelists   d. authors
4. The teacher told the students not to walk on the plants and to .... (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. keep the gravel walk   b. keep the gravels walk
   c. avoid the gravel walk   c. make the gravel walk
5. It was a good hotel. I enjoyed the delicious food in .... (المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. particular   b. public   c. special   d. private
6. Good citizens always .... the rules.
   a. break   b. have   c. follow   d. spend
7. He had offered to help even before I .... a request.
   a. made   b. did   c. improved   d. stayed
8. "She had a full-time job." "Full" here is an antonym of ....
   a. part   b. empty   c. little   d. few
9. In a park, we walk along paths which are ....
   a. gravel   b. gravelled   c. gravelling   d. gravels
10. He used a heavy hammer to break .... the small rock.
   a. in   b. up   c. of   d. into
11. Look at this shop. This is .... I saw you for the first time.
   a. where   b. when   c. what   d. who
12. Being sociable اجتماعي, he likes to mix .... others.
   a. with   b. by   c. from   d. of
13. I am very happy in my .... job.
   a. currant   b. current   c. currency   d. currently
14. Cotton is a .... material.
   a. some   b. same   c. row   d. raw

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Robert Louis Stevenson

(SB page 62)

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years **later**(1) in Samoa, a small **island**(2) in the South **Pacific**(3). He was not always **well**(4) because the **weather**(5) in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a **lawyer**(6) at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a **full-time writer**(7).

He often travelled to **warmer**(8) places to try to **improve**(9) his health. For a **while**(10) he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although(11) he is best **known for**(12) his **novels**(13), like **Kidnapped**(14) and Strange **Case**(15) of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, Stevenson also wrote many **poems**(16) and **travel books**(17). His first **successful**(18) novel was Treasure Island – an **adventure**(19) story about **pirates**(20). His books are still very **popular**(21) today and many of them have been **made into**(22) films.

(1) فيما بعد
(2) جزيرة
(3) المحيط الهادي
(4) بصحة جيدة
(5) الطقس
(6) محامي
(7) كاتب متفرغ
(8) أكثر دفئاً
(9) يُحسِّن
(10) فترة من الوقت
(11) برغم أن
(12) مشهور بـ
(13) روايات
(14) مختطف
(15) قضية
(16) قصائد
(17) كتب الرحلات
(18) ناجح
(19) مغامرة
(20) قراصنة
(21) ذو شعبية
(22) يتحول إلى

The Gardener

(SB page 63)

The **gardener**(1) does not love to talk.
He makes me keep the **gravel**(2) walk;
And when he puts his **tools**(3) away,
He **locks**(4) the door and takes the **key**.(5)
Away behind the **currant**(6) **row**(7),
Where no one else but **cook**(8) may go,
Far in the **plots**(9), I see him **dig**(10),
Old and **serious**(11), brown and big.
He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue,
Nor **wishes**(12) to be spoken to.
He digs the flowers and cuts the **hay**(13),
And never **seems**(14) to want to play.



(1) بستاني
(2) الحَصَى
(3) أدوات
(4) يقفل
(5) مفتاح
(6) نبات الكشمش
(7) صف
(8) طباخ
(9) قطع أرض
(10) يحفر - يغرس
(11) جادّ
(12) يتمنى
(13) تِبن / قَش
(14) يبدو

Sherif : Taha, could you do something for me ? *(WB page 123)*
Taha : Yes, of course. What is it ?
Sherif : Can you play football with us tonight ? We need another player.
Taha : No, I'm afraid I can't. I hurt my leg last week. I can't run on it.
Sherif : Ok, don't worry. I'll ask Omar.

Randa : Good morning. I wonder if you can help me.
Assistant : Certainly. What is it ?
Randa : I don't suppose you could tell me who the manager is ?
Assistant : Yes, of course. It's Mr. Mansour.
Randa : Could you do me a favour ? Can you give him my CV ? I'd really like to work here.
Assistant : No problem, I'll give it to him when I next see him.

2 Listening Texts



Audioscript

(SB page 64)

Teacher : This week we're studying the **Scottish**(1) writer, Robert Louis Stevenson, **in particular**(2) his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard about him or read any of his work ?
Nesma : Didn't he write Treasure Island ? I tried reading it last year, but it was **a bit boring**(3), so I decided to watch the film instead.
Teacher : Did you like it ?
Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love **adventure films**(4) and I enjoy reading adventure stories, too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.
Teacher : Well, it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island was **published**(5) in 1881. And Wafaa, have you read any of his books ?
Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading **romantic stories**(6) and poems.
Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a **collection of poems**(7) called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to **get away from**(8) the cold Scottish weather.

(1) اسكتلندى الجنسية
(2) على وجه الخصوص
(3) مملة قليلًا
(4) أفلام المغامرات
(5) ينشر
(6) قصص رومانسية
(7) مجموعة مختارة من القصائد
(8) يهرب من

Nesma : Where did he go ?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and **Switzerland**[9] **mainly**[10] In fact, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family loved sailing and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.
Now, for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or a poem by Stevenson and bring it to class to discuss. Then ...

(9) دولة سويسرا
(10) فى الغالب / إلى حد بعيد

Audioscript *(SB page 65)*

Wafaa : I don't have time to go to the library this afternoon. Could you **do me a favour**[1] and go for me ?

Nesma : Yes, of course. Which books do you want me to get ?

Wafaa : Can you find A Child's Garden of Verses ? I prefer reading poetry to long stories.

Nesma : No problem. But, could you do something for me when you're in town, please ?

Wafaa : Yes, what is it ?

Nesma : I don't really enjoy reading, so can you get me a DVD of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde ? Then, I won't have to read it !

Wafaa : Nesma !

(1) يصنع لى معروفًا

PART IV LANGUAGE

Verbs + infinitive / –ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

afford to	يتحمل تكاليف	help to	يساعد في	promise to	يعد أن
agree to	يوافق أن	hope to	يأمل أن	refuse to	يرفض أن
arrange to	يرتب أن	intend to	ينوى أن	threaten to	يهدد أن
choose to	يختار أن	learn to	يتعلم أن	want to	يريد أن
decide to	يقرر أن	manage to	يتمكن من	wish to	يتمنى أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	offer to	يعرض أن	warn (not) to	يُحذِّر أن / ألاَّ
fail to	يفشل فى أن	plan to	يخطط أن	would like to	يود أن

ex. - Hazem is planning to go to university next year. He hopes to study medicine.

١ بعض الأفعال السابقة قد يأتى بعدها المفعول أولًا ثم (to + inf.) :

ex. - I wanted Omar to work hard.

- They expected me to come first.

٢ فى حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

ex. - Ahmed decided not to use my tools.

(اتخذ أحمد قرارًا بألا يستخدم أدواتى - لن يستخدمها)

- Ahmed didn't decide to use my tools.

(لم يقرر أحمد أن يستخدم أدواتى - قد يقرر أن يفعل ذلك فيما بعد)

٣ بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تأتى بعدها حروف جر أخرى غير (to) بمعانى مختلفة، لاحظ :

ex. - I agree with you. (أتفق معك)

- The couple agreed on a time for the wedding. (اتفقوا على)

٤ بعض الأفعال السابقة يُمكن أن يتبعها (that) ثم جملة :

ex. - They decided that they won't sell the family house.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I planned .... the weekend with my grandparents.
   a. spend b. to spend c. spending d. to spending
2. I promise .... I will be always helpful to you.
   a. to b. with c. on d. that
3. This player intends .... this year. He can play for two more seasons.
   a. retire b. to retire c. not to retire d. retiring

2 Verb + (inf. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل / يتضمن
consider	يفكر فى	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمانع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يتمتع	recommend	يوصي بـ/ يُحبِّذ
finish	ينهى - ينتهى	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

ex. - You should avoid going out late at night.

- She has just finished cleaning her bedroom.

• في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not + inf. + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

ex. - He suggested not going to the park.
(اقترح عدم الذهاب إلى الحديقة - لا يريد أن يذهب)

- He didn't suggest going to the park.
(لم يقترح الذهاب إلى الحديقة - ليست فكرته)

• لاحظ استخدام صيغة (subjunctive) مع الأفعال التالية :

suggest/recommend/advise/ask... + (that) + subject فاعل... inf. /should + inf. ...

ex. - I suggested that Sama join the school trip. (Not : joins)
= I suggest that Sama should join the school trip.

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Do you enjoy .... a sport ?
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing

2. He denied .... me before. He said it was our first meeting.
a. seeing b. to see c. not seeing d. not to see

3. I can't imagine .... in the city. I enjoy its excitement and noise.
a. live b. to live c. living d. not living

4. She suggested that her mother .... another doctor.
a. seeing b. to see c. see d. will see

5. Would you mind .... me a hand?
a. to lend b. lending c. being lent d. lend

3 Verb + (inf. + ing) / (to + inf.)

١ الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق فى المعني:

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.
- The wind began to blow / blowing just as we arrived home from school.

- ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال (love/prefer/like) يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) :

ex. - I'd prefer to finish my work early today. (Not: finishing)
- I'd love to attend your birthday party. (Not: attending)

- لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) فقط :

ex. - The weather is starting to get colder. (Not : starting getting)

٢ الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح فى المعني:

remember, forget, stop, regret, try, go on + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1. remember يتذكر

- **remember + to + inf.** يتذكر أن يفعل

  ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.

- **remember + gerund** يتذكر أنه فعل

  ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

2. forget ينسى

- **forget + to + inf.** ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به)

  ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.

- **forget + gerund** ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء لكنه نسى ذلك)

  ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

3. stop يتوقف

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف عمّا يفعله لكى يفعل شيء آخر

  ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.

- **stop + gerund** يتوقف عن فعل شيء(بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

  ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

4. regret يندم

- **regret + gerund** يندم على شىء قد فعله

  ex. - I regret wasting my time.

- **regret + to + inf.** يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شىء...

  ex. - I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

5. go on يستمر فى

- **go on + (inf. + ing)** يستمر فى القيام بنفس العمل أو النشاط

  ex. - Rodayna went on studying physics for three hours.

- **go on + (to + inf.)** ينتقل من عمل إلى عمل آخر

  ex. - Rodayna studied physics for three hours, then she went on to study Arabic.

6. try يحاول - يجرب

- **try + to + inf.** يحاول أن يفعل (يبذل مجهود)

  ex. - You tried to answer the difficult question, didn't you?

- **try + gerund** يجرب القيام بشىء ليرى النتيجة (لا يبذل مجهود)

  ex. - Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

Mini Test 3 ○ Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It continued .... for three hours non-stop.
   a. raining b. to raining c. to rain d. a & c
2. I'd love .... your birthday party. Surely, I'll be there on time.
   a. attending b. to attend c. to attending d. a & b
3. Remember .... off the gas before you go out.
   a. attending b. turning c. to turn d. to be turned
4. I remember .... that man before.
   a. seeing b. to see c. to seeing d. a & b
5. He stopped .... because it affected his health badly.
   a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c
6. He stopped .... outside because other people on the bus refused to let him smoke while driving.
   a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c

4 Notes for more understanding

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would ....

- She can speak 3 languages.

٢ باستثناء (to) جميع حروف الجر يأتي بعدها اسم (noun) أو فعل مضاف له (ing):
- I will go on working for this company.
- I 'm worried about the health of my mother.

٣ يُستخدم اسم مكان بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (إلى):
- They went to Aswan.

٤ يُستخدم الفعل في المصدر (.inf) بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (أن - لكي):
- I hope to win the next match.
- We work hard to achieve our goals in life.

٥ يُستخدم الفعل مضاف له (ing) أو اسم (noun) بعد حرف الجر (to) في الحالات التالية:

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	be opposed to	يعترض علي
apply .... to	يُطبق / ينطبق ... علي	contribute to	يساهم في
be used to	يكون معتاد علي	lead to	يؤدي إلى
become used to	يتعود علي	look forward to	يتطلع إلي
get used to	يتعود علي	object to	يعترض علي
be accustomed to	معتاد علي	take to	يعتاد علي

- Pollution leads to having health problems.
= Pollution leads to health problems.

٦ نستخدم (to + inf.) فى حالة وجود فعل بعد بعض الصفات مثل:

happy / sad / glad / ready مستعد / **willing** مستعد / **unwilling / eager** متحمس / **pleased / lucky / amazed ......**

- She was ready to live in Aswan after getting married there.

٧ فى حالة وجود فعل بعد (learn / teach / tell) نستخدم (how to + inf.) أو (to + inf.) :
فقط ولكن الفعلين (know/show) فغالبًا يليهما (how to + inf.):

- I don't know to use this mobile. (✗)
- I don't know how to use this mobile. (✓)
- I'll show you to use this mobile. (✗)
- I will show you how to use this mobile. (✓)

٨ فى حالة وجود فعل بعد (what / how / where .....) نستخدم (to + inf.) :

- He got lost; he didn't know where to go.

٩ الأفعال و الظروف الآتية يأتى بعدها inf. فقط بدون to :

had better ينبغى / **would rather** يفضل / **make** يجعل - يصنع / **let** يدع - يسمح

- She would rather stay at home.

ولكن لاحظ الفعل (make) اذا ما استخدم فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول يتم استخدام (to + inf.) بعده

- She was made to write the essay again.

١٠ لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد الكلمات (the first / the second / the last / the next) :

- Mona was the last to watch the film.

١١ الفعل (help) يأتى بعده المصدر مع (to) أو بدونها:

- He helped me do (to do) the job.

١٢ لاحظ ما يلى :

It + be + adj. صفة **+ (for + subj. / obj. pron.) to + inf. ...**

- It was easy for me to do the job.

١٣ الأفعال الآتية يأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) فى حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) فى حالة وجود مفعول:

advise ينصح / **allow** يسمح / **forbid** يمنع / **recommend** يوصى بـ / **permit** يسمح / **encourage** يشجع

- We don't allow smoking here.
= We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

١٤ الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا تابعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) ليدل على أننا تابعنا جزء من الحدث:

hear يسمع / **see** يرى / **notice** يلاحظ / **watch** يشاهد

- I heard Mariam sing a song. = I heard the whole song.
- I heard Mariam singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

Exercise On Language ○ Apply

○ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I wanted to persuade him .... to the cinema with us, but he apologized. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)
   a. to go b. going c. go d. to have gone
2. Would you like .... out for a meal tonight? (المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٣)
   a. going b. to go c. to going d. go
3. He refused .... me his book, so I was angry. (بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
   a. give · b. to give c. giving d. to be given
4. I prefer .... in the New Capital as it is modem. (سوهاج - ساقلتة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. to living b. live c. lives d. living
5. His results were disappointing. He regrets .... last year. (بنى سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
   a. studying hard b. not study hard
   c. not studying hard d. not studying hardly
6. Being questioned, the criminal denied .... the crime. (بني سويف - الواسطى ٢٠٢٣)
   a. committed b. committing c. to commit d. commits
7. My elder brother .... maths easier because he was good at it. (القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. helped me learn b. helped me to learning
   c. helped me learnt d. helped me for learning
8. The thief has admitted .... my wallet. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. stealing b. steal c. to steal d. stole
9. Do you enjoy .... to folk music. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. listen b. listening c. to listen d. by listening
10. On her way home, Laila stopped .... to her friend Dalia who met her. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to talk b. talking c. to talking d. talks
11. I stopped............ bicycles when my father told me not to do. (أسيوط – أبوتيج ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to ride b. riding c. ride d. rides
12. While you are .... talking to other students, don't forget to study. (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
    a. clever b. busy c. polite d. angry
13. The rules of the library don't allow .... (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to smoking b. smoking c. smoke d. to smoke
14. Good students usually avoid .... (البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
    a. to be punished b. punishing c. being punished d. punishes

15. English teachers usually recommend .... English in our daily life. (البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

a. to use b. used c. having used d. using

16. I never .... my students to waste their time. I always encourage them. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)

a. let b. make c. prevent d. allow

17. Would you mind .... me your camera? (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)

a. lend b. lending c. to lend d. in lending

18. I forgot .... all the documents. I will not be able to get a passport today. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)

a. sign b. signing c. to sign d. to signing

19. I .... meeting this boy last year. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٣)

a. am remembering b. will remember
c. remember d. remembers

20. My mother promised .... me to finish my school project. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٢)

a. helps b. help c. helping d. to help

21. Our national team is expected .... in the next world cup finals. (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٢)

a. play b. playing c. to play d. to playing

22. My parents suggested .... to the theatre yesterday. (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢)

a. going b. go c. went d. gone

23. He is looking forward to .... his friends. (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٢)

a. meet b. meets c. met d. meeting

24. Civil engineers get used to .... outdoors in extreme conditions. (الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٢)

a. have worked b. working c.works d. worked

25. **Ali:** I have got flu. **Bassem:** Try .... an aspirin. It's good. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)

a. to take b. taking c. to be taken d. to taking

26. I tried .... my eyes open, but I couldn't. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)

a. keep b. to keep c. kept d. keeping

27. I was made .... a fine for not wearing the seat belt. (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٢)

a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid

28. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather .... in a good hotel. (الفيوم - إبشواي ٢٠٢٢)

a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. can stay

29. I recommend that he .... to English programmes. (الفيوم - إبشواي ٢٠٢٢)

a. is listening b. was listened c. listen d. listening

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 66 & 67 WB pages 124 & 125



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

candlelight (n)	نور الشمعة	line (n)	سطر شعرى (بيت)
contrast (ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يقارن	pinch (ed) (v)	يقرص - يوخز - يؤلم
garden (n)	بستان	rhyme (d) (n - v)	القافية - يُقفّي / يَسْجَع
gardener (n)	بستاني (جنايني)	rhythm (n)	إيقاع
hop (ped) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل	variety (n)	تنوع - تعددية
issue (n)	قضية	verse (n)	بيت شِعر

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

activity (n)	نشاط	dress (ed) (n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس
author (n)	مؤلّف	especially (adv)	بصفة خاصة
brief (adj)	مُختَصَر	fair (adj)	عادِل
broken (adj)	مكسور	grown-ups (n)	الكبار
clear (adj)	صافي - واضح	narrate (d) (v)	يسرد - يروي
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	repeated (adj)	مُتكرر
dedicate (d) (v)	يخصص - يُكَرِّس	review (n)	عرض نقدي
describe (d) (v)	يصف	situation (n)	موقف
determine (d) (v)	يحدد - يصمم على	summary (n)	تلخيص
differently (adv)	بشكل مختلف		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
hop (ped) (v) يحجل	to move by jumping on one foot
rhyme (d) (v) يَتطابق في القافية	if two words or lines of poetry rhyme, they end with the same sound, including a vowel
rhythm (n) إيقاع	a repeated sound in music, poems, etc
verse (n) فقرة شعرية	lines that form one part of a poem

Exercises On Vocabulary • Understand

● ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1 Definitions

1. .... is a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.
   a. Rhythm b. Rhyme c. Verse d. Stanza
2. If two words or lines of poetry ...., they end with the same sound, including a vowel.
   a. dig b. rhythm c. rhyme d. swing
3. Lines that form one part of a poem are called a ....
   a. poet b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm
4. To .... is to move by jumping on one foot.
   a. hope b. hop c. jump d. leap

2 Key vocabulary

5. Climate change is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
   a. issues b. rules c. roles d. reviews
6. When the light goes out at night, we usually depend on .... (المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)
   a. daylight b. sunlight c. candlelight d. darkness
7. A poem is a piece of writing often arranged in .... (القاهرة - النزهة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. dots b. sentences c. lines d. paragraphs
8. The gardener's toes were .... that they hurt him because of the extreme cold in winter. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. burning b. hopping c. pinching d. shouting
9. Kangaroos use their back legs to .... from one place to another.
   a. hop b. see c. eat d. hear
10. Most of today's songs have a very fast ....
    a. words b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm
11. When two words or lines endings match, they ....
    a. rhyme b. contrast c. disappear d. join
12. If you .... some of his early writing with his later work, you can see how much he improved.
    a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock
13. It was a very long poem. It had about 60 ....
    a. verses b. rows c. rhythms d. pleasures
14. We have a small .... in front of our house in which we plant flowers.
    a. park b. field c. garden d. villa

15. The .... of taste, shape and colour is what makes one fruit different from another.
    a. variety b. stress c. sentence d. line
16. This poem has twelve verses, four .... each.
    a. poems b. poets c. rhymes d. lines

3 Important Vocabulary

17. She always .... in front of the mirror. (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)
    a. dresses b. wears c. puts on d. takes
18. It was not .... to play the final match on the other team's hometown.
    a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish
19. He expresses his ideas in a .... way.
    a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
20. He expresses his ideas ....
    a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
21. Mr Mohammed has a good style in .... short stories.
    a. determining b. narrating c. hating d. sailing
22. As a young man, I used to ask .... for advice because they are wise حكماء .
    a. teenagers b. infants c. kids d. grown-ups
23. He won't play tomorrow's match because he has a .... arm.
    a. broken b. brief c. fair d. long-term
24. As a mother, she .... all her time to her children.
    a. borrows b. takes c. dedicates d. receives
25. His .... mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.
    a. pleasant b. popular c. repeated d. enjoyable
26. The police haven't .... the cause of the accident yet.
    a. determined b. narrated c. hated d. described
27. Most managers do not like long reports. They prefer .... notes.
    a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

come	home	يعود للبيت	**have**	a rhythm	به إيقاع
give	a reason for	يُبرِّر	**have**	fun	يمرح / يلهو
give	a rhythm	تعطي إيقاع	**stay**	in bed	يلزم الفراش
spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
broken	مكسور	crushed, damaged, smashed
clear	واضح	obvious, understandable, direct, uncomplicated, explicit
clear	صافي	bright, cloudless
grown-ups	الكبار	adults
hate	يكره	loathe, detest, dislike

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
agree	يتفق	disagree	يختلف
clear	واضح	vague, unclear, ambiguous, obscure	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	غائم
dress	يرتدي ملابس - يَلْبَس	undress	يخلع ملابس - يُعرِّي
fair	عَادِل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
hate	يكره	love, like	يُحِب
light	النور	dark, darkness	ظلام

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

clear	
clear (ed) (v) يوضِّح - يُنقِّي	- My teacher cleared the difficult point for me.
clearance (n) إزالة	- Clearance of forests is dangerous to the environment.
clarity (n) وضوح	- The clarity of the meaning makes it easy to understand it.
clear (adj) واضح	- It is clear that he is angry.
clearly (adv) بوضوح	- He is clearly angry.
hop	
hop (ped) (v) يقفز- يحجل	- This bird hops.
hop (n) قفزة	- This bird takes short hops.
hopping (adj) القفز - الحَجْل	- This is a hopping bird.
rhyme	
rhyme (d) (v) يسجع- يُقفِّي	- 'Tin' rhymes with 'thin'.
rhyme (n) القافية - قصيدة	- This poem has a nice rhyme.

variety	
vary (ied) (v) يتنوع - يختلف	- People vary in size and personality.
variety (n) تشكيلة متنوعة - تنوع	- There is a variety of cotton clothes in this shop.
various (adj) متعدد - مختلف	- There're various cotton clothes in this shop.
variable (adj) مُتغيِّر - مُتبدِّل	- The speed of this car is variable.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a brief summary	مُلخَّص موجَز	easy to remember	من السهل تَذَكُّرها
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف
at night	في الليل	in addition to	بالإضافة إلي
be outside playing	يلهو بالخارج	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قراءتها
be special about	الشئ المُمَيَّز في	quite the other way	علي العكس تمامًا
by candlelight	علي ضوء الشمعة	stressed words	كلمات مشددة في النطق
by day	نهارًا	summarize the main points	يُلخِّص النقاط الرئيسية
compare and contrast	يوضح أوجه الشبه والاختلاف	the part I find boring is …	الجزء الذي أراه مملاً هو
describe how I feel	يصف كيف أشعر		
each other	بعضهم البعض		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree about	يتفق في	look for	يبحث عن
disagree about	يختلف في	rhyme with	يُقفِّي مع
get up	ينهض	stay in	يقيم/يبقي في
go past	يمر بـ	write about	يكتب عن

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

strong / strange

- **strong (adj)** قوي
  - He has strong muscles.عضلات
- **strange (adj)** غريب
  - People don't like strange things.

feel different / feel differently

- **feel different** — يشعر أنه مختلف أو مميز
  - His excellent skills make him feel different.
- **feel differently** — لديه شعور مختلف
  - Everyone enjoys their time. I don't know why you feel differently.

Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :**

1. Tourism enables us to see a/an .... of customs and traditions around the world. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. anxiety b. variety c. society d. vacancy e. diversity
2. "The glass of the window was broken yesterday." The synonyms of the word "broken" are .... and .... (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)
   a. ambiguous b. damaged c. crushed d. foggy e. mature
3. "When we went out in the morning, it was clear." The synonym of "clear" are .... (المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٤)
   a. cloudy b. bright c. foggy d. cloudless e. rainy
4. "Your question isn't clear. Can you clarify what you want?" The antonyms of the word "clear" are .... (كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٤)
   a. ambiguous b. pure c. bright d. obvious e. obscure
5. A good leader should have some qualities as being .... and .... (القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a. fair b. violent c. wise d. stubborn e. extremist
6. Global warming is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved. (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٢)
   a. issues b. rules c. roles d. problems e. reviews
7. In a line of poetry, stressed words .... the rhythm.
   a. lose b. have c. give d. do e. spend
8. Birds are usually active .... day.
   a. in b. by c. at d. of e. during the
9. The jobs we have to do in .... life sometimes make us forget our social duties.
   a. daily b. every day c. everyday d. all today e. no day

- ✪ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Lap" rhymes .... "tap". (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)
   a. on b. with c. in d. for
2. The doctor advised me to .... in bed until I am completely better.
   a. make b. do c. improve d. stay
3. When your father .... home, I'll tell him you don't want to study your lessons.
   a. comes b. has c. follows d. spends
4. My children .... much fun in the park yesterday.
   a. came b. had c. followed d. spent
5. Aya .... a lot of time watching TV.
   a. gave b. made c. broke d. spent
6. Children like listening to and reading ....
   a. locks b. rhymes c. rhythms d. gravels
7. Short lines of poetry are easy ....
   a. remember b. remembering c. to remember d. remembers
8. Before electric lamps, people used to read at night .... candlelight.
   a. for b. from c. to d. by
9. I am not used to this place. It is .... to me.
   a. light b. popular c. strange d. strong

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Bed in Summer *(SB page 66)*

In **winter**(1) **I get up**(2) at night
And **dress**(3) by yellow **candlelight**(4).
In summer **quite the other way**,(5)
I have to go to bed **by day**(6).
I have to go to bed and see
The birds still **hopping**(7) on the tree,
Or hear the **grown-up**(8) people's **feet**(9)
Still **going past**(10) me in the street.
And does it not seem **hard**(11) to you,
When all the sky is **clear**(12) and blue,
And I should like so much to play,
To have to go to bed by day ?

(1) فصل الشتاء
(2) ينهض من الفراش
(3) يرتدي ملابسه
(4) ضوء الشمعة
(5) علي العكس تماماً
(6) نهاراً
(7) يقفز على قدم واحدة - يحجل
(8) الكبار
(9) أقدام
(10) يمر بـ
(11) صعب
(12) صافي

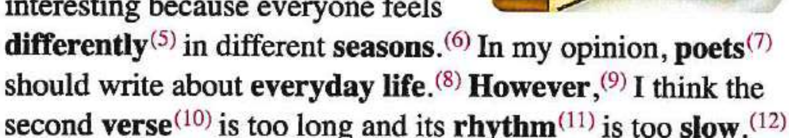
Khaled's opinion about the poem

(SB page 66)

Khaled, 4:04 PM



The words Stevenson has used very **clearly**[1] **describe**[2] the **situations**[3] he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's **subject**[4] is very interesting because everyone feels **differently**[5] in different **seasons**.[6] In my opinion, **poets**[7] should write about **everyday life**.[8] **However**,[9] I think the second **verse**[10] is too long and its **rhythm**[11] is too **slow**.[12]



Hamid's opinion about the poem



Hamid, 5:36 PM

I love the language in the poem, **especially**[13] the way Stevenson describes the **light**[14] at different times of **day**[15]. I also think the second verse is great because the **rhymes**[16] in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite **boring**[17] because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting **activities**[18]. I think poets should write about more **exciting**[19] things.

Sara's opinion about the poem

(SB page 67)

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt when I was young. In the summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I **hated**[20] it. **Like**[21] the **author**[22] I wanted to be **outside**[23] playing and I didn't think it was **fair**[24] that everyone else was outside **having fun**[25].

It's a good **length**[26] for a poem, only three verses and I like the **fact**[27] that the words **rhyme**[28]. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two **lines**[29] rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember!

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

(1) بوضوح
(2) يصف
(3) المواقف
(4) موضوع
(5) بشكل مختلف
(6) فصول
(7) شعراء
(8) الحياة اليومية
(9) مع ذلك
(10) فقرة شعرية
(11) إيقاع
(12) بطئ
(13) خاصة
(14) الضوء
(15) النهار
(16) القوافى
(17) ممل
(18) أنشطة
(19) مثير
(20) يكره
(21) مثل
(22) مؤلف
(23) بالخارج
(24) عادل
(25) يمرح
(26) طول
(27) حقيقة
(28) يُقفى
(29) سطر شعرى

Poem 1 My friend's cat

Every day when I come home
I look for my friend's cat
I usually find this cat
Lying in an old hat.
What do you think of that?

Poem 2 The boy's toy *(WB page 124)*

There was a small boy
Who had a **wooden**[1] toy
He loved that toy.
One day he took it to bed
And slept with it **by**[2] his head.
He loved that toy.
When the boy was **woken**[3]
He found the toy was **broken**[4]!
He loved that toy.

(1) خشبي
(2) بجوار
(3) استيقظ
(4) مكسور

2 Listening Text

(WB page 125)

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea.
To see what he could see, see, see.
But all that he could see, see, see.
Was the bottom of the deep blue sea, sea, sea.

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثانى.

Exercises On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You should .... something good in your free time.
   a. does b. do c. did d. done
2. Dr Mustafa has agreed .... an article about COVID-19.
   a. to write b. writing c. to writing d. writes
3. Have you finished .... the book that I gave you ?
   a. to read b. from reading c. reading d. read
4. Yara hopes .... a job next month.
   a. finding b. to find c. finds d. find
5. You should avoid .... friends with such bad people.
   a. to make b. make c. to making d. making
6. I like .... football matches on TV.
   a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b

7. I'd like .... football matches on TV.
a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b

8. My uncle has offered .... me how to drive a car.
a. teaching b. teach c. to teach d. taught

9. Reem promised .... and she usually keeps her promises.
a. she comes b. to come c. coming d. will come

10. Would you .... helping me? - No, not at all.
a. think b. mind c. remember d. remind

11. The child started .... because he was hungry.
a. crying b. cried c. is crying d. cries

12. The thief denied .... the money.
a. stolen b. was stealing c. to steal d. stealing

13. We have arranged .... at 9 o'clock.
a. meeting b. will meet c. to meet d. met

14. I wish .... a car.
a. to have b. had c. having d. will have

15. I prefer .... in a swimming pool.
a. swim b. to swim c. to swimming d. swam

16. I feel like .... a cold drink.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having

17. The little girl .... playing with her toys until midnight.
a. wanted b. kept c. decided d. promised

18. Omar has decided .... with his father when he finishes university.
a. to work b. to be worked c. working d. to working

19. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot .... the front door.
a. locking b. to lock c. locked d. locks

2 Special cases

20. Enjy is sorry that she was unable to help her mother last night. This means she .... her mother last night.
a. regrets helping b. doesn't regret to help
c. regrets not to help d. regrets not helping

21. Salma was busy .... the washing up.
a. does b. doing c. to do d. done

22. Why didn't you remember .... me the key? How can I open the door now?
a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. have brought

23. I suggest that Samy .... the club.
a. join b. joined c. has joined d. will join

24. Many people in our town objected .... the new bridge.
a. to build b. to building c. building d. built

25. My father often .... me to drive his car.
a. lets b. makes c. allows d. denies

26. I prefer being jobless to .... like a slave عبد in such a company.
a. be treated b. treating c. being treated d. treat me

27. We all recommend .... that book.
a. that read b. that he read c. to read d. to reading

28. After she stopped ...., everyone clapped.
a. to sing b. singing c. sang d. sung

29. I regretted .... her in public. It was bad for me.
a. criticise b. criticising c. to criticise d. to criticising

30. I regret .... but it is the law. Tomorrow is my last day at work.
a. to retire b. retiring c. to retiring d. retire

31. Stop .... You are giving me a headache.
a. to shout b. shouted c. shouting d. to shouting

32. I stopped .... a shower to refresh myself. It was very hot.
a. to take b. to taking c. taking d. being taken

33. If you want to stay healthy, you should try .... more exercise.
a. did b. to doing c. to do d. do

34. Try .... the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.
a. to put b. will put c. putting d. put

35. I tried .... some medicine but I found that the only chemist's in our area was closed.
a. bought b. buying c. to buy d. to buying

36. I have a stomachache, so I tried .... some medicine.
a. taking b. to take c. to be taken d. to taking

37. Please, remember .... your books with you next time.
a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. brings

38. I remember .... the zoo every year when I was young.
a. visiting b. to visit c. visited d. visit

39. Don't forget .... bread on your way home, Ashraf.
a. buying b. bought c. to buy d. to buying

40. I don't forget .... my wife for the first time.

a. seen b. I see c. to see d. seeing

41. The gardener let us .... in the bark.

a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling

42. The gardener allowed us .... in the park.

a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling

3 Check your understanding

43. I heard Omar talking on his mobile. This means ....

a. I heard everything he said.
b. I heard part of what he said.
c. I heard nothing he said.
d. I heard everything he didn't say.

44. Try using this cream. This means ....

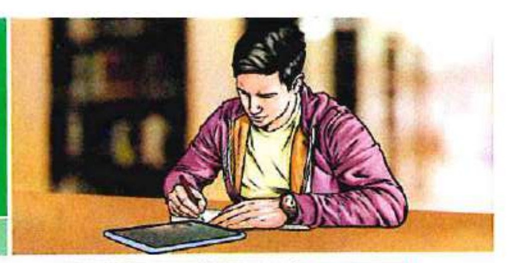
a. I know this cream will work.
b. I know this cream won't work.
c. I want you to use it and see what will happen.
d. I hope this cream won't work.

45. "He has stopped drinking coffee as it is unhealthy." What does this mean?

a. He wants to drink coffee.
b. He didn't drink coffee.
c. He no longer drinks coffee.
d. He stopped to drink.

46. "I remember taking an aspirin." This means ....

a. I took an aspirin.
b. I didn't take an aspirin.
c. I remember to take an aspirin.
d. I will take an aspirin.



PART THREE | Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises

تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

home

١ عند استخدام كلمة (home) كظرف مكان، لا تأخذ حرف الجر (to) مع أفعال الحركة التالية :

go - arrive - leave - reach - return - come

ex. - I go home at three o'clock. (Not: go to home)
- Mum returned home and prepared lunch. (Not: returned to home)

٢ عند استخدام كلمة (home) كإسم بعد الصفات والضمائر، فهي تأخذ حرف الجر (to) :

ex. - I go to my home at three o'clock.
- Mum returned to the family home and prepared lunch.

in addition to / as well as

In addition بالإضافة إلى ذلك + جملة

ex. - He went to the market. In addition, he went to the zoo.

In addition to + **n. / (inf. + ing)** بالإضافة إلى

ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the zoo in addition to going to the market.

As well as + **n. / (inf. + ing)** بالإضافة إلى

ex. - As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.

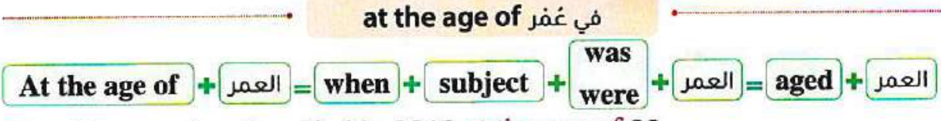
إذا استخدمت **as well as** بين فاعلين، فان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول من ناحية المفرد والجمع :

ex. - I as well as Ali have a car.
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

يمكن أن تربط **as well as** مفعولين أو صفتين :

ex. - Hala plays the guitar as well as the piano.
- Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

at the age of في عُمر



At the age of + العمر = **when** + **subject** + **was / were** + العمر = **aged** + العمر

ex. - My grandmother died in 2018 at the age of 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018 when she was 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018, aged 92.

Like / Unlike

يمكن استخدام (like / unlike) كروابط :

Like مثل - Unlike على عكس + اسم + , + جملة

ex. - Like his father, Abdulrahman works hard.
- Unlike his friends, Ahmed doesn't play football.

that's why لهذا السبب

...... + so / that is why / as a result / for this reason + جملة نتيجة

ex. - He didn't earn enough money. That's why he travelled abroad.
- I've been feeling tired all week, so I'm going to bed early tonight.
- It's my mother's birthday soon. For this reason, I want to buy her a present.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I feel tired. I will .... home.
   a. go to b. go c. arrive to d. return to
2. .... football, I also play tennis.
   a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to
3. I play football. ...., I play tennis.
   a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to
4. Nasser, ... , his cousins likes chicken.
   a. as well as b. and c. in addition d. or
5. As well as .... my mother, I did my homework.
   a. helping b. help c. helps d. a help
6. I was so tired yesterday. .... I went to bed early.
   a. Because b. Although c. That's why d. In addition to
7. .... her two calm sisters, Sama is always nervous.
   a. As b. Unlike c. Because d. In addition
8. My grandfather died in 2000, ... 62.
   a. since b. ago c. age d. aged
9. When I finish the report, I will .... my home.
   a. return b. go c. arrive d. go to
10. She was very busy preparing for the party, ... she called me to go and help her.
   a. in addition b. as well as c. so d. because

11. .... his mother, Ahmed doesn't like noise. They both can't live in a busy city.
   a. Like　　b. Unlike　　c. As　　d. As well

12. I left university in 1998, ... the age of 22.
   a. in　　b. at　　c. on　　d. for

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

- **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :** (اسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)

Reading is a very good habit that one needs to develop in life. Good books can inform you, enlighten you and lead you in the right direction. Reading is important because it is good for overall well-being.

You read all the time. Sometimes you read just for fun. Other times you read for schoolwork. No matter what you are reading, what you read has meaning. You can connect to what you read; making connections is important. It's giving your brain a place to store what you read. Your brain is like a file box. The new information is kept in a **safe place**. You can think about it later. When you want to use the information, it's there in your brain. If you have a lot of connections, your brain can work faster. If you have many ways to think about something, the information will be easier to find.

There are different ways to connect as you read. One kind of connection is self-to-text; this is when you **realise** something you read in a story has happened to you in your life. Usually, this kind of connection comes with the emotions you felt at that time; it may make you feel happy, afraid, or sad. Another kind of connection is text- to-text. This is when reading a story reminds you about a story you read before. The last kind of connection is text-to-world. It reminds you of something you have seen happen to someone you know or have seen in the news. Reading develops man's mind and makes them aware of what is happening around them in their society and their outer world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This passage is mainly about ....
   a. The importance of reading　　b. Reading stories
   c. Different types of reading　　d. Reading as a bad habit

2. According to the passage there are .... types of reading connections.
   a. 1　　b. 3　　c. 4　　d. 5

3. The antonym of the word "**realise**" is "............".
a. understand b. become conscious
c. misunderstand d. take in

4. The more connections you make, the .... your brain works.
a. more difficult b. faster c. slower d. harder

5. When you remember something that happened to you through reading, it's a .... connection.
a. self-to-self b. text-to-text c. self-to-text d. text-to-world

6. Reading good books is ....
a. beneficial b. harmful c. useless d. destructive

7. The phrase "**safe place**" in the passage refers to the ....
a. books b. stories c. brain d. life

2 Polite request الطلب المهذب

Making a Request	Reply
Formal Requests الطلب بطريقة رسمية	
1. Could you possibly + inf. ...? هل من الممكن أن ...؟	- Certainly. بالتأكيد.
2. I wonder if you could + inf. ... . أتساءل إذا ما كان بإمكانك...	- That's not a problem. هذا لا يمثل مشكلة.
3. I don't suppose you could + inf. اظن أنه لا يمكنك أن ...	- Yes, of course. نعم بالطبع.
4. Do you think you could + inf. ...? أتعتقد أنه يمكنك ...؟	- No. I'm afraid I can't. لا، للأسف لا أستطيع.
Informal Requests الطلب بطريقة ودية (غير رسمية)	- Yes. What is it? نعم ، ماذا تريد؟
1. Can you + inf. ....? هل يمكنك أن .....؟	
2. Could you do me a favour, please? هل يمكن أن تقدم لي معروفًا من فضلك؟	- No problem. لا توجد مشكلة في ذلك.
3. Could you do something for me? هل يمكن أن تفعل شيئًا لأجلي؟	- Sure. بالتأكيد.

- ولاحظ الرد على هذا السؤال :

Would you mind + inf. + ing / noun .... ? هل تمانع أن ......؟

- No, I don't. / No problem. /No, not at all. (Agreeing) موافقة
- Yes, I do. (Disagreeing) عدم موافقة

3 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Writing Reviews

١- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لعمل فني أو أدبي (قصة / رواية / مسرحية / مسلسل / فيلم)، ينبغي تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية :

- Begin with a brief summary (40-60 words). ابدأ بملخص قصير (حوالي ٤٠/٦٠) كلمة.
- Determine the most important topics. / characters / plot.
  حدد أهم الموضوعات / الشخصيات / الحَبكَة.
- Dedicate a paragraph for each idea / topic / character.
  خصص فقرة لكل فكرة / موضوع / شخصية.
- Write a short clear conclusion. The conclusion summarizes the main points of the review in addition to your opinion.
  اكتب خاتمة قصيرة وواضحة، وتتضمن الخاتمة النقاط الرئيسية للعرض النقدي بالإضافة لوجهة نظرك.

٢- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لقصيدة، ينبغي أن تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية :

- The title العنوان
- The author المؤلف
- Date published تاريخ النشر
- The main idea / topic الفكرة الرئيسية / الموضوع
- What you like about it الشيء الذي يعجبك
- What you don't like about it الشيء الذي لا يعجبك
- Conclusion الخاتمة

4 Writing

- **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :** (البحيرة - ايتاي البارود ٢٠٢٤)

How school helps physically, mentally and socially

....
....
....
....
....

5 Translation الترجمة

A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Poetry is a form of literature that uses rhythmic qualities of language. It is also a source of pleasure for the reader. (الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

a. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذي يستخدم السمات الإيقاعية للغة، كما أنه مصدر للسرور بالنسبة للقارئ.
b. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذي يستخدم السمات الإيقاعات السمعية للغة، كما أنه مصدر للسرور بالنسبة للقارئ.
c. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذي يستخدم السمات الإيقاعات الصوتية للغة، كما أنه مصدر للاسترخاء بالنسبة للقارئ.
d. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذي يستخدم السمات الإيقاعية للغة، كما أنه مصدر للسرور بالنسبة للكاتب.

2. Our deserts are one of the chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

a. تُعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة، وإذا ما منحناها الاهتمام اللازم ربما يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي.

b. تُعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الإضافية للثروة، وإذا ما منحناها الاهتمام اللازم يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي.

c. تُعد صحارينا واحدة من الموارد الرئيسية للتراث، وإذا ما منحناها الاهتمام اللازم يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي.

d. تُعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة، وإذا ما منحناها الاهتمام اللازم يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي.

3. Water will become one of our most serious problems. Demand for water will increase greatly in the years to come. (الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٤)

a. سيصبح الماء أحد أخطر المشاكل، فالطلب على المياه ازداد بشكل كبير في السنوات الماضية.

b. لقد أصبح الماء أحد أخطر المشاكل، فالطلب على المياه سيزداد بشكل كبير في السنوات القادمة.

c. سيصبح الماء خطراً على المشاكل، فالطلب على المياه سيزداد بشكل كبير في السنوات القادمة.

d. سيصبح الماء أحد أخطر المشاكل، فالطلب على المياه سيزداد بشكل كبير في السنوات القادمة.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. إن مساعدة المعاقين هي مسئولية كل فرد في المجتمع؛ لذا يجب علينا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا كي نجعلهم يختلطون مع أفراد المجتمع الأخرين. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)

a. Helping the disabled is the responsibility of everyone in society, so we should do our best to make them mix with other members of society.

b. Helping the abled is the responsibility of everyone in society, so we should do our best to make them mix with others members of society.

c. Helping the disabled is the responsibility of everyone in society, so we should do our least to make them mix with other numbers of society.

d. Helping the disabled is the irresponsibility of everyone in society, so we should make our best to make them mix with other members of society.

٢. البدايات دائماً ما تكون صعبة وتحتاج إلى قدر كبير من المغامرة والثقة بالنفس. (البحيرة - ايتاي البارود ٢٠٢٤)

a. Starts are always difficult and need no adventure or self-confidence.

b. Starts are always difficult and need a lot of adventure and self-confidence.

c. Starts are always different and need a lot of adventure and self-confidence.

d. Starts always are difficult and needs some adventure and self-confidence.

٣. عليك أن تركز على هدفك، وألاّ تدع التفاصيل الصغيرة تشتتك عمّا تسعى لتحقيقه. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)

a. Focus on your goal and don't let small details catch you from what you're trying to achieve.

b. Focus on your goal and don't let small details destroy you from what you're trying to achieve.

c. Focus on your goal and don't let short details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.

d. Focus on your goal and don't let trivial details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

verse

- **verse (n)** مقطع من الشعر (جزء من قصيدة يحتوي علي عدد من السطور الشعرية)
  - This poem has five verses. Each verse includes six lines.
- **verse (n)** آية (في القرآن أو الكتاب المقدس)
  - Helmi recites يتلو some verses before he starts his work in the office.
- **verse (n)** الشِعر - النظم
  - This play is written in verse.

rhyme

- **rhyme (n)** القافية
  - Traditional تقليدي poetry always has rhymes.
- **rhyme (n)** شعر مُقَفًّي (له قافية)
  - This poem is written in rhyme.
- **rhyme (n)** نشيد / قصيدة
  - I liked rhymes when I was in primary school.
- **rhyme (with) (v)** يسجع / يُكَوِّن قافية مع
  - The word "night" rhymes with "white".

plot

- **plot (n)** قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)
  - I have a small vegetable plot.
- **plot (n)** مدفن العائلة
  - My grandfather bought this plot a short time before his death.
- **plot (against) (n)** مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)
  - There was a plot against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- **plot (n)** حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (ذروة الأحداث)
  - The plot of the film was exciting.
- **plot (against / to) (v)** يتآمر / يكيد (ضد - لكى)
  - He plotted to steal the safe of the supermarket.
  - They plotted against their manager.

walk

- **walk (v)** يمشي / يسير - يتنزه سيراً في - يُفسّح (حيوان) سيراً
  - She always walks to school.
  - I like walking in the fields near my country house.
  - She walks her dog in the afternoon.

• **walk (v)** يوصل (يمشي مع شخص ليطمئن أنه وصل لمكان ما بأمان)
- Don't worry. I'll walk you home.

• **walk (n)** طريق مشاه (خاصة للتنزه)
- The walks around the park are covered with gravel.

• **walk (n)** التنزه سيراً (تمشية للفسحة)
- I usually go for a walk (go walking) at weekends.

poetry

• **poetry (n)** الشِعر
- I studied English poetry at university.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية :

- write poetry يكتب الشِعر
- recite poetry يلقي الشِعر
- a line of poetry بيت شِعر
- a piece of poetry مقطوعة شِعرية
- a volume / collection of poetry ديوان شِعر

• **poet (n)** شاعر
- In Arabic, Hafez Ibrahim is my favourite poet.

• **poem (n)** قصيدة
- Ahmed Shawky wrote great poems.

• **poetic / poetical (adj)** شِعريّ - شاعري
- My daughter has the talent موهبة of poetic expression.

literature

• **literature (n)** الأدب (الروايات والقصص والشعر والمسرحيات ... إلخ)
- Poetry is the oldest form نوع of Arabic literature.

• **literary (adj)** أدبي (متعلق بالكتابات الأدبية)
- I used to read literary criticism النقد.

2 Important idioms مصطلحات هامة

keep the gravel walk	to stay on the path through the garden يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصي في البستان كي لا تطأ قدماه النباتات
currant row	a line of plants that have small fruits صف من نبات الكشمش (نبات شبيه بالعنب أو الزبيب)

3 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
a-	تُكَوِّن صفة أو ظرف	aloud بصوت عال awake مستيقظ
co-	مساعد / مصاحب	co-pilot مساعد طيار
mis-	خطأ	misunderstand يسئ فهم
re-	يعيد / يكرر	resend يعيد إرسال

4 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ache	تعطى معنى ألم	headache	صداع
-ant	تكوّن أسماء وصفات	applicant pleasant	مُتقدم لوظيفة سارّ
-ible	تكوّن صفات	sensible	عاقل / حكيم
-ic	تكوّن صفات	rhythmic	ذو إيقاع قوي
-ical	تكوّن صفات	rhythmical	ذو إيقاع قوي
-ure	تكوّن أسماء	pleasure	سعادة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **A**: The street is dark and empty.
   B: No problem. I'll .... you home.
   a. pinch b. walk c. plot d. lock
2. The .... each measure 20 metres by 30 metres.
   a. land b. plots c. area d. ground
3. .... what way will you pay back your debts?
   a. On b. In c. With d. At
4. Our parents are to thank for the .... they do to us.
   a. harms b. favours c. damages d. vowels
5. Terrorists الإرهابيون .... against their countries.
   a. bare b. hop c. profit d. plot

Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I suggested stopping him .... that old film as it was a waste of time.
   a. watching b. watches c. watched d. to watch
2. I recommend my children .... meals at home.
   a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
3. I don't allow .... in my office.
   a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to smoke
4. I .... go out late at night.
   a. wouldn't rather b. would rather to not
   c. would rather didn't d. would rather not
5. It is starting .... again.
   a. raining b. to rain c. rains d. to raining

Test on Unit 6

• Understand ○ Apply • Create





1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Thank you for the .... you have done for me.
   a. favour b. home c. rules d. request e. job
2. You will need to make ....
   a. a favour b. preparations c. reason d. a request e. health

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I don't like this music. It doesn't have any ....
   a. rhyme b. instrument c. rhythm d. verses
2. Does "hit" .... with "sit"? (البحيرة - ايتاى البارود ٢٠٢٤)
   a. roll b. read c. rhyme d. write
3. During Al Hajj, pilgrims collect .... to throw it at the three pillars. (الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)
   a. crops b. flowers c. gravel d. money
4. My father bought a small .... of land to build a villa on. (أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)
   a. rhyme b. bar c. line d. plot
5. I always .... the door when leaving my house. (المنيا - بني مزار ٢٠٢٤)
   a. look b. lock c. leak d. lack
6. Novels, poems and plays are different forms of ....
   a. literature b. poetry c. verse d. adventure
7. Children like poems and music that have a simple .... (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. verse b. rhyme c. novels d. poet
8. My brother wishes he had studied for his exams. He regrets .... (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)
   a. to study b. to studying c. studying d. not studying
9. Stop .... noise; your father is asleep. (الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)
   a. to make b. make c. making d. to making
10. The old man forgot .... the medicine, so he wanted to take it again. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)
    a. to take b. taking c. take d. took
11. Would you mind .... this subject? (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)
    a. to change b. changed c. changing d. changes
12. My friends suggested .... to the cinema last night. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
    a. going b. to going c. went d. gone
13. I'm looking forward to .... my old friend.
    a. meet b. met c. meets d. meeting

14. The teachers suggested that Mona .... to the library to read stories. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)
a. goes b. went c. go d. going

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٤)

Sadness means suffering in silence. Many people suffer because they have their heart broken, they have problems at work, they have had a fight with a person, they have lost something or someone ...etc.

Sadness is a state of mind that comes and goes as **it pleases**. Today we can be sad, tomorrow we can forget about yesterday. Life is about going through bad and good moments so it is normal to feel sad sometimes. Sadness can **manifest** itself through emotion like being angry, stressed out, nervous or just depressed. Depression is a more serious case of sadness. Depression means negative thoughts and lasts for much longer. Many people commit suicide because of depression so it's a dangerous disease that can be treated only through therapy.

Sadness and depression are two different things. Sadness is a state of mind that can pass very quickly once things become better and it's caused by grief, sorrow by things that don't go according to a plan. Depression is deeper; it's longer and usually gives people suicidal thoughts. The number of people that kill themselves each year has increased over the years.

1. Sadness is a/an .... case.
a. physical b. mental c. cultural d. economical
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
a. people b. suicide c. depression d. sadness
3. .... is a result of sadness and depression.
a. Joy b. Happiness c. Suicide d. Health
4. When a person loses a dear one, they will be ....
a. happy b. pleased c. grieved d. excited
5. Sadness is .... suffering.
a. silent b. previous c. attentive d. curious
6. The underlined word "**please**" in this passage is a/an ....
a. interjection b. noun c. adjective d. verb
7. The underlined word "**manifest**" means ....
a. shake b. play c. display d. fabricate

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

To reduce air pollution, we must avoid burning wood and rubbish. We must use public transport and encourage people to walk and cycle. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)

a. لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة، كما لا يجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات.

b. لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة، كما يجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وإعادة التدوير.

c. لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة، كما يجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات النارية.

d. لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة، كما يجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد تم إنشاء الكثير من المؤسسات الخيرية في مصر لدعم المجتمع، خاصة الفقراء والمُسنين والأيتام وذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة حتى يستطيعوا أن يحيوا حياة سعيدة. (سوهاج - أخميم ٢٠٢٤)

a. Many charity institutions shave been established in Egypt to support society especially the poor, the elder, the orphans and people with special needs so that they can live a happy life.

b. Many charitable institutions have been established in Egypt to support society especially the poor, the elderly, the orphans and people with special needs so that they can live a happy life.

c. Many charitable institutions have been established in Egypt to supporting society especially the poor, the elderly the orphans and people with special needs so that they can live a happy life.

d. Many charitable institutions have been established in Egypt to support society especially poor, the elderly, orphans and people with special needs so that they can live a happy life.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. Was Long John Silver a good person to have on the ship? Why? Why not?

....

....

....

2. Who do you think the wisest character in the novel is? Why?

(الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

....

....

....

3. "Not all that glitters is gold." Explain the meaning of this saying, referring to Silver and Captain Smollett ? (الإسماعيلية - القصاصين ٢٠٢٤)

....

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (أسيوط - ابنوب ٢٠٢٤)

How to spend our spare time in a useful way

....

....

....

Revision 2 Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 128 : 131

PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

adventure (n)	مغامرة	mysterious (adj)	غامض
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	name (d) (n - v)	اسم - يذكر اسم
app (n)	تطبيق	old-fashioned (adj)	قديم-عفا عليه الزمن
care (n)	عناية / رعاية	online (adj - adv)	عبر الإنترنت - متصل
case (n)	حالة / قضية	paintings (n)	لوحات
communicate (d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	password (n)	كلمة المرور
communication (n)	التواصل - الاتصال	penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة
concerned (adj)	مهتم	perhaps (adv)	ربما
continue (d) (v)	يستمر - يدوم	popular (adj)	شائع - ذو شعبية
copy (ied) (v)	ينسخ	prefer (red) (v)	يفضّل
cover (ed) (n - v)	غلاف - يغطي	print (ed) (v)	يطبع
cruel (adj)	قاسي	professor (n)	أستاذ جامعي
Dark Ages (n)	عصور الظلام	real (adj)	حقيقي
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصي بـ / يزكّي
details (n)	تفاصيل	relaxing (adj)	مُريح
difference (n)	اختلاف / فَرْق	reply (ied) (v)	يَرُد - رد
encourage (d) (v)	يُشَجِّع	rest (ed) (n - v)	باقي - راحة - يستريح
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	save (d) (v)	يحفظ - يدخر
ever (adv)	على الإطلاق - من قبل	setting (n)	مكان وزمان الأحداث
face (d) (v)	يواجه	smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكي
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	software (n)	برامج - برمجيات
interesting (adj)	شيِّق	strange (adj)	غريب
kidnapped (adj)	مخطوف	surprisingly (adv)	من المدهش
like (conj.)	مثل	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
lose - lost (v)	يخسر - يفقد	text (n)	رسالة نصية - نص
material (n)	محتويات	trick (ed) (v - n)	يخدع - خدعة

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

action (n)	حركة - حدث	maps (n)	خرائط
almost (adv)	تقريباً	message (n)	رسالة
around (adv)	حول	museum (n)	متحف
arrange (d) (v)	يرتب	situation (n)	موقف
character (n)	شخصية	still (adv)	لا يزال
dangerous (adj)	خطير	successful (adj)	ناجح
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	together (adv)	معاً
example (n)	مثال	true (adj)	صحيح
fantastic (adj)	رائع	warmer (adj)	أكثر حميمية
farm (n)	مزرعة	wonderful (adj)	رائع
full (adj)	مملوء		

PART II READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

A. Why penfriends are history !

(SB page 72)

Communication[1] is easy today. Many people use **apps**[2] on their **smartphones**[3] to talk to their friends. When we send a **message**[4] to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will **reply**[5] very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had **penfriends**[6]. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very **popular**[7].

An **example**[8] is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first **decided**[9] to write to **each other**[10] in the 1930s, and are now **perhaps**[11] the longest two people **ever**[12] to be penfriends.

Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend **continued**[13] to write to her. **Like**[14] Nellie, Daphne lived on a **farm**[15] and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. **As well as**[16] letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

(1) التواصل - الاتصال
(2) تطبيقات
(3) الهواتف الذكية
(4) رسالة
(5) يَرُد
(6) أصدقاء مُراسلة
(7) شائع - ذو شعبية
(8) مثال
(9) يقرر
(10) بعضهم البعض
(11) ربما
(12) على الإطلاق
(13) يستمر
(14) مثل
(15) مزرعة
(16) بالإضافة إلى

Nellie **still**[17] prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use **technology**[18] to **communicate**[19].

Surprisingly[20], there are now many **online**[21] clubs for penfriends. They **encourage**[22] people to write letters to penfriends **around**[23] the world, and they are very **successful**[24]. Many say that writing letters is **relaxing**[25] and a **warmer**[26] way to communicate than with an email or **text**[27]. You do not need apps, passwords or anti-virus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do.'

(17) لا يزال
(18) تكنولوجيا
(19) يتصل - يتواصل
(20) من المدهش
(21) على الإنترنت
(22) يشجع
(23) حول
(24) ناجح
(25) مُريح
(26) أكثر حميمية
(27) رسالة نصية

B. A fantastic adventure story !

(SB page 74)

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's **Kidnapped**[1] is not as great as Treasure Island or as exciting as The **Strange**[2] **Case**[3] of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, but it is **full**[4] of **action**[5] and really fun. I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his **mysterious**[6] uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a **cruel**[7] man and he **tricks**[8] David. He **arranges**[9] for a ship to take David away to America. However, David **manages to**[10] **escape**[11] with a friend and that is just the start of their **adventures**[12]. I **recommend**[13] this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

(1) المخطوف
(2) غريب
(3) حالة / قضية
(4) مملوء
(5) حركة - حدث
(6) غامض
(7) قاسي
(8) يخدع
(9) يرتب
(10) يتمكن من
(11) الهروب
(12) مغامرة
(13) يوصي بـ / يزكّي

C. Not the best book for me

(SB page 74)

As far as I'm **concerned**[1], this book is too **old-fashioned**[2]. The story is **interesting**[3] and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the **characters**[4] are very **real**[5]. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I **prefer**[6] to read more modern books. Kidnapped is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

(1) مهتم
(2) أسلوبه قديم
(3) شيق
(4) شخصيات
(5) حقيقي
(6) يفضل

D. My favourite book !

(SB page 74)

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and **makes friends with**[1] a man called Alan Breck. **Together**[2] they travel through Scotland and **face**[3] many **dangerous**[4] and exciting **situations**[5]. I love all the **details**[6] about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will **definitely**[7] read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

(1) يُصادِق - يُصاحِب مع
(2) معًا
(3) يواجه
(4) خطير
(5) مواقف
(6) تفاصيل
(7) بالتأكيد

2 Listening Text

(SB page 73)

Interviewer : Hello, today I'm talking to **Professor**[1] Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

Professor : That's **true**[2], although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer : What are you worried about?

Professor : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the **Dark Ages**[3], because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Professor : Today we use computer technology for **almost**[4] all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is **fantastic**[5], of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll **lose**[6] a lot of **material**[7] because new technology won't be able to read it.

(1) أستاذ جامعي
(2) صحيح
(3) عصور الظلام
(4) تقريبًا
(5) رائع
(6) يفقد - يخسر
(7) محتويات

Interviewer : But, we'll **copy**[8] all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to **save**[9], or we will forget the **passwords**[10] to give us this information.

(8) ينسخ
(9) يحفظ
(10) كلمات مرور
(11) يطبع
(12) متحف
(13) رائع
(14) لوحات
(15) خرائط
(16) وهكذا
(17) عناية / رعاية

Interviewer : What can we do about this?

Professor : In my opinion, we need to **print**[11] more, like we did in the past. Look in a **museum**[12] and you will see **wonderful**[13] old **paintings**[14], photographs, **maps**[15] **and so on**[16]. With **care**[17], these will be with us for a long time.

Interviewer : So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

Professor : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow. We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer : It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.

Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

1. October test اختبار أكتوبر

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. When I was on holiday in the countryside, I sometimes ....

   a. went trekking b. went on a trek c. went on
   d. trekking e. trekked into

2. The antonyms of "generous" are .... and ....

   a. helpful b. selfish c. mean
   d. intelligent e. stupid

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your blood .... should be measured every day.

   a. pleasure b. treasure c. pressure d. donation

2. Good doctors have a .... of duty.

   a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity

3. The local .... have started a charity to help poor children in the neighbourhood.

   a. security b. communication c. technology d. community

4. We are in bad need for a/an .... because the patient needs blood.

   a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor

5. Winning the gold medal .... a good impact on him.

   a. had b. took c. did d. read

6. We are all responsible for .... our environment.

   a. conserving b. confusing c. conversing d. commuting

7. Don't leave until I .... you.

   a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told

8. I am sure he .... a lot of money. He just doesn't want to lend you any.

   a. is having b. is going to have c. will have d. has

9. .... lunch ready before the guests arrived ?

   a. Are b. Had c. Was d. Does

10. I got used to .... in a small office.

    a. work b. working c. works d. worked

11. He .... allowed to leave until he finished the report.

    a. didn't b. isn't c. wasn't d. hadn't

12. I was watching a film and my father arrived. This means that my father arrived .... the film.

a. during   b. before   c. while   d. after

13. .... sleeping, I had a nightmare.

a. While   b. As   c. When   d. During

14. Ahmed .... a glass of milk every morning.

a. always has   b. always had had   c. has always   d. had always

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I was very interested while listening to my friend telling me the following story which he had read in a newspaper. It was a hot noon, and the few people walking along the street stood struck **dumb** gazing up a man in the air little by little falling down to the earth. His wide new garment acted as a parachute when his foot slipped off the wooden board he was standing on while painting the front of a high house.

It was funny that he fell down on his feet inside the box of a lorry that happened to be passing by at the time. When the people shouted, the lorry driver stopped and the man jumped off delighted at being saved. If the lorry had been a second later, it would have knocked him down dead, so he insisted on giving the driver a **treat**. He crossed the street to buy him a coca cola. On his way back, he was so excited that he couldn't avoid being struck down by a motorcycle running fast along the street. He fell down on the ground. The people hurried to help him rise to his feet, but they found him dead.

1. The man's garment caused him to ....

a. fall down dead   b. fall off the board
c. fall down gradually   d. fall down rapidly

2. The idea of the passage is ....

a. a story   b. an experiment   c. fancy   d. facts

3. The lorry had arrived at the place ....

a. when the man's foot slipped off   b. while the man was painting
c. before the man reached the ground   d. after the man reached the ground

4. The word **"treat"** in the passage most likely means ....

a. behaving towards someone
b. an unexpected gift
c. a cure given for patients
d. a thing that you buy to remind yourself of a place

5. The man was lucky when ....
   a. he fell into the lorry box
   b. people hurried to help him
   c. the motorcycle ran fast
   d. he fell down on the ground
6. The word "**dumb**" means people who can't ....
   a. listen   b. see   c. speak   d. eat
7. A garment is a kind of ....
   a. metal   b. clothes   c. plastic   d. wood

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

There's no doubt that education is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance.

a. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العملي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من آثار الجهل.
b. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المتعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.
c. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.
d. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من نور الجهل.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

إن ضغوط الحياة رغم شدتها لا يجب أن تكون عائقاً أمام استمتاع جميع الناس بحياتهم.

a. The pressures of life, however their intensity, should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.
b. The pressure of life, despite their intensity should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their live.
c. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, shouldn't be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.
d. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, shouldn't be an obstacle to some people enjoying their lives.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think the captain's box has something important ? Why / Why not ?
   ....
2. What was Jim's role in captain smollett's plan ?
   ....
3. The fort had some advantages. Discuss.
   ....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on following topic:

"Egypt is proud of its distinguished scientists in all fields"

....
....
....

Monthly assessments
تقييمات شهرية

2. November test اختبار نوفمبر

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. The driver was fined because he had .... the traffic law.
   a. supported b. kept c. broken d. issued e. disobeyed
2. Voluntary can be antonymous with .... and ....
   a. plump b. compulsory c. obligatory d. full e. unusual

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If something .... wrong with the car, call the garage.
   a. has b. does c. makes d. goes
2. You don't have to answer this question as it is ....
   a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory
3. Instructions are always put on the .... for everyone to read.
   a. communication b. connection c. noticeboard d. forecast
4. The .... of opinions should be respected, even if you don't like it.
   a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation
5. The old family house is .... by my grandparents.
   a. populated b. population c. polluted d. pollution
6. .... isn't allowed and it is considered a crime.
   a. Polling b. Bullying c. Pulling d. Bull
7. Finally, she .... how to use the smartphone. Now she can surf the net.
   a. learns b. has learnt c. had learnt d. was learning
8. Omar .... wastes his time.
   a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never
9. I have had lunch ....
   a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
10. France and Italy are .... European countries.
    a. a b. an c. no article d. the
11. .... there any information about the exam results?
    a. Are b. Is c. Were d. Has
12. I'm very busy. I have .... work to do.
    a. a little b. lots of c. a lot d. a few

13. It's the first time I .... alone.

a. travel
b. to travel
c. to travelling
d. have ever travelled

14. I need .... information.

a. an
b. few
c. some
d. many

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

After having an accident on the high way, a traveller wanted to describe the experience he had. "A first responder is someone who immediately tries to help with some incident that occurs. This could be a response to someone who is hurt or injured, a natural disaster or maybe your pet needs help.

The response might be at your house or in your neighbourhood. When called, the first responder is trained to come right away. A quick response is the surest way that the incident can be resolved in the shortest time and with the least amount of damage to individuals and to property.

A first responder is responsible for the protection and preservation of life, property, evidence and the environment. They are trained in many areas like emergency management, public health, clinical care, public works and in operating equipment.

Together, they work to provide support services at the "onset" of an incident. "Onset" means at the early stages. They work to help in all response areas of prevention, response and **recovery**.

Calling for emergency is one way you can ask for help from first responders. You should know when it is appropriate to call this emergency help number. But it should be prevented in cases that are not emergencies. It wastes people's time and takes away resources needed for other emergency situations.

We **salute** those people who are first responders and thank them for their quick responses to help out in situations when needed.

1. If the first responders didn't answer the call, ...

a. nothing would happen
b. people will go to their place
c. someone may be hurt
d. neither a, b nor c

2. The first responders ....

a. save people in accidents
b. call for emergency
c. can't help when a house is burnt down
d. neither a, b nor c

3. When there is no emergency, we ....

a. should go and help first responders
b. should phone to know the work of first responders
c. must not phone first responders
d. should go to thank first responders

4. The first three paragraphs speak about the ....
   a. management b. damage c. responders d. recovery
5. The best word to replace the underlined word "**recovery**" is ....
   a. return b. healing c. reply d. resize
6. The best title for the passage can be ....
   a. Emergency b. Neighbourhood c. Protection d. Car races
7. The word "**salute**" can have the same meaning as ....
   a. greet b. despise c. care d. need

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and communicative member in the society.

a. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الحديث يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل مُتصل في المجموعة.
b. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الماهر يساعدك على تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل اتصالي في المجتمع.
c. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل ومتواصل في المجتمع.
d. تطوير مهارات الاتصال غير الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون، وهذا يجعلك عضو أفضل في المجتمع.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تُستخدم الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الطاقة الكهربائية في بعض محطات الطاقة العملاقة. (قوص ٢٠٢٣)

a. Solar power is used to reduce electricity in some major power stations.
b. Solar energy is used to generate electricity in some huge power stations.
c. Solar power is used to generate electricity in all major energy stations.
d. Solar power is used to generating electricity in some major power stations.

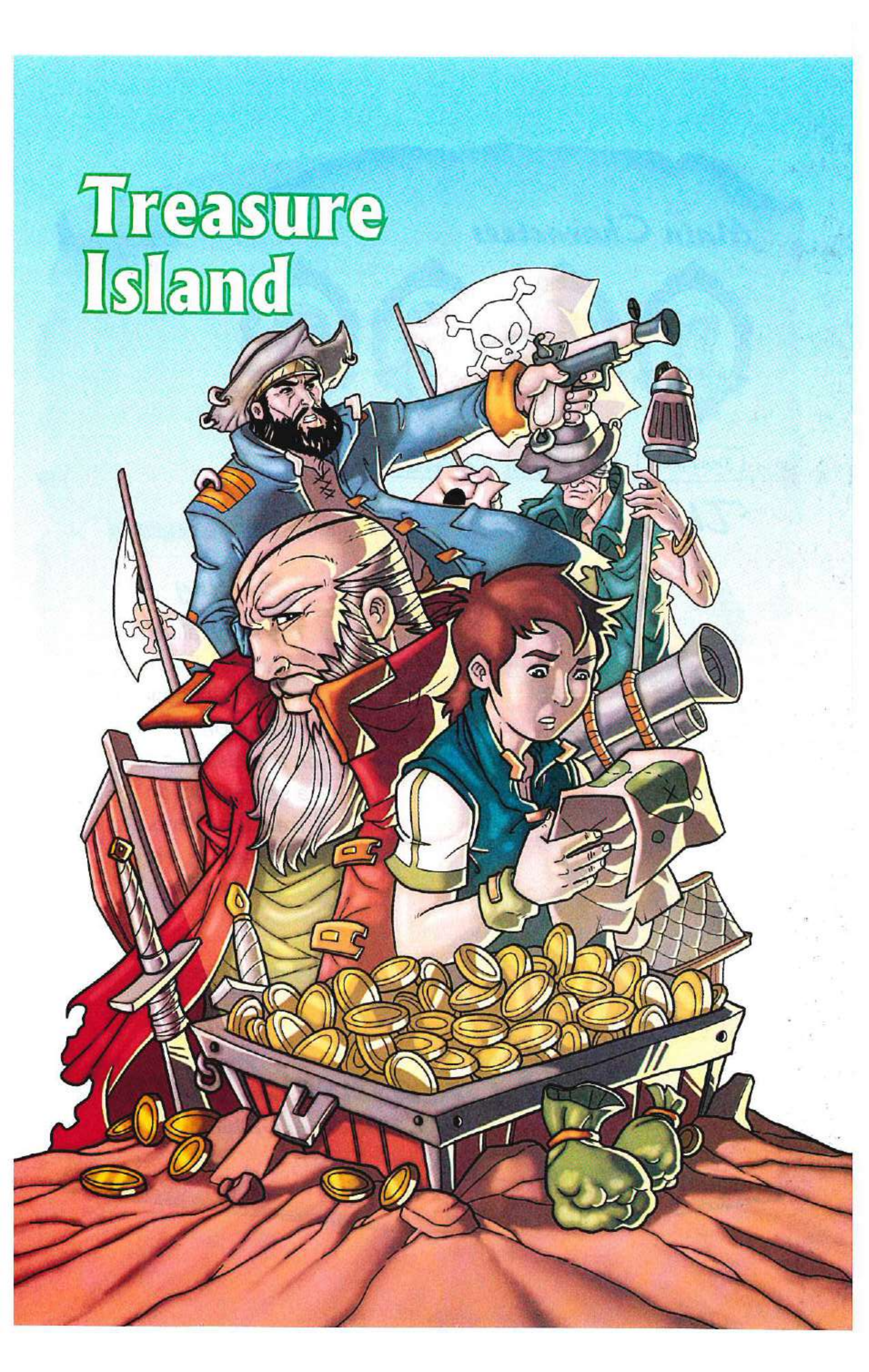
5. Answer the following questions :

1. What was Dr Livesy's plan ?
   ....
2. Why do you think Silver kept six of his men on the ship ?
   ....
3. Silver was sociable. Explain.
   ....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY words on the following topic :

"Spending free time in a positive way"

....
....
....
....


Treasure Island








Dr. Livesey

Jim Hawkins, A young teenage boy

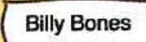
Captain Smollett, the ship's captain

Mr. Trelawney

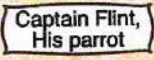
The Pirates







Long John Silver






Ben Gun

Pew

Setting

The story takes place at The Admiral Benbow Inn in Bristol on the Hispaniola, a sailing ship on Treasure Island, an island in the Caribbean.



Treasure Island

By Robert Louis Stevenson

CHAPTER 1



I VOCABULARY

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hide – hid - hidden (v)	يختبئ - يُخَبِّئ
blind (adj)	كفيف البصر	inn (n)	نُزُل (فندق صغير)
captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	owe (ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
cliff (n)	مُنحَدَر	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
danger (n)	الخطر	papers (n)	مستندات - جرائد
dare (d) (v)	يجرؤ	scar (n)	نَدبة - أثر جُرح
frightened (adj)	خائف	sword (n)	سيف
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	terrible (adj)	فظيع
guard (ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس	travel (led) (n - v)	السفر - يُسافر
gun (n)	بندقية	weak (adj)	ضعيف - واهن
hand (ed) (n - v)	يُعطي (باليد) - يد		

Words and their definitions

- **scar** : a mark on the skin from a cut or a wound — اثر جرح فى الجسم
- **cliff** : a steep piece of land or rock — منحدر
- **dare** : to be brave enough to do something — جرىء
- **pale** : having a skin colour that is very white or whiter than it usually is — شاحب
- **sword** : a weapon with a long, sharp blade — سيف

II CHAPTER ONE IN POINTS

1. The narrator of the novel, Jim Hawkins, lived with his parents at his father's inn.
2. A man called the Captain (Bill) came to the inn with a large wooden box and gave Jim's father three or four gold coins.
3. The Captain was a sailor with a scar on his face and he used to tell stories about the sea.
4. The Captain stayed in the inn for months without paying any more for the room, but Jim's father didn't dare to ask him for more money.

5. A man with three fingers on his left hand called Black Dog came to ask about the Captain, but they fought after that and Black Dog ran away with blood on his arm.
6. After the fight with Black Dog, the Captain was very ill and he was taken to his room.
7. Dr Livesy, who came to see Jim's ill father, saw the Captain and gave him some medicine.
8. The Captain told Jim that some people, worse than Black Dog, were looking for him and wanted to take something he had.
9. Jim's father died and he forgot what the Captain said about his secret.
10. A blind man came to the inn and gave Bill or the Captain a piece of paper in which the words "ten o'clock" were written; the Captain read it and died.
11. Jim and his mother opened Bill's wooden box and found some clothes, guns, papers and a bag with some coins.
12. Jim and his mother went to the nearest village; no one agreed to help them, only a man went to tell Dr Livesy and another gave them his gun.
13. Jim and his mother returned to the inn, took some coins and the papers and ran back towards the village, but there were some people behind them, so they hid under a bridge.

III TEXT OF CHAPTER ONE

- What do you think the story is "Treasure Island" about?

Jim Hawkins

I'll start by writing about the time when my father **owned** an **inn** called the Admiral Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a **scar** on his face **1**. He **looked around** him.

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, **take** this **up** to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four **gold coins**.

Suggested Questions

1 Do you think the Captain was really strong? Say why.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the **cliffs**. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any **sailors** visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we **realised** that he didn't want any sailors to find him 2.

Suggested Questions

2 Give a reason for the Captain's strong desire not to be seen by other sailors.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain's stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not **dare** to ask him for more 3.

Suggested Questions

3 Was Jim's father brave? Say why.

One morning, the Captain **went for a walk** along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and **pale**, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain 4.

Suggested Questions

4 In your opinion, how did Black Dog know the Captain was staying at the Admiral Benbow?

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk." "Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill. "Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," he **replied**. "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of **adventures** since I lost these fingers!" 5

Suggested Questions

5 What type of memories did the Captain and Black Dog have in common?

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were **loud shouts** and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a **sword** and then I saw Black Dog running away with **blood** on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the **fight**. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick.
"Help us, Dr Livesey!
The Captain is hurt!"
said my mother 6 .

Suggested Questions

6 The Captain wasn't as strong as he looked. Illustrate.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him **upstairs**."

We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some **medicine**. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted. "Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I **felt terrible** and forgot all about the **strange things** that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a **blind man** coming down the road **towards** the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a **kind** person help me?" "You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he **grabbed my hand**.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!" 7

Suggested Questions

7 Who do you think the blind man was sent by?

I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very **surprised** to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, **turned around** and left. The Captain looked at what the man gave him. "Ten o'clock!" he said. "I **have time**!"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesey, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were **in danger**. We decided to go to the **nearest village** and ask our **neighbours** for help **guarding** the inn 8.

Suggested Questions

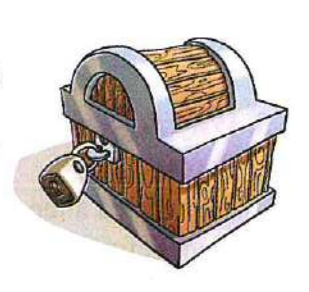
8 Imagine you were Jim, how would you react to the Captain's death?

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesey. Another man said that we could have his gun 9.

Suggested Questions

9 What type of neighbours did Jim have?

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the Captain's jacket. I also saw the **message** that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight." We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins inside.



"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain **owes** us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too **weak** to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a **bridge**, where we could **hide** in the dark 10.

Suggested Questions

10 Suppose you were Jim, would you take the money and run away leaving your mother alone?

IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1 Longman website questions :
أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

1. Why do you think the Captain, Bill, decided to stay at a quiet place like the Admiral Benbow Inn for months?

- برأيك، لماذا قرر القبطان «بيل» البقاء في مكان هادئ كـ «أدميرال بينبو» لعدة أشهر؟

- I think he wanted to stay away from the other pirates who were following him to get the map.

- أعتقد أنه أراد الابتعاد عن القراصنة الآخرين الذين كانوا يطاردونه للحصول على الخريطة.

2. "I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm," said Jim. What do you think might have happened?

- قال «چيم»: «رأيت «بلاك دوج» يهرب بعيدًا والدماء على ذراعه». ماذا برأيك قد حدث؟

- The Captain might have hurt Black Dog in his arm with his sword.

- ربما يكون القبطان قد أصاب «بلاك دوج» في ذراعه بسيفه.

3. Why do you think the blind man visited the Captain in the Admiral Benbow Inn?

- برأيك، لماذا زار الرجل الكفيف القبطان في نُزُل «أدميرال بينبو»؟

- He carried a message for the captain that he had to give them the map before 10 o'clock.

- لقد حمل رسالة للكابتن بأن عليه أن يسلمهم الخريطة قبل الساعة العاشرة.

4. What do you think might have happened if Bill, the Captain, hadn't had that important thing? Why?

- برأيك، ما الذي كان سيحدث لو لم يكن لدى القبطان «بيل» هذا الشيء المهم؟ لماذا؟

- He might not have stayed at the Admiral Benbow. Jim and the others might not have gone on a journey to find the treasure.

- ربما لم يكن ليقيم في «أدميرال بينبو». ربما لم يكن «چيم» والآخرون ليذهبوا في رحلة للعثور على الكنز.

5. In your opinion, why do you think most of Jim's neighbours refused to help him?

- في رأيك، لماذا رفض معظم جيران «چيم» مساعدته؟

- Perhaps they were afraid of the pirates.

- ربما كانوا خائفين من القراصنة.

6. In your point of view, why did the Captain look surprised to see the blind man in the Admiral Benbow Inn?

- من وجهة نظرك، لماذا بدا القبطان متفاجئًا عندما رأى الرجل الكفيف في نُزُل «أدميرال بينبو»؟

- Perhaps he thought the pirates would not know he was staying in the Admiral Benbow.

- ربما كان يعتقد أن القراصنة لن يعرفوا أنه يقيم في «أدميرال بينبو».

7. "We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us," said Jim. Who do you think the people were?

- قال «چيم»: «لقد مشينا بأسرع ما يمكن للعودة نحو القرية، ولكن بينما كنا نسير، سمعنا صوت أشخاص في الطريق خلفنا». من برأيك كان هؤلاء الأشخاص؟

- The pirates who were looking for the map. - القراصنة الذين كانوا يبحثون عن الخريطة.

8. Should Jim and his mother have asked Dr Livesy directly for help? Why? **- هل كان يجب على «چيم» ووالدته طلب المساعدة من الدكتور «ليڤيسي» مباشرة؟ لماذا؟**

- Yes. He was a good man who had the ability to help them.

- نعم. لقد كان رجلاً صالحًا لديه القدرة على مساعدتهم.

9. What might have happened if the Captain hadn't died?

- ماذا كان يمكن أن يحدث لو لم يمت القبطان؟

- Perhaps he would have escaped with the map. There would not have been a journey to the Treasure Island.

- ربما كان سيهرب بالخريطة. لن تكون هناك رحلة إلى جزيرة الكنز.

2 SB, EL-Moasser & Previous Exams:

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

1. Do you think that Treasure Island is an adventure story? Why?

(الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)

- أتعتقد أن رواية «جزيرة الكنز» من روايات المغامرة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. It is a story about a journey by ship to an island to look for a treasure.

- نعم، في قصة عن رحلة على سفينة إلى جزيرة للبحث عن كنز.

2. What is the setting of Treasure Island?

- ما المكان والزمان الذي تدور فيهما أحداث رواية «جزيرة الكنز»؟

- It takes place in England and an imaginary island in the mid 1700s.

- تدور أحداثها في إنجلترا ثم في جزيرة خيالية في منتصف القرن الثامن عشر.

3. Which things do you think made the captain easy to be recognized?

(الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، ما هي الأشياء التي جعلت من السهل التعرف على القبطان؟

- He had a scar on his face. He liked telling stories.

- كان لديه ندبة على وجهه، وكان يحب سرد القصص.

4. Why do you think that the Captain didn't tell the people at the inn his real name? (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا لم يقم القبطان بإخبار الناس في النُزُل باسمه الحقيقي؟

- He did not want others to know who he was. He was a pirate who was being chased by other pirates.

- لم يكن يريد أن يعرف الآخرون هويته. لقد كان قرصانًا يطارده قراصنة آخرون.

5. Why do you think the Captain (Bill) didn't want any sailors to see him? *(SB)*

(اسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا تعتقد أن القبطان (بيل) لم يكن يريد أن يراه أي بحارة؟

- Because the Captain was a pirate. The sailors might be some of his victims or his fellow pirates. He didn't want to be seen by either of them.

- لأنه القبطان كان قرصاناً، والبحارة قد يكون بعض من ضحاياه او من رفاقه القراصنة، وهو لم يكن يريد أن يراه أيهما.

6. Why do you think the Captain gives gold coins to Jim's father?

(اسيوط - الغنايم ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا أعطي القبطان عملات ذهبية لوالد «چيم»؟

- Perhaps he wanted Jim's father to welcome his stay in the inn.

- ربما أراد أن يرحب والد «چيم» بإقامته في النزل.

7. Why do you think Jim's father didn't dare to ask The Captain for more money for his room? *(WB)*

(اسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا برأيك لم يجرؤ والد «چيم» على مطالبة القبطان بمزيد من المال مقابل غرفته؟

- He must have been afraid of the captain who had a scar on his face and told frightening stories.

- لابد أنه كان يخاف من القبطان الذي كان على وجهه ندبة ويروي قصصًا مخيفة.

8. If you were Jim's father, would you inform the police about the captain? Why?

- لو كنت والد «چيم»، هل ستبلغ الشرطة عن القبطان؟ لماذا؟

- Perhaps I wouldn't. That would frighten the guests of the inn.

- ربما لن أفعل ذلك، فهذا من شأنه أن يخيف نزلاء الفندق.

9. What do you think the Captain's stories were about?

(الأقصر - الأقصر ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، عمَّا كانت قصص القبطان؟

- Perhaps they were about his adventures with the pirates in the sea.

- ربما كانت عن مغامراته مع القراصنة في البحر.

10. Do you think Jim's father liked the captain? Why? Why not?

(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تعتقد أن والد «چيم» كان يحب القبطان؟ لم؟ لم لا؟

- No, I don't think so. The captain had a scar on his face and told frightening stories.

- لا، أعتقد ذلك. كان لدى القبطان ندبة على وجهه وروى قصصًا مخيفة.

11. How do you evaluate the Captain as a guest in an inn?

- كيف تُقيِّم القبطان (بيل) كنزيل في فندق؟

- I think he was a bad guest. He didn't pay all the money he owed for his room. He was also followed by criminals.

-أظنه كان نزيلاً سيئاً. لم يدفع كل المال المطلوب منه مقابل حجرته، كما أنه كان يتعقبه مُجرمون.

12. Who do you think «Black Dog» is?
(الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)

- من هو «بلاك دوج» في رأيك؟

- He was one of the pirates who wanted to get the map.

- كان أحد القراصنة الذين أرادوا الحصول على الخريطة.

13. Why do you think the Captain looked pale and ill when he saw Black Dog?
(اسيوط - الغنايم ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا برأيك بدا القبطان شاحبًا ومريضًا عندما رأى «بلاك دوج»؟

- I think the captain became very worried because the other pirates knew his place.

- أعتقد أن القبطان أصبح قلقًا للغاية لأن القراصنة الآخرين عرفوا مكانه.

14. What do you think Black Dog wanted from the Captain?
(اسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

- ماذا برأيك كان «بلاك دوج» يريد من القبطان؟

- He wanted the map to the treasure.

- لقد أراد خريطة الكنز.

15. In your opinion, what happened between the captain and Black Dog? *(SB)*
(سوهاج - البَلْينا ٢٠٢٤)

- في رأيك ماذا حدث بين القبطان و «بلاك دوج»؟

- They fought. Black Dog was hurt and ran away.

- لقد تقاتلوا. أُصيب بلاك دوج وهرب.

16. Do you think that Captain Bill was loyal to his friends? Why?
(الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تعتقد أن القبطان «بيل» كان وفيا لأصدقائه؟ لماذا؟

- No, he wasn't. He took the map to the treasure and ran away from them.

- لا، لم يكن كذلك. أخذ الخريطة إلى الكنز وهرب منهم.

17. How does the death of Jim's father affect him emotionally?
(اسيوط - الغنايم ٢٠٢٤)

- كيف أثرت وفاة والد «چيم» عليه نفسياً؟

- He was so sad that he forgot about the captain's fight with Black Dog.

- كان حزينًا جدًا لدرجة أنه نسي أمر القبطان مع «بلاك دوج».

18. In your opinion, what caused the Captain to die?
(الدقهلية - المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، ما سبب وفاة القبطان؟

- The captain was worried. That affected his health. Perhaps he had a heart attack after the blind man's visit.

- كان القبطان قلقا مما أثر على صحته. وربما أُصيب بنوبة قلبية بعد زيارة الكفيف.

19. Do you think Jim was right when he took the papers from the box? Why/Why not?
(البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، هل كان «چيم» على حق عندما أخذ الأوراق من الصندوق؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- No, he wasn't. It is dishonest to take other people's things.

- لا، فمن غير الأمانة أخذ أشياء الآخرين.

20. "I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us." What does this tell us about Jim's mother? *(WB)*

(الاسماعيلية - الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)

-«سآخذ فقط المال الذي يدين لنا به القبطان.» ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن والدة «چيم»؟

- She was an honest woman.

- لقد كانت امرأة أمينة.

21. How do you know that Jim's mother was an honest woman? Why?

(اسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

- كيف تعرف أن والدة چيم كانت امرأة أمينة؟ لماذا؟

- She took only the money that the captain owed them.

- لقد أخذت فقط الأموال التي يدين بها لهم القبطان.

22. Do you think the Captain's box has something important? Why/ Why not?

(البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تعتقد أن صندوق القبطان كان به شيء مهم؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- Yes, I do. The box had the map to the treasure.

- نعم. كان الصندوق يحتوي على خريطة الكنز.

23. Show that Jim was a good son to his mother.

(الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

- برهن أن چيم كان ابنا صالحا لأمه.

- He refused her request to take the money and leave her alone.

- لقد رفض طلبها بأخذ المال وتركها.

24. Do you think that Jim Hawkins is rich? Why? Why not?

(الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تعتقد أن «چيم هوكينز» كان ثري؟ لم؟ لم لا؟

- Yes, I think so. His father owned an inn. - نعم، أعتقد ذلك. كان والده يمتلك نزلاً.

25. "At that moment, he grabbed my hand." What does the word 'grab' imply? *(SB)*

- «في تلك اللحظة جذب يدي بقوة». ما الذي يوحي به استخدام كلمة «جذب بقوة»؟

- It implies that the blind man wanted to frighten Jim to take him to the captain at once.

-توحي بأن الرجل الكفيف أراد أن يخيف «چيم» ليأخذه إلي القبطان علي الفور.

26. How would you describe the beginning of the story? Have you enjoyed it? Why/Why not? *(WB)*

- كيف تصف بداية القصة؟ هل استمتعت بها؟ لم/لم لا؟

- The beginning is exciting. I have enjoyed it a lot because it implies there will be a lot of action and adventure.

- البداية مثيرة وأنا استمتعت بها كثيراً لأنها توحي بأنه سيكون هناك الكثير من الصراع والمغامرة.

Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students:

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها :

1. What is Treasure Island about? - عمَّا تدور رواية جزيرة الكنز؟

- It is an adventure story about piracy and looking for treasure.

- إنها قصة مغامرة عن القرصنة والبحث عن الكنز.

2. Who is the main narrator of the story? *(SB)* - من هو الراوي الرئيسي للقصة؟

- Jim Hawkins. - «چيم هوكينز».

3. What do you know about the Captain? *(SB)* - ماذا تعرف عن القبطان؟

- He was a pirate who used to work with other pirates. He stole the map to the treasure and ran away. The others were chasing him.

- كان قرصاناً كان يعمل مع قراصنة آخرين. سرق خريطة الكنز وهرب. وكان الآخرون يطاردونه.

4. Why did the Captain want to stay in a quiet inn? *(SB)*

- لماذا أراد القبطان الإقامة في فندق هادئ؟

- He didn't want the other sailors to find him. - لم يرد أن يجده البحارة الآخرون.

5. How long did the Captain stay in the Admiral Benbow? *(SB)*

- كم من الوقت بقي القبطان في الأدميرال بينبو؟

- For months. - لأشهر.

6. Why didn't the Captain want any sailors to see him? *(SB)*

- لماذا كان القبطان لا يريد أن يراه أي بحارة؟

- He thought they would take the map to the treasure.

- كان يعتقد أنهم سيأخذون الخريطة إلى الكنز.

7. What did Black Dog want from the Captain? *(SB)*

- ماذا كان «بلاك دوج» يريد من القبطان؟

- He wanted to take the map to the treasure. - أراد أن يأخذ خريطة الكنز.

8. What did the blind man ask Jim to do? - ماذا طلب الكفيف من «چيم» أن يفعل؟

- To take him to the Captain. - أن يأخذه إلى القبطان.

9. What did the blind man give the Captain? *(SB)* - ماذا أعطى الكفيف للقبطان؟

- A message asking for the map at ten o'clock. - رسالة تطلب الخريطة الساعة العاشرة.

10. What was the thing that the Captain had and other people wanted?

- ما هو الشيء الذي كان يملكه القبطان ويريده الآخرون؟

- The map to the treasure. - خريطة الكنز.

11. Why did the people in the village not want to help Jim and his mother? *(SB)*

- لماذا لم يرغب أهل القرية في مساعدة «چيم» وأمه؟

- They were scared. - كانوا خائفين.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When the Captain arrived at the inn, he had a/an ....
   a. big case b. interesting jacket c. exciting boat d. wooden box

2. The Captain used to walk on the ....
   a. path b. beach c. park d. count

3. The Captain's hobby was ....
   a. telling stories b. reading novels
   c. staying at home d. fighting fiercely

4. The Captain has a scar on his ....
   a. arm b. shoulder c. face d. wrest

5. When the Captain saw Black Dog, he was ....
   a. delighted and cheerful b. pale and ill
   c. happy and quiet d. angry and sad

6. Treasure Island is a/an .... story.
   a. romantic b. comic c. adventure d. science fiction

7. The Captain gave Jim's father three or four ....
   a. gold coins b. silver coins
   c. green banknotes d. nothing

8. Jim's father died .... the Captain.
   a. in a fight against b. as a result of
   c. before d. after

9. .... people of the village gave some help to Jim and his mother.
   a. All b. None of the
   c. Only one of the d. Only two of the

10. Jim showed a sense of .... towards his mother.
    a. pride b. hatred c. nonsense d. responsibility

Answers

1. d	2. b	3. a	4. c	5. b	6. c	7. a	8. c	9. b	10. d

General Exercises On Chapter 1

✪ **Answer the following questions :**

A 1. The Captain gave the narrator's father 3 or 4 gold coins. What can we infer from that ?

....

2. Why do you think the Captain didn't want any sailors to come to the beach ?

....

3. In your point of view, what happened between the Captain and Black Dog ?

....

B 1. Do you think the Captain's box has something important ? Why / Why not ?

....

2. Why do you think the people of the village refused to help the boy and his mother ?

....

3. Why do you think the writer chose Jim Hawkins to narrate most parts of the novel?

....

C 1. What do you think made the captain stay at the Admiral inn? (الأقصر - الطود ٢٠٢٤)

....

2. Why, do you think, Captain Bill didn't want any sailors to see him?

.... (البحيرة - البحيرة ٢٠٢٤)

3. In your opinion, what happened between the Captain and Black Dog at the inn? (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

....

D 1. What do you think the scar in the Captain's face indicate ?

....

2. Why do you think the Captain didn't give the inn owner more gold coins?

....

3. If you were the inn owner, would you worry about the Captain? Why?

....

E 1. Do you think the Captain's stories were boring? Why?

....

2. Why do you think the Captain looked pale بدا شاحبا on seeing Black Dog?

....

3. If you were Bill, what would you do after Black Dog's visit ?

....

F 1. Why do you think the Captain trusted Jim?

....

2. What do you think the blind man's message for the Captain meant?

....

3. "I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us," my mother said, opening the bag" What can we infer from this sentence?

....

CHAPTER 2



I VOCABULARY

catch - caught (d) (v)	يقبض علي	island (n)	جزيرة
clue (n)	دليل / مفتاح كل اللغز	magistrate (n)	قاضي / محقق
cook (n)	طاه - طبّاخ	map (n)	خريطة
crew (n)	طاقم سفينة / طائرة	rich (adj)	ثري / غنى
cross (n)	علامة (+ / ×)	rob (bed) (v)	يسرق
dead (adj)	ميّت	sail (ed) (v)	يُبحر
direction (n)	اتّجاه	secret (n - adj)	سِر - سِرّي
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	servant (n)	خادم
head (n)	رئيس - قائد	the rest (n)	الباقي
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمِّن	treasure (n)	كنز

Words and their definitions

- **clue** : an object or a piece of information that helps to solve a crime مفتاح لحل اللغز
- **crew** : all the people who work on a ship or a plane طاقم سفينة / طائرة
- **escape** : succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you يهرب
- **head** : the most important person in an organisation رئيس / قائد
- **magistrate** : someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court قاضي / محقق
- **rob** : steal something from a person, shop ... etc. يسرق / يسلب
- **servant** : someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning خادم

II CHAPTER TWO IN POINTS

1. The blind man and other seven men knew that Jim and his mother opened the wooden box and they wanted to find them.
2. The boy who went to Dr Livesy came with some men to save Jim and his mother from the gang.
3. Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney knew that the bad people were looking for the map of Flint's treasure which was in the wooden box.

4. Dr Livesy and the other men decided to go to Bristol to find a good ship to look for the treasure.

5. Jim stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant, Redruth, studying the treasure's map for hours.

6. Mr Trelawney found a ship called Hispaniola that belonged to a good man called Blandly to use it to look for the treasure.

7. Mr Trelawney found a crew including a good cook called Long John Silver who was ready to work on the ship.

8. Mr Trelawney told the crew all about the treasure. This surprised Jim as it was a secret.

9. Jim said goodbye to his mother and travelled to Bristol to take part in looking for the treasure.

III TEXT OF CHAPTER TWO

- What do you think will happen next in the story ?

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!" 1

Suggested Questions

1 Do you think the eight men cared for Captain Bill's death? Why?

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man **called out**, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!" The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man 2.

Suggested Questions

2 How will they be RICH if they find IT?

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all **directions**.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and **the rest** were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon **felt better**, and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they **escaped** on a boat 3.

Suggested Questions

3 Dr Livesy and the eight men succeeded in one mission and failed in another. Illustrate.

I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, **the head of the police**.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesy."

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a **magistrate** as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a **clue** as to where Flint **buried** his **treasure**!" said Dr Livesy.

"That is why those men were not **interested in** money," **agreed** Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure ourselves!" 4

Suggested Questions

4 What kind of People do you think Mr Trelawny was? Give a reason.

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."

The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to **describe** the ships that the Captain and his men had **robbed** of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a **map** of an island, with a big **cross** on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

"Dr Livesy, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor." 5

Suggested Questions

5 What do you think of Mr Trelawny's arrangements?

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be **ready to leave** England. While Mr Trelawney **prepared for** the **journey** in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the Hispaniola for us. Trelawney said that he had found a **crew** ready to work on it. The crew **included** a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a **good cook**. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was **excited by** the **thought** of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to **keep the news** of the treasure a secret 6.

Suggested Questions

6 What big mistake did Mr Trelawny make?

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to **say goodbye** to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to **sail**.

IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1 Longman website questions :

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

1. Do you think that it was a good thing that the crew knew about the treasure? Why?

- هل تعتقد أنه كان من الجيد أن يعرف الطاقم عن الكنز؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. The idea of looking for a treasure would stir greed in the crew's and that would cause problems.

- لا، لا أعتقد ذلك. فكرة البحث عن الكنز من شأنها إثارة الجشع لدى الطاقم وهذا من شأنه أن يسبب مشاكل.

2. "The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook." Should they have taken a fitter person? Why?

- «كان طاقم السفينة يضم رجلاً يُدعى «لونغ جون سيلفر»، كان قد فقد ساقه ولكنه كان طباخًا ماهرًا.» هل كان عليهم أن يتخذوا شخصًا أكثر لياقة؟ لماذا؟

- I think they should. The job of a cook needs a fitter person.

- أعتقد أنه كان ينبغي عليهم ذلك. وظيفة الطباخ تحتاج إلى شخص أكثر لياقة.

3. What might have happened if Jim hadn't taken the papers and the map out of the box? - ماذا كان سيحدث لو لم يأخذ «جيم» الأوراق والخريطة من الصندوق؟

- The blind man and his men would have found the map. Jim, Trelawny and Dr Livesy wouldn't have travelled to the treasure Island.

- كان الرجل الأعمى ورجاله سيجدون الخريطة. لم يكن «جيم» و «تريلاوني» والدكتور «ليفيسي» ليسافروا إلى جزيرة الكنز.

4. In your point of view, should Jim have stayed with his mother to look after her instead of going on that adventure? Why?

- من وجهة نظرك، هل كان على «جيم» أن يبقى مع والدته ليعتني بها بدلا من خوض تلك المغامرة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, he should. His mother was lonely and needed him badly.

- نعم كان يجب عليه ذلك. كانت والدته وحيدة وكانت في حاجة شديدة إليه.

5. What might have happened if Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy hadn't decided to search for the treasure?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو لم يقرر السيد «تريلاوني» والدكتور «ليفيسي» البحث عن الكنز؟

- They wouldn't have faced the dangers of the journey.

- لم يكونوا ليواجهوا مخاطر الرحلة.

6. Was it good or bad news for the blind man and Black Dog that the Captain was dead? Why?

- هل كان خبر وفاة القبطان جيدًا أم سيئًا للأعمى والكلب الأسود؟ لماذا؟

- It was good news. It would be easier for them to get the map.

- لقد كانت أخبار جيدة. سيكون من الأسهل بالنسبة لهم الحصول على الخريطة.

7. In your opinion, could Jim have made use of the map alone to get the treasure? Why?

- في رأيك، هل كان بإمكان «جيم» الاستفادة من الخريطة للحصول على الكنز لنفسه؟ لماذا؟

- No. He was just a little boy. He wouldn't have been able to make such a journey. - لا، لقد كان مجرد طفل صغير. لم يكن ليتمكن من القيام بمثل هذه الرحلة.

2 SB, EL-Moasser & Previous Exams:

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

1. What do you think would have happened if the blind man and his men had found the boy and his mother? *(SB)* (أسوان -دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- في رأيك، ماذا كان سيحدث لو وجد الكفيف ورجاله الصَبيّ وأمه؟

- They might have taken the map and killed Jim and his mother.

- ربما كانوا سيأخذون الخريطة ويقتلون «جيم» ووالدته.

2. Why do you think the blind man and his men didn't care for the money in the box? (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا لم يهتم الرجل الكفيف ورجاله بالمال الموجود في الصندوق؟

- The money in the Captain's box was of no value compared to the treasure.

- المال الموجود في صندوق القبطان لا قيمة له مقارنة بالكنز.

3. Why do you think the eight men were searching for the papers?

(الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا برأيك كان الرجال الثمانية يبحثون عن الأوراق؟

- They were looking for the map to the treasure. - كانوا يبحثون عن خريطة الكنز.

4. "It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" What does the blind man mean by this sentence? *(SB)*

- «إنه الصبي والمرأة من النزل!» ماذا يقصد الكفيف بهذه الجملة؟

- He means that Jim and his mother have opened the box and taken the map.
- يقصد أن «جيم» ووالدته فتحا الصندوق وأخذا الخريطة.

5. «If you find it, you'll all be rich!" said the blind man. What do you think the man was talking about? *(WB)* (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)

- قال الرجل الكفيف: «إذا وجدتموه، ستكونون جميعكم أغنياء!» في رأيك، عمَّا كان الرجل يتكلم؟

- He was talking about the map to the treasure. - كان يتحدث عن خريطة الكنز.

6. Why did Jim want to give the papers to Dr Livesy? *(SB)*

- لماذا أراد «جيم» إعطاء الأوراق للدكتور ليفيسي؟

- Jim trusted Dr Livesy because he was a magistrate and Jim thought that he would know what to do with the map.
- كان «جيم» يثق بالكتور ليفيسي لأنه كان قاضيًا، واعتقد «جيم» أنه سيعرف ما يجب فعله بالخريطة.

7. What do you think of Dr Livesy? Prove your answer. (الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

- ما رأيك في الدكتور «ليفيسي»؟ أثبت إجابتك.

- He was a respected person. He was a magistrate and a doctor. He was wise.
- كان إنساناً محترماً، وكان قاضياً وطبيباً. لقد كان حكيما.

8. Although Mr Trelawney was a very rich man, he was greedy. Agree or not. Mention one example to justify your answer. (اسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- على الرغم من أن السيد «تريلاوني» كان رجلاً ثريًا جدًا، إلا أنه كان جشعًا. هل تتفق أم لا. اذكر مثالا واحدا لتبرير إجابتك.

- I agree. Although he was a rich man, he suggested going to the Treasure Island to get the treasure for themselves.
- أتفق. على الرغم من أنه كان رجلا غنيا، فقد اقترح الذهاب إلى جزيرة الكنز للحصول على الكنز لأنفسهم.

9. If you were in Jim's place, would you go to look for the money robbed by the Captain and his men? *(SB)* (الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)

- لو كنت مكان «جيم»، هل ستذهب للبحث عن الأموال التي سرقها الكابتن ورجاله؟

- No, I wouldn't. It is not legal to take things that does not belong to you.
- لا، لن أفعل. ليس شرعياً أن تأخذ أشياء ليست ملكك.

10. "We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know." Why does Dr Livesy say this? *(WB)*

- «نحن لم نعد آمنين بعد الآن. يجب ألا نخبر أي شخص آخر بما نعرفه". لماذا يقول الدكتور «ليفيسي »هذا؟

- Dr Livesy says this because the other men know that they have the map and they will be looking for Jim, Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy.

- يقول الدكتور «ليفيسي» هذا لأن الرجال الآخرين يعرفون أن لديهم الخريطة وسيبحثون عن «جيم» والسيد «تريلاوني» والدكتور «ليفيسي».

11. The crew knew about the treasure. Do you think it is good that the crew know about the treasure? Why? Why not? *(SB)* (اسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)

- علم الطاقم بأمر الكنز. هل تعتقد أنه من الجيد أن يعرف الطاقم عن الكنز؟ لماذا؟ ولم لا؟

- No, I don't think so. There might be a conflict on the ship.

- لا، لا أعتقد ذلك. قد يكون هناك صراع على السفينة.

12. Trelawny told everyone on the ship about the treasure. Why do you think he did so? (اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

- أخبر «تريلاوني» الجميع على متن السفينة عن الكنز. لماذا تعتقد أنه فعل ذلك؟

- Perhaps he wanted to persuade good sailors to join them on their voyage.

- ربما أراد إقناع البحارة الجيدين بالانضمام إليهم في رحلتهم.

13. Why do you think they chose Silver to be part of the crew on the Hispaniola? (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا تعتقد أنهم اختاروا «سيلفر» ليكون ضمن طاقم «هيسبانيولا»؟

- Perhaps because he helped them get most of the crew of the ship.

- ربما لأنه ساعدهم في الحصول على معظم طاقم السفينة.

14. «The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook. Silver also knew other men who would join us.» Do you think Long John Silver will be a good person to have on the ship? Why/Why not? *(WB)*

- «كان الطاقم يضم رجلاً يُدعى «لونج چون سيلفر» فقد ساقه ولكنه كان طباخًا ماهرًا. وكان «سيلفر» يعرف أيضًا رجالاً آخرين سينضمون إلينا.» هل تعتقد أن «لونج چون سيلفر» سيكون شخصًا جيدًا على متن السفينة؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- I don't think Silver will be a good person to have on the ship because he already knows most of the crew and there might be a mutiny on the ship.

- لا أعتقد أن سيلفر سيكون شخصًا جيدًا على متن السفينة لأنه ويعرف بالفعل معظم أفراد الطاقم وهذا قد يؤدي إلي تمرد علي القبطان «سموليت».

Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students:

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها :

1. What were the eight men searching for? *(SB)*

- ما الذي كان يبحث عنه الرجال الثمانية؟

- The map to the treasure.

- خريطة الكنز.

2. Why were the eight men searching for the paper? *(SB)*

- لماذا كان الرجال الثمانية يبحثون عن الخريطة؟

- They wanted to know where to find the treasure.

- لقد أرادوا أن يعرفوا مكان الكنز.

3. What does 'There' and 'It' in «Is it there?» refer to? *(SB)*

- ماذا تعني "there" و"it" في هذه العبارة؟ «Is it there ?» ؟

- 'There' refers to inside the Captain's box. 'It' refers to the map.

- **"there"** تشير إلى داخل صندوق الكابتن. "it" تشير إلى الخريطة.

4. How were Jim and his mother saved from the eight men? *(SB)*

- كيف تم إنقاذ «جيم» وأمه من الرجال الثمانية؟

- The police and Dr Livesy arrived on horses and saved them.

- وصلت الشرطة والدكتور «ليفيسي» على الخيول وأنقذوهما.

5. What do you know about Mr Trelawney? *(SB)*

- ماذا تعرف عن السيد «تريلاوني»؟

- He was a rich man. He was a friend of Dr Livesy's. He was the financer of the journey to the treasure Island.

- كان رجلاً ثرياً. لقد كان صديقًا للدكتور «ليفيسي». لقد كان ممول الرحلة إلى جزيرة الكنز.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There were .... men in addition to the blind man.
   a. four b. five c. six d. seven

2. The attackers escaped when they saw ....
   a. Jim and his mother b. the villagers
   c. the policemen d. Dr. Livesy and Bill

3. .... prepared for the journey in Bristol.
   a. Dr Livesy b. Mr Trelawney c. Bill d. Black Dog

4. After reading the papers, Jim and Dr Livesy knew that the Captain was just a/an ....
   a. pirate b. expert c. traveller d. activist

Answers

1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a

General Exercises On Chapter 2

✪ **Answer the following questions :**

A 1. Do you think the blind man and the other men were thieves ? Why / Why not ?

....

2. Why do you think the men were surprised to see the door open ?

....

3. After the papers being examined, what do you think the attackers were looking for ? Why ?

....

B 1. "It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. What do you think the blind man mean by these words ?

....

2. Why do you think the eight men didn't care much about Captain Bill's death? (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

....

3. Do you think the gang were interested in captain's money? Why? Why not? (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)

....

C 1. Do you think it is good that the crew know about the treasure? (سوهاج - البَلْيَنا ٢٠٢٤)

....

2. Were Jim and his mother right when they thought that they were in danger? Why / Why not?

....

3. What did the attackers discover when they reached the inn after Bill's death?

....

D 1. "If you find it, you'll all be rich!" said the blind man. What do you think this sentence means ?

....

2. How do you think Jim and his mother feel when they saw Dr Livesy and the other men under the bridge ? Why?

....

3. Do you think the police and the other men came on time? Why / Why not?

....

E 1. In your point of view, why couldn't the police catch the attackers?

....

2. Would it be easy for Jim and the other men to look for the treasure? Why? Why not ?

....

3. Why do you think Mr Trelawney said that Jim would be the ship's boy and Dr Livesy would be its doctor?

....

CHAPTER 3



I VOCABULARY

attack (ed) (n - v)	يهاجم - هجوم	mutiny (n)	تَمَرُّد / عِصْيان
barrel (n)	برميل (خشبي)	note (n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
crutch (n)	عُكَّاز - رَكيزة	of different sizes	ذو احجام مُختَلِفة
destination (n)	مَقْصَد - وِجْهة السفر	parrot (n)	ببغاء
empty (ied) (n - v)	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	patient (adj - n)	صبور - مريض
finger (n)	إصبع اليد	pay – paid (for) (v)	يدفع ثمن
frightened (adj)	خائف	pirate (n)	قُرصان
gang (n)	عِصابة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
harbour (n)	مَرْسَى - ميناء	return (ed) (v)	يعود - يُعِيد
helper (n)	مُساعِد	safe (adj)	آمِن - في أمان
journey (n)	رحلة	sailor (n)	بَحَّار
lose a leg	يفقد إحدى ساقيه	save (d) (v)	يُنقِذ - يدّخِر
make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك	secret (n - adj)	سر - سِرِّي

Words and their definitions

- **harbour:** an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely ميناء
- **mutiny** : when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge of them and take control for themselves تمرد
- **crutch** : a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg عكاز
- **parrot** : a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak ببغاء
- **barrel** : a large container made of wood برميل
- **pirate** : a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them قرصان
- **gang** : a group of people that causes trouble عصابة
- **secret** : known about by only a few people and kept from others سر
- **patient** : able to wait calmly for a long time صبور
- **attack** : an act of violence that is intended to hurt a person or damage a place هجوم

II CHAPTER THREE IN POINTS

1. Mr Trelawney sent Jim with a note to Silver's inn where Jim saw Black Dog.
2. Jim knew that the blind man was called Pew and he used to come to Silver's inn with Black Dog.
3. Captain Smollett didn't like the crew or the idea of looking for the treasure.
4. Smollett asked Dr Livsey and Mr Trelawney to be at the front of the ship keeping guns with them and not to show the map to anyone.
5. Dr Livesy thought Captain Smollett was a good man, but Mr Trelawney and Jim didn't like him.
6. One night by chance, Jim heard Silver telling the crew that he had sold his inn and gave the money to his wife.
7. Silver told the crew about his plan to kill Mr Trelawney and his friends after taking the map and then they would ask Smollett to take them back home.
8. The pirates were about to see Jim, but one of the sailors called "I can see land" which saved Jim as they went to see the land.

III TEXT OF CHAPTER THREE

- What do you think life is like on the Hispaniola ?

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take **a note** to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was **full of** people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!" 1

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

Suggested Questions

1 "You must be the new ship's boy." Would you be pleased with this description if you were Jim? Why?

"Yes, stop him! He did not **pay for** his food!" called Silver to one of his **helpers**. The helper ran out of the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who **attacked** my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked." 2

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

Suggested Questions

2 How did Silver succeed in making Jim think he had no relation to Black Dog and Pew?

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the **harbour** past boats of **different sizes**, all preparing to go to sea. Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us 3.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said. "Why not?" asked Dr Livesy.

Suggested Questions

3 Give a reason for Smollett's unwelcoming attitude at the beginning.

"I was told that the **destination** of the journey was a secret," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew." 4

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

Suggested Questions

4 To what extent was Smollett right about Silver and most of the crew?

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a **mutiny** ?" asked Dr Livesy.

"I don't like the men on the ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not ?" asked Dr Livesy.

"It's my job to **keep you safe**, that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesy. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett." 5

Suggested Questions

5 Whose opinion was right concerning Silver and Smollett, Trelawny's or Dr Livesy's?

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is." I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only **a crutch**. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his **parrot**. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always **made me laugh**.



One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big **barrel** which I climbed inside, because it was nearly **empty**. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking **nearby**. It was Silver and what he said was terrible 6.

Suggested Questions

6 Jim was about to lose his life for an apple. Explain.

"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said.
"It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"



"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."

Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be **patient**," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack." 7

Suggested Questions

7 How was Silver a wise pirate?

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.



"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is **dead**."

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a **pirate**, and the other crew were part of his **gang**.

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out: "I can see **land**!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.

IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1 Longman website questions :

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

1. In your opinion, what qualities should the ship crew have during that adventure of looking for the treasure? Why?

- في رأيك، ما هي الصفات التي يجب أن يتحلى بها طاقم السفينة خلال مغامرة البحث عن الكنز؟ لماذا؟

- I think they should be loyal to each other.

- أعتقد أنهم يجب أن يكونوا مخلصين لبعضهم البعض.

2. If you were a ship captain, would you choose your own crew? Why?

- لو كنت قبطان سفينة، هل ستختار طاقمك الخاص؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. I would need to choose people I could work with.

- نعم سأفعل. سأحتاج إلى اختيار الأشخاص الذين يمكنني العمل معهم.

3. Why do you think looking for treasure always means danger?

برأيك، لماذا يعني البحث عن الكنز دائمًا الخطر؟

- Because treasure raises greed and conflict begins.

- لأن الكنز يثير الطمع ويبدأ الصراع.

4. If you were in Mr Trelawney's place, would you trust Captain Smollett? Why?

لو كنت مكان السيد «تريلاوني»، هل ستثق بالكابتن «سموليت»؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. Smollett was a wise and experienced captain.

- نعم. كان «سموليت» قبطاناً حكيمًا وذو خبرة.

5. What might have happened if Dr Livesy had lost the map?

- ماذا كان يمكن أن يحدث لو أن الدكتور «ليفيسي» فقد الخريطة؟

- They wouldn't know the place of the hidden treasure.

- لن يعرفوا مكان الكنز المخفي.

6. From your point of view, what might have happened if Jim had caught Black Dog in the inn?

- من وجهة نظرك، ماذا كان يمكن أن يحدث لو أن «جيم» أمسك بـ «بلاك دوج» في النُزُل؟

- He would know that Black Dog and Silver were friends. He would warn Dr Livesy about Silver.

- سيعلم أن «بلاك دوج» و «سيلفر» صديقان. كان سيحذر الدكتور «ليفيسي» بشأن «سيلفر».

7. What might have happened if the crew had known that Jim heard their plan to attack Captain Smollett?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو علم الطاقم أن «جيم» سمع خطتهم لمهاجمة الكابتن «سموليت»؟

- They might have killed him.

- ربما قتلوه.

8. What do you think Jim, Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney should do when they find the treasure? Why?

- في رأيك، ما الذي يجب على «جيم» والدكتور «ليفيسي» والسيد «تريلاوني» فعله عندما يجدون الكنز؟ لماذا؟

- They should take it to the police because that treasure was stolen from other people.

- يجب أن يأخذوه إلى الشرطة لأن هذا الكنز سُرق من أشخاص آخرين.

2 SB, EL-Moasser & Previous Exams:

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

1. Silver was rich before the journey on the Hispaniola. Explain.

- كانت «سيلفر» ثرياً قبل الرحلة على «هيسبانيولا». اشرح ذلك.

- He had made a lot of money from his work as a pirate. He owned an inn.

- لقد حصل على الكثير من المال من عمله كقرصان. كان يملك نُزُلاً.

2. Silver was sociable. Explain. **- كان «سيلفر» اجتماعيًا. اشرح ذلك.**

- He knew how to welcome his guests at the inn. He made everyone on the ship like him.

- كان يعرف كيف يرحب بضيوفه في النزل. لقد جعل كل من على السفينة يحبه في البداية.

3. Why do you think Black Dog left Silver's inn when he saw Jim?

- برأيك، لماذا غادر «بلاك دوج» نزل «سيلفر» عندما رأى «چيم»؟

- He didn't want Jim to suspect Silver if he knew they were friends.

- لم يكن يريد أن يشك «چيم» في «سيلفر» إذا علم أنهما صديقان.

4. "Stop him! He didn't pay for his food." Why do you think Silver said this?

- «أوقفوه! فهو لم يدفع ثمن طعامه.» لماذا تعتقد أن سيلفر قال هذا؟

- To stop Jim from thinking that he and Black Dog were friends.

- حتي لا يظن «چيم» أنه «وبلاك دوج» صديقان.

5. Do you think Silver, Black Dog and Pew were friends? Why?

- هل تعتقد أن «سيلفر» و «بلاك دوج» و «بيو» كانوا أصدقاء؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. Silver later said that Black Dog and Pew were with them on Captain Flint's ship.

- نعم أعتقد ذلك. قال «سيلفر» لاحقًا إن «بلاك دوج» و «بيو» كانا معهم على متن سفينة الكابتن «فلينت».

6. Silver was quick-witted. Illustrate. **كان «سيلفر» سريع البديهة. وضح ذلك.**

- When Jim saw Black Dog in Silver's inn, Silver quickly pretended that he did not know Black Dog and asked his helper to catch him for not paying for the food.

- عندما رأى «چيم» «بلاك دوج» في نُزل «سيلفر»، تظاهر سريعًا بأنه لا يعرف «بلاك دوج» وطلب من مساعده أن يمسك به لأنه لم يدفع ثمن الطعام.

7. Do you think Silver was just a cook? Why?

هل تعتقد أن «سيلفر» كان مجرد طباخ؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He was a leader of a group of pirates. They planned to get the map and the treasure.

- لا أعتقد ذلك. لقد كان قائداً لمجموعة من القراصنة. لقد خططوا للحصول على الخريطة والكنز.

8. Do you think that captain Smollett trusted his new crew? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الكابتن «سموليت» يثق بطاقمه الجديد؟ لماذا؟

- No, he didn't. He didn't choose them, so he asked Dr Livesy to be always at the front of the ship with guns.

- لا، فهو لم يخترهم، لذلك طلب من الدكتور ليفيسي أن يكون دائمًا في مقدمة السفينة حاملاً الأسلحة.

9. If you were Captain Smollett, would you go on the voyage? Why?

لو أنك الكابتن «سموليت»، هل ستذهب في الرحلة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't be a leader of a crew I didn't choose.

- لا، لن أكون قائداً لطاقم لم أختره.

10. It is my job to keep you safe." What do you think Captain Smollett meant by this?

«إنها مهمتي أن أبقيك آمنًا.» برأيك، ماذا كان الكابتن «سموليت» يقصد بهذا؟

- I think he meant he was not pleased with either the crew or the idea of looking for a treasure.

- أعتقد أنه كان يقصد أنه لم يكن سعيدًا بالطاقم أو بفكرة البحث عن الكنز.

11. "Captain Smollett was a wise man." Do you agree? Why? (اسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)

- «كان الكابتن سموليت رجلاً حكيماً.» هل تتفق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. He knew from the very beginning that Silver and his crew were not good people.

- نعم اتفق. كان يعلم منذ البداية أن «سيلفر» وطاقمه لم يكونوا أشخاصًا صالحين.

12. Why do you think Jim didn't like Captain Smollett at the beginning?

- برأيك، لماذا لم يكن «چيم» يحب الكابتن «سموليت» في البداية؟

- Perhaps because he looked worried and unhappy. - ربما لأنه بدا قلقاً وغير سعيد.

13. Do you think Trelawney and Jim's first impression on Captain Smollett was right? Why? *(SB)* (اسيوط - اسيوط ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تعتقد أن الانطباع الأول لـ «تريلاوني» و «چيم» عن الكابتن سموليت كان صحيحًا؟ لماذا؟

- No, it was completely wrong. It later became clear that Silver was a pirate and Captain Smollett was a good man.

- لا، لقد كان خطأ تماما. أصبح من الواضح لاحقًا أن «سيلفر» كان قرصانًا وأن الكابتن «سموليت» كان رجلاً صالحًا.

14. Silver and Pew were old friends. Explain. *(SB)*

- كان «سيلفر» و«بيو» صديقين قديمين. وضح ذلك.

- Jim hears Silver talking about how Pew became blind, so they have known each other for a long time. Pew and Silver both sailed with Captain Flint.

- سمع «چيم» «سيلفر» يتحدث عن كيفية إصابة «بيو» بالعمى، لذا فهما يعرفان بعضهما البعض منذ فترة طويلة. أبحر كل من «بيو» و «سيلفر» مع الكابتن «فلينت».

15. Why do you think Silver called his parrot 'Flint'?

لماذا برأيك أطلق «سيلفر» على ببغائه اسم «فلينت»؟

- To remind him of Captain Flint who had hidden the treasure.

- لتذكيره بالكابتن «فلينت» الذي خبأ الكنز.

16. Silver was a good cook, but not a good man. Show how. (أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

- كان «سيلفر» طباخًا ماهرًا، لكنه لم يكن رجلاً صالحًا. وضح كيف.

- As a cook, Silver did a great job and his kitchen was always clean. However, he was deceitful. He was a pirate.

- كطباخ، قام «سيلفر» بعمل رائع وكان مطبخه نظيفًا دائمًا. كرجل، كان مخادعًا. لقد كان قرصانًا.

17. 'You want to do things quickly', what does this quotation tell you about Silver's character? *(SB)*

«تريدون أن تفعلوا الأشياء بسرعة»، ماذا يخبرك هذا الاقتباس عن شخصية «سيلفر»؟

- It shows that Silver can be patient as he can wait for the best time to do something.

- يُظهر أن «سيلفر» يمكنه التحلي بالصبر لأنه يمكنه الانتظار لأفضل وقت لفعل شيء ما.

18. How do you think Jim felt when he learned about Long John Silver's true character? *(SB)* (اسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)

في رأيك، كيف شعر «جيم» عندما علم بشخصية «لونج جون سيلفر» الحقيقية؟

- I think he was both frightened and shocked. - أعتقد أنه كان خائفًا ومصدومًا.

19. 'Most of the same crew are on this ship today.' What do you think will happen next after this quotation? *(SB)*

«معظم نفس الطاقم موجود على هذه السفينة اليوم.» ماذا تعتقد أنه سيحدث بعد هذا الاقتباس؟

- I think that the crew will mutiny because they all know each other and they want the treasure.

- أعتقد أن الطاقم سوف يتمرد لأنهم جميعا يعرفون بعضهم البعض ويريدون الكنز.

20. Jim's luck saved him from Silver and his men. Explain. *(SB)*

(اسيوط -أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- أنقذ الحظ «جيم» من «سيلفر» ورجاله. وضح ذلك.

- When Dick was about to put his hand in the barrel of apples where Jim was, another man called that he could land. That made them forget about the apples.

- عندما كان «ديك» على وشك وضع يده في برميل التفاح حيث كان «جيم»، جاء رجل آخر وأخبرهم أنه رأى أرضاً، وهذا جعلهم ينسون أمر التفاح.

21. What do you think life is like on the Hispaniola? *(SB)*

-كيف كان الوضع علي السفينة «هيسبانيولا» ؟

- I think it was not good. There was an unannounced war between Silver's group and Captain Smollett's group.

- أظن أنه لم يكن وضعاً جيداً، فلقد كانت هناك حرباً غير مُعلَنة بين «سيلفر» ومجموعته والقبطان «سموليت» ومجموعته.

22. "Not all that glitters is gold." Explain the meaning of this phrase, referring to Silver and Smollett. *(SB)* (اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

«ليس كل ما يلمع ذهبا.» اشرح معنى هذه العبارة في ضوء شخصية كل من «سيلفر» و «سموليت».

- Things aren't as they first appear. At first, Jim thought that Silver was a good man and that Smollett was a bad man, but he was mistaken about both of them.

- الأشياء ليست كما تبدو للوهلة الأولى. في البداية، اعتقد «جيم» أن «سيلفر» رجل طيب وأن «سموليت» رجل سيئ، لكنه كان مخطئًا بشأن كليهما.

Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students:

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها :

1. What is Jim Hawkins' job on the ship? *(SB)*

- ما هي وظيفة «جيم» هوكينز على متن السفينة؟

- He is the new ship's boy. - هو فتى السفينة الجديدة.

2. What did Silver look like? - كيف يبدو «سيلڤر»؟

- He's a tall, strong man with one leg. He is an excellent sailor, but he is also a pirate and he is planning to attack Trelawney and his friends.

- إنه رجل طويل القامة وقوي وذو ساق واحدة. إنه بحار ممتاز، لكنه أيضًا قرصان ويخطط لمهاجمة «تريلاوني» وأصدقائه.

3. Who are the two good men on the ship whom Dr Livesy was talking about? *(SB)*

- من هما الرجلان الصالحان الموجودان على السفينة والذين تحدث عنهم الدكتور «ليڤيسي»؟

- Long John Silver and Captain Smollett. -«لونج جون سيلڤر» والكابتن «سموليت».

4. Who was Captain Flint? *(SB)* - من هو الكابتن «فلينت»؟

- Flint was a captain on a ship with Long John Silver. He's dead now and Long John Silver's parrot is called Flint.

- كان «فلينت» قبطانًا على متن سفينة مع «لونج جون سيلڤر». لقد مات الآن وببغاء «لونج جون سيلڤر» يسمى «فلينت».

5. Who did Jim see in Silver's inn? - من الذي رآه «چيم» في نزل «سيلڤر»؟

- Black Dog. - «بلاك دوج».

6. What is the blind man's name? - ما اسم الرجل الأعمى؟

- Pew. - «بيو».

7. Why is Captain Smollett unhappy at the start of the journey? *(SB)*

- لماذا يكون الكابتن «سموليت» غير سعيد في بداية الرحلة؟

- Because he doesn't like the crew and he thinks they will not be safe.

- لأنه لا يحب الطاقم ويعتقد أنهم لن يكونوا آمنين.

8. How did Jim know that Silver was a great sailor?

- كيف عرف «چيم» أن «سيلڤر» كان بحارًا عظيمًا؟

- Silver told him a lot about boats and ships. - أخبره «سيلڤر» الكثير عن القوارب والسفن.

9. What did Captain Smollett want Dr Livesy to do on the ship?

ماذا أراد الكابتن «سموليت» من الدكتور «ليڤيسي» أن يفعل على متن السفينة؟

- To stay at the front with guns and not to show the map to anybody.

- أن يبقى في المقدمة مع السلاح ألا يُظهِر الخريطة لأحد.

10. How was Silver as a cook? - كيف كان «سيلڤر» كطباخ؟

- He was a great cook. His Kitchen was always clean.

- لقد كان طباخًا ماهرًا. كان مطبخه نظيفًا دائمًا.

11. What were Silver's plans after the journey? - ما هي خطط «سيلڤر» بعد الرحلة؟

- He had sold his inn. His wife would wait for him with the money in a secret place. He would get more money after finding the treasure and they would live in a different place.

- لقد باع نُزُله. وكانت زوجته تنتظره بالمال في مكان سري. سيحصل على المزيد من المال بعد العثور على الكنز وسيعيشون في مكان مختلف.

12. When did Jim know that Silver and most of the crew were pirates?

- متى عرف «چيم» أن «سيلڤر» ومعظم أفراد الطاقم كانوا قراصنة؟

- When he was inside the barrel of apples, he heard them talking.

- سمعهم يتحدثون عندما كان داخل برميل التفاح.

13. What is Silver's secret plan on the Hispaniola? *(SB)*

- ما هي خطة «سيلڤر» السرية في «هيسبانيولا»؟

- He plans to wait until they have found the treasure and then he's going to kill Smollett, Dr Livesy, Mr Trelawney and Jim later.

- يخطط للانتظار حتى يعثروا على الكنز ثم سيقتل «سموليت»، والدكتور «ليڤيسي»، والسيد «تريلاوني»، و «چيم» لاحقًا.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Trelawney asked Jim to .... to Long John Silver.
   a. take a note b. bring an apple c. find a ship d. get a crutch

2. At Silver's inn, Jim saw ....
   a. the blind man b. Black Dog c. Smollett d. Pew

3. To reach the treasure island, Mr Trelawney hired a big ship called ....
   a. Captain Smollett b. Pew
   c. Captain Flint d. the Hispaniola

4. Captain Flint was a name given to ....
   a. the blind man b. a strong blind man
   c. Silver's parrot d. a big ship

5. Jim first saw Silver in the latter's ....
   a. ship b. boat c. inn d. restaurant

6. ....'s real name was Pew.
   a. Hunter b. Black Dog c. The blind man d. Captain Flint

7. Silver knew .... about ships and boats.
   a. nothing b. a lot c. very little d. very few

8. Jim agreed with Mr Trelawney that Captain Smollett was ....
   a. not good b. great c. good captain d. not evil

9. Silver was a good cook but a/an............ .
   a. good sailor b. bad sailor c. evil pirate d. rich man

10. Silver called his parrot ....
    a. Pew b. Black Dog c. the blind man d. Captain Flint

Answers

1. a	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. c	6. c	7. b	8. a	9. c	10. d

General Exercises On Chapter 3

✪ Answer the following questions :

A 1. Why do you think Mr Trelawney sent a note to Silver ?

2. Do you think Long John Silver was truthful when he said that Black Dog didn't pay for his food ? Why / Why not ?

3. Silver's speech with Jim proved that he was a good sailor. How do you think so ?

B 1. Smollett was a wise man. Do you agree ? Why / Why not ?

2. Silver managed to deceive Mr Trelawney, Dr Livesy and Jim. To what extent is this sentence correct ?

3. Silver had a deceitful character. Explain

C 1. Why do you think captain Smollett didn't trust his crew? (القاهرة - مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤)

2. Do you agree that Jim Hawkins was lucky? Why? Why not? (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)

3. If you were in Jim's place in the apple barrel, how would you react to Silver's evil plans.

D 1. Both Jim and Silver called "Stop him." Why do you think they wanted to stop him?

2. "Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home." Do you think Jim made a mistake by telling Silver about Black Dog? Why / Why not?

3. "Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver. Why do you think they must return to Mr Trelawney?

E 1. Although Jim was worried when he saw Black Dog, Mr Trelawney didn't do anything. Discuss.

2. What do you think of Smollett's opinion about the crew?

3. Why do you think Silver called his parrot Captain Flint?

CHAPTER 4



I VOCABULARY

as usual	كالمُعتاد	hurt - hurt (v)	يُؤذي - مُصاب
blow a whistle	يُطلق صافرة	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
branch (n)	فَرع - غُصن	low (adj)	مُنخفِض
climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق	mark (ed) (v)	يُحدِّد - يُمَيِّز
climb out of	يتسلق خارجاً من	marked (adj)	مُحدَّد
close (to)	قريب - لصيق	mistake (n)	خطأ
coast (n)	ساحل	organise (d) (v)	يُنَظِّم
count (ed) (v)	يَعِدّ - يُحصِي	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي
disease (n)	مرض	rocky (adj)	صخري
excited (adj)	مُثار - سعيد	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - يصرخ
fight -fought (v)	يقاتل - يتشاجر	surprised (adj)	مُندهش
forever (adv)	للأبد	thought (n)	فِكرَة
hill (n)	تَلّ	trust(ed) (n - v)	يثق - الثقة
hold onto - held (v)	يتشبث بـ	whistle(d) (n - v)	صفَّارة - يُصَفِّر

Words and their definitions

- **branch :** a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk فرع شجرة
- **disease :** an illness which affects a person, animal or plant مرض
- **shore :** the land along the edge of a large area of water such as a sea, an ocean or a lake شاطىء
- **trust :** to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong يثق بـ
- **whistle :** a small object that produces a high whistling sound when you blow into it صفارة

II CHAPTER FOUR IN POINTS

1. Silver told them that he knew the island well, so Smollett gave him a map, but not the one that the treasure was marked on.

2. Jim told Dr Livesy, Mr Trelawney and Captain Smollett about what he had heard.
3. The men thanked Jim for the news and Mr Trelawney admitted his mistake about Silver.
4. They decided to continue and try to know the good people who could help them against the pirates.
5. Captain Smollett had a plan to get the ship by asking the sailors to spend a day on the island.
6. Silver was careful and left six of his men on the ship, so it was difficult for Captain Smollett and his men to take the ship.
7. Jim reached the island and hid on a tree. He heard Silver talking with a sailor called Tom persuading him to join his gang.
8. Tom heard Alan's (one of the sailors) terrible shout and warned Silver not to hurt him, but Silver hit Tom with his crutch and killed him with his knife.
9. Jim was afraid and tried to escape. Silver blew a whistle to collect his men and Captain Smollett fired his gun which meant going back to the ship; Jim didn't know what to do.

III TEXT OF CHAPTER FOUR

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors **at the side of** the ship. We could see two **low hills** and one big one. The island was now very **close**.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure **marked** on it. "Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map 1.

Suggested Questions

1 How do you think Silver felt when he found out that the map wasn't the real one?

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I **smiled** at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not **trust** anything that he said. I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some **terrible news**."

Dr Livesy's **expression** did not change. He asked me to find his glasses downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett 2.

Suggested Questions

2 What do you think of Dr Livesy's reaction to Jim's informing him he had terrible news?

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me. "What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.

I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me. "Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I **expected**. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us **immediately**. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it." 3

Suggested Questions

3 What do you think of Captain Smollett's plan to face Silver?

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them 4.

Suggested Questions

4 Why do you think Jim didn't like his role in the plan?

The next morning, the Hispaniola stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the **rocky tops** of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the **shore**. It was very hot and very quiet. It **smelled like** bad eggs.

"This place is only good for **diseases**," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard **as usual**.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to **relax**, if they wanted to.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to **organise** the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake ? 5

Suggested Questions

5 If you were Jim, would you go with the men to the island or stay on the ship? Why?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto the **branch** of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!" 6

Suggested Questions

6 What do you think of Tom's reaction to Silver's offer? Why?

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.

"What was that?" asked Tom.

Silver smiled and said "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back.
He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a **knife**.

Silver now **blew a whistle** and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now?
When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island **forever** 7 .

Suggested Questions

7 Do you think it was a good idea for Jim to stay on the island? Why?

IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1 Longman website questions :
أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

1. Was Jim right to be frightened of Silver? Why?

- هل كان «چيم» على حق في خوفه من «سيلڤر»؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, he was. Silver was a bloody pirate who had no red lines. It was easy for him to kill Tom.

- نعم كان كذلك. كان «سيلڤر» قرصانًا دمويًا ليس لديه خطوط حمراء. فلقد كان من السهل عليه أن يقتل «توم».

2. If you were in Jim's place, would you swim and climb trees on the island? Why?

- لو كنت مكان «چيم» هل ستسبح وتتسلق الأشجار في الجزيرة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. As a child, he was scared of Silver and his men.

- نعم سأفعل. كطفل صغير، كان خائفًا من «سيلڤر» ورجاله.

3. "You were right and I was wrong." What did this reflect about Mr Trelawny's character?

-«لقد كنت على صواب وأنا على خطأ.» علام يدل هذا في شخصية السيد «تريلاوني»؟

- This reflects that he was a modest man who would admit his mistakes.

- يدل هذا على أنه كان رجلاً متواضعاً يعترف بأخطائه.

4. What might have happened if Jim hadn't told Dr Livesy, Smollett and Mr Trelawney about what he had heard?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو لم يخبر «چيم» الدكتور «ليڤيسي» و «سموليت» والسيد «تريلاوني» بما سمعه؟

- They wouldn't have been aware of Silver's evil plans.

- لم يكونوا ليعلموا بخطط «سيلڤر» الشريرة.

5. If you were in Jim's place, would you agree to listen to the crew and know who Dr Livesy, Mr Trelawney and Smollett could trust? Why?

- لو كنت مكان «چيم»، هل توافق على التنصت على الطاقم ومعرفة من يمكن أن يثق به الدكتور «ليڤيسي» والسيد «تريلاوني» و «سموليت»؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. These people were evil and I would do my best to beat them.

- نعم، سأفعل. هؤلاء الناس كانوا أشرارًا وسأبذل قصارى جهدي للتغلب عليهم.

6. Do you agree to Captain Smollett's plan to save the ship from Silver and his men? Why?

- هل توافق على خطة الكابتن «سموليت» لإنقاذ السفينة من «سيلڤر» ورجاله؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. It was reasonable and logical.

- نعم. لقد كان الأمر معقولاً ومنطقياً.

7. What might have happened if Jim hadn't agreed to share in the adventure of looking for the treasure?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو لم يوافق «جيم» على المشاركة في مغامرة البحث عن الكنز؟

- He wouldn't have endangered his life. - لن يعرض حياته للخطر.

OR: He wouldn't have become wealthy. أو: لم يكن ليصبح ثريًا.

2 SB, EL-Moasser & Previous Exams:

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

1. What advantage did Silver and some of the crew have over the others? **- ما هي الميزة التي كان يتميز بها «سيلفر» وبعض أفراد الطاقم على الآخرين؟**

- They had been to the island before. - لقد ذهبوا إلى الجزيرة من قبل.

2. "I have a map here." Which map did Captain Smollett mean?

-«لدي خريطة هنا.» ما هي الخريطة التي كان يقصدها الكابتن «سموليت»؟.

- A map of the island without the mark on the place of the hidden treasure.

- خريطة الجزيرة بدون العلامة الموجودة على مكان الكنز المخفي.

3. "Dr Livesy's expression did not change." What does this tell us about Dr Livesy's personality?

- «لم يتغير تعبير وجه الدكتور ليڤيسي.» بماذا يخبرنا هذا عن شخصية الدكتور «ليڤيسي»؟

- This shows he was quick-witted and wise. He didn't want to attract the pirates' attention.

- يدل هذا على أنه كان سريع البديهة وحكيما. لم يكن يريد جذب انتباه القراصنة.

4. What would have happened if Captain Smollett had decided to go back after discovering Silver's mutiny?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو قرر الكابتن «سموليت» العودة بعد اكتشاف تمرد «سيلڤر»؟

- The pirates, who were more in number, would kill Captain Smollett and his group. - القراصنة الذين كانوا أكثر عددا سيقتلون الكابتن «سموليت» ومجموعته.

5. "Silver did not find all this crew." What does Captain Smollett mean by this?

- «لم ختر «سيلڤر» كل أفراد هذا الطاقم.» ماذا يقصد الكابتن «سموليت» بهذا؟

- He meant that some of the crew were not pirates and they could be trusted.

- كان يقصد أن بعض أفراد الطاقم ليسوا قراصنة ويمكن الوثوق بهم.

6. What would have happened if Silver had found all the crew on the ship? **- ماذا كان سيحدث لو اختار «سيلڤر» جميع أفراد الطاقم على متن السفينة؟**

- Captain Smollett and his group would not find honourable sailors to help them. - لم يكن الكابتن «سموليت» ومجموعته بحارة شرفاء لمساعدتهم.

7. If you were Jim, would you like the role Dr Livesy had given you? Why?

- **لو كنت مكان «چيم»، هل سيعجبك الدور الذي أعطاك إياه الدكتور «ليڤيسي»؟ لماذا؟**

- Yes. It was a role that suited my age and my position on the ship.

- نعم. لقد كان الدور الذي يناسب عمري ووضعي على السفينة.

8. Why do you think Captain Smollett wanted all the men on the ship to spend the afternoon on the island?

- **برأيك، لماذا أراد الكابتن «سموليت» أن يقضي جميع الرجال الموجودين على السفينة فترة ما بعد الظهر في الجزيرة؟**

- He wanted to send the Pirates away to take the ship.

- أراد إبعاد القراصنة ليسيطر على السفينة.

9. Why do you think all the crew were happy to spend the afternoon on the ship?

- **برأيك، لماذا تعتقد أن جميع أفراد الطاقم كانوا سعداء بقضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على متن السفينة؟**

- Because they thought they would find the treasure quickly.

- لأنهم ظنوا أنهم سيجدون الكنز بسرعة.

10. How did Silver make use of the advantage of organizing the men?

- **كيف استفاد «سيلڤر» من ميزة تنظيم الرجال؟**

- He kept six of his men on the ship to stop Captain Smollett from taking the ship.

- احتفظ بستة من رجاله على متن السفينة لمنع الكابتن «سموليت» من الاستيلاء على السفينة.

11. Why did Jim feel that he made a mistake by deciding to go to the island? *(SB)*

- **لماذا شعر «چيم» بأنه أخطأ عندما قرر الذهاب إلى الجزيرة؟**

- Because he could have been killed by Silver and his men.

- لأنه كان من الممكن أن يُقتل على يد «سيلڤر» ورجاله.

12. Tom's values made him pay with his life. Explain.

- **إن القِيَم لدي «توم» جعلته يدفع حياته ثمناً لذلك. وضح ذلك.**

- He was killed because he refused to support the pirates.

- لقد قُتل لأنه رفض دعم القراصنة.

13. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected." Why do you think the crew were better than Captain Smollett expected? *(WB)*

- **«لقد عملوا بجد وكانوا طاقم عمل أفضل مما توقعت.» لماذا تعتقد أن الطاقم كان أفضل مما توقعه الكابتن «سموليت»؟**

- I think because they didn't want Captain Smollett to suspect them.

- أعتقد أنهم كانوا لا يريدون أن يشك فيهم الكابتن «سموليت».

14. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore.

Why do you think Captain Smollett let Silver help him do this? *(WB)*

- ساعد «سيلڤر» الكابتن «سموليت» في الإبحار بالقارب بالقرب من الشاطئ. لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن «سموليت» سمح لـ «سيلڤر» بمساعدته في القيام بذلك؟

- Captain Smollett was working to a plan. He wanted everything to be normal and to attack them when they did not expect it.

- كان الكابتن «سموليت» يعمل على خطة. أراد أن يكون كل شيء طبيعيًا وأن يهاجمهم عندما لا يتوقعون ذلك.

15. "We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns." How do they know they can trust some of the men? *(WB)*

- «قررنا أن نخبر جميع الرجال الذين يمكن أن نثق بهم بشأن خطتنا وأعطيناهم جميعاً أسلحة.» كيف يعرفون أنهم يستطيعون الوثوق ببعض الرجال؟

- Silver did not choose all the crew on the ship.

- لم يختر «سيلڤر» جميع أفراد الطاقم على متن السفينة.

16. "I would have to stay on the island forever." Why does Jim say this? *(WB)*

- «سأضطر إلى البقاء في الجزيرة إلى الأبد.» لماذا يقول «چيم» هذا؟

- Because he wouldn't return to the ship with Silver and his men. He thought they would kill him.

- لأنه لن يعود إلى السفينة مع «سيلڤر» ورجاله. كان يعتقد أنهم سيقتلونه.

17. Dr Livesy trusted Jim too much. Explain. (أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٤)

- كان الدكتور «ليڤيسي» يثق «بچيم» كثيرًا. وضح ذلك.

- Dr Livesy asked Jim to know what the pirates were planning to do.

- طلب الدكتور «ليڤيسي» من «چيم» معرفة ما كان القراصنة يخططون للقيام به.

18. Why do you think Silver kept six of his men on the ship?

(الإسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا تعتقد أن «سيلڤر» أبقى ستة من رجاله على متن السفينة؟

- I think he wanted to make sure that Captain Smollett and his men would not take the ship.

- أعتقد أنه أراد التأكد من أن الكابتن «سموليت» ورجاله لن يأخذوا السفينة.

19. Silver was really deceitful. Do you agree? Explain. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)

- كان «سيلڤر» مخادعاً حقًا. هل تتفق؟ وضح ذلك.

- He tricked Mr Trelawny who trusted him and made him get most of the crew. He tricked Tom and killed him.

- لقد خدع السيد «تريلاوني» الذي وثق به وجعله يختار معظم أفراد الطاقم. لقد خدع «توم» وقتله.

Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students:

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها :

1. What did Jim do next after he knew about Silver's mutiny? *(SB)*

- ماذا فعل «چيم» بعد أن علم بتمرد «سيلفر»؟

- He tells Dr Livesy, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney about it.

- يخبر الدكتور «ليفيسي» والكابتن «سموليت» والسيد «تريلاوني» بذلك.

2. What was Captain Smollett's plan to save the ship from Silver and his men? *(SB)*

- ما هي خطة الكابتن «سموليت» لإنقاذ السفينة من «سيلفر» ورجاله؟

- His plan is to wait and attack them when they least expect it.

- خطته هي الانتظار ومباغتتهم بالهجوم.

3. How did the crew surprised Captain Smollett during the journey?

- كيف فاجأ الطاقم الكابتن سموليت أثناء الرحلة؟

- They worked harder than he had expected.

- لقد عملوا بجهد أكبر مما كان يتوقع.

4. What was Jim's role in Captain Smollett's plan?

- ما هو دور «چيم» في خطة الكابتن «سموليت»؟

- He would listen to know who they could trust.

- كان يسترق السمع ليعرف من يمكن الوثوق به.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When Jim got out of the barrel, he saw that the desert was very ....
   a. away b. close c. fascinating d. frightening
2. Silver was .... when he took the map.
   a. excited b. annoyed c. stressed d. confused
3. When Jim told his friends the information he knew about Silver, they were .... to him.
   a. unkind b. cruel c. unhelpful d. grateful
4. Dr Livesy asked Jim to help them in their plan because all men .... him.
   a. disliked b. were afraid of c. trusted d. ignored

Answers

1. b	2. a	3. d	4. c

General Exercises On Chapter 4

✪ **Answer the following questions :**

A 1. Smollett's point of view became true and Mr Trelawney admitted that. Explain.

....

2. Although Smollett gave Silver the map of the island, Silver couldn't reach the treasure. Explain why ?

....

3. Smollett didn't like the crew of the ship, but he was surprised to know the truth. Why do you think so ?

....

B 1. Despite knowing that Silver and his friends were pirates, Jim and his friends couldn't tell them or go back. To what extent is this sentence correct ? Why ?

....

2. Silver dealt with Jim as a little boy, but Dr Livesy had another point of view. Illustrate.

....

3. Imagine you were in Jim's shoes, would you tell Captain Smollett about Silver's mutiny? Why?

....

C 1. If you were Jim, would you Join Silver or Dr Livesy? Why?

....

2. Would you like the atmosphere on the ship? Why?

....

3. Do you think Jim would be safe alone on the island? Why?

....

D 1. What kind of people were Tom and Alan? How do you know?

....

2. Despite his disability, Silver had great experience in sailing. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

....

3. If you were Jim would you play the role which Dr Livesy asked you to do? Why / Why not?

....

CHAPTER 5



I VOCABULARY

allow(ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	interested (adj)	مُهتم
believe (d) (v)	يُصَدِّق - يُؤمِن	kneel down - knelt (v)	يركع
bottom (n)	أسفل / سفح - قاع	leader (n)	قائد
		on your own	بمفردك
burn – burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	prefer (red) (v)	يُفَضِّل
crazy (adj)	مجنون	realise (d) (v)	يُدرِك - يفهم
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مُظلِم	reply (ied) (v)	يرد - يجيب
different (adj)	مُختلِف	sail (ed) (n - v)	شِراع المركب - يبحر
directions (n)	اتجاهات		
dry (adj)	جاف / خشن	skin (n)	الجلد
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يُفَسِّر	spade (n)	جاروف
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل	start (ed) (n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag (n)	عَلَم - راية	voice (n)	صوت انسان
fresh (adj)	مُنعِش	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

Words and their definitions

- **crazy** : unwell in your mind — مجنون
- **sail** : a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat — شراع
- **leader** : the person who controls other people — قائد
- **fight** : to hit, kick or fire guns at other people — يقاتل

II CHAPTER FIVE IN POINTS

1. While running on the island, Jim met a man called Ben Gun who had been on the island for three years.
2. Ben Gun seemed to have found the treasure. He knew Silver and his men well and he didn't like working with them.
3. Ben Gun was on Flint's ship when Captain Flint hid the treasure, but he didn't tell anyone about its place.

4. Ben Gun came back with some sailors looking for the treasure, but they didn't find anything and he was left alone on the island looking for the treasure.
5. Ben Gun agreed to work for Mr Trelawney and he would tell him about the place of the treasure.
6. Ben Gun indirectly helped Jim to come back to the ship by a boat he had made before.

III TEXT OF CHAPTER FIVE

I finally stopped running and saw that I was **close to** the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was **fresher** here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous.

I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me **feel safer**. I decided to walk towards the man 1.

Suggested Questions

1 In what sense was Jim brave?

When he saw me walking towards him, to my **surprise**, he came out from behind the tree and **knelt down** in front of me. "Who are you?" I asked.



"Ben Gun," he said in a **dry voice**. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was **burned by the sun**. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails 2.

Suggested Questions

2 Do you sympathise with Ben Gun? Why?

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I **dream of** eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said. "It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not **believe him**.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him. "Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their **leader**," I explained. "If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said 3.

Suggested Questions

3 Do you think Ben Gun wished to meet Flint? Why?

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and **allow** me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked 4.

Suggested Questions

4 What do you think Ben Gun's life dream was after three years alone on the island?

"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship **on his own**. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'



"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay.



'Here's a gun and a **spade**. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates." 5

Suggested Questions

5 If you were Ben Gun, would you join Mr Trelawny or Silver? Why?

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him. "I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!" Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions, and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.



IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1 Longman website questions : أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

1. What might have happened if Jim hadn't had a gun on the island?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو لم يكن لدى «چيم» مسدسًا على الجزيرة؟

- Ben Gun might have attacked him.

- ربما كان «بن جن» سيهاجمه.

2. If you were in Gun's place, would you tell Jim about those secrets? Why?

- لو كنت مكان «جن»، هل ستخبر «چيم» عن تلك الأسرار؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. Three years of misery alone on the island made him ready to do anything to put an end to loneliness.

- نعم سأفعل. ثلاث سنوات من البؤس وحده على الجزيرة جعلته مستعدًا لفعل أي شيء لوضع حد للوحدة.

3. "You can look for the treasure on your own." Why do you think the crew said this to Gun?

-«يمكنك البحث عن الكنز بمفردك.» لماذا تعتقد أن الطاقم قال هذا لـ «جن»؟

- Perhaps they no longer believed there was a treasure after twelve days of searching.

- ربما لم يعودوا يُصدِّقون بوجود كنز بعد اثني عشر يومًا من البحث.

4. If you were in Ben Gun's place, would you kneel in front of Jim? Why?

- لو كنت مكان «بن جن» هل ستركع أمام «چيم»؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. Being in front of a child with a gun in his hand requires wisdom.

- نعم سأفعل. إن الوقوف أمام طفل وفي يده مسدس يتطلب الحكمة.

5. Do you think Jim could have known the right directions without Gun's help? Why?

- هل تعتقد أن «چيم» كان بإمكانه معرفة الاتجاهات الصحيحة دون مساعدة «جن»؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. The island was not vey big. However, Ben Gun made things easier for Jim.

- نعم أعتقد ذلك. لم تكن الجزيرة كبيرة جدًا. ومع ذلك، «بن جن» جعل الأمور أسهل بالنسبة لـ «چيم».

6. Could anyone have looked for the treasure alone? Why?

- هل يمكن لأحد أن يبحث عن الكنز وحده؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. Ben Gun did it.

- نعم. لقد فعلها «بن جن».

7. Why do you think Flint hid the treasure in that island in particular?

- لماذا تعتقد أن «فلينت» خبأ الكنز في تلك الجزيرة على وجه الخصوص؟

- Perhaps because it was not inhabited by people.

- ربما لأنها لم تكن مأهولة بالناس.

2 SB, EL-Moasser & Previous Exams:

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

1. Why do you think Ben Gun was afraid of a child like Jim even if he had a gun in his hand?

- برأيك، لماذا كان «بن جن» خائفًا من طفل مثل «چيم» حتى وإن كان هناك مسدس في يده؟

- I think because you can't expect children's reaction.

- أعتقد لأنه لا يمكن تَوَقُّع ردود أفعال الأطفال.

2. How do you think it was like living alone on an island for three years?

- في رأيك، كيف يبدو العيش بمفردك على جزيرة لمدة ثلاث سنوات؟

- It was a very difficult experience, I think. Loneliness and lack of supplies is very difficult.

- إنها تجربة صعبة للغاية على ما أعتقد. الوحدة ونقص الإمدادات أمر صعب للغاية.

3. Alone in an unpopulated island, money becomes useless. Comment.

- عندما تكون وحيداً في جزيرة غير مأهولة، يصبح المال عديم الفائدة. ما تعليقك؟

- There is nothing to buy with money in a desert island. One would not eat money, marry money, talk to money or sleep in money.

- لا يوجد شيء يمكن شراؤه بالمال في جزيرة مهجورة. فلن يأكل المرء المال ولن يتزوج المال ولن يتكلم في المال ولن ينام في المال.

4. "If I can get back to my ship, ..." How do you think Ben Gun felt when he heard these words? Why?

- «إذا كان بإمكاني العودة إلى سفينتي،...» كيف شعر بن جن في رأيك عندما سمع هذه الكلمات؟ لماذا؟

- I think he was very worried and even shocked. These words meant there was a problem. That killed the Ben Gun's hope of going back home.

- أعتقد أنه كان قلقا لدرجة ترتقي إلى الصدمة. هذه الكلمات تعني أن هناك مشكلة. من شأن هذا أن يقضي على أمل «بن جن» في العودة إلى الوطن.

5. Why do you think Jim thought that Ben Gun was crazy?

- برأيك، لماذا اعتقد «چيم» أن «بن جن» كان مجنونا؟

- Because Ben Gun, that miserable man in his dirty old clothes, says he was rich and that he could make Jim rich.

- لأن «بن جن»، ذلك الرجل البائس الذي يرتدي ملابسه القديمة القذرة، يقول إنه غني وأنه يستطيع أن يجعل چيم «ثريًا».

6. At what point did Jim realise that Ben Gun could help him?

- متي أدرك «چيم» أن «بن جن» يمكنه مساعدته؟

- When he knew that Ben Gun did not like Silver. This makes it impossible for him to join Silver's group.

- عندما علم أن «بن جن» لا يحب «سيلفر». هذا يجعل من المستحيل عليه الانضمام إلى مجموعة «سيلفر».

7. The enemy of my enemy is a friend of mine. Comment with an example from Treasure Island.

- عدو عدوي صديق لي. علق بمثال من قصة جزيرة الكنز.

- When Jim knew that Ben Gun did not like Silver, he realised it was impossible for him to join Silver's group.

- عندما عرف چيم أن «بن جن» لا يحب «سيلفر» أدرك أنه من المستحيل عليه الانضمام إلى مجموعة «سيلفر».

8. How do you think Ben Gun felt when he knew that Flint was dead?

- في رأيك، كيف شعر «بن جن» عندما علم بوفاة «فلينت»؟

- I think he was very happy. - أعتقد أنه كان سعيدا جدا.

9. 'I dream of eating good food again,' what does this tell you about Gun's life on the island? *(SB)*

- «أحلم بأكل طعام جيد مرة أخرى،» ماذا يخبرك هذا عن حياة «جن» في الجزيرة؟

- This tells us he had a very difficult life on the island.

- يخبرنا هذا أنه عاش حياة صعبة للغاية في الجزيرة.

10. Why do you think Gun was left alone on the island? *(SB)*

- لماذا تعتقد أن «جن» تُرِك وحده في الجزيرة؟

- Perhaps he insisted on finding the treasure. Perhaps he was punished because the treasure wasn't found.

- ربما أصر على العثور على الكنز. ربما عُوقِب لأنه لم يتم العثور على الكنز.

11. "I haven't spoken to anyone for three years." Do you think Ben Gun was happy on his journey to find the treasure ! Why /Why not?

(الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٤)

- «لم أتحدث مع أحد منذ ثلاث سنوات.» هل تعتقد أن «بن جن» كان سعيدًا في رحلته للعثور على الكنز ! لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- No, I don't think so. He spent three years alone on an island. He didn't have good food, good clothing or a home to live in.

- لا أعتقد ذلك. أمضى ثلاث سنوات بمفرده على الجزيرة. ولم يكن لديه طعام جيد أو ملابس جيدة أو منزل يعيش فيه.

12. "If you work for Silver, I'm finished." Why do you think Gun said this? *(LM)*

(الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)

- «إذا كنت تعمل مع «سيلفر»، فأنا قد انتهيت.» لماذا برأيك قال «جن» هذا؟

- He means that Silver is an enemy of his. He also means that Silver is a bloody person.

- يقصد أن «سيلفر» عدو له، ويقصد أيضًا أن «سيلفر» شخص دموي.

13. Why do you think Ben Gun hated Sliver?

(الغربية - كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا كان «بن جن» يكره «سيلفر»؟

- He worked with him before and knows that he was evil and deceitful.

- لقد عمل معه من قبل ويعرف أنه كان شريراً ومخادعاً.

14. How do you know that Jim and Ben Gun trusted each other?

(قنا - أبو تشت ٢٠٢٤)

- كيف تعرف أن «چيم» و «بن جن» يثقان ببعضهما البعض؟

- Jim told Ben Gun his story from the start. Ben Gun offered Jim his boat and to make him rich.

- أخبر «چيم» «بن جن» قصته منذ البداية. عرض «بن جن» على «چيم» قاربه وأن يجعله ثرياً.

15. Do you agree that Captain Flint was an evil man? Give reasons.

(البحيرة - البحيرة ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تتفق مع أن الكابتن «فلينت» كان رجلاً شريرًا؟ اعط اسباباً.

- Yes, I do. He killed six members of his crew for the treasure.

- نعم. لقد قتل ستة من أفراد طاقمه من أجل الكنز.

Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students:

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها :

1. Who did Jim meet in the trees?

- بمن التقى «چيم» بين الأشجار؟

- Ben Gun.

- «بن جن».

2. Who was Ben Gun?

- من هو «بن جن»؟

- He was one of the sailors who worked with Flint.

- كان أحد البحارة الذين عملوا مع «فلينت».

3. What did Ben Gun do when he saw Jim armed with a gun?

- ماذا فعل «بن جن» عندما رأى «چيم» مسلحًا بمسدس؟

- He knelt down.

- لقد جثا على ركبتيه.

4. How long did Ben Gun stay alone on the island? *(SB)*

- كم من الوقت بقي «بن جن» وحيدا في الجزيرة؟

- Three years.

- ثلاث سنوات.

5. What did Ben Gun dream of?

- بماذا كان يحلم «بن جن»؟

- He dreamt of good food and returning home.

- كان يحلم بالطعام الجيد والعودة إلى بلاده.

6. How did Ben Gun become rich?

- كيف أصبح «بن جن» ثريا؟

- He found Flint's treasure.

- وجد كنز «فلينت».

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ben Gun told Jim that he would like to work for ....
   a. Silver b. Mr Trelawney c. Bill d. Black Dog

2. When he saw Ben Gun, Jim felt safer as he had a ....
   a. ship b. crew c. gang d. gun

3. Gun did not speak to anyone for .... years.
   a. three b. thirteen c. thirty d. twenty

4. Ben Gun's skin was ....
   a. lively b. suntanned c. bright d. soft

Answers

1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b

General Exercises On Chapter 5

✪ Answer the following questions :

A 1. The man Jim saw on the island was different in his movement. How do you think so ?

....

2. Despite being afraid of the man on the island, Jim came closer to him. Why do you think so ?

....

3. Ben Gun's appearance was frightening, but he was a friendly man. Do you agree or not ? Why ?

....

B 1. Do you think Ben Gun loves Silver and would help him ? Why / Why not ?

....

2. "I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. What can you infer from these words ?

....

3. Describe "Ben Gun".

....

C 1. Ben Gun had hard times on the island. Discuss.

....

2. Jim was lucky to meet Ben Gun. Say if you agree or not? Why?

....

3. If you were Ben Gun, would you kneel down in front of a child like Jim? Why?

....

D 1. "I dream of eating good food again." What can you infer from this sentence?

....

2. In your point of view, was Ben Gun crazy as Jim thought? Why / Why not?

....

3. "If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said. What do you think Ben Gun meant by this sentence?

....

CHAPTER 6



I VOCABULARY

advantage (n)	ميزة	fire (ed) at (ed) (v)	يطلق النار علي
adventure (n)	مغامرة	fort (n)	حِصن
alive (adj)	علي قيد الحياة	get to - got (v)	يصل إلي
arrival (n)	وصول	give … an advantage	يمنح ميزة
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	hit - hit (v)	يصيب - يضرب
blow – blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	pick(ed) up (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
		prevent(ed) (v)	يمنع
cannon (n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact (ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل بـ	race (n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink – sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغطس
diary (n)	مفكرة يوميات	supplies (n)	مؤن
entry (n)	مَدْخَل مقدمة	well-defended (adj)	حصين - منيع
fire (ed) a gun	يطلق النار من بندقية	wind (n)	الرياح

Words and their definitions

- **cannon** : a large gun with wheels مدفع
- **contact** : communicate with someone or something يتواصل مع
- **defend** : protect someone or something from being attacked يدافع عن
- **supplies**: food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time مؤن / تجهيزات

II CHAPTER SIX IN POINTS

1. Dr Livesy went to the island with a man called Hunter to save Jim, but they found a fort by accident.
2. Dr Livesy came back to the ship and told Mr Trelawney and Captain Smollett about the fort.
3. They decided to take the foods and the guns to the fort and they threatened Silver's men not to try to contact Silver or they would be dead.

4. Hunter and another man called Joyce helped Dr Livesy to take the food and the guns to the beach.
5. Dr Livesy came back to take the rest of the food and the weapons to the fort.
6. Mr Trelwaney and the rest of the men climbed into the boat which became heavy and slow and the journey was very difficult.
7. Silver's men who were on the ship prepared the cannon, but Mr Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.
8. Mr Trelawney and his men managed to get to the fort. The pirates were surprised when they saw the fort and there was fire and Redruth was shot.
9. Jim managed to get to the fort with his friends.

III TEXT OF CHAPTER SIX

Dr Livesy :

1

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried about him.

Suggested Questions

1 Why do you think the writer choose Dr Livesy to narrate chapter six?

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small **fort**. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very **well defended**. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the Hispaniola. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my **plan**. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to **contact** Silver, you will be dead." 2

Suggested Questions

2 What language did Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawny use with the six men on the ship?

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the Hispaniola.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an **advantage**. On the Hispaniola, Trelawney helped me to put food and more **weapons** into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us 3.

Suggested Questions

3 Why do you think the six men on the ship did not attack Dr Livesy and Captain Smollett at the beginning?

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and **supplies** now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to **prevent** the boat from **sinking**. The **wind blew** from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.

"We must **keep in this direction**," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The **cannon** !" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us 4.

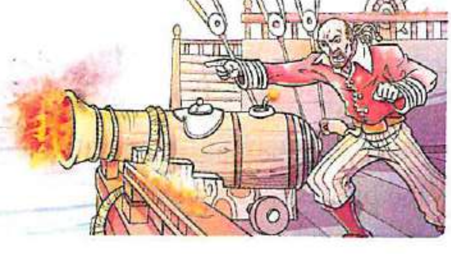
Suggested Questions

4 How did Mr Trelawney prove to be brave?

Trelawney stood up with a gun and **fired at** the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollet. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."



"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us." "It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a **race** to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three **feet** of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, **including** some of our guns 5.

Suggested Questions

5 Mr Trelawney's second shot when he was on the boat had a negative result. Discuss.

There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to **get to** the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another **gun fire**, and poor Redruth fell down. We quickly **picked** him **up** and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good **servant** to him.

Captain Smollett **put up a flag** inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.



"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit. "They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should **take it down**."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!" 6.

Suggested Questions

6 What message did Captain Smollett want to send through putting a flag in the fort?

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!

IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1 Longman website questions :
أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

1. What might have happened if Dr Livesy, Smollett and Mr Trelawney had taken the ship and run away?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو أن الدكتور «ليفيسي» و «سموليت» والسيد «تريلاوني» أخذوا السفينة وهربوا بعيدًا؟

- Jim, Silver and the other men might have been trapped on the island.

- ربما يكون «جيم» و «سيلفر» والرجال الآخرون محاصرين في الجزيرة.

2. What would you take with you if you went on an adventure by sea? Why?

- ماذا ستأخذ معك إذا ذهبت في مغامرة عبر البحر؟ لماذا؟

- I would take enough food, water, some medicine, clothes and guns.

- سآخذ ما يكفي من الطعام والماء وبعض الأدوية والملابس والأسلحة.

3. If you were in Captain Smollett's place, would you choose the fort to go to? Why?

- لو كنت مكان الكابتن «سموليت»، هل ستختار الحصن لتذهب إليه؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. The fort provided shelter and it was well-defended.

- نعم سأفعل. كان الحصن يوفر المأوى وكان محميًا جيدًا.

4. What do you think might have happened if Silver's men had had guns when they were on the ship?

- في رأيك، ما الذي كان سيحدث لو كان رجال «سيلفر» يحملون بنادق عندما كانوا على متن السفينة؟

- They might have fired at Mr Trelawny's group when they were on the boat.

- ربما أطلقوا النار على مجموعة السيد تريلاوني عندما كانوا على متن القارب.

5. Do you think Dr Livesy, Smollett and Mr Trelawney should have taken more supplies? Why?

- هل تعتقد أنه كان ينبغي على الدكتور «ليفيسي» و «سموليت» والسيد «تريلاوني» أخذ المزيد من الإمدادات؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. That would be too much for the boat.

- لا، لا أعتقد ذلك. سيكون ذلك كثيرًا بالنسبة للقارب.

6. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort?

- برأيك، لماذا رفع الكابتن «سموليت» علمًا داخل الحصن؟

- I think he wanted to show that they were not afraid of the pirates.

- أعتقد أنه أراد أن يظهر أنهم ليسوا خائفين من القراصنة.

2 SB, EL-Moasser & Previous Exams:

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

1. Coincidence gave Dr Livesy and Hunter another advantage over the pirates. Discuss.

- منحت الصدفة الدكتور «ليفيسي» و «هنتر» ميزة أخرى على القراصنة. ناقش.

- They found a well-defended fort.

- لقد وجدوا حصنًا محميًا جيدًا.

2. How was the fort an advantage?

- كيف كان الحصن ميزة؟

- It was big enough for 25 people. It was well defended. It also had water.

- كان كبيراً بما يكفي لـ (٢٥) شخصًا. لقد كان جيد التحصين.

3. Whose shout do you think Dr Livesy heard on his first visit to the island? How do you know?

- برأيك، من الذي سمع الدكتور «ليفيسي» صرخته في زيارته الأولى للجزيرة؟ كيف علمت بذلك؟

- I think it was either Alan's or Tom's shout. They were killed by Silver and his men nearly at that time.

- أعتقد أنها كانت صرخة «آلان» أو «توم» الذين قُتلوا على يد «سيلفر» ورجاله في ذلك الوقت تقريبًا.

4. What would have happened if the pirates managed to reach the beach before Dr Livesy's boat reached it?

- ماذا كان سيحدث لو تمكن القراصنة من الوصول إلى الشاطئ قبل أن يصل إليه قارب الدكتور «ليفيسي»؟

- They would have attacked Dr Livesy's boat in the water. They would have taken the fort and the supplies.

- كانوا سيهاجمون قارب الدكتور «ليفيسي» في الماء. كانوا سيأخذون الحصن والإمدادات.

5. «We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead.» They looked very surprised. Why do you think the sailors were surprised? *(WB)*

- لدينا أسلحة. إذا حاولت الاتصال بـ «سيلفر»، فسوف تموت.» بدوا مندهشين للغاية. برأيك، لماذا تفاجأ أن البحارة ؟

- The sailors didn't think that Captain Smollett and his men knew anything about Silver's plan.

- لم يعتقد البحارة أن القبطان «سموليت» ورجاله يعرفون أي شيء عن خطة «سيلفر».

6. «Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive.» Why is their journey to the beach in a small boat difficult? *(WB)*

-«اجتهدوا، واصبروا، وسوف نصل». لماذا كانت رحلتهم إلى الشاطئ في قارب صغير صعبة؟

- It is difficult for them to sail the boat. Pirates are chasing them and the men on the ship want to fire cannons at them.

- كان صعباً عليهم الإبحار بالقارب، وكان القراصنة يطاردونهم والرجال الموجودون على السفينة يريدون إطلاق المدافع عليهم.

7. 'It's a race to get there first', what does "there" refer to? Why is it important to get there first? *(SB)*

- «إنه سباق للوصول إلى هناك أولاً»، إلى ماذا تشير كلمة «هناك»؟ لماذا من المهم الوصول إلى هناك أولاً؟

- The fort. The fort provides shelter and it was also well defended. That would give them an advantage over the pirates.

- الحصن. يوفر الحصن المأوى كما أنه جيد التحصين. وهذا من شأنه أن يمنحهم ميزة على القراصنة.

8. What was Smollett's advice to them at the beginning of the journey? Was it good advice? *(SB)*

- ما هي نصيحة «سموليت» لهم في بداية الرحلة؟ هل كانت نصيحة جيدة؟

- Smollett's advice was to keep their guns. Yes, it was good advice because it saved them.

- كانت نصيحة «سموليت» هي الاحتفاظ بأسلحتهم. نعم، لقد كانت نصيحة جيدة لأنها أنقذتهم.

9. 'We'll never get to the beach!', Why was Dr Livesy and his group's final journey on the boat dangerous? Name three reasons. *(SB)*

- «لن نصل إلى الشاطئ أبدًا!»، لماذا كانت الرحلة الأخيرة للدكتور «ليفيسي» ومجموعته على متن القارب خطيرة؟ اذكر ثلاثة أسباب.

- Because the men on the Hispaniola wanted to fire the cannon at them. Some pirates were chasing them in a boat. The pirates on the beach and in the trees were also chasing them.

- لأن الرجال على متن «هيسبانيولا» أرادوا إطلاق المدفع عليهم. وكان بعض القراصنة يطاردونهم في قارب. وكان القراصنة على الشاطئ وبين الأشجار يطاردونهم أيضًا.

10. Silver was a two-faced man. Illustrate. (اسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- كان «سيلفر» رجلاً ذا وجهين. وضح ذلك.

- He pretended to be a good cook and helped Mr Trelawney find most of the crew of the ship. However, he was the leader of a group of pirates who planned to take the treasure for themselves.

- تظاهر بأنه طباخًا ماهرًا وساعد السيد «تريلاوني» في العثور على معظم طاقم السفينة. ومع ذلك، كان قائد مجموعة من القراصنة الذين خططوا للاستيلاء على الكنز لأنفسهم.

11. Why do you think Mr Trelawney and his men had an advantage over the pirates?
(اسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا تعتقد أن السيد «تريلاوني» ورجاله يتمتعون بميزة على القراصنة؟

- Because they had the map to the treasure and they had the fort.

- لأن لديهم خريطة الكنز ولديهم الحصن.

12. The men lost some of their supplies in the water. What do you think they feel about this?
(الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)

- فقد الرجال بعض مؤنهم في الماء. ما رأيك في شعورهم حيال هذا؟

- I think they were annoyed. These supplies were necessary.

- أعتقد أنهم كانوا منزعجين. كانت هذه الإمدادات ضرورية.

13. What do you think will happen next in the story? *(SB)*

- ما الذي تعتقد أنه سيحدث بعد ذلك في القصة؟

- I think there will be a violent conflict. However, I think Dr Livesy and his group will win and get the treasure.

- أعتقد أنه سيكون هناك صراع عنيف. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أن الدكتور «ليفيسي» ومجموعته سيفوزون ويحصلون على الكنز.

Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students:

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها :

1. Why was it difficult for Captain Smollett to take the ship after Silver and the men left to the island?

- لماذا كان من الصعب على الكابتن «سموليت» أن يستقل السفينة بعد أن غادر «سيلفر» والرجال إلى الجزيرة؟

- Because there was no wind.

- لأنه لم تكن هناك ريح.

2. Who took the first part of the supplies to the fort?

- من الذي أخذ الجزء الأول من المؤن إلى الحصن؟

- Dr Livesy and Hunter.

- دكتور «ليفيسي» و «هنتر».

3. What supplies did they take from the ship to the fort?

- ما هي المؤن التي أخذوها من السفينة إلى الحصن؟

- Food, medicines and guns.

- الغذاء والأدوية والبنادق.

4. Why did Dr Livesy think they would not reach the beach ?

- لماذا اعتقد الدكتور «ليفيسي» أنهم لن يصلوا إلى الشاطئ ؟

- Because the boat was slow. The pirates were running to the beach to reach it first.

- لأن القارب كان بطيئا، وكان القراصنة يركضون إلى الشاطئ للوصول إليه أولاً.

5. How did Mr Trelawny prove to be a good shooter?

- كيف أثبت السيد «تريلاوني» أنه رامي جيد؟

- From the boat, he shot and killed one of the six pirates who were preparing the canon.

- أطلق النار من القارب وقتل أحد القراصنة الستة الذين كانوا يعدون المدفع.

6. Why did they need the supplies that fell in the sea?

- لماذا احتاجوا إلى المؤن التي سقطت في البحر؟

- Because the supplies they had will be enough only until July.

- لأن الإمدادات المتوفرة لديهم ستكون كافية حتى شهر يوليو فقط.

7. What was Dr Livesy's plan? *(SB)*

- ما هي خطة الدكتور «ليفيسي»؟

- His plan was to move to the fort with their guns and supplies.

- كانت خطته هي الانتقال إلى الحصن بأسلحتهم وإمداداتهم.

8. Why does Dr Livesy decide to go to the fort? *(SB)*

- لماذا قرر الدكتور «ليفيسي» الذهاب إلى الحصن؟

- Because they can protect themselves in the fort.

- لأنهم يستطيعون حماية أنفسهم في الحصن.

9. «The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.» Why was it almost impossible to hit anyone? *(WB)*

- «استمر إطلاق النار، لكن كان من المستحيل تقريباً أن يصيبوا أي شخص داخل الحصن.»
لماذا كان من المستحيل تقريبا إصابة أي شخص؟

- Because the fort gave them protection.

- لأن الحصن وفر لهم الحماية.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Dr Livesy first went to the fort with a man called ....
   a. Alan   b. Tom   c. Joyce   d. Hunter
2. Dr Livesy was the first to find the ....
   a. Ben Gun   b. boat   c. fort   d. flag
3. The fort was wide enough for .... people.
   a. 52   b. 25   c. 15   d. 51
4. The six pirates on the ship tried to attack the boat using the ship's ....
   a. canon   b. sail   c. front   d. rows
5. .... was shot dead in the fort.
   a. Ben Gun   b. Silver   c. Redruth   d. Tom

Answers

1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. c

General Exercises On Chapter 6

✪ Answer the following questions :

A 1. Why do you think Dr Livesy took a boat to the shore ?
....

2. Why do you think Silver's men who were on the ship looked surprised when they knew that Captain Smollett and his friends had guns ?
....

3. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his friends told Silver's men on the ship that they had guns ?
....

B 1. Dr Livsey's journey to the beach was easier in the first time than in the second one. Explain.
....

2. To reach the beach quickly, Dr Livesy and his friends lost some of their supplies. How do you think that would affect them ?
....

3. What did Jim, the Captain and Mr Trelawney take from the ship ?
....

C 1. If you were one of the six men on the ship, how would you react to Dr Livesy's menacing language? Explain your reply.
....

2. If you were a member of Dr Livesy's team, how would you feel about finding the treasure?
....

3. How did the group feel when Jim appeared in front of the fort at the end of chapter 6?
....

D 1. The fort had some advantages. Discuss.
....

2. Do you think it was necessary for Dr Livesy to leave Hunter and Joyce at the fort? Why / Why not?
....

3. Why do you think the second journey to the island was more difficult than the first one?
....

E 1. Despite taking the weapons, the food supplies and the medicines, Mr Trelawney and his men were very worried. Discuss.
....

2. Despite comforting the other men, Captain Smollett was very worried. To what extent do you agree with that sentence? Why ?
....

3. Getting to the fort quickly was a turning point نقطة تحول in the men's fight against the pirates. Do you think this is true? Why / Why not?
....

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم ١٠٤ - ١٢ - ٢ - ٢٦٣



GUIDE

NEW Hello

QUESTION BANK

By A Group Of Supervisors

1st Sec.
2025
FIRST TERM
عـــام- أزهـــر

بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية
طبقًا لنواتج التعلم

الصـــف الأول الثانوى
الفصـــل الدراســى الأول

CONTENTS



PART ONE

SKILLS

1. Reading skill

How to answer a comprehension :

* كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :

قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (تبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :

لابد أن تقيس أسئلة قطعة الفهم المهارات التالية :

1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Topic الموضوع

- The topic / main idea of the passage is ....

= The text is mainly about ....

· موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هى ....

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟

- Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

· أى من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

Source المصدر

- This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from ....

· هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من ....

Title العنوان

- Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

· أى مما يلى يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟

Reference

- The underlined word / pronoun refers to .... الكلمة / الضمير الذى تحته خط يشير إلى

2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Synonym المعنى / المرادف

- In line ...., the word .... is closest in meaning to ....

· فى سطر رقم ....، كلمة .... أقرب ما يكون فى المعنى لـ ....

- The underlined word .... gives the meaning of ....

· الكلمة التى تحتها خط .... تعطى معنى ....

- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to .... ?

· أى مما يلى مرادف فى المعنى لـ ....؟

- The word .... in the passage gives the synonym of ....

· كلمة .... فى النص تعطى مرادف ....

Antonym التضاد / العكس

- In the .... paragraph, the word .... is the antonym of ....

· فى الفقرة رقم ....، كلمة .... مضاد لـ ....

- The word .... in the passage gives the opposite of ....

· كلمة .... في النص تعطى عكس ....

- Which of the following gives the antonym of .... ? · أى مما يلى مضاد فى المعنى لـ ....؟
- The word .... has two meanings in the passage. Explain.

· كلمة .... لها معنيين فى النص. وضح.

3 Understanding details and extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Yes / No questions	· أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد
Wh-questions	· أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

– أدوات وتعبيرات استفهامية هامة :

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	لِكَم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أى مدى
for whom	لأجل مَن	to whom	إلى مَن
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما لون
how far	كم بعد / لأى مدى	what size	ما حجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما وقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	أين
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	إلي أين
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أيّ
how often	كم مرة	who	من (فاعل أو مفعول عاقل)
how old	كم عمر	whom	مَن (مفعول عاقل)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لمن / ملك من
in / at which	في أيّ	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع مَن

ونماذج أخرى مثل :

True / Correct صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following are true EXCEPT ....

- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا ....

- Based on the passage, which of the following are true about .... ?

- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعَدُّ صحيحا فيما يخص .... ؟

False / incorrect خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT ....

- حسب ما ورد فى النص، فكل ما يلى خطأ ما عدا ....

- Based on the passage, what is probably UNTRUE about .... ?

- حسب ما ورد فى النص، أى مما يلى يُعَدُّ غير صحيح فيما يخص .... ؟

4 Critical Thinking Skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

عن أسئلة التفكير النقدى المرتبطة بقطع الفهم :

- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدى على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأى / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لابد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدى كما يلى :

١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال. ٢. منطقية أو عقلانية. ٣. صحيحة من الناحية اللغوية.

- نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدى :

١ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على الرأي الشخصي للطالب بخصوص الكاتب أوالأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :

- Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person? What showed this to you?

- هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير في السن؟ ما الذي أوحي إليك بذلك؟

- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?

- في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

٢ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على قياس القدرة علي التعبير عن اتفاق أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب :

- Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced /raised? Why / Why not?

- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب؟ لم / لم لا؟

- Does the writer's idea make sense to you? Why / Why not?

- هل فكرة الكاتب مفهومة لديك؟ لم / لم لا؟

٣ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :

- What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.

- ما رأيك فيما قاله الكاتب؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.

- How would you put .... into your own words? - كيف يمكنك صياغة .... بأسلوبك؟
- What do you think would be an example of .... ? - ماذا تعتقد أنه مثالًا لـ .... ؟

= Give an example of .... = Illustrate .... - اذكر مثالًا لـ .... / وضح ....

٤ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على أن يفترض الطالب أنه فى موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :

- If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).

- لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستتبنى نفس الرأى؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.

- What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why.

- ما الذى كنت (ستفعله) لو أنك فى مكان الكاتب؟ وضح السبب.

- If .... hadn't ...., what do you think would have happened?

٥ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على تقييم عرض الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا :

- Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail.

- هل نجح الكاتب في توضيح أفكاره؟ وضح وجهة نظرك بالتفصيل.

- Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas?

- هل أسلوب الكاتب مناسب للموضوع؟ كيف طوّر أفكاره؟

٦ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على تخيل ردود أفعال فئات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

- How do you think poor people / patients would view these ....? Illustrate.

- فى رأيك، كيف سيكون رأى الفقراء / المرضى تجاه ذلك ....؟ وضح.

- How would people who differ in age or gender react to ....?

- كيف سيكون رد فعل الناس الذين يختلفون فى العمر أو الجنس تجاه ....؟

٧ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على التعبير عن المغزى أو الدروس المستفادة أو القيم الموجودة بالنص :

- How can you make use of (benefit from) ....? - كيف يمكنك أن تستفيد من ....؟
- How could .... be put into practice? - كيف يمكن تطبيق ....؟
- What is the moral of the story? - ما المغزى الأخلاقى للقصة؟

Vocabulary used in Reading comprehension questions :

مفردات شائعة الاستخدام فى الأسئلة المرتبطة بقطع الفهم

- لابد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نَص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدى إلى
according to	طبقًا لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	يوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	يدعم بالدليل	moral	مغزى أخلاقي
based on	قائم على	moralities	قيم أخلاقية
be against	يعارض	opinion	رأى
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بخلاف / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
claim	يدعى / يزعم	passage	قطعة القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصَنِّف	point of view	رأي / وجهة نظر
comment	يعلق / تعليق	practical	عملى
core	جوهر / لب	predict	يتنبأ
demerits = disadvantages	عيوب	principle	مبدأ
		pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
discuss	يناقش	quality	سمة / ميزة
effect	أثر / تأثير	rather than	بدلًا من
equal	مساوي	reject	يعارض / يرفض
equivalent	مرادف	result in	يؤدي إلى
essay	مقال	short for	اختصار لـ
essence	جوهر / لب	simplify	يُبَسِّط
example	مثال	state	يَذْكُر
explain	يشرح / يفسر	summarise	يُلَخِّص
express	يعبر عن	support	يدعم
extra	إضافي / آخر	synonym	مُرادِف
impact	انطباع / أثر	underlined	تحته خط
impression	انطباع / تأثير	value	قيمة
introduce	يطرح / يقدم	writer	كاتب

General Exercises on Reading skill

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

The natural world around us is really terrific. It is full of obvious and ambiguous objects. One of the most amazing things that we cannot do without is the trees. Why are trees important? A simple answer to this question is that trees give us wood which we use for making furniture and many other things. However, this answer is traditional and very limited. In the past, trees had several benefits. They supplied people with wood for building and heating. They also provided people with cool shade by the sides of the roads and in the fields. In the modern world, trees are even more important. They are the main ingredients in thousands of products.

Paper is one of the most significant wood products. Rubber is also made from some kinds of trees. In addition, some kinds of ice cream and toothpaste are made from wood. Turpentine is one of the main chemicals which are made from wood.

Scientifically, trees help the earth to breathe. They take in carbon dioxide and release oxygen. This helps to purify the **contaminated** air which affects our health badly. Botanists say that the tallest tree in the world is the Giant Sequoia. It is in California. It is 83.8 meters tall. It is between 2.300 and 2.700 years old.

1. Giant Sequoia which is the tallest tree in the world is ....
   a. more than 2.700 years old. b. more than 83.8 kilometers tall.
   c. less than 2.300 years old. d. about eighty-four meters tall.
2. .... is one of the basic chemicals which are made from wood.
   a. Rubber b. Oxygen c. Turpentine d. Heat
3. The underlined word "**contaminated**" gives the same meaning of ....
   a. positioned b. fast c. polluted d. clean
4. Which of the following is NOT a benefit of trees?
   a. They supply people with wood. b. They help the earth to breathe.
   c. They give us light. d. They provide people with cool shade.
5. Which one of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage about the use of wood?
   a. Making paper. b. Making us warm.
   c. Making toothpaste. d. Making medicines.
6. The best title of the passage is "...........".
   a. The importance of trees b. Trees and shade
   c. The tallest tree in the world d. Toothpaste and wood
7. The second paragraph of the passage talks about ....
   a. the use of wood in the past b. trees purify air
   c. modern products made from wood d. the price of wood

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (الدقهلية – تمي الامديد ٢٠٢٣)

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern اهتمام about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming الاحتباس الحراري. Desertification التصحر also leads to warmer temperatures. The hazard تهديد of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.

Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of **its** withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the **ecological** balance; therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the "methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth, 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans, air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

1. Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.
   a. clearing　b. planting　c. irrigating　d. spraying
2. The underlined word **"its"** refers to ....
   a. desertification　b. global warming
   c. carbon dioxide　d. the environment
3. Scientists recommend .... fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.
   a. using　b. misusing　c. reducing　d. reusing
4. Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.
   a. causes of　b. results of　c. leads to　d. results from
5. The synonym of the underlined word **"ecological"** is ....
   a. environmental　b. biological　c. chemical　d. material
6. According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of global warming.
   a. will face　b. faced
   c. have never faced　d. are already facing
7. The best title for this passage is "............".
   a. National Disasters　b. Global Disasters
   c. Trees and Nature　d. Anthropogenic Activities

3. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (دمياط - الزرقا ٢٠٢٣)

Should we work all the time without having rest or entertainment ? The answer is that we can't go on working without stopping. From time to time, we should stop to have some rest and some **recreation** to have fun. If we didn't, we could make mistakes and our work might get worse.

An overworked person may end up by losing their ability to think clearly and by having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one way by which we can renew our energy. Sports and games are also important for brainworkers, who stay in closed offices and don't have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Swimming, walking and other outdoor activities are excellent and may be very good for all people, so we shouldn't waste our weekends. People make full use of them by being in open spaces. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and his work.

Only clever people are those who can make a balance between their work and their personal lives. They are hardworking when they do their jobs and they live the happiest moments when they aren't working.

1. The best title for the passage is ....
   a. Happy Moments b. Magical Energy c. Importance of Rest d. Importance of Games
2. The underlined word "**recreation**" in the first paragraph means ....
   a. effort b. health c. stress d. relaxation
3. The writer's purpose in the last paragraph is to ....
   a. suggest doing our jobs in the open air b. tell us the story of hardworking people
   c. warn us of living happily without work d. advise us to make a life-work balance
4. According to the second paragraph, we understand that man's health improves by ....
   a. changing our sleeping habits b. thinking of the worries of life
   c. having a break every now and then d. working all the time without rest
5. All the following are examples of brainworkers except ....
   a. mathematicians b. cleaners c. surgeons d. engineers
6. According to the passage, change has ....
   a. a vital effect on health and work b. no effect on health or work
   c. an essential effect on health only d. an important effect on work only
7. An overworked person has a .... attitude towards work in the long run.
   a. positive b. violent c. aggressive d. negative

4. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

In Egypt, the tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income. In some European countries, tourism has brought in billions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attractions we have in Egypt. We could, for instance, establish tourist villages for children on the Red Sea. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village in the New Valley for horse riding. And what about villages for people with health problems like rheumatism? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would certainly help them get better.

Our tourist today wants efficient and friendly service. He would probably prefer to try our samples of our local food rather than eat the international **meals**, which are served in some places. It must also be remembered that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hardworking employees. So, what is needed is not expensive hotels, but clean and comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices. This, too, would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their lovely country.

1. The writer feels that Egypt has got .... the other countries which make so much money from tourism.
   a. less attractions than c. the same attractions as
   b. the least attractions of d. more attractions than
2. According to the writer, if someone has pains in their muscles and joints, they should go to ....
   a. Europe b. Aswan c. The Red Sea d. The New Valley
3. Most tourists nowadays are ....
   a. rich b. poor c. miserable d. wretched
4. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a. Tourism industry b. Encouraging tourism
   c. How to encourage tourism in Egypt d. Egypt is a piece-loving country
5. The prices should be .... to encourage tourism locally.
   a. affordable b. unreachable c. unreasonable d. high
6. The underlined word "**meals**" can be replaced by ....
   a. eats b. dishes c. fruits d. services
7. We can teach .... in the New Valley.
   a. swimming b. fishing c. horse riding d. gambling

5. Read the following passage, then Choose the correct answer. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)

Everyone should watch out for symptoms of stress. Here are a few more obvious **swings**: You might lose interest in things you usually enjoy. Perhaps you can't concentrate. Maybe you have mood swings. (A mood swing is a sudden, big change in the way you feel). In the morning you feel great, for example. But by evening, your emotions have crashed and you feel that life isn't worth living. There are many causes of stress. A few of them are a divorce or death in the family, a move to a new home, or peer pressure. Other causes might be the doing poorly in school, or doing something you know is wrong.

The best way to deal with stress is to get to the heart of the problem. Figure out what's really bothering you and then take steps to solve the problem. For example, suppose you feel pressure from your friends. Maybe they want you to do something you don't want to do.
As hard as it may be, the best solution is to tell them "No!" You may need to find friends who don't push you in the wrong direction. You can't, of course, avoid all stress. But you can take a break from it.

Playing video games, watching a movie, or listening to music can ease your tension. Physical activities such as walking or sports can help, too. Sometimes, taking a break can clear your mind. If you think about your problems later, maybe you can come up with answers. Talking to a trusted friend can help. Even if he or she doesn't have the answers, it helps to express what's bothering you. Avoid drugs and alcohol, though they may seem to offer an easy escape from problems. But sooner or later, they become problems, too.

1. One of these is not a symptom of stress: ....
   a. You no longer enjoy watching football matches.
   b. For two days, you have been unable to sleep until early morning.
   c. Your team wins an important tournament.
   d. You get a stomachache, every time you are to blame for something.
2. One of these words is the synonym of the word "swings" in the passage: ....
   a. solution b. signals c. changes d. effects
3. Choose an activity that might provide relief from stress: ....
   a. driving in rush-hour traffic b. watching a funny movie
   c. making fun of someone d. not listening to some songs
4. Every little thing seems to make you angry. Maybe you're ....
   a. stressed about something b. not eating well
   c. just like everyone else d. going for a picnic
5. According to the passage, mood swings happen when ....
   a. your friends ask you to do something dangerous.
   b. you get to the heart of the problem.
   c. you lose interest in something you enjoy.
   d. you have contradictory feelings all day long.
6. Your friends urge you to do something dangerous. This is ....
   a. worth a try b. peer pressure
   c. reasonable advice d. relief from pressure
7. Taking drugs when you are stressed ....
   a. eliminates your problem entirely.
   b. is a permanent solution to your problem.
   c. is a temporary solution which will turn to be a problem.
   d. has no passive effect on you.

6. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer :

Everything has its pros and cons. Humans are always advised to make the best use of the best things about something and avoid the bad ones that come out of it. Everything in our world can be useful or harmful according to the way we use them. A knife is certainly

useful because we use it for cutting or chopping things, but it is harmful in the hands of a child or a mad man. Fire is necessary for us because it gives us heat and light and helps us cook our food, however it can be the cause of death and destruction if it is used carelessly. On the other hand, poison, which is certainly harmful, can be helpful when it is used, for example in treating a sick man.

The way in which we deal with everything around us is connected with our personality **traits**. We are either good people or bad people and our character **determines** our behaviour towards things and people. We can make good use of anything, if we ourselves are good. In the hands of a bad person, everything is bad and destructive. On the contrary, in the hands of a good person everything is good and useful. Money which can be spent on making guns, bombs and poisonous gases, can be spent on useful purposes such as reclaiming the desert, building new cities, treating sick people and so on. So, the only way to make life better is to make ourselves better. The world around us is nothing but a mirror in which we see ourselves.

1. What do you think the underlined word "**traits**" means?
   a. Demerits b. Drawbacks c. Qualities d. Disadvantages
2. What do things look like with a bad person?
   a. They are constructive b. They are destructive
   c. They are beneficial d. They are very useful
3. What makes us deal well or badly with things?
   a. Our own character b. The demerits of things
   c. The things themselves d. The merits of things
4. What happens when we use fire in a careless way?
   a. It improves our life b. It ruins things
   c. It benefits our life d. It makes our life better
5. We can make the good use of money if it isn't spent on ....
   a. making guns and bombs b. reclaiming the desert
   c. useful purposes d. treating sick people
6. The best title for the passage is ....
   a. How to spend money b. How to deal with bad things
   c. How to use the knife better d. How to make the world better
7. The synonym of the underlined word "**determines**" is ....
   a. recognizes b. decides c. prepares d. arranges

PART ONE

SKILLS

2. Writing Skill

Forms of composition you have to master for the exam الصيغ التعبيرية التى يجب أن تجيد كتابتها للامتحان

عزيزى الطالب / عزيزتى الطالبة :

- لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية فى نظام التقويم الجديد، وعلى الطالب أن ينمى هذه المهارة ليصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعدًا للكتابة عن أى موضوع ، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة جميع الصيغ التالية :

1. A narrative essay /short story — مقال سردى أو قصة قصيرة
2. A descriptive essay — مقال وصفى
3. A comparative/argumentative essay — مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف) / مقال جدلى

- Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation cards, a book review or brochure.

صيغ مختلفة مثل: رسالة البريد الإلكترونى الرسمية وغير الرسمية - وصف الوظائف -وصفات الطهى - الخطابات - بطاقات الدعوة - عرض نقدي لكتاب - نشرة ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائى؟

- كتابة حوالى (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد الصيغ (مقال - قصة ...)
- يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه
- يتم صياغة رأس الموضوع على شكل:
  - عبارة قد تحتوى علي العنوان المطلوب مباشرة
  - حكمة أو قول مأثور يتخذه الطالب محورًا أساسيًا لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائى
  - سؤال مباشر

أمثلة :

Write about 150 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."
- An essay or short story about the statement: "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

- وفيما يلى سيتم عرض مبسّط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعبيرية وهى :

1. Essay writing — كتابة المقال
2. Short story writing — كتابة القصة القصيرة

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay) ؟

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بفكرة معينة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة فرعية متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفضّل أن يحتوى المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

- إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال:

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

- من حيث الشكل Form
  - تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
  - ترك مسافة صغيرة (1 سم تقريبًا) فى بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
  - لابد أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف (Capital).
  - وضع نقطة (.) فى نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) فى نهاية السؤال.
- من حيث المضمون Content
  - يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التى تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
  - من المهم جدًا أن تلتزم بالحديث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بموضوعية وبساطة.
  - ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أى جملة رئيسية تحتوى على الفكرة التى تناقشها الفقرة.
  - لابد من تنويع بدايات الجمل.
  - استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
  - استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع فى أخطاء أنت فى غنى عنها.

The Form of the Essay الشكل العام للمقال

Title العنوان

Education and Technology

Introduction المقدمة

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

Body الجزء الأساسى

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive تفاعلى and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. Most exams will be done online. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

Conclusion الخاتمة

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

Identation المسافة البادئة فى أول كل فقرة

The main parts of the essay الأجزاء الرئيسية للمقال

(1) Introduction : المقدمة

- هي الفقرة الأولي في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع، وكيف سيتم تسلسل وعرض الأفكار.

- هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ بها فقرة المقدمة مثل :

١ جملة عامة تعبر بها عن الفكرة التي يدور حولها الموضوع :

مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن تبدأ كالتالي:

- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعليم الطلاب وحياتهم الخاصة على السواء.

Or :

- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.

- جميعنا ندين بالكثير لمعلمينا وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

٢ حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.

- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل ويشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

٣ جملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.

- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

٤ سؤال عام يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع :

- What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صياغة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التى تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- We all agree that … is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

- نتفق جميعًا أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء فى حياتنا وله دورًا حيويًا هذه الأيام.

- We all admit the importance and necessity of … in our life.

- كلنا نقر بأهمية وضرورة... فى حياتنا.

- No wonder if we say that … has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.

- لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعًا.

- We all agree that …. is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.

- كلنا نتفق أن ... ضرورى جدًا ويلعب دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا.

- We should put into consideration that … has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.

- يجب أن نضع فى الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحدًا من أهم الأشياء فى حياة كل شخص.

- In my opinion, … is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because … may bring all the good to our society.

- في رأيي ... هو حقا مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعًا وإنني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعنا.

- No one can deny that … plays a very important role in our life.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا.

- There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

- لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيرًا بالغًا علينا.

* لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم جمع يراعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل.

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التى تصلح لموضوعات المقالات السلبية

- In my opinion, … is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because … may bring evils to our society.

- من وجهة نظري ... خطير وضار هذه الأيام، وقد يكون له آثار سيئة وسلبية علينا جميعا. وانني اعتقد ذلك لان ... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعنا.

- There is no doubt that … is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

- مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له اثاره السيئة والسلبية في وقتنا هذا.

- Frankly speaking, … is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.

- بصراحة أقول أن ... واحدا من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا. وعلى هذا فان دولتنا لا تدخر جهدا لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

(2) Body : متن الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسى)

- لكى يكون المقال الذى تكتبه معبرًا ومفهومًا ومؤثرًا، عليك بمراعاة ما يلى :

١. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات جيدًا واختر أفضلهم وأسهلهم بالنسبة لك.
٢. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب.
٣. لابد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار.
٤. تحدث عن كل فكرة فى فقرة مستقلة.
٥. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.
٦. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هواياتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).
٧. يجب تنويع بدايات الجمل، ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يناسب من العبارات التالية فى بدايات الجمل :

- Everyone knows that + جملة	- يعرف الجميع أن ....
- I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة	- لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ....
- I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة	- لا أفشى سرًا عندما أقول أن ....
- It can't be denied that + جملة	- لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ....
- It goes without saying that + جملة	- غنى عن البيان أن ....
- It is crystal clear that + جملة	- من الواضح تماما أن ...
- It is known that + جملة	- من المعروف ان ...
- It is taken for granted that + جملة	- من المسلم به ان ...
- There is no doubt that + جملة	- مما لا شك فيه ...

٨. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :

- I think / believe that ... اعتقد أن
- In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظرى
- As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمى

٩. عندما تريد أن تعطى مثالًا ابدأ جملتك بـ :

- For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال

(3) Conclusion : الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

- غالبًا ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصًا (summary) للأفكار التى تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التى وصلت إليها.
- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأى أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التى يمكن استخدامها فى الفقرات الختامية للمقال

- Finally, it is quite clear that ...(الموضوع) ... is really...(صفة).
  - أخيرًا، من الواضح أن ... فعلًا ...
- I can end my speech saying that...
  - يمكنلى أن أنهى حديثى بالقول أن ...
- In brief, I think that ... is really ...
  - باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقًا ...
- In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear.
  - في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطرقت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحًا.
- To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.
  - ختامًا، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتى كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.
- To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...
  - الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلًا ...

2 Short Story writing كتابة القصة القصيرة

- ما الفرق بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن عرض أو نقاش لفكرة رئيسية عن طريق تقسيمها لمجموعة أفكار جزئية، ويكون العرض موضوعي ومباشر.
- القصة القصيرة (Short story) عبارة عن وصف لموقف معين أو سرد لأحداث معينة.
- للقصة عناصر معينة مثل : الحبكة - الشخصيات - المكان والزمان - الحوار - المغزي الأخلاقي ... إلخ.

- ما أوجه التشابه بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- التشابه فقط يكون في استخدام اللغة، فالقصة مثل المقال تنقسم إلي فقرات (Paragraphs) يتناول كل منها فكرة معينة.
- القصة المطلوبة في نفس حجم المقال حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة.
- لابد من استخدام لغة بسيطة واضحة.
- يجب مراعاة التسلسل الزمني للأحداث.
- لابد من مراعاة علامات الترقيم.

إرشادات هامة لكتابة القصة القصيرة :

- عند كتابة كل قصة قصيرة، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج القصة بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون :

(1) Plot حبكة القصة (الأحداث)

- وهى الأسلوب المُحكَم الذي يتم به عرض الأحداث وتصاعدها وصولًا لذروة الموقف حتى الوصول للنهاية .

(2) Setting المكان والزمان

- لابد من تحديد المدى الزمنى والمكان الذى تدور فيه الأحداث.

(3) Characters الشخصيات

- يجب الاهتمام بعرض وتطوير الشخصيات حتى تبدو حقيقية بالنسبة للقارئ، فالشخصيات هى التى تقوم بالأحداث فى القصة ولابد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث.

(4) Narrating السرد

- يجب الاهتمام بأسلوب الكتابة، واستخدام الجمل القصيرة يعطى تشويقًا ويجعل تسلسل الأحداث أكثر وضوحًا.

(5) Moral المغزى الأخلاقى

- لابد أن يكون للقصة مغزى أخلاقى أو درس مستفاد يخرج به القارئ.

Short Story Model نموذج للقصة القصيرة

A situation of great fear

I lived in a small village where most farmers kept dogs to guard their animals and farms. They regarded اعتبروا dogs as a kind of danger alarm إنذار بالخطر at night because dogs barked كانت تنبح when they saw strangers in the streets. When farmers heard dogs' barking at night, they got ready to face the expected danger.

I was a young boy of about five when this situation took place. حدث My uncle, who was a young man then, asked me to go with him to the farm. My father didn't want me to go but when I started to cry, he allowed me to go.

There on the farm, my uncle was busy doing some jobs here and there. I wandered around the field. I didn't realise that I had gone far away from my uncle.

Suddenly, I found myself face to face with a party مجموعة of five large dogs. They all looked at me in a frightening way, their mouths were open and their tongues were hanging out.

I turned around and started to run. Fear made my legs weak. I was breathless and had no power to run. In seconds I was on the ground and the dogs surrounded me. I felt it was the end.

I was saved by a farmer who was in a nearby field. He carried me home where he told my father what had happened. I have never liked dogs since then.

General Exercises on Writing skill

*** Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

1. The advantages and disadvantage of living in a big city (أسوان ٢٠٢٤)

....

2. The role of charities in the society (إدفو ٢٠٢٤)

....

3. Your long-term goal in life and your plans to achieve it (دراو ٢٠٢٤)

....

4. Friendship (القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

....

5. How to spend our spare time in a useful way (أسيوط ٢٠٢٤)

....

PART ONE

SKILLS | 3. Translation

السادة معلمى اللغة الإنجليزية، أبنائنا وبناتنا طلبة و طالبات المرحلة الثانوية :

نقدم لكم هذا الجهد المتواضع "El-Moasser Translation Guide" كإسهام بسيط منا للقضاء نهائيا علي مشكلة الترجمة بالنسبة لأبنائنا في المرحلة الثانوية، وذلك باستخدام أسلوب السؤال و الإجابة الوافية السلسة البسيطة في عرض المادة العلمية الخاصة بكيفية الترجمة ، وقد تم تقسيم المادة العلمية في هذا الدليل إلى عدد من الحصص ، و في كل حصة نتناول جزئية محددة ثم نعقبها بتدريبات مُتعلقة بما تم عرضه في الحصة.

تنويه : كل مجموعة تدريبات يتبعها جدول مرتب أبجديا للمفردات الهامة للطالب، كما يوجد جدول لبعض التعبيرات الهامة في نهاية هذا الجزء.

Introduction | Expressing the sense of (words or text) ترجمة المعنى

السؤال : هل المقصود بالترجمة ترجمة الكلمات الموجودة بالجملة حرفيًا ؟

بالطبع لا ، فالترجمة تعني نقل المعني من لغة إلى أخرى دون التقيد بالألفاظ ، لاحظ ترجمة الجملة التالية:

- Diamond cuts diamond

الماس يقطع الماس.

هذه ترجمة حرفية ولا تؤدي معني المقولة الإنجليزية ، لكن إذا أردنا أن نترجم بشكل صحيح فنقول-لا يفل الحديد إلا الحديد :

- It's raining cats and dogs.

إنها تمطر بغزارة.

ولكي تترجم بشكل صحيح عليك بمراعاة ما يلى :

(أ) اقرأ النص الذي تريد أن تترجمه بالكامل لكي تفهم الفكرة العامة له.

(ب) لا تترجم الكلمات كمعاني مستقلة ، لكن حسب استخدامها في السياق ، لاحظ كيف تترجم الجملة التالية:

- The teacher asks me to use my right hand to draw a right angle right now.

لاحظ تكرار كلمة "right" ثلاث مرات بثلاث معان مختلفة :

- right hand اليد اليمنى - right angle زاوية قائمة - right now الآن على الفور

وهكذا تكون ترجمة الجملة كالتالي: «يطلب مني المعلم أن أستخدم يدي اليمني لأرسم زاوية قائمة الآن على الفور».

(ج) اقرأ النص الذي قمت بترجمته ، هل فهمت نفس المعني الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المُترجم نفس الإحساس الذي يصل من النص الأصلي؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس المعني بنفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة.

Part I Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية

1 Starting the English Sentence كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية

السؤال : كيف أبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(أ) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفاعل:

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية.

- Dr Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذى ينوب عن الفاعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالى لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(ج) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالى :

يتكون الأمر المثبت في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

→ Inf. الفعل في المصدر + obj. مفعول + comp. تكملة

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل على قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" فى بداية جملة الأمر المثبت لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : دومًا ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفى (النهى) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

→ Don't + inf. الفعل في المصدر + obj. مفعول + comp. تكملة

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلًا من "Don't" فى بداية جملة النهى لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالا بـ «هـل»

ابدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الزمن:

- Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had

- Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought /Need / Dare ....

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فاعل إذا كان السؤال مبنيا للمعلوم :

مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لتشارلز ديكنز؟ (لاحظ الفعل فى زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أتمارس الرياضة بشكل يومى؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يوميًا ؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل فى صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنيا للمجهول :

مثال : هل شُرِحَ لك هذا الدرس بالأمس؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ(أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد المنفي:

مثال : ألست تتبع نظاما غذائيا؟ / أليس من عاداتك اتباع نظامًا غذائيًا ؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بمشاهدة الأفلام؟ (عادات فى الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالا بأداة استفهام إبدأ بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة حسب الزمن:

أي	Which	ما / ماذا	What
متى	When	أين	Where
من	Who	لماذا	Why
كم / كيف	How	لمن	Whose

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن تفعله لتحمي البيئة من التلوث؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه ظاهرة الغش في الامتحانات؟

- How can we fight exam cheating phenomenon ?

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. تعمل اختى مضيفة طيران وترتدى زياً خاصاً بالشركة التى تعمل بها.

....

٢. تُستخدم الأقمار الصناعية في اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن و البترول.

....

٣. فى كل عام يأتى السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل فى الشتاء.

....

٤. تُبنى المدارس والجامعات في كل المحافظات لتوفر تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.

....

٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش معًا فى حب وسلام.

....

٦. ساعد والديك و اعمل بجد.

....

٧. لا تُكثر من الطعام و لا تنسي ممارسة الرياضة.

....

٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.

....

٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.

....

١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟

....

١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة في وقت فراغك؟

....

١٢. أتغسل أسنانك بالفرشاة مرتين يوميا؟

....

١٣. كيف تمكّن قدماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟

....

١٤. لماذا تضيع وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟

....

١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعيا؟

....

Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	يضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

2 Tenses of Sentences أزمنة الجمل

السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمني المضارع و الماضي ، و يتم التعبير عن المستقبل

بـ «سوف / سـ + الفعل المضارع» ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمنا ،

فكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة؟

- تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة و معرفة استخدامات كل زمن و هذا متروك لدروس القواعد اللغوية ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التى قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة:

(أ) الجملة التى تدل علي حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يُوضع فعلها فى صيغة زمن المضارع البسيط (inf. / inf. + s, es, ies) :

مثال : المخ البشرى يتحكم فى كل شيء نقوم به.

- The human brain controls everything we do.

مثال : يتسلم الكُتّاب والعلماء جوائز قيّمة كل عام.

- Writers and scientists receive valuable prizes every year.

مثال : التعليم ليس غاية فى حد ذاته، إنما وسيلة تؤدى إلى غاية.

- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التى تدل علي حدث مستمر فى الوقت الحالى يُوضع فعلها فى صيغة زمن المضارع مستمر
: (am / is / are + inf. + ing)

مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهودا كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.

- Nowadays, the government is exerting great efforts to improve health and education.

(جـ) الجملة التى تدل علي خبرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير علي الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p.p.) بشرط عدم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتي الآن.

- Ahmed has won two gold medals so far.

- أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضى البسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل) :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.

- Ahmed won two gold medals last year.

(د) عادات الماضى يتم التعبير عنها كالتالى :

- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never .... التصريف الثانى

مثال : كان جدي أحيانا يأخذنا لزيارة أقاربنا في الريف.

- My grandfather sometimes took us to visit our relatives in the countryside.

(هـ) عادات الماضى التى تتوقف فى الحاضر :

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing

مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية بدراجتي الصغيرة.

- I used to go to primary school on my small bike.

مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل.

- My grandmother was used to making bread at home.

(و) الجملة التى تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي(غالبا تحتوي عل كلمة «كان + فعل مضارع») تُترجم إلى ماضي مستمر (was / were + inf. + ing) :

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه.

- Ahmed was playing football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التى تدل علي حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي نستخدم ماضي تام (had + p.p.) :

مثال : انتهي المُعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطى لنا بعض التدريبات.

- The teacher had finished explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التى تدل علي المستقبل (سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل) تُترجم الي الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing)

مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم.

- Huda is celebrating her fifth birthday next month.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامة فى كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.

....

٢. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب فى كثير من الأمراض.

....

٣. لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا فى إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

....

٤. أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي هاما للحصول علي وظيفة.

....

٥. في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا علي قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.

....

٦. فى بعض المنازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية فى تسخين المياه.

....

٧. قد قام السد العالى بحماية مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياه لوقت الحاجة.

....

٨. لن تتحقق أهدافك دون أن تعمل بجد.

....

٩. كنت عائدا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمتي في الشارع.

....

١٠. اعتادت جدتي أن تحكي لنا قصصا شيقة.

....

١١. أحاول جاهدا أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة.

....

Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهدًا	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مسألة / مشكلة	try hard	يحاول جاهدًا
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	ينشيء	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

3 Translating Adjectives and Adverbs كيفية ترجمة الصفات والظروف

السؤال : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟

(أ) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف علي عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ:

- interesting stories قصص شيقة - a beautiful girl فتاة جميلة - a clever boy ولد ماهر

مثال : العمل الجاد والخُلق الحسن من سمات الإنسان الناجح.

- Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person.

(ب) علي غير العادة، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف و ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكلمات التالية :

- something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone / everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere

- someone evil شخص ما شرير - something important شيء ما مهم

مثال : وضع أحمد شيء ما صغير الحجم في حقيبته.

- Ahmed put something small in his bag.

(ج) تأتي الصفة وبعدها موصوف أو بدون موصوف بعد أفعال مثل :

be - get يصبح - become يصبح - feel يشعر - taste له مذاق - smell له رائحة - sound يبدو - seem يبدو - look يبدو

مثال : لقد أصبح عجوزا / لقد أصبح رجلا عجوزا.

- He became old. / He became an old man.

(د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط نبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة، لاحظ:

- a famous rich man رجل ثرى مشهور.
- an intelligent young lady سيدة شابة ذكية.

مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة تُساعد أطفال الشوارع المشردين.

- Different charitable organisations help homeless street children.

(هـ) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا في الغالب نكتب الصفة الأولى أولا ثم الثانية، لاحظ:

- a rich and famous man رجل ثرى ومشهور.
- a young and beautiful lady سيدة شابة وذكية.

مثال : العمل الجاد والمستمر هو الخطوة الأولي نحو تحقيق هدفك في الحياة.

- Hard and continuous work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life.

(و) إذا وضعنا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يتبع الصفة اسم فنقصد بذلك كل من يتصفون بهذه الصفة.

- a blind man رجل كفيف - blind men رجال مكفوفين - The blind المكفوفين

مثال : ينبغى على الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.

- Rich people should help poor people.
- The rich should help the poor.

السؤال : وماذا عن الظرف؟ كيف يُترجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه فى الجملة ؟

(أ) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) ويمكن أن يأتي بعضها في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never ...

مثال : تحاول أمي دائما الحفاظ علي بيتنا نظيفًا و مُرتبًا.

- My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.
- Always my mother tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

مثال : غالبا ما أكون في عملي في الموعد المجدد.

- I am usually at my work in time.

(ب) ظروف الكيفية التى تدل على كيفية أو طريقة حدوث الفعل تأتى بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

مثال : أسير إلى مدرستي مسرعا.

- I walk quickly to my school.

مثال : من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية.

- It is your right to express your opinion freely.

(ج) ظروف الدرجة التالية تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة ، و توضع قبل الصفة مباشرة :

extremely للغاية / absolutely بشكل مُطلق / utterly كليا / completely تماما /
really حقا / very / so جدا / quite إلى حد ما / rather إلى حد ما

مثال : إنني فى الحقيقة غاضب جدا من ذلك الجار السيء.

- I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.

(د) في اللغة الانجليزية يُفضل ان يكون ظرف الزمان أو المكان إما في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها وذلك حسب المعنى :

مثال : أسافر إلى أوروبا مرتين كل صيف.

- I travel to Europe twice every summer.
- Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من اجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.

....

٢. العلم الحديث والتخطيط الجيد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.

....

٣. هبة تذهب إلى الفراش مبكرًا.

....

٤. يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزه الحاسب الآلى فى مدارسهم.

....

٥. يقدم العلماء شيء ما جديد كل يوم لخدمه البشرية.

....

٦. كان الجو حارا للغاية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.

....

٧. يجب أن تقود السيارة بحرص حتي تبقي بأمان.

....

٨. أحيانا أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

....

٩. المكفوفون يمكنهم التعلم و العمل.

....

١٠. الوجبات الصغيرة الخفيفة مفيدة للصحة.

....

١١. حصلت علي درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد و المستمر.

....

١٢. يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضبا بعد خسارة المباراة.

....

Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	الوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	البشرية	humanity	البشرية

4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (1)

السؤال : كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبنى للمجهول؟

(أ) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم كالتالى :

- **Subj.** فاعل **+ consider** (حسب الزمن) **+ that +** جملة **....**
- **Subj.** فاعل **+ regard** (حسب الزمن) **+ obj.** مفعول **+ as + noun ....**

مثال : تعتبر الحكومة التعليم استثمارًا فى مستقبل مصر.

- The government considers that education is an investment in the future of the country.
- The government regards education as an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يُعتبر) المبنى للمجهول كالتالى :

- **Obj.** مفعول **+ be** (حسب الزمن) **+ considered ....**
- **Subj.** فاعل **+ be** (حسب الزمن) **+ regarded + as + noun ....**

مثال : يُعتبر التعليم استثمارًا فى مستقبل مصر.

- Education is considered an investment in the future of Egypt.
- Education is regarded as an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحيانًا يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم)، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟

هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هى الأفعال الأساسية للجملة، وفى هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلى :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدى معنى (تحاول)، فنترجم الجملة كالتالى :

- All nations try to solve the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم مُعلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدرستنا بشرح الدروس جيدًا.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معني فيتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، وتُترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- The teachers of English in our school explain lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التى تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم علي التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معني ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :

- The problems which face students are solved to help them learn well.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

(أ) هناك الجمل الاسمية التى ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

- Hard work is your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة لـ (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن):

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

- Healthy food and sport are the keys to good health and happiness.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام المروري.

....

٢. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

....

٣. يعتبر أبي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيعة للوقت.

....

٤. تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين.

....

٥. التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقى لمستقبل أفضل.

....

٦. يُعتبر الدكتور الباز رمز من رموز العلم في كل أنحاء العالم.

....

٧. إن الإنترنت أضخم مكتبة في التاريخ.

....

٨. يقوم أبي بزيارة جدى في الريف كل شهر.

....

٩. إن زراعة الصحراء شيء ضرورى لتوفير الغذاء.

....

١٠. تقوم الحواس بإرسال رسائل إلى المخ.

....

Related Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	source	مصدر
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	symbol	رمز
president	الرئيس	traffic jam	الازدحام المروري

5 Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (٢)

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عندى / عنده / عندنا / لها / لهم ... إلخ) وليس بها فعل؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالى مع مراعاة زمن الجملة :

I have	عندى - لدى - لى - أملك	You have	عندكم - لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - لديه - له - يملك	We have	عندنا - لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - لها - تملك	They have	عندهم - لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لديه - لديها - له - لها	One has	للمرء - لدى المرء - يمتلك المرء
You have	عندك - لديك - لك - تملك		

مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات فى وقت فراغنا.

- We have a lot of interests in our free time.

مثال : كان لأبى دور كبير فى نجاحى.

- My father had a great role in my success.

مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير فى تقدم الوطن.

- Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (عليه / عليها / عليك / لابد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي ....إلخ) ؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب القاعدة التالية :

- Subj. فاعل + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf ....

مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.

- We should keep the environment clean.

مثال : لابد أن تُطيع والديك و تحترم مُعلميك.

- You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.

مثال : كان عليّ أن أراجع دروسي جيدا لأجتاز الإمتحان.

- I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسي / لعل / ليت) ؟

(أ) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.
- I hope + subj. + will + inf.
- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتني أقدر أن أساعدك.

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.
- I hope I will be able to help you.
- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضي فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...
- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتني ذاكرت جيدا العام الماضي.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I regret not studying hard last year.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(أ) نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

- standard of living	- living standard	مستوى المعيشة
- pollution of the air	- air pollution	تلوث الهواء
- the rate of birth	- birth rate	معدل المواليد

(ب) تستخدم ('s) الملكية غالبًا عندما يكون المضاف إليه عاقل أو اسم حيوان :

- My mother's house. ('s) ملكية مفرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربيه أطفالنا.

....

٢. تعمل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتنميه مواهبهم.

....

٣. يجب أن ننشيء الأطفال علي حب الوطن و احترام الوالدين.

....

٤. علينا ان نشارك بإيجابية فى تقدم وطننا.

....

٥. علينا أن نداوم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.

....

٦. يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.

....

٧. من الضرورى أن ننمى الاهتمام بالعلم لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.

....

٨. للعلماء دور هام فى إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.

....

٩. ليتني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.

....

١٠. للتليفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

....

Related Vocabulary

bringing up	تربية	positively	بإيجابية
conditions	ظروف	progress	تقدم
culture	ثقافة	share	نشارك
effective	مؤثر	society	المجتمع
generation	جيل	solutions	حلول
interest	اهتمام	talents	مواهب

6 Special Cases (3) حالات خاصة (٣)

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

(أ) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام فى حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضى :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة علي الماضي :

مثال : لقد إجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.

- My brother passed the driving test last week.

(جـ) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

مثال : لقد إجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.

- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف ونستخدم بدلًا منها زمن الماضى البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

(أ) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل ماضي) مثل (لقد) :

مثال : قد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة مؤخرا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :

مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غدا.

- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التى تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية غالبا ما تبدأ بـ (noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة؟

(أ) الجملة التى تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :

مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ علي البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.

- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.

(ب) كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم :

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولا لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية و الاجتماعية.

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كره القدم بمباراة هامة.

....

٢. لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الأماكن السياحية والطقس الرائع.

....

٣. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياه أطول.

....

٤. إن هوايتى المفضلة هى قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس.

....

٥. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء فى إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

....

٦. إن إهدار مياه النيل جريمة في حق الوطن.

....

٧. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غني عنها للحصول علي وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي.

....

٨. إن البحث العلمى وسيلة هامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أى أمة.

....

٩. إن زراعه الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

....

١٠. إن زيادة الإنتاج واجب وطنى لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان.

....

١١. لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

....

Related Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
against	فى حق / ضد	nation	أمة
co-operation	تعاون	national	وطنى / قومى
crime	جريمة	production	إنتاج
duty	واجب	research	بحث
fictional	خيالى	resources	موارد
grant (ed)	يهب	skills	مهارات
increasing	زيادة	wasting	إهدار
means	وسيلة		

7 Special Cases (4) حالات خاصة (٤)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التى تبدأ بـ (يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك .... الخ) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been / will be/ can be / must be .... + noun اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض.

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة.

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بدائل للبترول في المستقبل.

- There will be replacements for oil in the future.

مثال : لابد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء.

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التى بها (كلما ... كلما) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- The + صفة مقارنة **+ subj. + verb......+ the +** صفة مقارنة **+ subj. + verb .....**

مثال : كلما تمرنت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة.

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما تكون أكثر طولا كلما تستطيع أن تجري أسرع.

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل بفعل ؟

(أ) ضمير الفاعل المتصل بفعل يترجم ضمير فاعل (I - he - she - it - you - we - they)، لاحظ :

- We wrote كتبنا - She wrote كَتَبَتْ - I wrote كَتَبْتُ

مثال : زرت جدتى مع أخى واشترينا لها هدية.

- I and my brother visited my grandmother and bought her a present.

(ب) ضمير المفعول المتصل بفعل أو حرف جر يُترجم ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them):

مثال : سمعته يقول بعض المعلومات الهامة فاستمعت إليه بحرص.

- I heard him say something important, so I listened to him carefully.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل باسم ؟

الضمير المتصل بالاسم يُترجم إلى صفة ملكية (my - his - her - its - our - your - their - 's) لاحظ :

- our book كتابنا - her book كتابها - my book كتابى

مثال : يبذل جميع المواطنين ما بوسعهم من أجل وطنهم.

- All citizens do their best for their home.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. توجد بعض قواعد النظافة الشخصية التى يجب اتباعها لتجنب الأمراض.

....

٢. علمتنى الحياة ألا أحزن على ما ضاع منى لأنه ليس لى.

....

٣. كلما ساعدت الناس وقت الحاجة كلما شعرت بالسعادة.

....

٤. تحتاج الدولة جهودنا نحن الشباب لتحقيق التقدم.

....

Related Vocabulary

achievements	إنجازات	in need	وقت الحاجة
age	عصر	owe	يدين
for fun	من أجل المتعة	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة

8 Special Cases (5) حالات خاصة (٥)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التى تبدأ بـ (من + صفة) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- It is + adj. صفة + (for + فاعل أو ضمير مفعول) + to + inf. ....

مثال : من الجيد أن تقضي وقت فراغك بشكل مفيد.

- It is good (for you) to spend your free time in a useful way.

مثال : من الضروري أن يشارك الطلاب في الأنشطة المدرسية.

- It is necessary for students to take part in school activities.

السؤال : كيف أترجم المفعول المُطْلَق إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- بصفة عامة يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.

مثال : تتأثر الصحة تأثرا كبيرا بالتدخين.

- Health is greatly affected by smoking.

السؤال : هناك أيضًا الأعداد ، هل تُترجم أرقامًا حسابية أم حروفًا ؟

(أ) الاعداد من (1 - 9) تكتب هجائياً دائما ، أما إذا زاد عن ذلك فيكتب أرقامًا حسابية :

مثال : أرسلت دعوات الحفل لخمسين صديقًا لكن لم يحضره منهم إلا ثمانية.

- I sent the invitations of the party to 50 friends, but only eight of them attended it.

(ب) عندما تبدأ الجملة الانجليزية بذكر العدد فانه يكتب هجائيًا دائمًا :

مثال : وصل ثلاثون مسافرا إلى المحطة بعد أن غادر القطار.

- Thirty passengers arrived at the station after the train had left.

السؤال : وماذا عن حروف الجر ؟

- لحروف الجر استخدامات يعرفها الطالب بالتدريج من خلال دراسته للّغة ، و المهم هنا أن هناك بعض الأفعال التى لا تأخذ حرف جر مثل :

admire	يعجب بـ	include	يشتمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق بـ
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين بـ
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	pass	ينجح / يجتاز / يمر على
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognise	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ

مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة.

- Smoking affects health badly.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

1. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحذيرًا شديدًا من التدخين.

....

2. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.

....

٣. تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأنهم قادة المستقبل.

....

٤. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

....

Related Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	pay attention	تولى اهتمامًا
deep thought	تفكير عميق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
It is wise	من الحكمة		

Part II Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التى قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلى :

السؤال : ما الذى يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

(أ) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزى لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للموضوع.

(ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية للوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.

(جـ) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.

(د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربى سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلًا أساسيًا ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه فى الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

(أ) المعنى الأساسى للفعل (be) فى اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. - My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتى صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيدًا عن الوطن.

(ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل آخر فى اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g. - The wedding was last week. - تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضى.

- A knife is for cutting food. - تستخدم السكين لتقطيع الطعام.

(جـ) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصى مثل (هو / هى / هما / هم / هنّ) فى اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g. - My mother is everything to me. - إن أمي هى كل شىء بالنسبة لى.

- Our children are the joy of our life. - أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

(د) يمكن إسقاط الفعل (be) نهائيًا من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g. - Ahmed is a hard-working student. - أحمد طالب جاد فى العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city. - يقع منزلى فى جزء هادئ من المدينة.

السؤال : قالوا لى أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعانى، فكيف أترجمه إلى العربية ؟

- هذا كلام صحيح، فهذا الفعل يستخدم بمعانى كثيرة منها :

(أ) المعنى الأصلى للفعل (have) هو (يمتلك / عنده / لديه) حسب الزمن :

- I have a house with a small garden. - لدى / عندى / أمتلك منزلًا ذو حديقة صغيرة.

(ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يتناول طعامًا أو شرابًا) :

- I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday. - تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز فى الغداء أمس.

(جـ) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يُقيم / يعقد / يَحضر) :

- I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success.

- سأقيم حفلًا كبيرًا بمناسبة نجاح ابنتى.

(د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعانى / لديه معاناه) :

- She had a bad headache after the party.

- لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد الحفل.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة فى الترجمة ؟

نعم بالفعل، ولكى تترجم بشكل سليم لابد أن تتذكر دائمًا أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التى تأتى بعده مباشرة:

- Only my mother helped me with my homework.

- أمى فقط هى من ساعدتنى فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother only helped me with my homework.

- لم تقم أمى إلا بمساعدتى فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother helped only me with my homework.

- ساعدتنى أمى أنا فقط فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother helped me with only my homework.

- ساعدتنى أمى فى واجبى المنزلى فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية مبنيًا للمجهول ؟

(أ) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنجليزية المبنية للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم عند الترجمة للعربية طالما كان الفاعل معروفًا :

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.

- لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.

(ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلى مثل :

e.g. - The task was carried out on time. - تم تنفيذ المهمة فى الوقت المحدد.

Now, test yourself

Translate into Arabic :

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.

General Exercises on Translation skill

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourism is considered a main source of national income, so we should attract more tourists to visit Egypt. (الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣)

a. تُعتَبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسيًا من مصادر الاقتصاد القومي، ولذا علينا أن نجذب الكثير من السياح لزيارة مصر.

b. تُعتَبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسيًا من مصادر الدخل القومي، ولذا علينا أن نجذب الكثير من السياح لزيارة مصر.

c. تُعتَبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسيًا من مصادر الدخل القومي، ولذا علينا أن نجذب القليل من السياح لزيارة مصر.

d. تُعتَبر السياحة مصدراً رئيسيًا من مصادر الدخل الأسريّ، ولذا علينا أن نجذب الكثير من السياح لزيارة مصر.

2. All driverless cars will be electric and much cleaner than petrol ones. They reduce pollution as well.

(شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)

a. إن قيادة السيارات الكهربائية سهل وبسيط ويساعد على تقليل التلوث.

b. لم يعد قيادة السيارات الكهربائية صعب، ولكنه أسهل بكثير من سيارات البنزين ويقلل التلوث.

c. جميع السيارات التي بلا قائد ستكون كهربية، فهي أنقي من سيارات البنزين وتقلل التلوث أيضاً.

d. إن استخدام السيارات الكهربية أنقي من السيارات البنزين لكنها تزيد الجو تلوثاً.

3. Many kinds of animals and plants are endangered, so man must pay more attention to the environment.

(سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

a. كثير من الحيوانات العطوفة والنباتات مُعرَّضة للخطر، لذلك يجب أن يهتم الإنسان بالبيئة بشكل أكبر.

b. أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات مُعرَّضة للخطر، لذلك يجب على الرجل أن يدفع اهتمام بشكل أكبر.

c. هناك أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات الخطيرة، لذلك يجب أن يهتم الإنسان بالبيئة بشكل أكبر.

d. تتعرض الكثير من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات للخطر، لذلك يجب أن يهتم الإنسان بالبيئة بشكل أكبر.

4. There's no doubt that education is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance.

(اخميم ٢٠٢٣)

a. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العملي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من آثار الجهل.

b. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المتعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

c. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.

d. لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمي، وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من نور الجهل.

5. The government has carried out many national projects that aim to create thousands of job opportunities and bring about a real development.

(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

a. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية التي تهدف إلى خلق آلاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق استثمار حقيقي.

b. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع المحلية التي تهدف إلى خلق آلاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق تنمية حقيقية.

c. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية التي تهدف إلى خلق آلاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق تنمية مستدامة.

d. نفذت الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية التي تهدف إلى خلق آلاف من فرص العمل وتحقيق تنمية حقيقية.

6. Production must go side by side with global quality. We should improve our local products to compete in the global market.

(شرق الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. لابد أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تحسين منتجاتنا المحلية للمقارنة بين السوق العالمية.

b. لا يمكن أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تحسين منتجاتنا المحلية للمنافسة في السوق العالمية.

c. لابد أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تحسين منتجاتنا المحلية للمنافسة في السوق العالمية.

d. لابد أن يسير الإنتاج جنباً إلى جنب مع الجودة العالمية، وعلينا تقليل منتجاتنا المحلية للمنافسة في السوق العالمية.

7. Food shortage, disease and poverty are real obstacles that can hinder the progress of any society.

a. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تُعيد التقدم في أي مجتمع.

b. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تُعيق التقدم في أي مجتمع.

c. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تسبق التقدم في أي مجتمع.

d. يُعتبر نقص الغذاء والمرض والفقر عقبات حقيقية يمكن أن تُعيق التقدم في أي دولة.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. تُستخدم الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الطاقة الكهربائية في بعض محطات الطاقة العملاقة. (قوص ٢٠٢٣)

a. Solar power is used to reduce electricity in some major power stations.
b. Solar energy is used to generate electricity in some huge power stations.
c. Solar power is used to generate electricity in all major energy stations.
d. Solar power is used to generating electricity in some major power stations.

٢. جميعنا مسئولون عن حماية البيئة، فهي ليست مهمة الدولة والمنظمات وحدها. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. We are all responsible for protecting the environment. It is not the task of only the state and organizations.
b. We all have the responsibility for protecting the environment. It is the task of the state and the organizations only.
c. We are all irresponsible for protecting the environment. It is the task of the state and organizations only.
d. We all have the responsibility to prevent the environment. It is not the task of the state and organizations only.

٣. لقد أصبح من الضروري تشجيع الأبحاث العلمية التي تهدف إلى تنمية المجتمع المصري.

a. It has became necessary to encourage the scientific search which aims to develop the Egyptian society.
b. It has become necessary to encourage the scientific research which aims to develop the Egyptian society.
c. It has become necessary to encourage the scientific research which aims to develop the Egyptian industry.
d. It has become necessary to encourage the scientific research who aims to develop the Egypt society.

٤. يجب أن نرشد استهلاكنا من المياه وإلا سوف نواجه مشكلات خطيرة في المستقبل القريب. (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)

a. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
b. We must not rationalize our pollution of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
c. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will not face serious problems in the far future.
d. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will hand serious problems in the near future.

٥. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً فعالاً في حياتنا، مع العلم أنها كما تسهم في تقدم المجتمعات فمن الممكن أن تدمرها. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

a. Modern technology plays an effective role in our life. But we should know that as it contributes to the societies' progress, it can destroy them.
b. Modern technology is playing effective roles in our past life, but we had to know that as it neglects the progress to the continents, it can supports them.
c. Modern technology played an effect role in our previous life, but we should be known that as it contributed the progress to the societies, it could destroy them.
d. Modern technology has an effectively rule in our former life. but we "must have known that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can have ruined them.

A week is enough

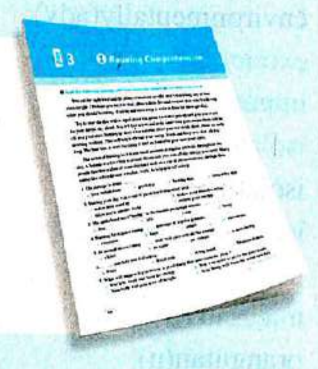
مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

DAYS 1 & 2



1. General Revision on Vocabulary (each two units) followed by Exercise for Practice.
   مراجعة علي المفردات اللغوية (كل وحدتين علي حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب
2. General Revision on Structures (each two units) followed by Exercise for practice.
   مراجعة علي القواعد اللغوية (كل وحدتين علي حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب

DAY 3



1. **Reading Comprehension**
   تدرب على حل قطع الفهم من اختيارات المحافظات المختلفة
2. **Translation** تدرب على حل نماذج الترجمة من اختيارات المحافظات المختلفة
3. **Writing** (Related written essay models)
   نماذج محلولة للمقالات المرتبطة بموضوعات القراءة

DAYS 4 , 5 , 6 & 7



1. 20 Model Exams from different governorates.
   عشرون اختبارًا من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة.
2. Al Azhar Exams & An exam for Inclusive students.
   اختبارات الأزهر الشريف واختبار لطلاب الدمج.

DAYS 1 & 2 General Revision on Units

1 Units 1 & 2

I Vocabulary

Unit 

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
ancient(n)	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	سعيد جداً
conservation(n)	الصيانة - حماية البيئة	peace(n)	السلام - السَكينة
conservationist(n)	المحافظ على البيئة	peaceful(adj)	هادئ / ذو سَكينة
coral reefs / corals(n)	الشِعاب المرجانية	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
crowded(adj)	مُزدحم	relaxing(adj)	مُريح
ecosystem(n)	النظام البيئي	spice(d) (v)	يُتبِّل (يضع توابل)
ecotourism(n)	السياحة البيئية	spices(n)	توابل
ecotourist(n)	سائح مُراعي للبيئة	spicy(adj)	حرِّيف - حار - متبَّل بالبهارات
endangered(adj)	مُعرَّض للخطر	stuck(adj)	عالق / محشور - ملتصق
environment(n)	البيئة	sustain(ed) (v)	يحافظ على - يُبقي
environmentally(adv)	من الناحية البيئية	sustainable(adj)	دائم - صديق للبيئة
exotic(adj)	غريب - أجنبي	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	يتورم - يتضخَّم - يتزايد
impact(ed) (n-v)	أثر - يؤثر		
isolated(adj)	بعيد - مُنعزل	trek(ked) (v - n)	يسير لمسافة طويلة - رحلة طويلة سيراً
isolation (n)	عُزلة - انعزال		
lean - leaned / leant(v)	ينحني / يميل - يتكئ	unique(adj)	فريد - مميَّز
loads of	الكثير من	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
material (n - adj)	مادة / غرض - مادي	volunteer(n)	مُتطوِّع
orangutan(n)	إنسان الغابة	voluntourist(n)	سائح مُتطوِّع

Unit 

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
agreement(n)	عَقد - اتفاق - موافقة	iron(ed) (n - v)	حديد - مكواة - يكوي
biologist(n)	عالِم أحياء	level(n)	مستوى / نسبة
blood donation(n)	التبرُّع بالدم	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم	long-term(adj)	طويل المدى
blood(n)	الدم	model(n)	نموذج
cattle(n)	الماشية	monitor(ed) (v - n)	يُراقب / يرصُد - جهاز عرض
community(n)	المجتمع	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - مُنَظَّمة
compassion(n)	رأفة / رَحمة	party(n)	فريق / جماعة / حزب
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع	pressure(n)	ضغط

donation(n)	التَبَرُّع	prestige (n - adj)	نفوذ / هَيْبَة / وَجاهة - عالي الجودة
donor(n)	مُتَبَرِّع		
famous(adj)	مشهور	roar(ed) (n - v)	يزأر - زئير
generous(adj)	كريم - سَخِيّ	role model(n)	قُدوة / نموذج يُحتَذى
guardian(n)	حارس - وصي	speed(n)	سُرعة
hunting parties	فِرَق الصيد	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصُد / يتابع - ممر
intelligent(adj)	ذكي	transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل / زراعة أعضاء
iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم		ينقل / يزرع أعضاء

General Exercise On Vocabulary

✪ Choose the Two correct answers out of the five options given :

1. We can't succeed without ....
   a. translation b. isolation c. collaboration d. exploration e. cooperation
2. I don't like this music because it is very noisy. The opposites of the word "noisy" are ....
   a. quite b. busy c. quiet d. unique e. calm
3. Mothers should .... their babies all the time.
   a. watch b. look c. see d. monitor e. donate
4. People around the world admire Mohamed Salah. The synonyms of "admire" are ....
   a. disapprove b. appreciate c. check d. praise e. donate

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. The adjective .... describes something special or the only one.
   a. exotic b. sustainable c. unique d. material
6. There was a/an .... of people around the magician الساحر.
   a. crowd b. crowdedness c. overcrowding d. overcrowded
7. Fans usually .... to take selfies with football stars.
   a. crowd b. crowding c. crowds d. crowdedness
8. "Usual", "conventional" and "native" are antonyms of ....
   a. gigantic b. local c. national d. exotic
9. She .... out of the window to see what was going on يَحْدُث in the street.
   a. isolated b. leant c. swelled d. developed
10. I refused to park my car next to the .... wall that looked as if it was going to fall.
    a. spicy b. voluntary c. leaning d. material
11. To solve the traffic problem, we have to .... new laws.
    a. protect b. break c. introduce d. do
12. You and I can finish this job quickly if we work ....
    a. isolated b. lonely c. together d. inactively
13. A / An .... is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
    a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer

14. Iron .... is the amount of iron stored in the body.
a. track b. organ c. tool d. level

15. "Domestic" is an antonym of the adjective ....
a. home b. tame c. wildlife d. wild

16. To ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

17. To be ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

18. To be a ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

19. To achieve your goal ...., work hard to a plan.
a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed

20. Do you admire him .... his appearance المظهر or character?
a. of b. with c. to d. for

II Structures

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation : التكوين

- فى الجملة المثبتة : Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل ....

e.g. : - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday.
- They watched a film last night.

Usage : الاستخدام

1. يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

e.g. : - I studied French when I was in secondary school.

2. يعبر عن عادة في الماضي :

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed used to play tennis when he was young.
- I used to write very quickly.

3. وصف أحداث في سرد قصة :

e.g. : - Ali found a bag. He took it to the police station.

4. في الحاله الثانية من جملة الشرط (If) :

e.g. : - If he helped us, we would win.

5. يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي يعبر عن (افتراض شئ) و ليس الواقع :

❶ **I wish + subject** فاعل **+** ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - I wish mum wasn't ill. - I wish the Egyptian team played well.

❷ **It's time + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط**

e.g. : - It's time he paid the bill. - It is time father arrived.

❸ **I'd rather + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط**

e.g. : - I would rather she helped him. - I'd rather Ali didn't come.

٦ يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية :

Key words :

yesterday – ago – last – once – in the past – once upon a time – How long ago – the previous .... in the ancient time / in the old days

e.g. : - Last week, I went to Alexandria.
- Two months ago, we flew to London.

- يلاحظ استخدام **(always, usually, often, sometimes)** للتعبير عن مدى تكرار الحدث فى الماضى :

e.g. : - When I was in Alex, I always swam in the sea.

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Formation : التكوين

- فى الجملة المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) ....

e.g. : - Ahmed was reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were cooking lunch.

- فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + was / were + being + p.p. ....

e.g. : - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Usage : الاستخدام

١ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت معين في الماضي :

e.g. : - At half past six this morning, I was having breakfast.

٢ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر :

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.

٣ يأتي في سياق قصة أو موقف في الماضي :

e.g. : - I was studying Chemistry when I met Jane.
- He was doing research when they arrested him.

٤ يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالبا مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / When / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمزا ثم قطعه حدث آخر :

(While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont. ماضى مستمر , Past Simple ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.
- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

- لاحظ أن when يمكن أن يأتي بعدها الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We were doing the homework when it started to rain.

- يمكن استخدام On بدلا من when و يأتي بعدها inf. + ing :

- When he arrived, he found the door locked.

= On arriving, he found the door locked.

5 يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / when / As / Just as)

للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت :

(While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont. ماضى مستمر , Past Cont. ماضى مستمر

e.g. : - While I was studying, my father was reading.

- While I was finishing one story, I was thinking of the next one.

- اذا لم يأتي بعد While فاعل يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While playing, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام during بدلا من while ويأتي بعدها اسم أو عبارة اسمية فقط و ليس (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = He got hurt during the game.

3 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation : التكوين

• يتكون المضارع البسيط فى الجملة المثبتة من :

Subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...

- يتكون من التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافة مع (I / We / You / They) أو فاعل جمع

وإضافة (s / es / ies) للفعل إذا كان الفاعل (He / She / It) أو فاعل مفرد :

e.g. : - We study English at school.

- A rabbit eats grass.

- Walaa cooks lunch at one every day.

- المضارع البسيط فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + p.p. ....

e.g. : - Farmers grow plants. (Active)

Plants are grown by farmers. (Passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1 to express facts : - التعبير عن حقائق علمية ثابتة لا تتغير :

e.g. : - The moon goes round the Earth.

❷ **to express habits :**

- التعبير عن عادات :

e.g. : - He always comes late.

Subject فاعل + usually + verb فعل ....

It + is + someone's habit to + inf. المصدر ....

Subject فاعل + (be) + in the habit of + (inf. + ing) ....

Subject فاعل + (be) + used to + (inf. + ing) / n. ....

e.g. : - Ali usually eats fruit for dessert الحلو بعد الأكل.

- It is Ali's (his) habit to eat fruit for dessert.
- Ali is in the habit of eating fruit for dessert.
- Ali is used to eating fruit for dessert.

- لاحظ استخدام **no longer** / **any longer** / **any more** بمعني (لم يعد) لنفي العادة عن الحاضر و إثبات حدوثها فى الماضى :

Subject فاعل + no longer + present simple + ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed no longer smokes. = He used to smoke.

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. + ... + any longer / any more

e.g. : - Ali doesn't smoke any more. = He used to smoke.

General Exercise On Structures

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. .... my sleep, I had a nightmareكابوس.
   a. While b. As c. When d. During
2. The police arrested him as he............ the scene of the crime.
   a. had left b. was leaving c. was left d. has left
3. Everybody was at the office at 08:30 yesterday. The meeting .... at nine o'clock.
   a. starts b. has started c. had started d. started
4. I .... into a good family in the south of Egypt.
   a. bore b. was born c. had been born d. have been born
5. When Mariam was young, she used to .... in London.
   a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
6. While climbing onto the mountain top, I .... a strange animal.
   a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen
7. While we were travelling to Luxor, our car .... down.
   a. was breaking b. has broken c. had broken d. broke
8. I couldn't watch the film because my brother .... a football match.
   a. has watched b. was watching c. watched d. had watched
9. Abdu .... the tree when he suddenly fell down.
   a. had been climbed b. was climbing c. climbed d. was climbed

10. .... sleeping, I had a nightmare.
a. While b. As c. When d. During

11. The moon .... round the earth.
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved

12. We .... the email and replied to it.
a. received b. receive c. have received d. would receive

13. The sun's energy .... by solar panels الخلايا الشمسية.
a. is collected b. is collecting c. collects d. collected

14. My grandpa once .... me a present.
a. is giving b. gives c. gave d. giving

15. In ancient times, they often .... camels in travelling.
a. were using b. used c. use d. are using

16. How long ago .... you visit your uncle ?
a. do b. does c. did d. is

17. Don't go out till you .... your work.
a. do b. does c. did d. had done

18. This road .... used anymore.
a. didn't b. doesn't c. isn't d. is

19. Ahmed .... a glass of milk every morning.
a. always has b. always had had c. has always d. had always

20. The rich mud .... reaches Egyptian farmland.
a. don't b. doesn't c. no longer d. any longer

2 Units 3 & 4

I Vocabulary

Unit 3

action(n)	حَدَث - فِعل	owe(d) (v)	يَدين - يكون مَدين
amazing(adj)	مُذهل - رائع جداً	plan(ned)(n) (v)	خطة - يخطط
association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plump(adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً
beliefs (n)	مُعتقدات	prison(n)	السجن
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضِر	rat(n)	فأر
crescent (n)	هِلال	society (n)	المجتمع
debt(n)	دَين	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجني مال	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experiences (n)	خبرات / تجارب حياتية	terrible(adj)	فظيع - سيء جداً
food bank	بنك الطعام	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
merchant(n)	تاجر	youth(n)	الشباب
miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس	youth association	جمعية شبابية

Unit 4

address(ed) (n - v)	عنوان - يخاطب	nurse(d) (v)	تُمَرِّض - ترعى المرضى
advice(n)	نصيحة	nurse(n)	ممرضة
bully(ied) (v)	يتنمَّر - يَبْلطِج	nursing(n)	التمريض
bully(n)	بلطجي - مُتنمِّر	phone-in(n)	برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً
bullying(n)	البلطجة - التنَمُّر	police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والانضباط
cheat(ed) (v - n)	يغش - غشاش	police(n)	الشرطة
cheating(n)	الغش	policing(n)	فَرْض الأمن والانضباط
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	populate(d) (v)	يُعَمِّر مكان
communication(n)	تواصل - اتصال	population(n)	(عدد) السكان
connection(n)	ارتباط - اتصال	produce(d) (v)	يُنتِج
connect(ed) (v)	يوصل - يربط	production(n)	إنتاج
connected(adj)	مرتبط	pronounce(d) (v)	ينطق
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	pronunciation(n)	النُطق
inform(ed) (v)	يُعْلِم - يُخْبِر	suffix(n)	مقطع لاحق
noticeboard(n)	لوحة الإعلانات	take ... for granted	يُسَلِّم ... بـ

General Exercise On Vocabulary

✪ Choose the Two correct answers out of the five options given :

1. His performance was .... We all clapped for him.
   a. boring b. amazing c. annoying d. astonishing e. terrifying
2. It's common to drink tea after meals in Egypt. The word "common" can be replaced by ....
   a. unique b. ordinary c. limited d. rare e. usual
3. It's forbidden to .... other people.
   a. cheat b. receive c. deceive d. believe e. trust
4. You should know that there was no connection between these two subjects. The synonyms of "connection" are ....
   a. enjoyment b. agreement c. link d. argument e. relationship

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. A .... is money you must give back to someone.
   a. donation b. prize c. reward d. debt
6. To .... means to receive money for doing work.
   a. earn b. win c. make d. lend
7. A .... is a person who buys and sells a lot of goods.
   a. worker b. writer c. merchant d. volunteer
8. Criminals are punished for .... the law.
   a. following b. respecting c. breaking d. giving
9. When a child grows ...., he learns how to depend on himself.
   a. of b. in c. out d. up

10. My sister has a little daughter .... three.
a. of b. in c. on d. at

11. He is angry because he .... a problem with his car engine.
a. has b. does c. makes d. takes

12. I heard .... my British friend yesterday. He sent me an email.
a. of b. from c. about d. with

13. It is polite to address older people .... their titles.
a. of b. at c. by d. on

14. My father talked .... me about my plans for the future.
a. to b. about c. from d. for

15. I had to .... the police to arrest the bullies in our street.
a. go b. do c. call d. feel

16. It is not allowed to park here, but in .... the place is never empty.
a. practise b. practice c. police d. policing

17. Those bad people have bullied him .... taking drugs تعاطي المخدرات.
a. from b. off c. on d. into

18. The police .... the explosion الانفجار with terrorism الارهاب.
a. gave b. confessed c. connected d. concluded

19. Address your question .... the teacher and he will help you.
a. to b. off c. of d. with

20. Living in a new town .... so hard because you are away from friends and everything you know.
a. tastes b. feels c. tricks d. tracks

II Structures

1 The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Formation : التكوين

- في الجملة المثبتة : Subject الفاعل + have / has + P.P. ..... .

– تستخدم (has) مع المفرد الغائب (he / she / it) وتستخدم (have) مع باقي الضمائر:

e.g. : - I have tidied my bedroom.
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

- في صيغة المبنى للمجهول : - Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p. ..... .

e.g. : - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)
- My room has been tidied (by me). (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1. يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود :

e.g. : - Rodayna has cleaned the kitchen. The kitchen is clean now.
- He has broken his leg. He can't walk easily.

2. حدث انتهي في وقت غير محدد في الماضي:

e.g. : - She has polished her shoes.
- Ahmed has fed the sheep.

- لكن عند تحديد وقت الحدوث نستخدم الماضي البسيط:

e.g. : - Rodayna cleaned the kitchen yesterday.
- Ahmed fed the sheep an hour ago.

٣ يدل المضارع التام علي حدث متكرر (أي أن ذلك الحدث قابل للزيادة) :

e.g. : - Ahmed has scored a hundred goals. (He can score more.)

- لكن اذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعني ذلك أن الحدث توقف :

e.g. : - He wrote 46 novels. (He stopped writing.)

٤ يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرات سابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها :

e.g. : - Have you ever met anyone famous?
- She's never met anyone famous yet, but she hopes to one day.

٥ نستخدم (has /have been to) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد ، أما (has /have gone to) ذهب لمكان ومازال هناك (لم يعد) :

e.g. : - Rodayna has gone to school. (She is still at school now.)
- Ahmed has been to the cinema. (He isn't there now.)

- ويستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية :

just - already - yet - so far / - up till now / till now - ever - lately / recently - since - for

2 Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

A Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

١ الأسماء التى تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهى تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl ⟶ girls
- a bus ⟶ buses
- an egg ⟶ eggs
- a library ⟶ libraries

٢ هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

- child ⟶ children

٣ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتى :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
One	- One student got the full marks.
Every / Each	- Every player in the team trains hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

٤ قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتى :

these هؤلاء / those أولئك / some بعض / any أي / many كثير / a few قليل /
a lot of كثير من / lots of كثير من / several عديد / two / three ……….. .

e.g. : - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

B Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

١ الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :
السؤال والغازات والوجبات والمواد الدراسية، اللغات، المواد الخام، الرياضات، الظواهر الطبيعية والأسماء المجردة.

ex. : - water, oxygen, breakfast, history, English. football, coffee, gold, thunder, honesty, jewellery.

٢ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that….. etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

٣ لا يمكن استخدام **(these - those - one - a - an)** قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

٤ يمكن استخدام **(a - an)** مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تُعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

C Quantifiers تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

1 a lot of / lots of كثير من + plural n. اسم جمع / uncountable n. اسم لا يُعد

- يفضل استخدام **(a lot of / lots of)** في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد :

e.g. : - I have a lot / lots of books.
- She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

2 many كثير من / عديد **+ plural noun** اسم جمع

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد فى صيغة الجمع وتفضل فى النفي والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Have you got many books ?

- No, I haven't got many books.

3 much كثير من **+ uncountable noun** اسم لا يُعد

- تأتى قبل اسم لايعد وتفضل فى النفى والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Did you drink much coffee ?

- No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4 a few / few قليل **+ plural n.** اسم جمع

a few = some / a small number عدد قليل ولكنه يكفى

few = not many / almost none عدد قليل وغير كاف

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل :

e.g. : - I have a few pens. I can lend you one.

- There are few glasses in the kitchen. I need to buy some for the party.

5 a little / little قليل **+ uncountable** لا يُعد

a little = some / a small amount كمية قليلة ولكنها تكفى

little = not much / almost nothing كمية قليلة وغير كافية

- تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة :

e.g. : - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.

- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6 some بعض

- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Affirmative الإثبات

e.g. : - I will have some cheese and some eggs for breakfast.

2. Offering تقديم عروض

e.g. : - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?

3. Request الطلب

e.g. : - Can you give me some paper and some pens?

7 any أى

- تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Negative النفى

e.g. : - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام

e.g. : - Are there any tomatoes or any cheese in the fridge?

3 Definite and Indefinite articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة

A Indifinite articles : A & An أدوات النكرة

- تستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن عند النطق :

e.g. : a girl   a farmer   a wolf

- تستخدم (a) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التى تبدأ بحرف متحرك (a , e , i , o , u) ولكن يُنطَق كصوت ساكن.

e.g. : a university   a uniform   a unit
a union   a European country   a one   a useful book

- تستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (a , e , i , o , u)

e.g. : an umbrella   an egg   an honest man
an ink pot   an ox   an apple

- تأتى (an) قبل الاسم المفرد والذى يبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق :

e.g. : He is an honest man.

Usage : الاستخدام

- قبل اسم مفرد يُعد يُذكر لأول مرة :

e.g. : - I saw a plane flying in the sky.
- I have a villa with a swimming pool.

- قبل الصفة إذا سبقت الاسم المفرد المعدود :

e.g. : - This is a beautiful vase.
- He gave an incredible concert حفلة موسيقية yesterday.

- تستخدم بمعنى «واحد من بين العديد من ...» :

e.g. : We have got a car.

- تستخدم عند تصنيف الناس حسب جنسياتهم أو وظائفهم :

e.g. : - She is a Turkish girl.
- She is an accountant.

- مع عبارات عددية معينة وللتجزئة :

e.g. :
- a couple زوج من
- a dozen دستة
- a million مليون
- a hundred مائة
- a kilo of sugar
- half a dozen نصف دستة
- a score عشرون
- a lot of / a great deal of كثير من
- a thousand ألف
- a bag of rice

- مع تعبيرات السرعة والثمن والنسبة :

e.g. :
- twice a week
- two pounds a kilo
- twenty kilometres an hour
- four times a day

- لاحظ أن (a / an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التى لا تُعد والأسماء المعنوية :

e.g. : - Sharks are dangerous animals.
- My shoes are made of leather.
- He was pale with fear.

B The definite article : The أداة المعرفة

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى أصبح مُعرفًا عند ذكره للمرة الثانية :

e.g. : We have got a villa with a garden. The garden is beautiful.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى يوجد منه واحد فقط (أى ليس له مثيل فى الكون) :

e.g. : the Earth , the North Pole, the sky, the Nile ... etc.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد للدلالة على النوع أو الفصيلة وقبل الاختراعات :

e.g. : - **The** camel is the ship of the desert. = Camels are ....

- **The** computer is useful. = Computers are ....

- لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح أو امتلاك جهاز معين فلا تأخذ (the) :

e.g. : - My grandfather had a radio which looked like a wooden box.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء : سلاسل الجبال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحارى ومجموعات الجزر والمناطق الجغرافية والاتجاهات وبعض الدول :

e.g. : **the** Red Sea, **the** Indian Ocean, **the** Thames, **the** Alps, **the** Middle East, **the** Mediterranean Sea, **the** USA, **the** Sudan, **the** United Kingdom, **the** European Union, **the** Pacific Ocean, **the** Bahamas Islands, **the** South of Egypt, **the** Siwa Oasis ... etc.

- أما أسماء الجزر المفردة فلا تأخذ (the). Sicily / Bermuda / Crete .... etc

والقمم الجبلية المنفردة عادة لا تأخذ (the) (Mount Everest / Kilimanjaro) :

- قبل صفات التفضيل القصوى، وقبل صفات المقارنة بمعنى «كلما».

e.g. : - The elephant is **the** biggest animal.

- Diamond is **the most** expensive metal.

- **The harder** you work, **the more** money you get.

- تستخدم قبل الصفات عند استخدامها كاسم بمعنى الجمع :

e.g. : - He is collecting money for **the blind**.

- **The poor** are usually generous to each other.

- **The disabled** are in need of our help.

- "the poor" تعنى طبقة الفقراء عامة.

- مع الآلات الموسيقية فى سياق العزف والاستماع أو التعليم أو الممارسة وتأتى بعد أفعال مثل:

play / practise / learn / study / listen to

e.g. : **the** piano, **the** violin, **the** drum, **the** guitar

- مع التعبيرات الزمنية و الاتجاهات:

e.g. : in **the** morning, in **the** afternoon, in **the** evening, in **the** north, in **the** east

- قبل الكتب المقدسة وأسماء الصحف:

e.g. : **the** Quran , **the** Bible, **the** Times

- قبل أسماء الأماكن عند استخدامها لغرض غير غرضها الأساسى:

(school, hospital, university, bed, prison, church, market, mosque)

e.g. : - I go to **school** to learn.

- I go to **the school** to meet the principal المدير.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات الآتية :

the government, **the** fire brigade, **the** police, **the** army, **the** cinema, **the** office, **the** theatre, **the** radio, **the** internet, **the** Cathedral

- تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التى تدل على الجنسية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة :

e.g. : - The British / The English / The Irish / The Welsh / The Spanish / The Dutch / The Swiss.

- كما تستخدم (the) بنفس الطريقة قبل الصفات التى تدل على الجنسية المنتهية بـ (ese) :

e.g. : - The Japanese / the Chinese / the Sudanese ..... etc.

- أما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب أن تجمع بعد (the) لتؤدى نفس المعنى :

e.g. : - The Egyptians / The Russians / the Arabs / the Scots / the Turks

- تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن التى بها (of) :

e.g. : - The Great wall of China / the Bank of England

- تستخدم (the) غالبًا قبل الاسم الذى تتبعه عبارة بها ضمير وصل :

e.g. : - The man who lost his son was very sad.

- قبل العدد الذى يدل على فترة عشر سنوات وقبل الأعداد الترتيبية :

e.g. : - The fifties / the nineties / the first / second / third / the last .... etc.)v

- لاحظ أن "the" لا تستخدم مع :

- الاسم الجمع بمعنى عام.

e.g. : - **Sharks** are wild animals. - **Women** form half of society.

- الأسماء المجردة المعنوية والأسماء غير المعدودة بوجه عام :

e.g. : death, birth, wisdom, sorrow, freedom, democracy, happiness

- أسماء المواد وأسماء الوجبات والألعاب الرياضية والمواد الدراسية :

e.g. : dinner, breakfast, wood, metal, milk, wool, iron, plastic, meat, basketball, volleyball, tennis, English, Arabic, history, maths

- لكن لاحظ أن (the) تأتى مع الوجبات إذا كانت وجبه مُعدة لمناسبة خاصة (احتفال مثلًا) :

- أسماء فصول السنة والأعياد:

e.g. : summer, winter, spring, autumn, Easter, Christmas

- قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم :

e.g. : President Obama, Professor Magdi, King Abdullah

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء القارات وأسماء الدول :

e.g. : Asia, Africa, Europe , Spain , France ....

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة على كلمات مثل Republic / Union / Kingdom / States / Federation فهى تأخذ (the) :

e.g. : - The Arab Republic of Egypt / The United Kingdom.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن المركبة إذا كان الاسم الأول يدل على شخص أو مكان.

e.g. : - Victoria Station / Buckingham Palace / London Zoo

General Exercise On Structures

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is the second time she has .... been to the zoo.

a. just b. once c. never d. ever

2. It is the first time for me .... alone.
   a. travel b. to travel c. to travelling d. have ever travelled
3. This is the first time I .... alone.
   a. travel b. to travel c. to travelling d. have ever travelled
4. Mariam is the tallest student I .... up till now.
   a. have ever seen b. have never seen c. had ever seen d. had never seen
5. It's two weeks .... I last met aunt Nadia.
   a. ago b. for c. since d. as
6. Never .... an American tourist up till now.
   a. he has met b. has he met c. he met d. did he meet
7. He hasn't .... been abroad. His next visit to Saudi Arabia will be the first one.
   a. never b. ever c. since d. after
8. He .... there for ten years. He left the company last year.
   a. has worked b. have worked c. worked d. was working
9. I .... Chinese. I've passed three modules so far.
   a. studied b. 'm studying c. was studying d. have studied
10. I .... in the chat room at five o'clock when the phone rang.
   a. am b. was c. had been d. have been
11. My reading glasses .... missing.
   a. had b. was c. is d. are
12. This poor woman has ....
   a. child b. a few child c. little children d. much children
13. We have hardly heard .... news of him since he left the company.
   a. any b. some c. many d. much
14. Mathematics .... not very easy to understand.
   a. are b. were c. is d. has
15. Most people think that politics .... sometimes a dirty business.
   a. may b. were c. are d. is
16. I need .... information.
   a. an b. few c. some d. many
17. I didn't buy a pen, I bought .... hat for my brother.
   a. some b. few c. an d. a
18. How .... work do you do every day?
   a. many b. much c. often d. old
19. I haven't got .... luggage.
   a. many b. some c. any d. a
20. She gave me .... binoculars.
   a. much b. some c. any d. a

3 Units 5 & 6

I Vocabulary

Unit 5

advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	internet(n)	الإنترنت
app = application(n)	تطبيق (رقمي)	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	lock(ed) (n - v)	يقفل - قفل
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة
communication(n)	اتصال - تواصل	password(n)	كلمة المرور
connect(ed) (v)	يربط	phishing(n)	الإحتيال الالكترونى
connected(adj)	مُتَّصِل - مُرْتَبِط	post(ed) (v)	يرسل (منشور)
cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	scam(n)	احتيال - غِشّ
cyberbully (n)	متنمر عبر الإنترنت	satnav(n)	التوجيه بالقمر الصناعى
download(ed) (v)	يُنَزِّل (عبر الانترنت)	security(n)	الأمن
download (n)	ملف مُنَزَّل	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكى
downloading (n)	التنزيل - التحميل	software(n)	برامج - برمجيات
google (n)	مُحرِّك البحث جوجل	technology(n)	التكلولوجيا
google(d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
hack(ed) (v)	يخترق - يُقرصِن	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	uploading (n)	رفع الملفات

Unit 6

biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	literature(n)	الأدب
candlelight(n)	ضوء الشمعة	lock(ed) (n - v)	قِفل - يقفل
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يوضح التباين	novel(n)	رواية
currant(n)	نبات الكشمش (زبيب صغير)	plot(n)	قطعة أرض - مدفن
currant row	صف الكشمش	plot(n)	الحَبْكَة - ذروة الأحداث
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس	poem(n)	قصيدة
garden(n)	بستان	poet(n)	شاعر
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	poetry(n)	الشِعر - النَّظم
gravel(n)	الحَصَى	rhyme(d) (n - v)	القافية - يُقفِّي / يَسْجَع
gravelled (adj)	مغطى بالحصى	rhythm(n)	إيقاع
hay(n)	تِبن / قَشّ	row(n)	صف
hop(ped) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل	sentence(n)	جُملة
hopping(n)	القفز - الحَجْل	stressed(adj)	مُشدَّد / مُفخَّم
issue(n)	قضية	treasure(n)	كنز
keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق الممهد بالحصى	variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية
line(n)	سطر شِعري	verse(n)	فقرة شعرية

General Exercise On Vocabulary

✪ Choose the Two correct answers out of the five options given :

1. I asked my friend Nabil to .... a table in a restaurant to celebrate my father's birthday.
   a. preserve b. reserve c. organize d. book e. use
2. You can depend on him to do this job. He is ....
   a. dishonest b. truthful c. unreliable d. honest e. lying
3. When we went out in the morning, it was clear. The synonyms of "clear" are ....
   a. cloudless b. bright c. cloudy d. foggy e. rainy
4. You should accept the .... of opinions about the same subject. Everyone has theirs.
   a. diversity b. different c. variety d. various e. differently

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. .... are systems to send and receive information.
   a. Possibilities b. Organizations c. Accounts d. Communications
6. .... is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.
   a. Technology b. Management c. Evidence d. Document
7. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are ....
   a. created b. developed c. connected d. performed
8. He is a bad person who gets a lot of money as a ....
   a. fishing b. fisherman c. phishing d. phisher
9. The suffix .... means on your own.
   a. -mal b. -up c. -down d. -self
10. I had given him 5000 pounds before I realised that it was a ....
    a. scam b. scams c. scammed d. scammer
11. Don't shout at her. She .... nothing wrong.
    a. did b. looked c. went d. stayed
12. I visit my grandparents as .... as I can.
    a. few b. hardly c. often d. sometimes
13. A .... is a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.
    a. hay b. verse c. line d. novel
14. A .... is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme.
    a. poet b. poem c. poetry d. poetic
15. A .... is someone who writes poems.
    a. poet b. poem c. poetry d. poetic
16. The criminal was locked up. This means ....
    a. he was killed b. he was arrested c. he was put in prison d. he managed to escape
17. The play was written in .... It has rhymes and rhythms.
    a. verse b. poem c. English d. poets
18. They plotted .... the new manager fail.
    a. to make b. against making c. to making d. making

19. When I lost my keys in the street, I was locked .... until my wife returned home.
a. on b. out c. of d. with

20. The rhythm of the poem makes it easy to ....
a. speak b. talk c. tell d. say

II Structures

1 Will + inf.

Formation : التكوين

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط فى الإثبات من:

Subject الفاعل + will / shall + inf. ...

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط :

e.g. : - I will / shall help you do your homework.
- Rodayna will be four next March.

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبنى للمجهول من :

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ...

e.g. : - A camera will be bought by Rodayna tomorrow.

- يستخدم المستقبل مع كلمات مثل :

Next (year / month / week / Friday ...) / in the future / soon / tomorrow / this time (next week / tomorrow ...) in (a year, a month, a week ...) / later on / sooner or later

Uses of will : استخدامات **(will)** :

١ التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية :

e.g. : - Next year, my son Ahmed will be in primary one.

٢ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلًا فى حالة عدم وجود دليل (رأى شخصى) : (لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلًا)

e.g. : - Do you think Ahmed will pass his exams ?
- Yes, he'll pass. He's a good student.

- وهنا نحن لا نتحدث عن نوايا أحمد أو خططه، بل رأينا الشخص وتنبؤاتنا الشخصية :

e.g. : - My daughter and her husband both have blue eyes, so their baby will have blue eyes too.

٣ وتستخدم مع بعض التعبيرات الآتية فى حالة عدم وجود دليل :

I expect / I'm sure / I think / I'm afraid / Maybe / Perhaps / I promise / I predict / probably / I hope / I wonder ...

e.g. : - We'll probably be in the space station for a week.

٤ اتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شىء ويدل على ذلك :

just decided / decided just now / made a quick decision ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed has just decided that he will buy a car.

- وقد يكون القرار السريع مفهومًا من السياق (رد فعل) مثل :

e.g. : - The doorbell is ringing. I'll open it.

٥ عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما :

e.g. : - I'll wash the dishes.
- I'll help you with your homework.

٦ عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء :

e.g. : - Will you give me that book, please ?
- I hope you will look after the baby.

٧ عمل الوعود والتهديدات :

e.g. : - I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam.
- I won't repeat that to anyone.
- You won't get your prize if you come late.

2 Be + going to + inf.

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed is going to play tennis.
- I'm going to study medicine.

- فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول : Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + p.p. ....

e.g. : - Tennis is going to be played (by Mr Ali).

Uses of going to :

- استخدامات (going to) :

١ تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن النوايا والقرارات المتخذة والخطط الشخصية ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

intend / intention / plan / have .... in mind / decided

e.g. : - Mr Ali intends to build a new house.
- He is going to look for a good place.
- Ahmed : What are your plans for the next weekend ?
- Rody : I'm going to play computer games.

٢ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلًا فى حالة وجود دليل (أى يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشئ) :

e.g. : - My daughter is going to get married. She is engaged.
- It is very cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
- My daughter is going to have a baby. She is pregnant.

٣ وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عما سيحدث فى المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

decided / have decided / made a decision / make up .... mind

e.g. : - They are going to go shopping. They have decided.
- I've decided that I'm going to do more exercises in the future.

٤ وتستخدم أيضًا للتحذير (التنبيه) عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث :

e.g. : - Watch out ! You are going to fall.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

- هناك شرطان أساسيان لاستخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل هما :

١. أن يكون الفاعل عاقل. ٢. وجود تعبير زمنى يدل على المستقبل (ولو بشكل ضمنى).

1. يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة (أى من الأطراف المشتركة بالحدث تعلم هذا الحدث والموعد معروف)، ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / have arranged / made arrangements / prepared / have prepared / made preparations

e.g. : - He has arranged everything. He's spending the next summer holiday in Paris.

- لاحظ أنه إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشئ آخر فى المستقبل فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له :

e.g. : - I can't see you this evening. I'm doing my homework.

- لاحظ أن this evening تعبر عن وقت قادم.

2. يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة اتخاذ خطوة تنفيذية :

e.g. : - Rodayna has bought some eggs, butter and flour. She is making a cake tomorrow.
- Mr Ali is flying to London next Monday. He has booked a ticket.

3. لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

e.g. : - He's getting married next Friday.
- We're going back to the States in three years.

4. لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التى تقوم بها المؤسسات تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

e.g. : - Our school is taking part in the sports competition next year.
- This company is sending a delegation to the conference next week.

4 The Present Simple for the Future

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث مستقبلية طبقًا لجداول المواعيد الخاصة مثل وسائل المواصلات (الطائرات والسفن والأتوبيسات..) والمسرح والسينما والمدرسة (الحصص والامتحانات والدروس) والعمل (الحضور والانصراف ..) والأفلام والبرامج والمباريات ... إلخ.

e.g. : - His plane leaves at 7:15.
- The match starts at 9 sharp تمامًا tomorrow.
- The launch of the spaceship is at 10 a.m. next Friday.

- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية :

After / As soon as / the moment (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) حدث أول ← مستقبل
= Before / When / By the time + (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) حدث ثان ← مستقبل
حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + till / until + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى غالبًا

e.g. : - Before Rokaya leaves the office, she will send some e-mails.
- After Rokaya sends the e-mails, she will leave the office.
- Rokaya won't leave the office until she sends the e-mails.

5 Verbs + to + inf.

agree	يوافق أن	manage	يتمكن من
arrange	يرتب أن	offer	يعرض أن
choose	يختار أن	plan	يخطط أن
decide	يقرر أن	promise	يعد أن
expect	يتوقع أن	refuse	يرفض أن
fail	يفشل فى أن	threaten	يهدد أن
help	يساعد في	want	يريد أن
hope	يأمل أن	wish	يتمنى أن
intend	ينوى أن	warn (not)	يُحذِّر أن / ألا
learn	يتعلم أن	would like	يود أن

- Hazem is planning to go to university next year. He hopes to study medicine.

6 Verbs + (inf. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل / يتضمن
consider	يفكر فى	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمانع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يتمتع	recommend	يوصي بـ/ يُحبِّذ
finish	ينهي - ينتهي	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

- You should avoid going out late at night.

7 Verb + (inf. + ing) / (to + inf.)

١ الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق فى المعني:

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.

٢ الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح فى المعني:

remember, forget, stop, try, go on + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1. remember

- **remember + to + inf.** يتذكر أن يفعل

  ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.

- **remember + gerund** يتذكر أنه فعل

  ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

2. forget

- **forget + to + inf.** ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به)

ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.

- **forget + gerund** ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء لكنه نسي ذلك)

ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

3. stop

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف عمّا يفعله لكي يفعل شيء آخر

ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.

- **stop + gerund** يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

4. regret

- **regret + (inf. + ing)** يندم على شيء قد فعله

ex. - I regret wasting my time.

- **regret + to + inf. ...** يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شيء

ex. - I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

5. try

- **try + to + inf.** يحاول أن يفعل

ex. - You tried to answer the difficult question, didn't you?

- **try + (inf. + ing)** يجرب القيام بشيء ليرى النتيجة

ex. - Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

General Exercise On Structures

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. **A:** What are you doing at the weekend?
   B: I .... some time with my friends.
   a. spend b. will spend c. am spending d. going to spend

2. I think the weather in England .... windy.
   a. shall be b. is being c. is going to be d. will be

3. **A:** I am going on holiday tomorrow. **B:** I'm sure you .... it.
   a. will enjoy b. enjoy c. are enjoying d. are going to enjoy

4. Don't pick up the phone. I .... it.
   a. am going to answer b. will answer c. am answering d. answer

5. **A:** I'm thirsty.
   B: Oh, dear. Pardon me. I .... you a cold drink at once.
   a. make b. am going to make c. am making d. will make

6. I am studying medicine. I .... a doctor.
a. am b. am being c. am going to be d. has been

7. Mum is busy cooking, I .... who is knocking at the door.
a. am seeing b. will see c. am going to see d. see

8. My brother has arranged everything. He .... to Saudi Arabia next week.
a. is travelling b. is going to travel c. travels d. will travel

9. I expect uncle Omar .... us tonight.
a. will visit b. is visiting c. is going to visit d. visited

10. Before she returns home from work tomorrow, she .... the shopping as she has planned.
a. is being done b. is going to do c. will do d. does

11. Taha has always enjoyed .... poetry.
a. to read b. reading c. to reading d. read

12. Young children like learning ....
a. sang b. sung c. singing d. to sing

13. When Karim finished ...., he was very tired.
a. runs b. ran c. to run d. running

14. Our school wanted .... more computers.
a. get b. to get c. getting d. got

15. He refused .... for what he had done.
a. apologize b. apologized c. apologizing d. to apologize

16. Films, films, films! I 'd love .... a football match now.
a. watch b. to watch c. watching d. watched

17. Let's .... a bus.
a. taking b. to take c. take d. took

18. He was ready .... in Luxor after getting married there.
a. living b. live c. to live d. of living

19. Would you mind .... me to the airport?
a. driving b. to driving c. of driving d. to drive

20. He took ....
a. smoke b. to smoke c. smoking d. to smoking

DAY 3 ① Reading Comprehension

✪ **Read the following passage and then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

You eat the right food and do plenty of exercise, so why aren't you losing any of that extra weight ? Perhaps you need to think about a daily diet and exercise plan which tells you when you should be eating, drinking and exercising in order to burn fat more quickly.

Try to start the day with a cup of green tea, green tea wakes you up and gets you ready for your **hectic** day ahead. You will feel active and at the same time your metabolism will be off to a good start, burning up those extra calories. After your hot drink, think about an early morning workout. This will help to elevate your energy levels and keep you alert all day long. The best time to start exercising is half an hour after you open your eyes.

The secret of burning fat is to eat small amounts at regular intervals throughout the day. A banana or a kiwi fruit at around eleven will give you all the energy you need. Many people find that a glass of warm skimmed milk or a cup of chamomile tea, though they sound like old-fashioned remedies, really do help you fall asleep.

1. The passage is about ....
   a. your metabolism b. green tea c. healthy diet d. unhealthy diet
2. Starting your day with a cup of green tea is important as it ....
   a. wakes your mind up b. makes your muscles relax
   c. takes you to another world d. reduce your energy
3. The underlined word "**hectic**" in the second paragraph means ....
   a. free b. idle c. calm d. busy
4. Burning fat requires eating .... amounts at regular periods.
   a. excessive b. large c. small d. enormous
5. At around eleven eating .... fruit' will give you all the energy.
   a. a kiwi b. an apple c. an orange d. a strawberry
6. .... can help you fall asleep.
   a. Fruit b. Fried fish c. A big meal d. Skimmed milk
7. What will happen if you follow a good daily diet and exercise plan ?
   a. You'll be weak and have no energy b. You will need to go to the physician
   c. Your body will gain a lot of weight d. Your body will burn fat more quickly

(محافظة الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)

2 Translation

1 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرًا مباشرًا للدخل القومى فى مصر. تمتلك مصر الكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التى يرغب السياح فى زيارتها.

a. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

b. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural palaces that tourists desire to visit.

c. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated places that tourists desire to visit.

d. Ecotourism is considered a direct source of income in Egypt. Egypt has many isolated natural place that tourists desire to visit.

(المراغة - سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

2 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and communicative member in the society.

a. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الحديث يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل متصل فى المجموعة.

b. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الماهر يساعدك على تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل اتصالى فى المجتمع.

c. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل ومتواصل فى المجتمع.

d. تطوير مهارات الاتصال الغير فعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون هذا يجعلك عضو أفضل فى المجتمع.

3 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تطور مصر السياحة البيئية لكى تحمى البيئات المختلفة بساحل البحر الأحمر وسوف تبنى فنادق جديدة تستخدم موارد وطاقة آمنة على البيئة.

a. Egypt develops eco-tourism to prevent the different environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using dangerous energy and materials for the environment.

b. Egypt develops eco-tourism to protect the different environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe energy and materials for the environment.

c. Egypt develops eco-tourism to protect the same environments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe power and materials for the environment.

d. Egypt develops tourism to protect the different governments in the Red Sea. It is going to build new hotels using safe energy and materials for the environment.

(دراو - أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

3 Writing

1. Ecotourism

Ecotourism is a type of tourism that focuses on conserving natural environments and wildlife. It aims to promote sustainable travel and minimize the negative impacts that tourism can have on the environment and local communities. Ecotourism involves, visiting ecologically-sensitive areas such as national parks, wildlife reserves, and protected areas.

One of the main benefits of ecotourism is that it promotes environmental awareness and conservation efforts. By visiting natural areas and learning about their ecological importance, tourists can gain a better understanding of the need to protect these areas. Additionally, ecotourism can provide economic benefits to local communities by encouraging sustainable development and creating jobs in tourism-related industries. However, it is important to note the ecotourism can also have negative impacts if not ecosystems, While cultural exploitation and displacement of local communities can occur if tourism is not implemented in a responsible manner. Therefore, it is essential for ecotourism to prioritize environmental and social sustainability in order to ensure the protection of natural areas and promote benefits to local communities.

2. Voluntary work

Voluntary work is a type of work that a person does without expecting payment or compensation. It is done voluntarily, out of one's own will, and usually for the benefit of others. Volunteering can be done for a variety of reasons, such as gaining experience, helping others, or giving back to the community.

Volunteering provides many benefits to the individual who volunteers. It allows them to gain new skills, meet new people, and make a positive impact on their community. Additionally, volunteering can help to improve one's mental health and well-being by reducing stress and increasing happiness. Individuals who volunteer also gain a sense of accomplishment and pride in their work, which can boost self-esteem and self-confidence. Overall, voluntary work is a great way to make a difference in the lives of others while also improving one's own personal development.

3. How to help your community

There are many ways that high school students can make a difference in their community. One way is to volunteer their time and skills for local organizations or events. Many non-profit orgainzations and community centres rely on volunteers to carry out their programs and projects. Students can participate in events like food drives, fundraising events, and awareness campaigns for various social issues. Volunteering not only helps the community but also helps students develop important skills like teamwork, leadership, and communication.

Another way to help the community is to engage in initiatives that focus on environmental sustainability. High school students can advocate for environmentally-

friendly practices in their schools and communities by recycling, reducing energy consumption, and conserving water. They can also organize and participate in clean-up activities in the community and beautification projects like planting trees and flowers. By being environmentally-conscious, students can help in creating a sustainable future for their community and the world. In conclusion, there are many ways that high school students can help their community. By volunteering, advocating for social issues, and promoting environmental sustainability, students can make a difference in the well-being of their community while building important skills for their future.

4. Teamwork

Teamwork is when a group of people come together to work towards a common goal. The members of a team must be willing to cooperate with each other, communicate effectively and use their individual strengths to achieve success. It is important for each member of a team to be aware of the importance of teamwork and to be committed to putting in their best efforts to achieve the common goal.

Effective teamwork is crucial in many areas of life, such as in sports, at school and in the workplace. In sports, a team relies on each individual's strengths to win games. At school, group projects help students learn and apply critical thinking skills, while in the workplace, working together can help a team reach their targets and goals. Great teams are able to leverage the unique skills and personalities of each member of the group. They support each other and work together towards their common goals, inspiring each member to achieve greater things. Teamwork is a powerful tool that brings people together to accomplish great things.

5. The person I admire most

The person I admire most is my mother. She is not only my parent but also my confidant and my best friend. From a very young age, I have always been in awe of her intelligence, her hard work, and her genuine kindness towards everyone in her life. My mother is an extremely intelligent woman who has always placed emphasis on education throughout my life. She has a degree in mathematics and works as an engineer, constantly solving complex problems and dealing with technical issues. She has always encouraged me to strive for academic excellence and has been there to help me overcome any challenges I have faced. Additionally, she is one of the most compassionate and understanding people I know, always willing to lend a listening ear or a helping hand to anyone who needs it. She is truly a role model for me in every way and I am grateful to have her as my mother.

6. The role of great scientists in society

Great scientists play a pivotal role in society as they dedicate their lives to expanding our understanding of the natural world. They push the boundaries of human knowledge through their research and experimentation, and create breakthroughs that can have profound impacts on humanity. Many great scientists have been responsible for discoveries that have laid the foundations for various fields, such as Isaac Newton's laws of motion and gravity in physics, Charies Darwin's theory of evolution in biology, or Marie Curie's work on radioactivity in chemistry. Through their contributions, scientists create new technologies, improve the health and well-being of people, and expand human communication and knowledge.

In addition to their scientific achievements, great scientists also inspire others and engage in public outreach efforts that help disseminate scientific knowledge to society. They encourage young people to take up scientific careers and inspire them to unlock their intellectual potential. They also play an essential role in communicating to policymakers the need for science-based public policies that improve society's general welfare. Consequently, great scientists are vital for the progress of society, and their contributions will continue to benefit humanity for generations to come.

7. An interesting story you have read

Great Expectations is a novel by Charles Dickens that tells the story of a young boy named Pip who dreams of becoming a gentleman. The story is set in early 19th-century England, and it follows Pip's journey from a lowly blacksmith's apprentice to a wealthy and respected member of society. The novel is filled with memorable characters, including the eccentric Miss Havisham, the haughty Estella, and the kind-hearted Joe Gargery.

One of the most interesting aspects of Great Expectations is the way in which it explores themes of class, ambition, and identity. Pip's desire to become a gentleman is fuelled by his encounters with other members of the upper class, including the enigmatic Miss Havisham and the mysterious criminal, Abel Magwitch. Along the way, Pip learns that wealth and status do not necessarily bring happiness, and he must confront the fact that his dreams may not be as important as he once thought. Overall, "Great Expectations" is an engaging and thought-provoking novel that is sure to leave a lasting impression on readers.

8. A review of your favourite story

King Lear is a story of betrayal, family, and madness. The play follows the titular character, King Lear, as he divides his kingdom among his three daughters based on the flattery they lavish on him. However, his youngest and most honest daughter, Cordelia, refuses to participate in the charade, resulting in her banishment from the kingdom. The betrayal and cruelty of those around him eventually cause Lear to descend into madness, leading to a devastating conclusion.

One of the most striking aspects of King Lear is its exploration of human nature and the power dynamics within families. The play delves into the complexities of familial relationships and how love and loyalty can quickly turn to deceit and betrayal.

Moreover, the character of Lear himself is a compelling study of pride and madness. His tragic downfall is a cautionary tale of how unchecked egotism can lead to devastating consequences. Overall, King Lear is an engrossing and thought-provoking story that has the power to move and challenge its readers.

9. Bullying and its impact on society / How to fight bullying

Bullying is significant issue in our society. It is repeated aggressive behaviour towards someone, which causes physical, emotional, or psychological harm. The impact of bullying can be devastating for both the victim and the bully. For the victim, it can lead to low self-esteem, depression, anxiety, and even suicide. On the other hand, for the bully, it can lead to legal troubles or emotional problems. Additionally, bullying affects the community as a whole. It creates a negative environment that can lower morale and productivity.

To fight bullying, we need to start by educating ourselves and others about its harmful effects. We also need to encourage our schools and workplaces to provide a safe environment for everyone. This includes implementing effective bullying prevention policies and providing resources for those who have experienced bullying. We should emphasize the importance of respecting others' differences and being kind to one bullying behaviour. Overall, it is crucial to address this issue and work towards creating a more inclusive and accepting society.

10. Cyberbullying

Cyberbullying is a form of bullying that occurs through digital technologies such as social media, text messaging, and emails. It can take different forms such as spreading rumors, threats, insults, or sharing embarrassing photos or videos about an individual without their consent. Cyberbullying can happen to anyone regardless of age, gender, race, or social class. It can lead to psychological, emotional, and physical harm, including anxiety, depression, low self-esteem, and even suicide. It is essential to take cyberbullying seriously and take measures to prevent and stop it.

To prevent cyberbullying, it is necessary to educate people on the consequences of cyberbullying and encourage them to be responsible digital citizens. People should also be encouraged to report any incidents of cyberbullying to the appropriate authorities.

Parents and teachers should monitor their children online activities and have open communication with them about the dangers of cyberbullying and how to respond to it. Lastly, tech companies and social media networks should have strict policies against cyberbullying and create mechanisms to help victims of cyberbullying. By taking these measures, we can create a safer and more compassionate online community where cyberbullying is not tolerated.

11. The internet pros and cons

The internet has revolutionized the way we live and work. It has democratized access to information, making it easier for people to seek knowledge and communicate with others from different parts of the world. This has proved to be especially helpful for students, who can now access online resources for their studies, allowing them to learn at their own pace and from various sources. Moreover, the internet has enabled businesses to expand globally and reach a wider audience. With e-commerce, people can buy and sell goods and services online, making it more convenient for consumers.

However, the internet also has its cons. With the increased usage of online platforms for communication and entertainment, people are becoming more isolated from their communities and their families. Moreover, with the abundance of information and the ease at which it can be shared online, there's also a lot of misinformation that can be spread easily,, which can have severe consequences. Finally, with the increase in online crime, privacy concerns are at an all-time high. People need to be cautious with their online activity and aware of the risks involved. In conclusion, while the internet has brought about many benefits, we must also be mindful of its drawbacks.

DAYS 4, 5, 6 & 7

20 Model Exams from different governorates

عشرون اختبارا من أختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate — El-Mokattam Educational Zone

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. My aunt's house is in an "isolated" area. The word "isolated" is the synonym of ....
   a. remote b. near c. funny d. interesting e. distant
2. When our team won the cup, we were over the moon. We were ....
   a. late b. happy c. miserable d. delighted e. depressed

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ali used to play football in the street when he was young, but now he ....
   a. didn't b. doesn't c. don't d. hasn't
2. The rich should .... money to charities to help the poor.
   a. steal b. rob c. donate d. take
3. Mona .... on holiday next Friday. She's arranged to do so.
   a. will go b. is going to go c. goes d. is going
4. Decision .... needs knowledge and experience.
   a. doing b. having c. making d. saying
5. Hard currency .... to Egypt by the tourists. So, we must pay attention to tourism.
   a. is brought b. brings c. is bringing d. are brought
6. We never allow .... at school.
   a. bully b. bullying c. bullied d. to bully
7. I haven't met my friend Huda .... she moved to Alexandria.
   a. for b. yet c. ago d. since
8. Magdy Yacoub is the leader of heart ....
   a. transmission b. transmit c. transplant d. transplantation
9. The teachers always .... the students who get high mark.
   a. reward b. award c. ask d. insult
10. Omar works in .... European company.
    a. an b. a c. some d. no article
11. .... I was talking on the phone, the doorbell rang.
    a. After b. While c. During d. Since
12. Good people never .... or tell lies. They are respected characters.
    a. behave b. beat c. cheat d. wear
13. My friend Eman .... in Cairo since the age of 10.
    a. lived b. was living c. lives d. has lived
14. We all .... Mr. Ahmed because he is calm and efficient.
    a. respect b. avoid c. hate d. discourage

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A good education is a system that makes students better. A good education increases children's creativity, helps them enjoy studying and helps them in their future **career**. Finland which is a European country is believed by many to have the best education system in the world, despite the fact that Finns spend little money on education and have an average of nearly 30 students per class. What makes their schools good ? They consider education itself to be the most important goal than a way to get a well-paid job. Learning is valued and teachers are respected. In fact, teaching is the number one favourite profession among Finnish teenagers. In a world where so many people want jobs with status, the Finnish example is quite different. Teachers in Finland are paid no more than their colleagues in other European countries, but they enjoy great job satisfaction. The main reason for this is the freedom they have to teach the material in any way they wish. Finnish students are pretty and happy too. There are no standardised national tests, which mean they're not under the pressure as other European students to get the highest marks they can in all-important end-of-year exams.

1. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a. jobs　b. colleagues　c. exams　d. education
2. Finland doesn't spend .... money on education.
   a. any　b. much　c. little　d. less
3. The Finnish .... learning.
   a. ignore　b. insult　c. appreciate　d. neglect
4. There is only a .... exam in Finland's education system.
   a. yearly　b. monthly　c. weekly　d. daily
5. The underlined word "**career**" can be replaced by ....
   a. occupation　b. job　c. profession　d. a , b and c
6. The writer of the passage may be a ....
   a. conductor　b. researcher　c. student　d. coach
7. According to the passage, a good education is a .... that makes students better.
   a. communication　b. law　c. technique　d. technology

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

- It is necessary to follow a diet even if you are not overweight. That is one of the applications of the wise saying "Prevention is better than cure".

a. من الضروري اتباع نظام غذائي حتى لو لم يكن وزنك زائدا. وهذا من تطبيقات القول المأثور «الوقاية خير من العلاج».

b. من الضروري اتباع نظام غذائي حتى لو لم يكن وزنك زائدا. وهذا من تطبيقات القول المأثور «المنع خير من العلاج».

c. من الضروري اتباع نظام غذائي حتى لو لم يكن وزنك زائدا. وهذا من طلبات القول المأثور «الوقاية خير من العلاج».

d. من الضروري اتباع نظام غذائي حتى لو كان وزنك زائدا. وهذا من تطبيقات القول المأثور «الوقاية خير من العلاج».

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تهتم الدولة بالشباب لذا تحرص على تأهيلهم بشكل مناسب. فشباب اليوم هم قادة الغد.

a. The country is careful about young boys, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth care tomorrow's leaders.

b. The state cares for young people, so it is keen to employ them appropriately. Today's youth are today's leaders.

c. The state cares about young people, so it is keen to ready them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

d. The state cares for young people, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. What do you think would happen if Jim and his mother didn't open the Captain's box ?
....
2. What's your opinion of Dr. Livesy ?
....
3. When did Jim realise that Silver was a pirate ?
....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

Staying healthy is an aim for many people these days. What should and shouldn't they do to achieve it ?

....

....

2 Giza Governorate — Monshaat Alkanater Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Pollution has a dangerous .... on the environment we live in
   a. impact b. select c. affection d. effect e. event
2. When something is described as "exotic", it is ....
   a. ordinary b. usual c. familiar d. unusual e. unfamiliar

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Scientists try hard to .... the ecotourism everywhere
   a. suspect b. defect c. reflect d. protect
2. While .... the report, the manager discovered some mistakes in it.
   a. was checking b. checking c. had checked d. checked
3. My uncle was a very .... man. He was ready to give money to anyone in need.
   a. traditional b. greedy c. generous d. careless

4. After she .... writing the report, she will deliver it to her boss.
   a. finish   b. is finishing   c. had finished   d. finishes
5. It's taken for .... that money is the root of all evil.
   a. granted   b. greeted   c. gained   d. graved
6. Has he really completed his education .... ? I can't believe it.
   a. just   b. yet   c. ever   d. already
7. Sending messages to frighten people is called ....
   a. phishing   b. scamming   c. cyberbullying   d. scanning
8. France is .... European country on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a. the   b. an   c. a   d. no article
9. My sister is always shy and finds it difficult to .... friends.
   a. give   b. make   c. do   d. look
10. Ten thousand pounds .... enough for this trip.
   a. is   b. are   c. were   d. have
11. Giving blood can have health............ .
   a. prestige   b. desire   c. benefit   d. admiration
12. My friend .... a small project soon. He has arranged everything.
   a. is going to start   b. will start   c. is starting   d. starts
13. She took a course to .... her skills in programming.
   a. move   b. remove   c. disapprove   d. improve
14. I hope .... high marks in the final exams.
   a. get   b. to get   c. getting   d. will get

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

When studying at school, you have the support of your family, your teachers and your friends. When you go to university, you will start to have responsibility for your own life. However, it is important never to forget the values and morals that your family and school have taught you. Show respect to older people, but also to your colleagues. Remember to be tolerant to people who are different to you. Be loyal to your friends.

When you graduate and get a job, make sure that you help and support your colleagues. It is good to be ambitious, but do not envy people who are promoted before you. Be patient and always work hard, and you will be rewarded one day.

When you are not at work, spend some time helping your community. This is an excellent way to meet new people, and to help improve the lives of others. Try to help the poor whenever you can. Most people find that voluntary and charitable work is so rewarding that **they** are happy to do it.

Your school has taught you how to pass your exams, but it has also taught you important values and morals that will help whatever career you choose.

1. The main idea of the passage is that " .... ".
   a. How to be successful after leaving school b. How to succeed at your school
   c. Tolerant people lose a lot in their life d. You will be rewarded one day
2. In your future career, ... will support you.
   a. your family and teachers b. morals and values
   c. your school and classmates d. your work colleagues
3. Being .... helps you to get on well with other people.
   a. violent b. tolerant c. shy d. ashamed
4. Remember to be tolerant of people who are ....
   a. different to your colleagues b. similar to your colleagues
   c. different to you d. similar to you
5. Young people are likely to take responsibility ....
   a. before they finish their secondary school b. when they apply for a job
   c. just after they join their primary school d. when they join university
6. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. most colleagues b. most people c. most teachers d. most friends
7. The word " .... " from the passage means the people who live in the same area.
   a. community b. morals c. responsibility d. colleagues

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a , b , c or d :

Travelling abroad helps us to get in touch with the people of other nations and know about their cultures, customs and traditions.

a. يساعدنا السفر إلى الداخل على الاتصال شعوب الدول الأخرى ودراسة ثقافتهم وعاداتهم وتقاليدهم.

b. يساعدنا السفر إلى الخارج على التواصل بشعوب الدول الأخرى ومعرفة مناهجهم وعاداتهم وتقليدهم.

c. يساعدنا السفر إلى الخارج على التوصل بشعوب الدول الأخرى ومعرفة ثقافتهم وعاداتهم ودياناتهم.

d. يساعدنا السفر إلى الخارج على التواصل بشعوب الدول الأخرى ومعرفة ثقافتهم وعاداتهم وتقاليدهم.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

يجب أن يكون لك هدف تسعى لتحقيقه فى الحياة ونموذجًا تقتدى به لكى ترى أحلامك تتحقق.

a. You must have a goal that you drive to achieve in life, and a role model to follow in order to see your dreams come true.

b. You must score a goal that you strive to achieve in life, and a rule model to follow in order to see your dreams come true.

c. You must have a goal that you strive to achieve in life, and a role model to follow in order to see your dreams come true.

d. You must have a goal that you struggle to lose in life, and a real medal to follow in order to see your dreams come true.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the Captain (Bill) choose the Admiral Benbow to stay in ?
....
2. Why do you think the eight men were searching for the papers ?
....
3. Do you think Jim was right to give the papers to Dr Livesy ? Why / Why not ?
....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The importance of tourism"

....

....

3 Alexandria Governorate — Burj Al-Arab Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Creative teachers should have a positive .... on their students.
   a. effective b. impact c. downside d. influence e. affect
2. There are exotic birds in the forest. These words give the same meaning of "exotic" except ....
   a. common b. unfamiliar c. unusual d. foreign e. ordinary

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He always has a .... expression on his face. He never looks happy.
   a. miser b. miserable c. miserly d. misread
2. The results of the exam will be pinned on the school ....
   a. playground b. dairy c. noticeboard d. activity
3. Never take anything for .... One should think about everything.
   a. graduated b. granted c. gifted d. agreed
4. Blood .... is voluntary procedure that can help save lives.
   a. donor b. career c. donate d. donation
5. It is the role of .... to give advice to young people.
   a. teenagers b. adults c. teens d. infants
6. Food .... well for my grandmother whose teeth are weak.
   a. is always cooked b. always cooks
   c. is always cooking d. has always cooked
7. Has your aunt ever been to Italy ? - Yes, she .... there a week ago.
   a. had b. has c. was d. has been

8. Mum never used to be nervous in the past but she .... now.
   a. does b. does not c. is not d. is
9. All students look forward .... an enjoyable mid-year holiday.
   a. to spend b. to spending c. spending d. spend
10. Don't drink .... milk in the bottle. It's your sister's.
   a. a b. some c. the d. no article
11. He .... a new play at the theatre tomorrow. He's got the tickets.
   a. is watching b. going to watch c. watches d. will watch
12. My friend is .... enough not to get scared of any animal.
   a. bored b. afraid c. generous d. brave
13. Does the price of the car .... sales tax ?
   a. contain b. include c. share d. consist
14. I haven't seen my uncle .... as long as I can remember.
   a. since b. when c. for d. while

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Do you often use shampoo or put ketchup on your food ? Have you ever visited a sauna ? If you think these words are originally English, you'd better think again. In fact, each of these words comes from a different language !

Shampoo, for example, is actually a word from the Hindi language in India. This word originally meant "massage." In hair shops in India, barbers massage your head while washing your hair. Over time, British people in India used this word to mean a liquid that cleans hair.

Almost everyone knows what ketchup is. People all over the world like to pour this tomato sauce on French fries or sandwiches. This word is originally Chinese (from ketchup, a fish sauce). In the 1610s, British and Dutch sailors brought this fish sauce to Europe. Over time, people changed the sauce by adding tomato **flavour** to it, but the name basically stayed the same.

Sauna, a popular type of public steam room and shower facility, comes from the Finnish language. During one of the European Olympics, athletes from Britain and Germany saw Finnish athletes use saunas after training. Later, the general public all over Europe started using this style of bathing, too. Now, we still use this word to describe all kinds of steam rooms.

English is full of many wonderful borrowed words from many languages. Perhaps English should change its name to **Eng-hin-chi-fin-fre-ger-ital-span-ish**!

1. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a. English language grammar b. English borrowed words
   c. Modern English technology d. English is a world language
2. The synonym of the underlined word "**flavour**" is ....
   a. favour b. favourite c. touch d. taste

3. Which of the following words comes from Hindi ?
   a. Sauna b. Shampoo c. Ketchup d. Massage
4. The "**ital**" in "Eng-hin-chi-fin-fre-ger-ital-span-ish" probably means ....
   a. The name of a country
   b. The name of a group of people
   c. The name of a language
   d. The English speakers in a country
5. Sauna is a word that comes from ....
   a. India b. England c. France d. Finland
6. We borrow words from other languages in our daily use to ....
   a. express the meaning
   b. learn well
   c. be good educators
   d. compare languages
7. Ketchup was first brought to Europe during the .... century.
   a. 16^{th} b. 7^{th} c. 17^{th} d. 6^{th}

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Poetry is a form of literature that uses rhythmic qualities of language. It is also a source of pleasure for the reader.

a. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذى يستخدم السمات الإيقاعية للغة كما أنه مصدر للسرور بالنسبة للقارئ.

b. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذى يستخدم الإيقاعات السمعية للغة كما أنه مصدر للسرور بالنسبة للقارئ.

c. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذى يستخدم الإيقاعات الصوتية للغة كما أنه مصدر للاسترخاء بالنسبة للقارئ.

d. الشعر شكل من أشكال الأدب الذى يستخدم السمات الإيقاعية للغة كما أنه مصدر للسرور بالنسبة للكاتب.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

الطفولة هى مرحلة المرح لذا يجب أن نشجع الأطفال على ممارسة الألعاب الأمنة التى تنمى قدراتهم ومواهبهم وتمنحهم الطاقة والقوة.

a. Childhood is the stage of fun, so we should encourage children to play games safely that develop there abilities and talents and give them energy and strength.

b. Children is the stage of fun, so we should encourage children to play safe games that develop their abilities and talents and give them energy and strength.

c. Childhood is the stage of funny, so we should encourage children to play safely games that develop their abilities and talents and give them energy and strength.

d. Childhood is the stage of fun, so we should encourage children to play safe games that develop their abilities and talents and give them energy and strength.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think Bill wanted to stay in a quiet inn ?

   ....

2. Which things do you think made the Captain easy to be recognized ?

   ....

3. If you were in Jim's place, would you go to look for the money robbed by the Captain and his men ?

   ....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"What the Egyptians eat on different occasions"

....

....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate — Banha Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. The job requires special training. The antonyms of the word "special" are .... and ....
   a. common b. unique c. normal d. strange e. significant
2. Agricultural chemicals pollute our local streams. The synonyms of the word "pollute" are .... and ....
   a. clean b. contaminate c. purify d. defile e. clarify

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The .... is changing because of global warming.
   a. destination b. conservation c. environment d. design
2. My mother was preparing lunch while my sister .... the laundry.
   a. was done b. did c. is doing d. was doing
3. The effects of organ .... surgery can seem miraculous.
   a. transmit b. transplant c. transfer d. transport
4. It's known that the human body .... 206 bones.
   a. had b. was c. has d. have
5. She works hard to .... a good salary.
   a. do b. earn c. win d. beat
6. It's four years .... he played tennis.
   a. since b. when c. for d. while
7. There is a close .... between pain and tension.
   a. line b. communication c. connection d. prediction
8. Gloves .... used to protect hands from cuts and burns.
   a. is b. are c. was d. have
9. He failed to .... control of his temper during discussion.
   a. do b. play c. make d. keep
10. I .... you if you don't stop making noise.
    a. will punish b. punish c. would punish d. punishing
11. She heard the crunch of tyres on the .... driveway.
    a. gravel b. funnel c. barrel d. saddle
12. I look forward .... employees from other countries.
    a. to meet b. to meeting c. meeting d. meet

13. The argument was settled out of court by mutual ....

a. appearance b. change c. agreement d. attack

14. .... money is spent on education.

a. A lot b. Much c. Many d. Few

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A friend in need is a friend indeed. Has that wise saying been proved to you ? Did any of your close friends ever stand beside you at the times of sorrow, distress or the times of joy ? **That** has become a needle in a haystack in our society because most people struggle to climb on the shoulders of others At the very beginning of a child's life, he makes friends with a lot of peers who are maybe a mixture of good or bad. He can't perfectly judge or decide who to continue keeping or losing friendship with due to his young age. By the time he becomes older, the number of friends decreases to a number that isn't more than the number of one hand fingers. It all depends on what extent they are faithful, selfless and honest to each other. Friendship has become a rare value. All mankind always search for it as it's mainly a human instinct.

Friends can help you enjoy good times and provide support in bad ones. They prevent isolation and loneliness and increase your sense of belonging. Friends on social media are mostly false friends because you only contact with them and limit themselves in comments or emojis to congratulate and condole instead of hastening to stand right next to you. My advice is to carefully select your friends.

1. The writer thinks that true friendship has become ....

a. common b. widely spread c. uncommon d. hateful

2. The expression "climb on the shoulders of others" shows that some friends are ....

a. true b. brave c. online d. selfish

3. According to the passage, the older you get, the .... friends you have.

a. more b. braver c. same d. fewer

4. Man always needs friends because ....

a. he has much free time. b. man is sociable by nature.
c. he is greedy by nature. d. he needs to laugh at others.

5. The writer advised us to ....

a. leave our friends at times of sorrow. b. decrease the number of our friends.
c. correctly choose our friends. d. correctly use social media.

6. It's known that friendship can prevent us from feelings of ....

a. loneliness and isolation. b. relief and relaxation.
c. fear and horror. d. calmness and excitement.

7. The underlined pronoun "**That**" refers to ....

a. sorrow b. joy c. true friendship d. distress

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Egypt has rich history and culture dating back thousands of years, starting with the pharaonic culture, then Christianity and Islam. Egypt is among the earliest civilizations.

a. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية مستمرة إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.

b. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.

c. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة مكلفة يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أبكر الحضارات.

d. تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وتقدم غنى يعود تاريخها إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتماما عظيمًا لتحسين معيشة المواطنين فى كل أنحاء مصر وخاصة الريف والعشوائيات، وتعتبر مبادرة حياة كريمة خير دليل على ذلك.

a. The Egyptian organisations pay great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all cities of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

b. The Egyptian government pays great intention to improving the lives of employees in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

c. The Egyptian government pays great attention to moving the lives of citizens in upper Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

d. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. The blind man and his fellows were thieves. Do you agree ? Why/Why not ?

....

2. Why do you think Dr Livesey thought they were not safe any more ?

....

3. If you were Jim, would you go onto the island with the pirates ? Why /Why not ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The role of parents in our life"

....

....

5 Sharkia Governorate — Belbeis Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Unfortunately, our manager has recently fired two of our colleagues. The antonyms of The word "fire" are .... and ....
   a. hire b. support c. fix d. employ e. buy
2. My room is always messy because of my little children. The synonyms of the word "messy" are .... and ....
   a. tidy b. disappointed c. disordered d. unhappy e. untidy

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Doctors confirm that there is a close .... between smoking and cancer.
   a. communication b. contact c. collection d. connection
2. .... the death of her husband, I have never seen her smiling.
   a. Since b. For c. So far d. When
3. The sustainable growth is the only solution. The antonym of the word "sustainable" is ....
   a. permanent b. lasting c. temporary d. continual
4. Ten million pounds .... too much money for this villa.
   a. are b. has c. is d. have
5. After my business failed, I .... a lot of money to the bank.
   a. owed b. owned c. arranged d. borrowed
6. He made great achievements .... his leadership of the company.
   a. while b. as c. when d. during
7. .... is the practice of tricking internet users into revealing personal information.
   a. Scamming b. Phishing c. Virus d. Bullying
8. My uncle .... as a contractor for 10 years. Now, he is a businessman.
   a. has worked b. has been working c. worked d. works
9. Novels, poems and plays are different forms of ....
   a. literacy b. literary c. illiteracy d. literature
10. After she .... the shopping, she'll go home to cook lunch.
    a. has done b. had done c. is doing d. will do
11. Many young people are attracted by the .... of working for a top company.
    a. prestige b. generosity c. sense d. greed
12. My sister - in - law is pregnant. She .... a baby.
    a. is going to have b. is having c. will be having d. will have
13. Messy has a very .... style in playing football. No one is like him.
    a. common b. unique c. adaptable d. isolated
14. I really regret .... up late. I missed the first lecture.
    a. to stay b. staying c. stayed d. for staying

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

My profession was chosen by my father. My idea was to take up medicine, but as I was dependent on my father, I was forced to obey his instructions. He sent me to college and there, for four years I studied hard. My efforts were at last rewarded when one day my father informed me that I had been successful at my examinations and were now a qualified lawyer.

Months passed and my few cases were ordinary ones. They were not important enough to bring my name before the public with satisfactory results. My expenses exceeded my income and I began to feel that I wouldn't become a distinguished lawyer.

One day I was told that an important man wanted me to defend his son who was accused of **murder**. I had not been introduced to the accused man but had only met his father. Imagine my horror when I discovered that he was my good friend of college days. I fought harder than ever to save his life but he was **convicted**. From that day I refused to continue my profession as a lawyer and my decision was final.

1. In his early years, the writer's desire was to become a/an ....
   a. doctor b. author c. lawyer d. engineer
2. A suitable meaning of the word "**murder**" is ....
   a. cheating b. forgery c. killing d. stealing
3. The writer's choice of his job was .... his will.
   a. for b. against c. pro d. in favour of
4. The word " **convicted**" in the last paragraph is the same as ....
   a. innocent b. decent c. guilty d. honest
5. The writer was .... when he discovered that the accused person was his good friend of college days.
   a. surprised b. happy c. pleased d. ready
6. "The writer's expenses exceeded his income". That means his expenses were .... his income.
   a. equal to b. less than c. fewer than d. more than
7. The writer's final decision was to ....
   a. continue as a lawyer b. defend the accused
   c. stop being a lawyer d. become a doctor

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Sports play a vital role in forming one's personality. They teach him how to be independent and self - confident

a. تلعب الرياضة دورًا مهنيًا فى تشكيل شخصية الفرد فهى تعلمه التحرر والثقة بالغير.

b. تلعب الرياضة دورًا حيويًا فى تشكيل شخصية الفرد فهى تعلمه الاستقلالية والثقة بالنفس.

c. تلعب الرياضة دورًا حيويًا فى تغيير شخصية الفرد فهى تعلمه المهنية والثقة بالنفس.

d. تلعب الرياضة دورًا مهنيًا فى تشكيل شخصية الفرد فهى تعلمه التواكل والثقة بالنفس.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ليس من المستحيل أن يحقق الإنسان طموحاته إذا كان لديه صبر وإرادة قوية. إنها صفات هامة لتحقيق النجاح.

a. It's not impossible for a person to achieve his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. These are important qualities to achieve success.

b. It's not important for a person to achieve his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. These are important qualities to achieve success.

c. It's not impossible for a person to achieve his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. These are important quantities to achieve success.

d. It's not impossible for a person to achieve his ambitions if he has patience and a strong well. These are important qualities to achieve success.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Black Dog come to the inn ? What was the captain's reaction on seeing him ?

....

2. In your opinion, what were the papers the captain hid about ?

....

3. What was Silver's secret plan on the Hispaniola ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"A story you read with a good moral"

....

....

6 Menofia Governorate — Minouf Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Global warming has a bad .... on the environment.
   a. effect b. cause c. affect d. reason e. impact
2. Sameer is a very honest person. The word "honest" is the synonym of ....
   a. novel b. reliable c. available d. trusted e. crazy

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'd rather you .... your time.
   a. not wasting b. didn't waste c. not to waste d. haven't wasted
2. Blood .... is one of the most dangerous diseases nowadays.
   a. pleasure b. leisure c. treasure d. pressure
3. Amr .... a cup of coffee every morning; it's his habit.
   a. used to drink b. is used to drinking c. drink d. always drank
4. He's over the moon. He .... the final match.
   a. was winning b. won c. had won d. has won

5. My father travelled abroad, so I felt really .... for the first month.
a. only b. lonely c. alone d. scary

6. While .... , the thief tried to escape.
a. is arresting b. was arresting
c. being arrested d. was being arrested

7. It's .... for granted that it hardly rains in Egypt in summer.
a. given b. written c. taken d. paid

8. There are no clouds. I think it ....
a. is going to rain b. will rain c. isn't going to rain d. won't rain

9. I usually .... my pen friends by both phone and email.
a. commute b. connect c. communicate d. contact

10. King Lear was a great ....
a. successful b. succeed c. success d. successfully

11. I really regret .... a lot of money; I am penniless.
a. spending b. to spend c. to spending d. for spending

12. Let's .... some windsurfing tomorrow.
a. make b. go c. play d. do

13. France is a country in .... European Union.
a. a b. an c. the d. no

14. We should motivate youth to .... money to charities.
a. borrow b. owe c. donate d. own

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people have jobs that are not very interesting, but a lot of people have to work at night, and this is very difficult. When everybody else is getting ready to go out, they have to go to work, and this puts a lot of psychological stress on them. It's also not very healthy because the human body is designed to be **active** in the day and to rest in the dark. If this cycle is changed, it can have a bad effect on a person's health. So, why do people do night shifts ? Nowadays a lot of jobs have to offer a 24-hour service, like hotels, delivery companies, some supermarkets open all night and all day, call centers and hospitals. It's true that some people only need a few hours of sleeping at night but the majority need eight hours. Humans are most active in the middle of the day, and when they are least able to concentrate and be efficient is between 2 am and 4 am.

This is the worst time to drive, or to do anything that needs concentration. The body finds it very difficult to adapt to the opposite cycle. Things aren't likely to get better in the future because more businesses are working 24 hour cycles to keep in step with our 24 hour society.

1. The main idea of this passage is about ....
a. working late isn't useful
b. helping people change their way of life
c. describing the importance of work
d. how working at night can be harmful

2. The writer thinks that you need ....
   a. abbreviation b. concentration c. stress d. investigation
3. According to the passage, we can infer that ....
   a. it's difficult to change your sleeping needs.
   b. people need to sleep early between 2 am and 4 am.
   c. people sleep better in the early morning.
   d. everybody needs the same amount of sleep.
4. We can summarize the last paragraph that in the future ....
   a. fewer people will work during the day.
   b. some jobs will always be done at night.
   c. many people will stop working during the day.
   d. nobody will work at night.
5. The underlined word "**active**" can be replaced with ....
   a. inactive b. different c. upset d. energetic
6. The writer thinks that the majority of people need .... hours of sleep.
   a. 8 b. 24 c. 16 d. 2
7. People who have to work night shifts struggle with ....
   a. the quality of sleep b. more sleeping time
   c. emotional stress d. psychological stress

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

International tourism brings in foreign currency, provides employment and helps peoples to understand each other.

a. إن السياحة القومية تجلب العملات الأجنبية وتوفر فرص العمل وتساعد الناس على فهم بعضهم البعض.
b. إن السياحة الدولية تجلب العملات الجارية وتوفر فرص العمل وتساعد الشعب على فهم بعضهم البعض.
c. إن السياحة الدولية تجلب العملات الأجنبية وتوفر فرص العمل وتساعد الشعوب على فهم بعضهم البعض.
d. أن السياحة الدولية تجلب العملات الأجنبية وتوفر البطالة وتساعد الناس على فهم بعضهم البعض.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يسعى المتطوعون إلى خدمة مجتمعهم المحلى دون مقابل. حيث إن رغبتهم فى مساعدة الآخرين وتطوير مجتمعهم هو مصدر سعادتهم.

a. Volunteers seeks to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop its community is the source of their happiness.
b. Volunteers seek to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop its community are the source of their happiness.
c. Volunteers seek to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop their community is the source of their happiness.
d. Volunteers seeks to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop their community is the source of their happiness.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. If you were Jim, would you leave your mother and go with the others to search for the treasure ?

....

2. Why do you think they decided to go to the fort ?

....

3. Why do you think the captain didn't want any sailors to see him ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Pros and cons of modern technology"

....

....

7 Gharbia Governorate — Zefta Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Ali is miserable as he has got low marks in the exam. The synonyms of "miserable" are .... and ....
   a. cheerful b. sad c. happy d. depressed e. pleased
2. Eating a lot of sweets is a major cause of tooth decay. The antonyms of "major" are .... and ....
   a. leading b. minor c. warming d. secondary e. important

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Cars that run on electricity are .... They don't pollute the atmosphere.
   a. friendly environmentally b. environmentally friendly
   c. unfriendly environmentally d. non-environmentally friendly
2. What a .... contribution for Dr Magdi Yacoub in the field of heart surgery!
   a. familiar b. greedy c. unique d. limited
3. The girl's eyes .... up as a result of her long cry.
   a. swallowed b. extended c. refreshed d. swelled
4. Good education and wealth give people .... in society.
   a. shame b. prestige c. weakness d. greed
5. The .... of the ship were all so friendly and helpful.
   a. staff b. pirates c. clue d. crew
6. We .... our success to our parents and teachers.
   a. own b. belong c. owe d. occur
7. I'm tired as today's work has been ....
   a. peaceful b. helpful c. stressed d. stressful

8. Just as Nabil .... his room, his father was watching a match.
   a. was cleaning b. had cleaned c. cleans d. cleaned
9. Health .... by smoking that causes many fatal diseases.
   a. had affected b. affects c. is affected d. has affected
10. Mum .... to the shops. Let's see what she bought for us.
   a. is going b. goes c. has gone d. has been
11. Nagwa likes playing .... guitar before sleeping.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
12. My friend managed to get a lot of useful information but I haven't got ....
   a. some b. many c. any d. few
13. Don't raise your voice in class or I .... you.
   a. will punish b. punish
   c. am punishing d. am going to punish
14. My friend admitted .... his time before the exam.
   a. to waste b. wasting c. of wasting d. waste

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

My cousin Khalid was looking around for a second-hand car. He saw an advertisement in the paper for a Mercedes for thirty thousand pounds. He rang up and arranged to go and have a look. The car was new but Khalid told the woman who showed him the car that he would think. He didn't think very long. An hour later, he returned and asked the woman some questions. He asked to try it and she gave him the keys. The engine started at the first touch. He tested everything.

He paid the money and took the car. Khalid couldn't believe it was all legal. He said he was sure there must be something **fishy** about it and he didn't want to put himself in trouble. So instead of going home, he drove to the police station and he asked the policemen to check his car papers.

The policeman told him that everything is legal but the woman hadn't told him everything. Her husband was taken dead out of the car and so, no one wanted to buy **it**. Khalid wished he had never known about that. He felt uncomfortable. Although he was able to make a profit, he still regrets buying it.

1. Khalid was looking for a ....
   a. new car b. smart car c. used car d. first-hand car
2. Khalid could find the car he wanted in ....
   a. the car market b. the newspaper c. front of his house d. a car catalogue
3. My cousin Khalid wanted to think as he thought ....
   a. it was expensive b. the woman was mad
   c. it was illegal d. it was new

4. The woman wanted to sell the car as ....
   a. she wanted to buy a new one
   b. she wanted to buy a cheaper one
   c. it wasn't good
   d. she was pessimistic about it
5. The underlined word "**fishy**" means ....
   a. expensive
   b. with a lot of fish
   c. suspicious
   d. fell in water
6. The papers of the car were ....
   a. untrue
   b. false
   c. illegal
   d. legal
7. The underlined word. "**it**" refers to the ....
   a. newspaper
   b. key
   c. car
   d. police station

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political and educational fields especially in the Middle East. So, we should try to help restore this role.

a. كان لمصر دور فرعى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية خاصة فى الشرق الأوسط لذلك يجب أن نساعد على استعادة هذا الدور.

b. كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية خاصة فى الشرق الأوسط لذلك يجب أن نساعد على تصحيح هذا الدور.

c. كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية خاصة فى الشرق الأوسط لذلك يجب أن نساعد على استعادة هذا الدور.

d. كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية خاصة فى الشرق الأوسط لذلك يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى تخزين هذا الدور.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

أصبح تعلم اللغة الانجليزية جزء هام من التعليم فى كثير من الدول وذلك لأنها لغة دولية تساعد فى كثير من الأغراض العلمية والترفيهية.

a. Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries because it's a national language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

b. Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries because it's an international language that helps in many cultural and entertaining purposes.

c. Learning English has become an important part of education in many companies because it's an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

d. Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries because it's an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the people of the village refused to help Jim and his mother ?

....

2. What do you think would have happened if the blind man and his men had found the boy and his mother ?

....

3. In your opinion what were the papers the captain hid about ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Spending your free time in useful things"

....

....

8 Dakahlia Governorate — Meniat Alnasr Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Ali is miserable. The synonyms of the word "miserable" are .... and ....
   a. sad b. happy c. pleased d. joyful e. depressed
2. I wouldn't have known anything unless she had .... me the truth.
   a. talked b. informed c. spoke d. told e. said

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I haven't gone to the zoo since I .... a child.
   a. have been b. was c. will be d. am being
2. .... watching the final match on TV , I received an email from my pen friend.
   a. While b. During c. Just as d. As
3. The little boy ran away quickly when he realized that some dogs were .... him on his way home.
   a. attaching b. tracking c. attracting d. parking
4. I think .... exams we have next week will be very difficult.
   a. no article b. an c. the d. much
5. Those bags look heavy. I .... you carry them.
   a. will help b. am going to help c. am helping d. help
6. The farmer used a big .... to keep the water which he gave to his goats.
   a. crutch b. pirate c. barrel d. parrot
7. .... with my friends is really important to me. I talk to them as often as I can.
   a. Security b. Communication c. Possibility d. Password
8. It's wrong to .... in exams. It is always a bad behavior.
   a. cheat b. read c. answer d. write
9. .... means trying to hurt or cause problems to the internet users.
   a. Cyberbullying b. Cyber-cafe c. Cyber-net d. Spiderman

10. Dried grass that people use as food for horses is ....
   a. hey b. pay c. lay d. hay

11. I really regret .... this old car; it has caused me a lot of troubles.
   a. buying b. have bought c. to buy d. to buying

12. The tourist industry has had a big .... on our economy.
   a. affection b. affect c. impact d. event

13. I always do my homework before I .... television.
   a. watched b. am watching c. watch d. will watch

14. We all like the .... of James Bond because he is adventurous.
   a. novels b. poems c. rhymes d. character

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Gold is a rare metal with a bright colour. It is easy to be shaped, and it is not affected by air or water. As gold is so soft it can be beaten into very thin sheets, and it can be also drawn out into very thin wires. Gold is, therefore, an excellent material for making beautiful objects such as jewelry. Moreover, the ancient Egyptians **prized** gold so much that they believed that gold belonged only to their kings, so they buried many precious gold objects in their pharaohs' tombs, and we can see many of them in the museums today. The Egyptians were very clever goldsmiths as they could beat gold into sheets. The gold which is used to make jewelry is usually mixed with other metals. This not only makes the gold jewelry cheaper, but also harder. Because it was scarce and therefore **valuable**. Gold was formerly used as money. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks. They can change this gold into money by selling it to other countries. About two thirds of all the gold in the world is kept in this way. Gold is usually buried deep underground. It can be also found in rivers and seas. But it would cost far more money be extracted than the gold is worth.

1. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks so as to ....
   a. keep it away from thieves b. change them into money
   c. buy jewelry d. beat them

2. The word "**prized**" means ....
   a. rewarded b. handed c. valued d. sold

3. Gold is ....
   a. common b. liquid c. scarcely d. rare

4. Gold is used to make ....
   a. jewels b. vehicles c. baggage d. rugs

5. The pharaohs .... gold in their tombs.
   a. bullied b. disappeared c. buried d. purified

6. Gold can be beaten into sheets due to its ....
   a. rareness b. beauty c. shape d. softness

7. The underlined word "**valuable**" is synonymous with ....
   a. invaluable b. precious c. valueless d. scarcely

4 **a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

There is no "I" in "TEAM" is a sports saying. It teaches us that success is achieved by putting the group above individual glory.

a. يوجد «أنا» فى الفريق تلك مقولة رياضية تعلمنا إن النجاح يحقق بوضع المجموعة فوق مجد الفرد.

b. لا يوجد «أنا» فى الفريق تلك مقولة رياضية تعلمنا إن النجاح يحقق بوضع الفرد فوق مجد المجموعة.

c. لا يوجد «أنا» فى الفريق وهى مقولة رياضية فهى تدرس لنا إن النجاح يحقق برفع المجموعة فوق الفرد.

d. لا يوجد «أنا» فى الفرق وهى مقولة رياضية، فهى تعلمنا إن النجاح يحقق بوضع المجوعة فوق مجد الفرد.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يجب أن نحترم آبائنا ومعلمينا لأن العلم وحده لا يصنع إنسانا ناجحا فى الحياة.

a. We should respect our parents and learners as science only doesn't make a successful man in life.

b. We should respect our parents and teachers as science only doesn't make a successful man in life.

c. We should respect our parents and teachers as science only makes a successful man in life.

d. We should respect our grandfathers and parents because science only doesn't make a successful man in life.

5 **Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think people in the village refused to help Jim and his mother ?

....

2. How does the author use the captain's mysterious character to build suspense ?

....

3. What does the interaction between the Captain and Black Dog suggest about their past ?

....

6 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

"Modern means of communication have made our life much easier"

....

....

9 Beheira Governorate — El-Delengat Educational Directorate

1 **Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. This nature reserve is famous for its unique animals. "Unique" is an antonym for .... and ....

a. common b. small c. normal d. strong e. cheap

2. Scientists are trying to eliminate the .... of burning oil on the environment.

a. safety b. respect c. effect d. impact e. security

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Heba wants to be a .... to protect animals and plants.
   a. tourist　b. capitalist　c. conservationist　d. extremist
2. The museum is open daily .... for Fridays.
   a. expect　b. except　c. accept　d. exist
3. I always .... a bike when I was young.
   a. ride　b. rides　c. rode　d. riding
4. As my car .... , I did some shopping.
   a. was being repaired　b. was repairing　c. was repaired　d. is being repaired
5. My parents always .... me when I do well at school.
   a. bully　b. defend　c. praise　d. raise
6. Don't go out until your work ....
   a. does　b. did　c. will do　d. is done
7. From the sad look on her face, I .... that there is something wrong.
   a. reviewed　b. recognised　c. realised　d. reduced
8. Have you finished your task .... ? Wow ! You are very quick.
   a. yet　b. so far　c. already　d. since
9. This question is .... You can leave it.
   a. compulsory　b. easy　c. social　d. optional
10. England and France are .... countries.
   a. a　b. an　c. no article　d. the
11. Self- .... is necessary to the success of any person.
   a. manage　b. manager　c. managed　d. management
12. I can't go out with you tonight because I .... my brother at the airport.
   a. will meet　b. meet　c. am meeting　d. going to meet
13. Climate change is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved.
   a. issues　b. rules　c. roles　d. reviews
14. The old man forgot .... the medicine, so he wanted to take it again.
   a. to take　b. taking　c. take　d. took

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognised that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success . In every situation where you are in a group, you will need a skilled leader. All groups need leaders and all successful groups have good leaders. Groups without leaders always break down. Members of a leaderless group often begin to feel dissatisfied and frustrated. There are often arguments and tensions between - people as there is nobody to keep the goals clear.

Some people are natural leaders. True leaders are born and you can spot them. **They** are people who combine toughness, fairness and humour. Although a lot of people agree that there are some natural-born leaders, most people now recognize that leadership can also be taught in training courses which use activities and techniques to develop a range of qualities which are necessary to be a good leader, such as self-confidence, calmness and intelligence. They also need to be able to work under pressure. Lastly, and probably most importantly, good leaders need to be sensitive, sociable and be able to get on with a wide range of people. Good leadership is the ability to influence others and allow all members of the group to contribute.

1. Successful leaders shouldn't be ....
   a. fair b. wise c. selfish d. experienced
2. Most people now recognize that they can .... leadership.
   a. borrow b. offer c. export d. learn
3. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a. true leaders b. arguments and tensions
   c. training courses d. leaders' works
4. The verb from the noun "leadership" is ....
   a. leader b. lead c. led d. lend
5. Groups without leaders always ....
   a. put out b. break down c. look down d. put down
6. Members of leaderless groups often feel ....
   a. satisfied b. pleasant c. fair d. dissatisfied
7. A good leader keeps the goals ....
   a. clean b. satisfied c. clear d. far

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

To reduce air pollution, we must avoid burning wood and rubbish. We must use public transport and encourage people to walk and cycle.

a. لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة كما لا يجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ولا نشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات.

b. لكى نقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة ويجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس فى السير وإعادة التدوير.

c. لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمام ويجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدرجات النارية.

d. لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة ويجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تطوير مهارات الاتصال الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون وهذا يجعلك عضوا أفضل وأكثر تواصلًا في المجتمع.

a. Developing recent communication skills helps you to understand what other are saying. This makes you a better member in the society.

b. Developing ineffective communications skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and more communicative member in the society.

c. Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and more communicative member in the society.

d. Developing effective communication skills helps you to misunderstand what others are saying. This makes you a better and more communicative member in the society.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think Jim was right when he took the papers from the box ? Why / Why not ?

....

2. Captain Smollett was a wise man. Do you agree ? Why / Why not ?

....

3. Do you think the Captain's box has something important ? Why / Why not ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"What should we do to be healthy ?"

....

....

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate — El-Reyad Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Your question isn't clear. Can you clarify what you want ? The antonyms of the word "clear" are ....

a. ambiguous b. pure c. bright d. obvious e. obscure

2. "I admire your idea." In this sentence, the word admire' is a synonym of ....

a. praise b. approve c. disapprove d. appreciate e. prove

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We all should .... to charities because they help the poor.

a. donate b. steal c. invent d. earn

2. I .... Aswan yet. I'd like to visit it one day.

a. visited b. haven't visited c. have visited d. visited

3. My brother .... smoke when he was young but now he no longer does.

a. used b. used to c. is used to d. was used to

4. When Mona passed her exams, she was ....
   a. wretched b. depressed c. over the moon d. miserable
5. Elephants are extremely .... in East Africa.
   a. interested b. endangered c. annoyed d. frightened
6. Never stop .... if you want to have a great future.
   a. to try b. try c. trying d. being tried
7. Our parents give us everything they have to make us happy. We .... to them a lot.
   a. take b. debt c. own d. owe
8. Next week, she .... 16 years old.
   a. is going to be b. going to be c. will be d. is being
9. I haven't seen him since he .... a child.
   a. is b. has been c. been d. was
10. It is important to respect the .... of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours.
    a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation
11. He has been doing three jobs to get out of ....
    a. debit b. doubt c. count d. debt
12. My grandfather was a great .... When we were children, we would listen to his stories for hours.
    a. storyteller b. poet c. playwright d. dancer
13. I bought .... mp3 which can be connected to the car via Bluetooth.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. Some people's .... in money gets them to do illegal things.
    a. interesting b. interested c. interests d. interest

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

"Necessity is the mother of invention" is a famous common proverb which means that our needs always motivate our minds to create new things in order to manage well with a world full of speed changes.

Man's needs have often directed him to discover the natural resources around him, and to make with his own hands the things he wants.

Thus, he made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops. Those tools played an important part in establishing civilisation. Food, clothing and shelter are still considered to be man's basic needs. The progress of technology has enabled man to satisfy all these needs. It has helped him to take ideal steps in developing agriculture, industry and public services.

Thus, we are now enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation. When civilisation developed and man lived in organised societies, he found himself in need of more than his necessities; Education is next to food in importance because it is the only way to acquire experience and the qualifications necessary to earn a living.

Education changed the style of living and led to higher thinking levels. He invaded space. He invented the computer. No wonder that man has great abilities which will enable him to create more inventions in the future.

1. According to the passage, education is of great importance because ....
   a. it gives us experience and making a living
   b. it is next to food in importance
   c. it is a natural resource before us
   d. the tools played a role in our civilisation
2. Man needed more than his necessities when he ....
   a. needed tools
   b. lived in organised societies
   c. discovered natural resources
   d. made the things he wanted
3. According to the passage, the need for collecting the crops led man to ....
   a. plant huge areas of land
   b. invent agricultural tools
   c. buy machines
   d. rent peasants to help him
4. In the last paragraph, invading the space and inventing the computer is an evidence that ....
   a. man spends a lot of money
   b. man has extraordinary abilities
   c. science is obtainable
   d. the space exploration is not impossible
5. The main idea of the passage is " .... ".
   a. Necessities can be postponed
   b. Conditions create inventions
   c. The needs are motivated by possibilities
   d. The agriculture and civilisation
6. Man invented the computer because ....
   a. it was easy
   b. the education led to this
   c. the internet was free
   d. sending emails was a necessity
7. Which sentence is NOT mentioned in the passage ?
   a. Man created new things in order to manage well with the world.
   b. Man made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops.
   c. Man made wars which destroyed the planet.
   d. All of us are enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation.

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Our youth are considered the backbone of our society and the main factor of achieving progress. So the state should pay much attention to them and solve all their problems.

a. يعتبر شبابنا العمود الفقرى للمجتمع والعمل الأساسى لتحقيق التقدم لذلك لا يجب على الدولة أن تمنحهم اهتمامًا كبيرًا وتحل جميع مشكلاتهم.

b. يعتبر شبابنا العمود الفقرى للمجتمع والعامل الأساسى لتحقيق التقدم لذلك يجب على الدولة أن تمنحهم اهتماما كبيراً وتحليل جميع مشكلاتهم.

c. يعتبر شبابنا العمود الفقرى للجميع والعامل الأساسى لتحقيق التقديم لذلك يجب على الدولة أن تمنحهم اهتماما كبيرًا وتحل جميع مشكلاتهم.

d. يعتبر شبابنا العمود الفقرى للمجتمع والعامل الاساسى لتحقيق التقدم لذلك يجب على الدولة أن تمنحهم اهتمامًا كبيرا وتحل جميع مشكلاتهم.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

من المهم لنا جميعًا أن نحاول التبرع بالدم والتطوع للعمل فى المؤسسات الخيرية. هذه العمل التطوعى يساعد مجموعة كبيرة من الفقراء والمحتاجين وتؤدى إلى الاستقرار.

a. It is important for us all not to try to donate blood and volunteer to help the charitable organizations. This voluntary work helps a small group of the poor and needy and leads to stability.

b. It is important for us all to try to donate blood and volunteer to help the charitable organizations. This voluntary work helps a big group of the poor and the needy and leads to stability.

c. It is unimportant for us all to try to donate blood and volunteer to help the charitable organizations. This voluntary work helps a big group of the poor and the need and leads to stability.

d. It is important for us all to try to make blood and volunteer to help the charitable organizations. This voluntary work helps a big group of the rich and the needy and leads to stability.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the Captain didn't want any sailors to see him ?

....

2. What do you think would have happened if the blind man and his men had found the boy and his mother ?

....

3. Do you think Trelawney and Jim's first impression on Captain Smollett was right ? Why ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Different forms of pollution and how to fight them"

....

....

11 Damietta Governorate — Al-Roda Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. I dislike living in busy streets. "Busy" here is similar in meaning to ....

a. narrow b. crowded c. quiet d. big e. noisy

2. I need some time to .... after such tiring work.

a. prepare b. escape c. relax d. strive e. rest

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Cutting down trees can be a threat to the ....
   a. deforestation b. pollution c. environment d. destination
2. Tourists should avoid .... coral reefs as they are our heritage.
   a. damaging b. benefiting c. planting d. growing
3. Success in life is based .... hard work and determination.
   a. in b. on c. at d. from
4. Farmers usually care about their .... They feed them well.
   a. livestock b. villagers c. planets d. kettles
5. People who .... the law must be punished.
   a. follow b. break c. make d. do
6. Make sure to .... your essay before handing it to the teacher.
   a. revise b. advise c. realize d. recognize
7. For your own .... , please wear your seatbelt.
   a. honesty b. hiking c. safety d. facility
8. .... seeing the police, the thief ran away.
   a. Because b. On c. Although d. If
9. Azza is so punctual, she .... comes late.
   a. doesn't b. won't c. will d. never
10. The thief .... and taken to prison.
    a. arrested b. was arresting c. was arrested d. has arrested
11. While .... home, an accident happened.
    a. went b. was going c. had gone d. I was going
12. My uncle has lived abroad .... 2010.
    a. for b. since c. ago d. in
13. He has .... English name, but he is really Egyptian.
    a. the b. no article c. a d. an
14. Look; this wall has got a big crack. It .... down.
    a. will fall b. is falling c. is going to fall d. will be fallen

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans who send them letters and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses.

The rulers of the world, kings, presidents, politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far and wide. Anyhow, fame is not easily obtained but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

But the life of famous people is not an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact they are unhappy, and **their time is arranged for them**. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about

their private lives and this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desires to get fame.

1. Famous people may appear happy ....
   a. although they are not wealthy
   b. despite being far from happiness
   c. in spite of having time arranged for them
   d. because of their tricks
2. Famous people feel very angry when ....
   a. they are well known all over the world
   b. they have fans
   c. their private lives are talked about
   d. their photos are hung on walls
3. The underlined sentence "**their time is arranged for them**" most likely means that famous people ....
   a. have free time as they like
   b. are free to do what they like
   c. are not always busy and have spare time
   d. aren't free to do what they want
4. According to the passage, the life of famous people is ....
   a. an easy one
   b. full of hardships and duties
   c. full of fun and pleasure
   d. an enjoyable one
5. The best title of the passage is ....
   a. Sportsmen
   b. Champions
   c. Film stars
   d. Famous people
6. A great number of people desire to get fame. This means they .... to get fame.
   a. want
   b. detest
   c. meet
   d. mistake
7. Fame is not easily .... but it is the result of hard work and suffering.
   a. desired
   b. achieved
   c. corrected
   d. played

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

All parents should have an effective role in encouraging their children to share in their country's development.

a. يجب أن يكون لكل الآباء دور فعال فى تشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركه فى تنمية بلدهم.

b. يجب أن يكون لكل الآباء دور فعال فى تشجيع رجالهم للمشاركه فى تنمية بلدهم.

c. يجب أن يكون لكل الآباء دور فعال فى تشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركه فى تقوية بلدهم.

d. يجب أن يكون لكل الآباء دور هام فى تشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركه فى تنمية بلدهم.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تحاول الحكومة جاهدة إصلاح وتطوير المناطق العشوائية بهدف توفير حياة كريمة للناس.

a. The government dries hard to perform and develop slums with the aim of providing a decent life for people.

b. The government tries hardly to inform and develop slums with the aim of providing a decent life for people.

c. The government tries hard to reform and develop slums with the aim of providing a decent life for people.

d. The government is try hard to form and develop slums with the aim of providing a decent life for people.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the Captain didn't want any sailors to see him ?

....

2. How do you think Jim felt when he learned about Long John Silver's true character ?

....

3. Do you agree that Flint was an evil man ? Why ? / Why not ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

12 Port Said Governorate — Port Fuad Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. "Be careful the forest is full of giant snakes. "The antonyms of the word "giant" are ....
   a. tiny b. huge c. small d. gigantic e. large
2. Scam is synonym of ....
   a. trek b. trick c. founder d. fraud e. trial

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered.
   a. Ecosystem b. Tourism c. Wildlife d. Ecotourism
2. Zahi Hawass has detailed .... of Ancient Egypt and its history.
   a. knowledge b. foundation c. conservation d. news
3. People can .... to the Egyptian Food Bank to help others.
   a. steal b. donate c. support d. call
4. It is important to .... the instructions of your doctors to be better.
   a. relax b. join c. tell d. follow
5. To .... is to break into a computer illegally.
   a. hack b. download c. upload d. lock
6. I have a small .... in my garden where I plant some vegetables.
   a. rhyme b. farm c. field d. plot
7. What .... Karim do when he cut his finger ?
   a. did b. do c. does d. done
8. Massai men .... to become guardians as they understand lions.
   a. is chosen b. are chosen c. will choose d. choose

9. Your mother .... to the market. Take the shopping bags to the kitchen.
   a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been
10. I think you can't sit in this row as there isn't .... room for you.
   a. no article b. the c. an d. a
11. Hany .... to France tomorrow. He's got the ticket.
   a. will be travelled b. will travel c. travels d. is travelling
12. He stopped .... because it affected his health badly.
   a. to smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. b & c
13. Snow has prevented .... with the outside world for three days.
   a. security b. safety c. collection d. communication
14. Farmers sometimes give their animals .... to eat especially in winter.
   a. milk b. meat c. hay d. current

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

With the development of modern civilization, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen can't work without private cars . Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is a big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. Getting on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi doesn't solve the problem as taxi drivers transport passengers according to rules **they** themselves set . They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive or crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours streets are so blocked that it takes an age for the driver to get to his destination .

1. Taking a public bus is a problem because ....
   a. it is expensive b. getting on and off the bus is difficult
   c. it is very slow d. bus drivers drive carelessly
2. The underlined pronoun **"they"** refers to ....
   a. taxi drivers b. taxis c. buses d. doctors
3. Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep .... the long wait at the bus stop.
   a. up b. away from c. on d. down
4. When are cars, according to the writer, exposed to robbery ?
   a. When they aren't locked. b. When they aren't covered.
   c. When they are left in garages. d. When they are left in the street.

5. The best title for the passage is "............".
   a. The advantages of private cars
   b. The disadvantages of private cars
   c. Private cars are a mixed blessing
   d. Avoiding private cars
6. Reaching your destination during rush hours ....
   a. takes a while
   b. takes too long
   c. is easy
   d. isn't a problem
7. The increase in population in capitals .... they joy of having a car.
   a. ruins
   b. improves
   c. increase
   d. eases

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Wasting water is a big problem that has appeared recently. Some careless people use it foolishly without any sense of duty or responsibility.

a. إن إهدار الماء مشكله كبيره ظهرت حديًا. بعض الناس المهملين لا يستخدمون الماء بحماقه بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسؤلية.

b. إن إهدار الماء مشكله كبيره ظهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس المهملين لا يستخدمون الماء بحماقه بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.

c. إن إهدار الماء مشكله كبيره ظهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس الحريصين لا يستخدمون الماء بحماقه بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسؤلية

d. إن إهدار الماء مشكله كبيره ظهرت حديثًا. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقه بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسؤلية

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يلعب المعلمون دورا حيويا فى حياه الطلاب من خلال التفاعل وجها لوجه. المعلم ليس فقط مجرد مصدر للمعلومات بل هو أيضًا قائد ووالد وصديق.

a. Teachers play a vital role in the lives of students through face - to - face interaction. A teacher is not only a source of information, but he is also a leader, a parent and a friend.

b. Teachers play big rule in the lives of students through face - to - face interaction. A teacher is not only a source of information, but he is also a leader, a parent and a friend.

c. Teachers play a vital role in the career of the students through face - to - face interaction. A teacher is not only a source of information, but he is also a leader, a parent and a friend.

d. Teachers play a vital role in the life of the students through face - to - face action. A teacher is not only a source of information but he is also leading, a parent and a friend.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Jim proved to be a kind and caring son. Do you agree ? Why/ Why not ?

....

2. First impressions can sometimes be incorrect. Does this apply to Jim's first impression about captain Smollett ? Explain.

....

3. What do we find out about the character of Silver when he went onto the island ?

....

6 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

"The job you would like to do in the future"

....

....

13 Ismailia Governorate — Abu Suwir Educational Directorate

1 **Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. Some students study the ancient history of Egypt. The antonyms of "ancient" are .... and ....
   a. odd b. aged c. recent d. old e. modern
2. That's rather a unique wedding dress. The synonyms of the word "unique" are .... and ....
   a. particular b. normal c. unusual d. ordinary e. illegal

2 **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. How fast .... when you hit the other car ?
   a. did you drive b. were you driving c. have you driven d. had you driven
2. I don't think we .... on the moon.
   a. won't ever live b. ever live c. will ever live d. are ever living
3. The Komodo dragon is .... to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else.
   a. unique b. special c. private d. giant
4. Mariam placed her name on the list of .... as she likes working for charities.
   a. veterans b. experts c. professionals d. volunteers
5. Stop .... noise; your father is asleep.
   a. to make b. make c. making d. to making
6. Everyone of us has a role to play to .... our community.
   a. ruin b. destroy c. support d. rise
7. It .... rains in July, does it ?
   a. sometimes b. never c. used to d. does not
8. I .... you an apology - I'm afraid I forgot to send Amanda that report.
   a. owl b. roar c. own d. owe
9. I am so happy; I .... a medal for writing poetry.
   a. had won b. have won c. won d. was winning
10. Many people feel .... when they start a new school.
   a. stressed b. stress c. stressful d. stressfully
11. As .... as I'm concerned, Maradona is the best football player ever.
   a. long b. much c. far d. many

12. .... has changed a lot in the last twenty years.
   a. A life   b. Life   c. The life   d. Live

13. I .... Mr Ayman's name and found out he is very famous.
   a. googled   b. connected   c. linked   d. hacked

14. Money .... into the area by tourists.
   a. brings   b. is brought   c. are brought   d. bring

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The honeybee is a very unusual kind of insect. Unlike other insects, which live alone, the honeybee lives as a member of a community. These bees live together in what is known as a bee colony.

The head of the colony is called the queen bee. She is larger than the rest of the bees. Her main task in the colony is to lay eggs. Most of the other bees are the worker bees. These bees collect nectar and pollen from flowers. The nectar that is carried by the worker bees is deposited on the hive and then converted into honey. The worker bees also help look after the young bees.

As soon as the eggs hatch, the worker bees feed the young bees with pollen and nectar. The third type of bee found in the colony is the drone or male bee. The main task of such a bee is to mate with a new queen.

The queen bee has a lifespan of about three years. During this period, she would have laid more than half a million eggs. When the queen bee is dying, a new queen would be groomed. This new queen would eventually take over the duties of the old queen when the **latter** dies.

Bees are small but they play a big role in the ecosystem. **They** play an important role as a pollinator for crops. It is vital for food security of human beings. Hence, we must control our activities and help protect honeybees.

1. The thing that distinguishes the honeybee from other insects is that ....
   a. it can't live apart from its community.   b. its sting is stronger and deadly.
   c. it can't live among trees and flowers.   d. it can live alone.

2. The main mission of the queen bee in the colony is to ....
   a. look after the young bees   b. collect nectar and pollen
   c. kill the worker bees   d. lay eggs

3. The life of honeybees can teach us ....
   a. co - operation   b. how to live among trees
   c. selfishness   d. laziness

4. The word "**latter**" is the antonym of the word ....
   a. last   b. second   c. former   d. next

5. What is the best title for the passage ?
   a. How honey is formed   b. Honeybees' life
   c. Bees and other insects   d. Bees and our ecosystem

6. The underlined word "**They**" refers to ....
   a. bee queens b. worker bees c. male bees d. bees
7. When the queen bee dies, ...
   a. the other bees will be sad and cry
   b. the rest stay without a queen
   c. another one takes over
   d. there aren't any more nectar

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Our deserts are one of the chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income.

a. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم اهتمامًا بالغا يمكننا نقص دخلنا القومى.

b. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الفرعية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم اهتمامًا بالغا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى.

c. تعد صحارينا واحدة من الموارد الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم اهتمامًا بالغا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى.

d. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم اهتمامًا بالغا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة هذه الأيام فى مجالات متنوعة كالطب والهندسة الوراثية. كما تستخدم ايضا فى استكشاف الفضاء، التعليم، الاتصالات وصناعة الافلام.

a. Nowadays modern technology is used in different fields such as medicine and genetic engineering. It is also used in exploring space, education, communications and movie making.

b. Nowadays modern technology is used in different fields such as medicine and genetic engineering. It is also used in discovering space, education, communications and move making.

c. Nowadays modern technology are used in different fields such as medicine and genetic engineering. It is also used in exploring space, education, communications and movie doing.

d. Nowadays modern technology is used in different fields such as medicine or genetic engineering. It is also used in exploring space, education, connections and movie making.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the Captain wanted to stay in a quiet inn ?

   ....

2. Why do you think the eight men didn't care much about Captain Bill's death ?

   ....

3. Jim's luck saved him from Silver and his men. Explain.

   ....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

14 Beni Suif Governorate — Ihnasia Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Global Warming is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved.
   a. issues b. rules c. roles d. problems e. reviews
2. We fixed a camera to monitor the gate of our house. The word "monitor" means ....
   a. give b. wish c. observe d. look e. watch

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I hate using social media. They .... me.
   a. content b. please c. deny d. stress
2. Mohamed Salah's .... is "Happiness Maker".
   a. surname b. first name c. nickname d. pen name
3. .... means the beliefs and traditions of a group of people.
   a. Religion b. Culture c. Law d. Habits
4. Most of the world's .... live in cities.
   a. production b. pronunciation c. pollution d. population
5. Internet criminals .... into government organizations and steal information.
   a. pack b. hack c. mock d. sack
6. I think he is .... because he looks pale.
   a. well b. safe c. unwell d. kind
7. "Lap" rhymes .... tap.
   a. on b. for c. in d. with
8. When I was a student, I .... to school every day.
   a. cycle b. used to cycling c. was used to cycle d. cycled
9. My little sister .... meals outdoors.
   a. hasn't b. never has c. isn't had d. has never
10. Nothing interesting .... since I last saw him.
    a. has happened b. happen c. have happened d. was happened
11. The police .... looking for the murderer.
    a. are b. is c. has d. have
12. You mustn't lose .... hope.
    a. a b. an c. the d. no article
13. Ahmed .... go out until he finishes his homework.
    a. didn't b. isn't c. won't d. wouldn't
14. I suggest that Sami .... a club.
    a. join b. joined c. has joined d. will join

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People say that health is the most important thing in life, but it seems to have the least

significance in their **actual** lives. We see many people in modern society undermining their health through lack of exercise and having unbalanced diets. Smoking and junk food also aggravate this phenomenon. Another new factor adding to many people's health problems is stress. Experts say we can't avoid stress as long as we live in this ever-changing world. So, what counts is not how to avoid it, but how to reduce it and cope with it effectively.

On the other hand, modern medical researchers still suspect our genes have considerable control over our destiny. This means our health is still in the hands of God. However, that doesn't necessarily mean we can't do anything about our bodies. **Rather**, we should continue to stay fit by temperate living-no smoking, a nutritional diet and adequate exercise. That way, to some extent, we can make up for the genetically undesirable aspects in our physicality.

1. What is the main idea of the text ?
   a. The importance of health b. The impact of genes on health
   c. The causes of poor health d. The ways to cope with stress
2. The underlined word "**Rather**' could be replaced by ....
   a. instead b. because c. usually d. moreover
3. What is the effect of smoking on health ?
   a. improves it b. no effect c. worsens it d. causes it
4. What is the impact of unhealthy diets on health ?
   a. positive b. neutral c. negative d. irrelevant
5. What is the effect of adequate exercise on health ?
   a. improves it b. no effect c. worsens it d. destroys it
6. What is the solution to the problem of poor health ?
   a. Modern medicine. b. Healthy habits c. Genetic engineering d. Moving house
7. The closest antonym to the underlined word "**actual**" is ....
   a. positive b. final c. factual d. potential

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The state is doing great projects to achieve sustainable development. However, overpopulation continues to threaten the country's resources and its desire to achieve progress.

a. تقوم الدولة بعمل مشاريع عظيمة لتحقيق التنمية المستدامة، ولكن الزيادة السكانية تستمر فى تهديد موارد الدولة ورغبتها فى تحقيق التقدم.

b. تقوم الدولة بعمل مشاريع عظيمة لتحقيق التنمية المستدامة، ولكن زيادة التلوث تستمر فى تهديد موارد الدولة ورغبتها فى تحقيق الأهداف.

c. تقوم الدولة بعمل مشاريع عظيمة لتحقيق التنمية المستدامة، ولكن النشاط السكانى يستمر فى تهديد موارد الدولة ورغبتها فى تحقيق التقدم.

d. تقوم الدولة بعمل مشاريع فائقة لتحقيق التنمية المستدامة، ولكن الزيادة السكانية تستمر فى تهديد موارد الدولة ورغبتها فى تحقيق التقدم.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ترجع الدراسات أسباب ظهور التنمر فى المدارس إلى التغيرات التى حدثت فى المجتمعات الإنسانية واختلال العلاقات الإنسانية فى المجتمع.

a. Studies attribute the reasons for the emergence of bullying in schools to the changes that occurred in human societies and the disruption of family relations in society.

b. Studies refer the results why the emergence of bullying in schools to the changes that happened in human environments and the disruption of family relations in society.

c. Students attribute the reasons why the emergence of bullying in schools to the changes occurred in humane societies and the distribution of family relations in society.

d. Studies refer the reasons for the emergence of buying in schools to the challenges that happened in humane societies and the distribution of family relations in society.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. If you were Jim Hawkins, would you agree to set off a dangerous trip like that ? Why ? Why not ?

....

2. What do you think of Long John Silver ?

....

3. I dream of eating good food again, what does this tell you about Gun's life on the island ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How to be Successful"

....

....

15 Fayoum Governorate — Etsa Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. "Egypt is famous for its unique and wonderful ancient monuments." The antonyms of "unique" are .... and ....

a. normal b. small c. strong d. common e. cheap

2. "Shopping online has a lot of advantages." The synonyms of "advantages" are .... and ....

a. demerits b. pros c. reason d. drawbacks e. merits

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Parents play an important .... in forming the character of their children.

a. reel b. rail c. rule d. role

2. The teacher drew a diagram showing how the .... flows through the heart.

a. blood b. health c. wish d. water

3. Our team .... to win the match; we were better and controlled the game well.
   a. reversed   b. deserved   c. reversed   d. observed
4. The naughty boy insists on .... the school rules at every opportunity.
   a. protecting   b. obeying   c. breaking   d. applying
5. It is taken for .... that money is the root of all evil.
   a. granted   b. greeted   c. denied   d. refused
6. Lying, ... , deception and dishonesty will never make you successful.
   a. inventing   b. cheating   c. disability   d. delivering
7. It was ...., they just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money.
   a. malware   b. bullying   c. cyberbullying   d. a scam
8. "Obeying his doctor's advice, my father no longer smokes." This means that ....
   a. my father is a smoker   b. smoking is my father's habit
   c. my father used to smoke   d. my father stopped to smoke
9. While .... to school, I .... one of my old friends.
   a. was walking / met   b. walking / was meeting
   c. was walking / will met   d. walking / met
10. The River Nile .... through the Sudan and Egypt.
   a. runs   b. ran   c. run   d. is running
11. Manager : Hello, I can't find you in your office! Where are you ?
   Clerk : Sorry, sir. I .... to the sales department to finish some important documents.
   a. have been   b. have gone   c. had gone   d. was
12. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct ?
   a. I haven't seen him for the last time we met in the club.
   b. I haven't seen him since the last time we have met in the club.
   c. I didn't see him since the last time we met in the club.
   d. I haven't seen him since the last time we met in the club.
13. France is .... European country. It is a symbol of beauty all over the world.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
14. Please remember .... your digital camera; we will need it for our journey.
   a. bringing   b. bring   c. will bring   d. to bring

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Some people say they have no memory at all. But of course, we all have memories. Our memory tells us who we are and helps us to make use in the present of what we have learnt in the past. In fact, we have different types of memory. For example, our visual memory helps us **recall** faces and places. Some people have a strong visual memory, they can remember exactly what they have seen, for example, pages of a book, as a complete picture.

Our verbal memory helps us remember words and figures we may have heard but not seen written : items of a shopping list, a chemical formula, dates or a recipe.

With our emotional memory, we recall situations or places where we had strong feeling, perhaps of happiness or unhappiness. We also have special memories for smell, taste, touch and sound, and performing physical movements.

We have two ways of storing any of these memories. Our short-term memory stores items for up to thirty seconds. Our long-term memory, on the other had, may store items for a lifetime. Older people, in fact, have a much better long-term memory than a short-term one. They may forget what they did only a few hours ago, but they have the clearest memory of when they were very young.

You might **assume** that the more we remember, the better. In fact, forgetting is as important as remembering. If we remembered all our unhappy times, we would become mentally ill.

1. The best title for the passage is ....
   a. The visual and verbal memory
   b. The short-term memory
   c. Man's memory
   d. The long-term memory
2. Older people have ....
   a. a much better short-term memory than long-term
   b. a much better long-term memory than short-term
   c. a long-term memory as good as a short-term memory
   d. nothing to remember
3. Forgetting unhappy times shows that ....
   a. forgetting is as important as remembering
   b. unhappy times are easy to forget
   c. happy times are easy to remember
   d. remembering all things is a kind of disease
4. The word "**assume**" means ....
   a. to deny the fact
   b. to disagree with
   c. to neglect the fact
   d. to accept as true
5. Our short-term memory stores items for up to .... seconds.
   a. 80
   b. 30
   c. 40
   d. 50
6. The memory that helps us recall faces and places is called a .... memory.
   a. visual
   b. verbal
   c. short-term
   d. long-term
7. The synonym of the word "**recall**" is to ....
   a. forget
   b. ignore
   c. bring to mind
   d. sleep

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Our beloved country is in need of every one's efforts. We must work hard to produce and export. We will save hard currency and achieve welfare.

a. بلدنا الحبيبة فى احتياج مجهودات كل فرد. لابد أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونستورد. سوف ننفق العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

b. بلدنا الحبيبة فى احتياج مجهودات كل فرد. لابد أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونصدر. سوف نوفر العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

c. بلدنا الحبيبة فى احتياج مجهودات كل فرد. لابد أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونصدر. سوف ننفق العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

d. بلدنا الحبيبة فى احتياج مجهودات كل فرد. لابد أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونستورد. سوف نوفر العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لقد يسر الإنترنت التواصل بين الناس بشكل أعظم بكثير من ذى قبل. ولكننا يجب أن لا نغفل الجوانب السلبية للإنترنت حفاظًا على أخلاقنا وثقافتنا.

a. The internet has changed communication between people in a much greater way than before. But we must not overlook the positive aspects of the internet in order to preserve our morals and culture.

b. The internet has facilitated communication between people in a greater way than before. But we must not overlook the positive aspects of the internet in order to update our morals and culture.

c. The internet has developed communication between people in a much greater way than before. But we must not overlook the negative aspects of the internet in order to preserve our morals and culture.

d. The internet has facilitated communication between people in a much greater way than before. But we must not overlook the negative aspects of the internet in order to preserve our morals and culture.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Jim said, "The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare to ask him for more".

   Why do you think Jim's father didn't dare to ask the Captain for money ?

   ....

2. Captain Smollett was a very reliable leader. Do you agree ? Why ?

   ....

3. Jim said about Ben Gun, "decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested".

   If you were Jim, would you trust Ben Gun completely and tell him your story from the start ?

   ....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How we can make good use of technology in our life"

....

....

16 Minia Governorate — Bani Mazar Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. On surfing the internet, I came across a good .... which helped me to improve my English.

   a. app b. connection c. scam d. hack e. application

2. The plane caught fire and crashed into the ocean, killing all 100 passengers ....

   a. abroad b. on board c. broad d. aboard e. broaden

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I always .... the door before leaving my house.
   a. look b. lock c. leak d. lack
2. People who .... the law must be punished.
   a. do b. make c. follow d. break
3. While doing some research on an isolated island, the scientist found some .... species of lizards.
   a. stressed b. crowded c. unique d. educated
4. The poor young man was sent to prison as he .... a lot of money to the bank.
   a. won b. gained c. earned d. owed
5. Sending messages to frighten people is called ....
   a. cyberbullying b. phishing c. scamming d. scanning
6. Mo Salah .... many young people to become professional footballers like him.
   a. aspired b. inspired c. conspired d. respired
7. The horrible accident was the .... of high speed.
   a. cause b. reason c. result d. affection
8. Yesterday evening, I .... for my English test when all the lights went out.
   a. revising b. was revised c. was revising d. had revised
9. Mr Adel .... early at the weekends to have enough sleep.
   a. usually gets up b. gets up always c. don't often get up d. never gets up
10. I haven't travelled out of my home town .... my birth.
    a. before b. since c. for d. ever
11. I need .... advice about how to stay safe online.
    a. a b. an c. the d. some
12. A : Did you go to yesterday's party ? B : No, I ....
    a. didn't invite b. wasn't invited c. invited d. hadn't invited
13. I remember .... this young man before when I was in Alexandria.
    a. meeting b. to meet c. met d. to meeting
14. Look ! There's a sandstorm. I .... the windows.
    a. am going to close b. will be closing c. will close d. close

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Online education is a type of learning in which students get instructional content via the internet. It is a flexible and convenient method of learning that has grown in popularity in recent years. Online education allows students to attend classes without going to a school building. The online community means students can share their opinions and- discuss what they are learning with other students and their teachers. Courses use advanced video technology so that students can speak, make notes on the screen and write on a shared whiteboard with other students.

There is a variety of reasons for choosing online education. Some students live in remote areas, and it is difficult to travel long distances every day. Others have been the victims of bullying at school. The flexibility of this way of learning means that it also

appeals to students who have special needs, and students who are unable to go to a traditional school.

One of the advantages of online education is that students study at their own <u>pace</u> and place and they can choose the best time of day to study. All you need is a computer with high speed connection to the internet and an ability to learn.

1. The best title for the passage is "............".
   a. Staying safe online
   b. Online education
   c. Bullying at school
   d. Improving education at schools
2. Online education is a ....
   a. way of traditional learning
   b. modern school building
   c. group of students who work together
   d. way of learning using technology
3. Which of these students might prefer to learn online ?
   a. a bully
   b. a disabled student
   c. a student who likes travelling
   d. a student with no connection to the internet
4. Which of these is important if you want to learn online ?
   a. Working quickly
   b. Being able to fix a computer
   c. Having a fast internet connection
   d. Continuing to go to school
5. .... participate in online education.
   a. Writers b. Students c. Teachers d. B & C
6. The underlined word "**pace**" can be replaced by ....
   a. speed b. journey c. walk d. run
7. The synonym of "pros" in the text is ....
   a. abilities b. advantages c. paces d. advances

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Sport is important because it helps to teach students different skills like leadership, patience, teamwork, and social skills.

a. إن الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مهارات مختلفة مثل القيادة والصبر وجهد الفريق والمهارات الاجتماعية.

b. إن الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مهارات مختلفة مثل القيادة والصبر والعمل الجماعى والمهارات الاجتماعية.

c. إن الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مهارات مختلفة مثل القيادة والمثابرة والعمل الجماعى والمهارات الاجتماعية.

d. إن الرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم الطلاب مواهب مختلفة مثل التقييد والصبر والعمل الجماعى والمهارات الاجتماعية.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

أظهرت الأبحاث الحديثة أن التفاؤل والأفكار الإيجابية أفضل صحتنا.

a. Recent researches have shown that optimism and positive thoughts are better for our life.

b. Recent researches have shown that pessimism and positive thoughts are better for our health.

c. Recent researches have shown that optimism and negative thoughts are better for our health.

d. Recent researches have shown that optimism and positive thoughts are better for our health.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. The box that was with the Captain seemed to be valuable. Do you agree ? Why ? Why not ?
 ....
2. If you were Jim, would you go on a dangerous journey to get a treasure ? Why ? Why not ?
 ....
3. Who do you think discovered the evil plan of Long Silver and his gang ? How ?
 ....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

17 Sohag Governorate — El-Maragha Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. The Egyptian team won the final match. We were over the moon. We were ....
 a. late b. happy c. delighted d. miserable e. depressed
2. Stress has a negative effect over man's health. The synonyms of "effect" are ....
 a. affection b. direction c. impact d. influence e. result

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She .... her success to her parents and teachers.
 a. own b. owes c. belongs d. occurs
2. Scientists predict that people .... on the moon in the future.
 a. will live b. are going to live c. lived d. has lived
3. .... on "Next" when you have finished filling out the form.
 a. Select b. Click c. Load d. Download
4. We should encourage water ....
 a. conversation b. conversion c. conservation d. contamination
5. Does your grandfather have any long-term .... problems ?
 a. health b. healthy c. healthier d. healthily
6. Maths .... my favorite subject when I was at school.
 a. was b. were c. has been d. are
7. England is .... European country which I'd like to visit.
 a. no article b. an c. any d. a
8. Farmers should .... good use of their local materials.
 a. make b. do c. take d. give
9. Esraa has learned English .... more than eleven years.
 a. since b. ago c. for d. when
10. .... programs have damaged all the data on my computer.
 a. Malware b. Scan c. Phishing d. Software
11. I promised my daughter .... her a new mobile phone.
 a. will buy b. buying c. to buy d. would buy

12. According to the timetable, the train .... at 11 o'clock.
  a. leaves b. is leaving c. will leave d. has left
13. The customs and traditions of a group of people mean their own ....
  a. community b. society c. brainstorm d. culture
14. A .... is the person who works for no money.
  a. donor b. volunteer c. merchant d. customer

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Robinson Crusoe's real desire was to be a sailor. His parents wouldn't want him to go to sea because they believed he was still young and there were many dangers at sea. They wanted him to be a doctor. Robinson Crusoe was tired of waiting and decided to run away with some friends on a big ship. One afternoon high waves crashed on the ship. Robinson remembered all the dangers his parents talked about, suddenly a big wave came and pulled Robinson off the ship and into the water. He swam on and on until he came to an island.

When the sun came up the next day, Robinson was on the beach but no one was there. He knew that he had to stay on the island alone. He cut down some trees so as to make a house to protect himself against wild animals.

Years went by. His clothes became more and more **ragged**. He made some new clothes from goat skins. After that, he made an umbrella to keep the rain and the sun off him. Now Robinson had been on the island for many years.

At last, Robinson saw a ship coming towards the island. He lit fire to signal the ship. The captain of the ship saw the fire and carried Robinson Crusoe back to England.

1. Robinson wanted to become a/an ....
  a. teacher b. sailor c. doctor d. engineer
2. Robinson stayed on the island ....
  a. with his friends b. with his family c. alone d. with his wife
3. His parents were .... his desire.
  a. for b. against c. supporting d. encouraging
4. He .... his parents.
  a. obeyed b. disobeyed c. helped d. killed
5. The word .... is an antonym to wild.
  a. dangerous b. old c. young d. tame
6. The underlined word "**ragged**" means ....
  a. light b. heavy c. worn out d. clean
7. According to the passage Robinson was a/an .... boy.
  a. polite b. good c. adventurous d. dangerous

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Donating blood can not only help many people who are in need but it has some health benefits of the donors as well.

a. التبرع بالدم لا يساعد فقط العديد من الأشخاص الذين يحتاجون إليه، ولكنه يحمل بعض الفوائد الصحيحة للمتبرعين أيضًا.
b. التبرع بالدم يساعد فقط العديد من الأشخاص الذين يحتاجون إليه، ولا يحمل بعض الفوائد الصحيحة للمتبرعين.
c. التبرع بالدم يمكن أن يساعد العديد من الأشخاص الذين لا يحتاجون إليه، وليس لديه أى فوائد صحيحة للمتبرعين.
d. التبرع بالدم يمكن أن يكون ضارًا للعديد من الأشخاص الذين يحتاجون إليه، وليس لديه أى الفوائد صحيحة للمتبرعين أيضًا.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

إن ثروة مصر الحقيقية ليست الموارد الطبيعية التى هى غنية بها، ولكن مواردها البشرية خاصة الشباب.

a. The true health of Egypt is not its rich natural resources, but its human resources, especially the youth.

b. The true wealth of Egypt is not its poor natural resources, but its human resources, especially the youth.

c. The true wealth of Egypt is not its rich natural resources, but its human resources, especially the youth.

d. The true wealth of Egypt is not its rich natural resources, but its human resources, especially the old .

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the captain didn't want any sailors to see him ?

....

2. In your opinion, what was Silver's secret plan ?

....

3. In your opinion, why was Jim's father worried about the captain's stories ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How voluntary work affects the Egyptian society positively"

....

....

18 Qena Governorate — Abu Tisht Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Don't read this book. It is boring. The antonyms of the word "boring" are ....
   a. common b. interesting c. usual d. normal e. exciting
2. He was over the moon. This means he wasn't ....
   a. disappointed b. boring c. happy d. pleased e. sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A .... is the person who looks after the environment.
   a. resident b. president c. conservationist d. conversation
2. A criminal is a person who .... a crime.
   a. gives b. makes c. commits d. lends
3. She stopped .... some milk for the hungry baby.
   a. buying b. to buying c. to buy d. buys
4. I used my brother's camera while mine ....
   a. is repaired b. is being repaired
   c. was repairing d. was being repaired

5. Some young men .... the old lady of her jewellery last night.
 a. took b. gave c. stole d. robbed
6. The little bird .... by its mother till it can fly.
 a. feeds b. is fed c. fed d. is eaten
7. You can't expect to .... so much money from painting. You should find another job.
 a. earn b. gain c. win d. beat
8. Nothing like this has .... happened to me.
 a. never b. ever c. since d. yet
9. Habiba is a sociable person. She finds it easy to .... new friends.
 a. do b. communicate c. listen d. make
10. .... computer is an important invention.
 a. No article b. A c. An d. The
11. Don't visit this website because the .... and viruses on it might infect your computer.
 a. malware b. swimmer c. sportswear d. hardware
12. I .... to London next Friday. Everything is arranged.
 a. will travel b. travel c. am travelling d. travels
13. Ali doesn't have .... money.
 a. many b. much c. few d. some
14. His grandmother died .... 90.
 a. age b. aged c. when d. old

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The stars are beautiful in the night sky. They are far away, farther away than most people can imagine. Even though they are light years away, they can still light up the sky. For thousands of years, people have been interested in stars. **They** have been used as fortunetellers, calendars and maps. Travellers often used the stars to help them find their way. Before there was electricity, the stars and moon were the brightest things in the night sky. People spent hours staring up and wondering what the little twinkling lights were. Back then, the stars were easier to see because there weren't any other lights at night. Not many ancient people **realised** that the sun was a star. The sun and the moon were thought of as father and mother of earth in some ancient cultures. The stars were thought of as lesser gods or the souls of people who had died.

Greek philosophers, 2300 years ago, started to try and unravel the mystery. A man named Anaxagoras thought that the sun was a giant ball of metal burning in the centre of our universe. He was thrown in jail and sentenced to death because this idea conflicted with people's religious beliefs. People did not stop trying to understand the sun . Scientists still study it today. Large telescopes take pictures of the sun almost every day as we try and learn more about it.

1. What would be the best title for the passage ?
 a. The sun b. Stars in the sky
 c. The exploration of space d. History of the Greek

2. Why were stars useful to people ?
   a. They kept people safe
   b. They were beautiful
   c. They showed people the way
   d. They burned up dangerous gases
3. The underlined word "**realised**" is closest in meaning to ....
   a. built
   b. destroyed
   c. unearthed
   d. understood
4. Why was Anaxagoras thrown in jail ?
   a. He did not believe in God.
   b. He was not a good philosopher.
   c. His ideas were not the same as other people's.
   d. He found out that the sun was the same as all the other stars.
5. .... ancient people realised that the sun was a star.
   a. Little
   b. Many
   c. Few
   d. More
6. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a. fortunetellers
   b. years
   c. stars
   d. people
7. The stars were thought of as ....
   a. cultures
   b. fortunetellers
   c. lights
   d. lesser gods

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

You should be ambitious. You must always have some targets and a role model to motivate you to do your best to accomplish all your dreams in life.

a. يجب أن تكون طموحًا. فلابد أن يكون لديك دائمًا مجموعة من الأحلام ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أهدافك فى الحياة.

b. يجب أن تكون صالحًا. فلابد أن يكون لديك دائمًا مجموعة من الأحلام ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذلك قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أحلامك فى الحياة.

c. يجب أن تكون طموحًا. فلابد أن يكون لديك دائمًا كمية من الأموال ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق بعض أحلامك فى الحياة.

d. يجب أن تكون طموحًا. فلابد أن يكون لديك دائمًا مجموعة من الأهداف ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أحلامك فى الحياة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

الماء أصل الحياة لذا يجب أن نحافظ على كل قطرة ماء ، فلا تفسد البيئة بتلويث مياه النيل.

a. Life is the source of water. We should save every drop of it; so don't spoil the environment by polluting the water of Nile.

b. Water is the origin of life. We should keep water and protect the environment by not polluting the water of Nile.

c. Water is the source of life. We must keep every drop of it; so we should protect environment by not polluting the water of the Nile.

d. Water is the origin of life. We should keep every drop of it; so don't spoil the environment by polluting the water of the Nile.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think it was good that the crew knew about the treasure ? Why ? Why not ?

....

2. How do you know that Jim and Ben Gun trusted each other ?

....

3. Why do you think the Captain always asked if any sailors visited the inn ?

....

6 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

"How to benefit from your spare time?"

....

....

19 Luxor Governorate — Tud Educational Directorate

1 **Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. Treasure is something ....
   a. inexpensive b. harmful c. expensive d. valueless e. valuable
2. He was over the moon. This means he was ....
   a. very disappointed b. very shocked
   c. very happy d. very pleased e. very sad

2 **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Could you do me a .... and go for me ?
   a. favourite b. favour c. duty d. help
2. He suggested .... to the club.
   a. goes b. went c. going d. to go
3. Literature comes in .... forms : poetry, novels, etc.
   a. vary b. different c. many d. variety
4. That's the phone. I .... answer it.
   a. will b. am going to c. would d. could
5. Criminals can .... into organizations and cause major security problems.
   a. go b. explode c. hack d. destroy
6. All driverless cars will be ....
   a. electricity b. electric c. electrical d. electrically
7. We always .... people who work hard.
   a. insult b. award c. ask d. reward
8. France is .... European country.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
9. We should .... the livestock, which are killed by different animals.
   a. protect b. cook c. fire d. eat
10. Mohamed Salah is famous for his speed and .... to score goals.
    a. able b. ability c. disable d. disability
11. .... blood can protect people if they have been injured.
    a. Donate b. Donating c. Donated d. Donates

12. I have passed this test ....

a. yet b. already c. just d. ever

13. While I .... home, I saw an accident.

a. was driving b. were driving c. driven d. driving

14. The sun .... rises from the west.

a. doesn't b. always c. never d. no longer

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

With the development of modern civilization, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less, Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a **private** car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules, they themselves set. They sometimes ask for more money than the deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours, streets are so blocked that it takes a driver age to get to his destination.

1. Taking a public bus is a problem because ....

a. it is expensive b. it is very slow
c. getting on and off the bus is difficult d. bus drivers drive carelessly

2. Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep .... the long wait at the bus stop.

a. up b. away from c. down d. on

3. Possessing a private car is .... to doctors and engineers.

a. unnecessary b. difficult c. necessary d. bad

4. When are cars, according to the writer, exposed to robbery ?

a. When they aren't locked b. When they are left in garages
c. When they aren't covered d. When they are left in the street

5. The best title for the passage is ....

a. The advantages of private cars b. the pros and cons of private cars
c. The disadvantages of private cars d. Avoiding private cars

6. The antonym of the underlined word "**private**" is ....

a. regular b. public c. personal d. strange

7. Reaching your destination during rush hours ....

a. takes a while b. takes too long c. is easy d. isn't a problem

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Practicing activities at school is important. Such activities help students learn some values like cooperation, respect for others, self-confidence and perseverance.

a. ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمر مهم. تساعد هذه الأنشطة الطلاب على تعلم بعض القيم مثل التعاون واحترام الآخرين والثقة بالنفس والمثابرة.

b. ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمر غير مهم. تساعد هذه الأنشطة الطلاب على تعلم بعض القيم مثل التنسيق واحترام الآخرين والثقة بالنفس والعزيمة.

c. ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمر مهم. تساعد هذه الأنشطة الطلاب على تعلم بعض القيم مثل التعاون واحترام الآخرين وعدم ضبط بالنفس والمثابرة.

d. ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمر مهم. تساعد هذه الأنشطة الطلاب على تعلم بعض القيم مثل التعاون واحترام الآخرين وعدم والثقة بالنفس والمثابرة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

للتكنولوجيا الحديثة بعض الإيجابيات كما أن لها بعض السلبيات ومن الأفضل أن لا تشارك تفاصيل حياتك الشخصيات علي مواقع التواصل الإجتماعي.

a. Modern technology has a lot of positives, it has also some negatives. It is also better not to share your personal life's details on social media.

b. Modern technology has some positives, it has also some negatives. It is also better to share your personal life details on social media.

c. Modern technology has some positives, it has also some negatives. It is also better not to share your personal details on social media.

d. Modern technology has many positives, it has also many negatives. It is also better not to share your personal details on social media.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. What do you think made the captain stay at the Admiral Inn ?

....

2. If you were Jim, would you open the captain's box ? Why ? Why not ?

....

3. Do you think Jim's decision to show the paper to the police was wise ?

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How to help the community"

....

....

20 Aswan Governorate — Edfu Educational Directorate

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. The government aims to improve public services. The word "improve" can be replaced by ....

a. enhance b. spurn c. decline d. damage e. develop

2. My aunt is very generous. The antonyms of "generous" are ....

a. wasteful b. miser c. jealous d. mean e. awful

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Pollution has some bad effects on the balance of our ....

a. ecotourism b. economy c. ecosystem d. ecology

2. The factories in the new cities will .... a large number of youth.

a. follow b. employ c. donate d. hunt

3. I .... my life to the staff at the hospital who did their best to save me.

a. owe b. give c. endanger d. risked

4. In our school, instructions are usually written on a .... on the wall.

a. noticeboard b. table c. notebook d. booklet

5. This webpage is full of job .... I found my current job here.

a. anti-virus b. malware c. survey d. adverts

6. Children like poems and music that have strong ....

a. verse b. rhyme c. rhythm d. poet

7. .... are cowards. They only look strong against the weak.

a. Heroes b. Bullies c. Donors d. Merchants

8. While I .... on holiday in Alexandria, I met one of my oldest friends.

a. was b. was being c. have gone d. have been

9. The poor .... a lot nowadays because of the high prices.

a. has suffered b. is suffering c. suffer d. suffered

10. My sister is over the moon as she .... a medal in writing poetry.

a. won b. had won c. was winning d. has won

11. Nothing in .... life is better than health and peace of mind.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

12. I'll try to persuade her but I know she .... this job.

a. isn't going to accept b. doesn't accept c. won't accept d. isn't accepting

13. I really regret .... up late. I missed the first lecture.

a. to stay b. staying c. from staying d. stay

14. We have hardly heard .... news of him since he travelled abroad.

a. any b. some c. a little d. many

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A desert is a special region where only certain kinds of plants and animals can survive. All desert have little water . This means that only animals and plants that can do without water for long periods of time can exist in the desert . Plants in the desert are particularly adapted to the dry and hot environment . One well known desert plant is the cactus . Like many desert plants, this plant has very tiny leaves . As plants loose most of their water

through leaves, the small leaves of the cactus help to cut down water evaporation . There are other plants that do not have leaves at all. Some desert plants survive by avoiding the dry season altogether. During the dry season , this plant remains as a seed and doesn't **emerge** from the soil at all . When the rains come, this seed will grow very quickly into a plant . It would bloom rapidly and then scatter its seeds before the dry season returns.

Desert animals have also learnt to adapt well to life in the desert. The camel, for example, survives well in the desert because water can be stored in its body . Other desert animals like rodents need very little water as they can get all the water they require from their food .

1. The best title for the passage is "............".
   a. Life in oceans
   b. Rodents and Camels
   c. The desert hard life
   d. Life on Earth
2. The climate in the desert is ....
   a. mild and windy
   b. hot and dry
   c. rainy and windy
   d. hot and wet
3. The cactus is one of the plants that .... in the desert.
   a. rarely grow
   b. grow underground
   c. never need water
   d. survive
4. To avoid the dry season, some plants ....
   a. remain as seeds and don't emerge from soil
   b. drink much water throughout the year
   c. hide under other plants to get protection
   d. remain in far and wet regions under the sand
5. The synonym of the underlined word "**emerge**" is ....
   a. die
   b. live
   c. appear
   d. drink
6. The camel can survive in the desert because it ....
   a. stores water
   b. hides under trees
   c. digs the ground for water
   d. drinks rain drops
7. The plants found in the desert must have ....
   a. long leaves to store water
   b. deep roots to get water
   c. either tiny leaves or no leaves at all
   d. few leaves

4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Try to draw a roadmap for your ambitions because a goal without a plan remains just a wish.

a. حاول أن ترسم خريطة طريق لطموحاتك لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد امنيه.

b. حاول أن ترسم خريطة واضحة لطموحاتك لأن الهدف بدون خطة يبقى مجرد امنيه.

c. حاول أن تصمم خريطة مرنة لأمنياتك لأن الأمنية بلا خطة تظل مجرد تمنى.

d. حاول أن ترسم خريطة مستقبلية لأمانيك لأن خريطة بلا خطة يبقى مجرد رسم.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لا تكن متسرعا في تصديق كل ما تسمع، فالأكاذيب والشائعات تنتشر أسرع من الحقائق.

a. Don't be so fast in believing all what you hear as lies and rumors publish faster than truth.

b. Don't be so quick in believing all what you hear because lies and rumors spread faster than truth.

c. Don't be so quick in believing all what you hear because liars and rumors spread faster than facts.

d. Don't be so fast in conveying all what you listen because lies and tricks spread faster than facts.

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the people in the village refused to help Jim when he asked for their help ?

....

2. Trelawany told everyone on the ship about the treasure. Why do you think he did so ?

....

3. "Not all that glitters is gold" Explain referring to Sliver and Smollett.

....

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The role of charities in the society"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

For Al-Azhar & Inclusive students

اختبارات الأزهر الشريف وطلاب الدمج

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

منطقة الجيزة الأزهرية (القسم العلمي)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and complete with the correct answer :

You can only **(1)** .... friends if you spend time with **(2)** .... The best **(3)** .... to do this is to **(4)** .... clubs or do team sports you like.

B. Usage

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

A: I went to London last summer.
B: (1)................................. ?
A: To visit my cousins there.
B: (2)................................. ?
A: The flight took about 5 hours.
B: Was the trip enjoyable ?
A: (3)................................. .
B: How long did you stay there ?
A: (4)................................. .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. After Jack .... London, he will send us an e-mail.
   a. reach b. have reached c. reaches d. reached
2. You will find information about sports club on the school ....
   a. noticeboard b. notice c. connection d. communication
3. I regret .... you that I have broken your camera.
   a. to tell b. telling c. having told d. tells
4. Passenger's .... is very important to us on all our flights.
   a. comfort b. refusal c. denial d. avoiding
5. .... people live in the country today than in the past.
   a. Few b. Fewest c. Fewer d. A few
6. The beach was really .... No one could interrupt us during our holiday.
   a. crowded b. beautiful c. busy d. isolated

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Axel was a Swedish American farmer who shaped trees in his spare time, he was born in 1884 in Sweden, but he grew up in the USA, One day, He was looking at a tree with a very unusual shape when he had an idea. He discovered that it was possible to join two young trees together and bend and twist them to grow in a certain way. One day, his daughter, watching him sculpting his trees into beautiful shapes, suggested that they sell tickets so people could look at the unusual sculptures. In the mid-1940, Axel opened the tree circus. During his lifetime, Axel made more than 10 unique trees, some of which can still be seen today.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What did Axel's daughters suggest ? ....
2. How did Axel pass his spare time ? ....
3. When did Axel open his tree circus ? ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Axel grew up in ....
   a. Sweden b. America c. England d. japan
5. Axel's tree shapes were ....
   a. ordinary b. usual c. unusual d. fake

D - Novel

5 Answer the following questions :

1. What did the blind man give the captain ? ....
2. How was Jim saved from Silver and his men ? ....
3. What did Ben Gun do when Jim approached him ? ....

Choose the correct answer

4. The fort they found was well ....
   a. denied b. defeated c. deaf d. defended
5. The apples were kept in a ....
   a. bar b. barrel c. born d. port
6. Redruth was Mr. Trelawney's ....
   a. master b. friend c. servant d. maid

E - Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :

"The importance of making new friends".

....

F - Translation

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Voluntary work teaches cooperation and looking after people who need help.

....

B. Translate into English :

الثقة بالنفس هى مفتاح النجاح فى الحياة.

....

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة الاسكندرية الأزهرية (القسم الأدبى)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and complete with the correct answer :

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is **(1)** .... for his speed. He **(2)** .... money to his hometown. Salah's **(3)** .... to help others, is because he wants to help young people. He is a **(4)** .... to millions of Egyptians.

B. Usage

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Susan : Hello, I'm pleased to meet you. Welcome to Egypt.
A tourist : I'm pleased to meet you, too.
Susan : (1)... ?
A tourist : I come from England.
Susan : (2)... ?
A tourist : Yes, it is my first visit to Egypt.
Susan : (3)... ?
A tourist : I will stay for a week here in Egypt.
Susan : Have a nice stay.
A tourist : (4)... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We need to be sure that tourism here is .... , otherwise people will stop coming.
   a. ecotourism b. isolated c. sustainable d. endangered
2. While I .... at home, my uncle suddenly returned from Italy.
   a. was being b. was c. were d. being
3. Footballers often .... a lot of money.
   a. win b. beat c. gain d. earn
4. Ali is a 15 - .... - old boy and other teenagers are bullying him.
   a. years b. year's c. years' d. year
5. .... is dried grass that people use to feed animals.
   a. Hay b. Ray c. May d. Lay
6. Would you like .... the Faculty of Arts ?
   a. joining b. to join c. join d. to joining

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Libraries are cultural centers that help preserve knowledge and protect it. There are different kinds of libraries : public, school and private libraries. All these kinds help develop reading habits and make people aware of the importance of reading. **They** are places of relaxation. Some people visit libraries seeking pleasure and peace of mind. Some libraries contain thousands of books. Some are equipped with computers and the internet to facilitate finding books about different areas of knowledge. The books in a library are related to different branches of science. Libraries help widen people's scope of thinking and teach them the values necessary for serving their society and achieving development and progress for it. The government tries to modernize the existing libraries and establish new ones with the latest technological devices.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why are some libraries equipped with computers and the internet ? ....
2. Mention the kinds of libraries. ....
3. What does the government try to do ? ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. The word "necessary" can be replaced by the word : ....
   a. knowledge b. awareness c. important d. famous

5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a. books b. libraries c. the government d. computers

D - A Glimpse of Revelation

5 Answer the following questions :

1. What were angles created for ? ....
2. What is the second pillar of Islam ? ....
3. Why is Zakah important for the society? ....

Choose the correct answer

4. Islam has been built upon five ....

a. pillars b. walls c. supports d. basics

5. All prophets were sent to .... mankind.

a. guide b. grade c. guard d. grace

6. Islam is a religion of ....

a. oneness b. seal c. recitation d. peace

E - Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :

"Friendship and its importance".

F - Translation

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Success makes you feel proud, it lets you know, you have an impact on a competitive world.

....

B. Translate into English :

للاختراعات الحديثة الكثير من المزايا كما أن لها بعض العيوب.

....

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (منطقة الدقهلية الازهرية (القسم العلمى

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete with the correct answer :

Ecotourism is about providing **(1)** .... to places which are often **(2)** .... and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited **(3)** .... on the local environment and to educate **(4)** .... about conservation.

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Ali : (1).. ?

Tourist : I come from England.

Ali : (2).. ?

Tourist : No, this is my second visit.

Ali : Why do you like Egypt ?

Tourist : (3).. .

Ali : I wish you good luck.

Tourist : (4).. .

B. Vocabulary and structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't .... over the balcony. You might fall.
   a. trek b. lean c. swell d. learn
2. While I was doing my homework, my mother .... dinner.
   a. was prepared b. preparing c. is preparing d. was preparing
3. My baby sister never stops eating. She is .... and happy.
   a. plum b. slim c. plump d. merchant
4. Our uncle gave us money to buy ice cream. He is very ....
   a. generous b. desired c. mean d. miserable
5. The lions .... by the Lion Guardians.
   a. protected b. are protected c. are protecting d. have protected
6. .... poem I read yesterday was really interesting.
   a. A b. An c. The d. no article

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool in order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected.

Without technology, some individuals cannot function throughout their days. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial uses, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming, phishing and even hacking. Cyber-crime is an illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, **a predator** without someone's knowledge acquires a piece of their personal information such as their social security number or even their bank account data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phony programs that have viruses.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the writer mainly talking about ? ....
2. How can a predator steal someone online ? ....
3. Why is it not easy to arrest cyber criminals ? ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. People use the internet for ....
   a. business b. communication
   c. business and communication d. nothing
5. The underlined word, "**predator**" means ....
   a. hacker b. baker c. teacher d. undertaker

D - Novel

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why did the Captain want to stay in a quiet inn ? ....
2. Why were the eight men searching for the paper ? ....

3. What was Smollett's advice to Jim and Dr Livesy at the beginning of the journey ?

....

Choose the correct answer

4. The blind man was looking for the ....
   a. ship b. sword c. map d. food
5. .... is the narrator of the story.
   a. Jim Hawkins b. Admiral c. Dr Livesy d. Flint
6. Mr. Trelawney and Dr Livesy decided to search for ....
   a. the treasure b. the prisoner c. the men d. nothing

E - Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :

"Education".

....

F - Translation

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The pharaohs made a great civilization thousands of years ago.

....

B. Translate into English :

ايهما تفضل قراءة قصة قصيرة أم قراءة قصيدة ؟

....

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة كفر الشيخ الازهرية (القسم الادبى)

1 Listen and complete with the correct answer : نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an **(1)** .... for a free game. I clicked on the link and wrote my name, address and some **(2)** .... When I tried to **(3)** .... the game, nothing happened. It was **(4)** .... !

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Reem is talking with Eman at school.

Reem : Let's go to the computer room, Eman.
Eman : You always go to the computer room. (1)... ?
Reem : Because it's my favorite subject. What about you ?
Eman : (2)... .
Reem : Why do you like English ?
Eman : Because I want to be an English teacher.
Reem : (3)... ?
Eman : Yes, I speak it very well.
Reem : Could you teach me how to speak English well, please ?
Eman : (4)... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Before the operation, doctors should check the blood ....
   a. pressure b. desire c. task d. leisure
2. My son used to be shy, but now he ....
   a. doesn't b. is c. does d. isn't

3. We should .... money to charities to help the poor.
   a. take b. steal c. donate d. refuse
4. Sadly, my uncle has been ill .... he was young.
   a. for b. ago c. just d. since
5. Good citizens are those who are ready to .... their country all their lives.
   a. steal b. protect c. inspect d. predict
6. I am sure Ali .... to our party tomorrow.
   a. will come b. is coming c. comes d. is going to come

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It's very important to learn a new language. But learning a new language is not easy. You must learn a lot of practice. Good language learners practice the language they learn every day and listen to it. **They** watch programs in English language or they can practice it by chatting with people from other countries on the internet. When they don't understand a word, they try to know its meaning by looking it up in a **dictionary**. It's very important to listen to the correct sound of a word and repeat it aloud .

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to ? ....
3. How can they practice their language every day ? ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. It is very important to .... a new language.
   a. learn b. practice c. say d. read
5. The word "dictionary" has the same meaning of ....
   a. thesaurus b. leaflet c. sheets d. draft

A - Glimpse of Revelation

5 Answer the following questions :

1. Why do muslims perform pilgrimage ?
2. What were angles created from ?
3. What is the fourth pillar of Islam ?

Choose the correct answer

4. The second pillar of Islam is ....
   a. pilgrimage b. prayers c. Zakah d. fasting
5. Islam has been built up upon ....
   a. one pillar b. four pillars c. fifty pillars d. five pillars
6. Zakah is a/an .... part of Islam.
   a. free b. obligatory c. purified d. optional

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :

"A place you would like to visit on holiday".

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Traditional education is unable to cope up with the jumps of science.

B. Translate into English :

يعتقد معظم الناس أن السفر للفضاء رحلة ممتعة.

5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة البحيرة الازهرية (القسم العلمى)

1 Listen and complete with the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

Why should people donate blood ? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly **(1)** .... or need regular blood transplants because they have a long-term **(2)** .... Giving blood can also have health benefits. All donors have their blood **(3)** .... and iron levels checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any **(4)** .... problems.

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Ghada is phoning an electric repair shop assistant.

Shop assistant : Hello, How can I help you ?
Ghada : Hello, I want you to send me someone to check my washing machine.
Shop assistant : (1).. ?
Ghada : It makes a terrible noise and leaks water.
Shop assistant : What make is it ?
Ghada : (2).. .
Shop assistant : Okay. (3).. ?
Ghada : My name is Ghada and my address is 12 Nassar Street, Damanhour.
Shop assistant : (4)........................ within an hour.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We .... into the desert for three hours.
   a. tracked b. tricked c. trekked d. ticked
2. .... having lunch, I heard someone knock on the door of our flat.
   a. During b. While c. On d. Since
3. We .... much to our parents and teachers.
   a. own b. awe c. owl d. owe
4. It .... that money is the root of all evils.
   a. says b. said c. is said d. is saying
5. I always take my father's advice .... granted.
   a. for b. in c. by d. in
6. My sister studies medicine at .... European country.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Although a city has great chances for pleasure and work, life in it has many disadvantages. In the first place, there are the problems of traffic that not only cause confusion but also endanger the lives of the passers-by. Therefore, street accidents often happen in a city. A further disadvantage of life in a city is that trams, buses and other vehicles make noise that gets on our nerves. Moreover, it is sometimes difficult to enjoy quietness for a long time because vehicles keep moving all day long till a late hour at night. Owing to the big numbers of people who live in city, prices are high and everybody has to pay dear to get what he wants. The high cost of living is quite noticeable in a city. Demand is sometimes more than supply and this is caused by the rush of people to cities.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. How does traffic in a city affect us badly ? ....

2. What makes the cost of living high in a city ? ....

3. Find the words in the passage which mean :

a) to bring into danger

b) means of transporting goods or passengers.

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. According to the passage, life in a city is ....

a. a quieter b. quiet c. noise d. noisy

5. .... gets on our nerves.

a. Vehicles b. Making no noise c. Traffic noise d. Passers-by

5 Answer the following questions :

1. How much money did the captain give Jim's father ? ....

2. What did the captain's paper show ? ....

3. How did Jim discover the secret of Silver ? ....

Choose the correct answer

4. The parrot was called Captain ....

a. Bill b. Flint c. Smollet d. Silver

5. .... was a servant to Mr Trelwany.

a. Pew b. Mr Dance c. Redruth d. The Black Dog

6. .... narrates the story.

a. Jim Hawkins b. Dr Livesy c. Captain Bill d. Trelwany

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words about :

"What we can do to support our community".

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Teachers do a big role in preparing a great generation with good values and morals especially in the age of globalization.

B. Translate into English :

لكى تحقق النجاح فى الحياة، أطع والديك.

Cairo Governorate

Abdeen Educational Directorate اختبار لطلاب الدمج

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. My friend is plump. The synonyms of the word "plump" are .... and ....

a. thin b. chubby c. slim d. weak e. fat

2. We should avoid .... damage to the environment.

a. making b. taking c. giving d. causing e. doing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We .... much to our great teachers everywhere.

a. own b. owe c. honour d. possess

2. When I went to the workshop, the mechanic .... my car, so I had to wait.

a. repaired b. was repairing c. had repaired d. is repairing

3. Karim's new smartphone has got a lot of ....
   a. hackers b. logs c. blogs d. apps
4. We will go home after we .... the school day.
   a. finish b. will finish c. has finished d. had finished
5. Mohammed Salah gives money to help children in Egypt because he is very ....
   a. generous b. ambitious c. cruel d. intelligent
6. My dad .... a lung disease since he started to smoke.
   a. was having b. is having c. had d. has had
7. A .... is a specialist or student in the area of science that deals with living things.
   a. psychologist b. biologist c. geologist d. chemist
8. A new school .... in our village recently.
   a. has been built b. had been built c. had built d. has built
9. Blood .... is one of the most common diseases nowadays.
   a. pleasure b. leisure c. treasure d. pressure
10. The doctor asked for .... x-ray to make sure I have a broken arm.
   a. an b. a c. the d. no article

B. Reading

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below :

Omar wanted to be a doctor when he grows up. He made his decision after seeing a television programme about a doctor who worked in China. So, Omar worked hard at school, passed all his exams and went to university to study medicine. When he finished, he found a job as a doctor working in a village in northern India. He worked with a group of older doctors and a young doctor. Most of the time, they worked in the small village hospital, but two days a week they went to a nearby town and helped the Indian doctors who worked there. One day, when Omar was working in the larger hospital, a young man came in with a broken leg. He wasn't Indian. When the man saw Omar, he said, "Omar! Do you remember me ? We were in the same secondary school!"

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Omar decided to be a doctor when he was ....
   a. young b. a baby c. an adult d. old
2. The doctor on the television programme worked in ....
   a. England b. Egypt c. China d. India
3. The young man who came into the hospital was ....
   a. dead b. injured c. a doctor d. a student
4. In which part of India was the village where Omar worked ?
   a. The capital b. The north c. The south d. The east.
5. Who did Omar work with at first in India ?
   a. Other doctors b. Some older and younger doctors
   c. Older doctors d. A group of friends.
6. How did the young man in hospital know Omar ?
   a. They were together in the same school. b. Their parents were friends.
   c. They played for the same football team. d. They met at the airport
7. The main idea of the story is ....
   a. Omar was determined to achieve his goal.
   b. Omar was a failure but he reached his goal.
   c. Adults can easily win their competition.
   d. Elderly people find it difficult to live comfortably.

The Novel

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. .... was the ship's boy.
   a. Jim b. Pew c. Dick d. Smollett
2. .... was the ship's doctor.
   a. Silver b. Dance c. Livesy d. Trelawney

C - Writing

5 a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

I love and respect elderly people as they have a lot of life experience.

a. أنا أحب وأحترم صغار السن لأن لديهم الكثير من خبرات الحياة.
b. أنا لا أحب وأحترم كبار السن لأن لديهم الكثير من خبرات الحياة.
c. أنا احب وأحترم كبار السن لأن ليس لديهم الكثير من خبرات الحياة.
d. أنا أحب وأحترم كبار السن لأن لديهم الكثير من خبرات الحياة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة يمكننا أن نتواصل مع الآخرين في كل أنحاء العالم.

a. Thanks for modern technology, we can communicate with others all over the country.
b. Thanks to modern technology, we can communicate with others all over the world.
c. Thanks for modern technology, we can't communicate with others all over the world.
d. Thanks to modern technology, we can communicate with other all over the country.

6 A. Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a , b , c or d :

a. Information via these sources is more up to date and is often more useful because it is based on people's personal experience.
b. In the past, most people would take guide books with them when they were travelling on holiday.
c. To sum up, modern technology has made life easier and more enjoyable.
d. But now, a combination of location apps on phones, information via Twitter and travel blogs has made them unnecessary.

B. 1. But now, a combination of location apps on phones, information via Twitter and travel blogs has mad them unnecessary. In the past, most people would take guide books with them when they were travelling on holiday. To sum up, modern technology has made life easier and more enjoyable. Information via these sources is more up to date and is often more useful because it is based on people's personal experience.
2. Information via these sources is more up to date and is often more useful because it is based on people's personal experience. To sum up, modern technology has made life easier and more enjoyable. In the past, most people would take guide books with them when they were travelling on holiday. But now, a combination of location apps on phones, information via Twitter and travel blogs has made them unnecessary.
3. But now, a combination of location apps on phones, information via Twitter and travel blogs has made them unnecessary. Information via these sources is more up to date and is often more useful because it is based on people's personal experience. In the past, most people would take guide books with them when they weer travelling on holiday. To sum up, modern technology has made life easier and more enjoyable.
4. In the past, most people would take guide books with them when they were travelling on holiday. But now, a combination of location apps on phones, information via Twitter and travel blogs has made them unnecessary. Information via these sources is more up to date and is often more useful because it is based on people's personal experience. To sum up, modern technology has made life easier and more enjoyable.

Listening Texts (Al-Azhar Al-Sharif)

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة الجيزة الأزهرية (القسم العلمى)

You can only make friends if you spend time with them. The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة الاسكندرية الأزهرية (القسم الأدبى)

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired for his speed. He donates money to his hometown. Salah's desire to help others, is because he wants to help young people. He is a role model to millions of Egyptians.

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة الدقهلية الأزهرية (القسم العلمى)

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation.

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة كفر الشيخ الأزهرية (القسم الأدبى)

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert for a free game. I clicked on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!

5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية (القسم العلمى)

Why should people donate blood ? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured or need regular blood transplants because they have a long-term illness. Giving blood can also have health benefits. All donors have their blood pressure and iron levels checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems.

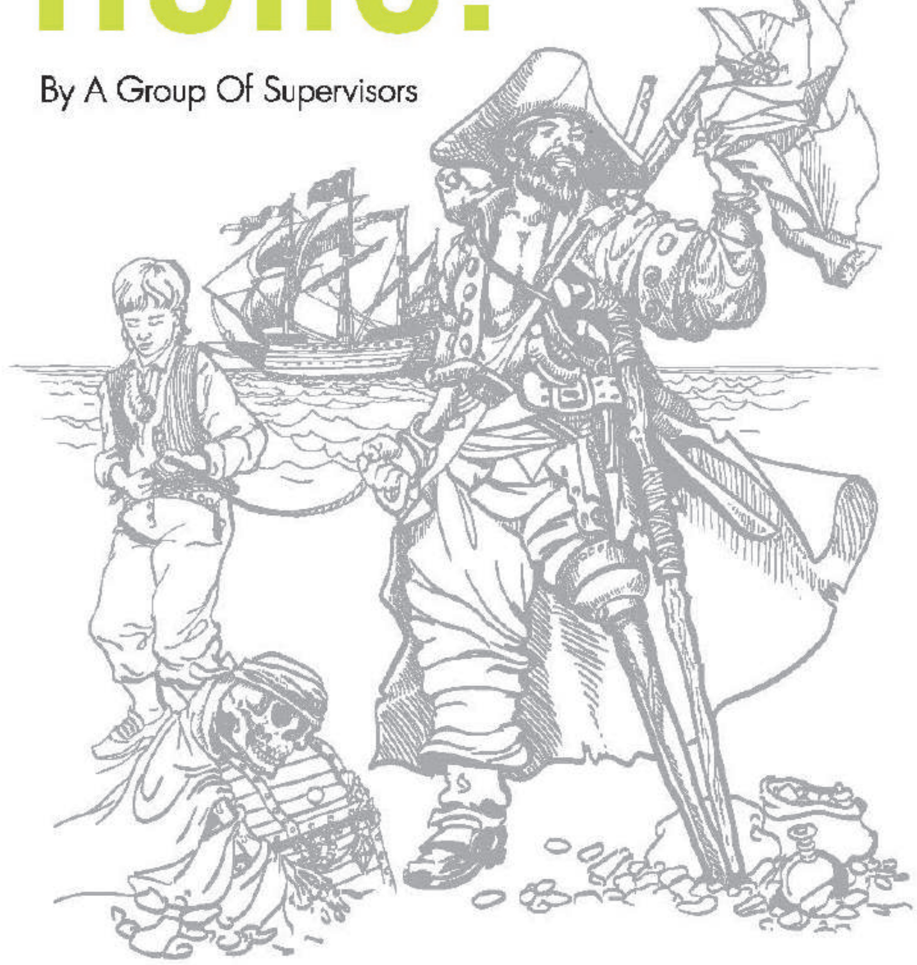
FINAL REVISION



New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors





1st Sec.
2024
FIRST TERM

الصـــف الأول الثانـوى
الفصــــل الدراســـى الأول





AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤
عـام - أزهـر

CONTENTS

Part 1

Part 2

Part 3

Part 4

PART

1 Treasure Island



CHAPTER 1



تنويه يمكنك مراجعة نص القصة من كتاب المعاصر.

I Chapter one in points :

نقاط هامة على الفصل الأول :

1. **The narrator of the novel, Jim Hawkins, lived with his parents at his father's inn.**

عاش راوى القصة جيم هاوكينز مع والديه فى فندق والده الصغير.

2. **A man called the Captain (Bill) came to the inn with a large wooden box and gave Jim's father three or four gold coins.**

جاء رجل يسمى الكابتن (بيل) للفندق و معه صندوق خشبى كبير و أعطى والد جيم ثلاث أو أربع عملات ذهبية.

3. **The Captain was a sailor with a scar in his face and he used to tell stories about the sea.**

كان الكابتن بحاراً وله ندباً فى وجهه ، و كان معتاداً على أن يخبر قصصاً عن البحر.

4. **The Captain stayed in the inn for months without paying any more for the room, but Jim's father didn't dare to ask him for more money.**

أقام الكابتن فى الفندق لشهور دون ان يدفع المزيد لحجرته ، و لكن والد جيم لم يجرؤ على مطالبته بالمزيد من المال.

5. **A man with three fingers on his left hand called Black Dog came to ask about the Captain, but they fought after that and Black Dog ran away with blood on his arm.**

أتى رجل ذو ثلاث أصابع فى يده اليسرى يسمى بلاك دوج ليسأل عن الكابتن ، ولكنهم تشاجروا وبعد ذلك جرى بلاك دوج والدم على زراعه.

6. **After the fight with Black Dog, the Captain was very ill and he was taken to his room.**

بعد الشجار مع بلاك دوج ، كان الكابتن مريض جداً وتم أخذه لحجرته.

7. **Dr Livesy, who came to see Jim's ill father, saw the Captain and gave him some medicine.**

دكتور ليفسى و الذى كان قد جاء من اجل رؤية والد جيم المريض قام بفحص الكابتن و أعطاه بعض الدواء.

8. **The Captain told Jim that some people, worse than Black Dog, were looking for him and wanted to take something he had.**

أخبر الكابتن جيم بأن بعض الناس الأسوأ من بلاك دوج كانوا يبحثون عنه و يريدون ان ياخذوا منه شيئاً يمتلكه.

9. **Jim's father died and he forgot what the Captain said about his secret.**

مات والد جيم و نسى جيم كل ما قاله له الكابتن عن سره.

10. **A blind man came to the inn and gave Bill or the Captain a piece of paper in which the words "ten o'clock" were; the Captain read it and died.**

جاء رجل كفيف للفندق و أعطى بيل أو الكابتن قطعة من الورق مكتوب عليها «الساعة العاشرة» والتى قرأها الكابتن و مات.

11. **Jim and his mother opened Bill's wooden box and found some clothes, guns, papers and a bag with some coins.**

فتح جيم و أمه صندوق بيل الخشبى و وجدوا بعض الملابس و المسدسات و الوثائق و كيس به بعض العملات المعدنية.

12. **Jim and his mother went to the nearest village; no one agreed to help them, only a man went to tell Dr Livesy and another gave them his gun.**

ذهب جيم و أمه لأقرب قرية ولكن لم يقبل أن يساعدهم أحد ، هناك رجل وحيد ذهب ليخبر دكتور لايفسى و رجل آخر أعطاهم مسدسه.

13. **Jim and his mother returned to the inn, took some coins and the papers and ran back towards the village, but there were some people behind them, so they hid under a bridge.**

عاد جيم و أمه إلى الفندق وأخذوا بعض العملات والوثائق و عادوا ناحية القرية ، ولكن كان هناك بعض الرجال خلفهم فاختبأوا تحت كوبرى.

II Questions with their suggested answers:

1. Why do you think the Captain chose that inn, the Admiral Benbow to stay in?

فى رأيك لماذا إختار الكابتن فندق (أدميرال بنبو) ليقيم به؟

– I think because it was a nice, quiet place. It was near the sea.

أعتقد لأنه كان مكان لطيف و هادىء ، كما أنه كان بالقرب من البحر.

2. What do you think of what the Captain gave the inn owner?

ما رأيك في الذى أعطاه الكابتن لمالك الفندق؟

– He gave him three or four gold coins. I think it was not enough to pay for his long stay there.

أعطى له ثلاث أو أربع عملات معدنية من الذهب و أعتقد أنها لم تكن كافية ليدفع مقابل إقامته الطويلة هناك.

3. Why do you think the Captain was spending much time by the sea?

فى رأيك لماذا قام الكابتن بقضاء وقت طويل بجانب البحر؟

– I think he was waiting for a ship to take him to Treasure Island.

أعتقد إنه كان ينتظر سفينة لتأخذه إلى جزيرة الكنز

4. Why do you think the inn owner couldn't dare to ask the Captain for more money for the room he stayed in?

بماذا تفسر أن صاحب الفندق لم يكن يجرؤ على طلب أموال أخرى من الكابتن مقابل الحجرة التى يقيم بها؟

– I think he was afraid of him.

أعتقد أنه خائف منه.

5. Why do you think the Captain didn't pay for his room for months?

بماذا تفسر عدم قيام الكابتن بدفع مقابل حجرته بالفندق لشهور؟

– I think he didn't have enough money as he didn't work all that time.

أعتقد أنه لم يكن معه أموال كافية لأنه لم يكن يعمل فى تلك الفترة.

6. "I've found my friend Bill!" Do you think they are really friends? Why?

«لقد وجدت صديقى بيل!» هل تعتقد أنهم كانوا أصدقاء فعلاً؟ لماذا؟

– I think they weren't friends because they fought a little later.

أعتقد أنهم لم يكونوا أصدقاء لأنهم تشاجروا بعد ذلك بقليل.

7. In your point of view, why was the Captain hiding at that inn?

من وجهة نظرك ، لماذا كان الكابتن يختبأ فى ذلك الفندق؟

– Because he had the map to the treasure.

لأن خريطة الكنز كانت معهم.

8. Why do you think the Captain and Black Dog fought together?

لماذا تعتقد قيام الكابتن و بلاك دوج بالتشاجر معاً؟

– I think the Captain refused to give Black Dog the map.

أعتقد أن الكابتن رفض أن يعطى بلاك دوج الخريطة.

9. If you were the Captain, how would you behave after Black Dog's visit?

لو كنت الكابتن، كيف كنت ستتصرف بعد زيارة بلاك دوج؟

– I would look for another place.

كنت سأبحث عن مكان آخر.

10. Why do you think the Captain told Jim the story of his secret?

لماذا تعتقد قيام الكابتن بإخبار جيم بقصة السر الخاص به؟

– I think he might have trusted him.

أعتقد لأنه ربما كان يثق فيه.

PART 1

III General Exercises on chapter one :

1. What do you think the scar in the Captain's face indicate ?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
2. Why do you think the Captain didn't give the inn owner more gold coins?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
3. If you were the inn owner, would you worry about the Captain? Why?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
4. Do you think the Captain's stories were boring? Why?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
5. Why do you think the Captain looked pale بدا شاحبًا on seeing Black Dog?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
6. Do you think the Captain was happy to see Black Dog? Why?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
7. Why do you think the Captain didn't seem to welcome Black Dog's visit ?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
8. If you were Bill, what would you do after Black Dog's visit ?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
9. In your opinion, was the inn a good place for the Captain to hide? Why / Why not?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
10. Why do you think the Captain trusted Jim?
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………
   ………………………………………………………………………

PART 1

11. Why do you think the Captain was very surprised to see the blind man?

....
....
....

12. What do you think the blind man's message for the Captain meant?

....
....
....

13. In your point of view, what was the Captain supposed to be before ten o'clock ?

....
....
....

14. "I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but I did not want to leave my mother."
What do we infer نستنتج from this quotation?

....
....
....

15. "We knew that we were in danger." Why do you think Jim and his mother were in danger?

....
....
....

16. "I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us," my mother said, opening the bag"
What can we infer from this sentence?

....
....
....

17. Imagine what happened between the Captain and Black Dog before the fight.

....
....
....

CHAPTER 2



I Chapter Two in points :

نقاط هامة على الفصل الثانى :

1. The blind man and other seven men knew that Jim and his mother opened the wooden box and they wanted to find them.

عرف الرجل الكفيف وسبعة رجال آخرين معه أن جيم وأمه فتحوا الصندوق الخشبى، و أرادوا أن يجدوهم.

2. The boy who went to Dr Livesy came with some men to save Jim and his mother from the gang.

عاد الرجل الذى كان قد ذهب لدكتور ليفسى و معه بعض الرجال لينقذوا جيم و والدته من العصابة.

3. Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney knew that the bad people were looking for the map of Flint's treasure which was in the wooden box.

د. ليفسى و السيد تريلاونى عرفوا أن الرجال الأشرار كانوا يبحثون عن خريطة كنز فلنت و التى كانت فى الصندوق الخشبى.

4. Dr Livesy and the other men decided to go to Bristol to find a good ship to look for the treasure.

قرر د. ليفسى و الرجال الأخرون الذهاب لمدينة بريستول ليجدوا سفينة جيدة ليبحثوا عن الكنز.

5. Jim stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant, Redruth, studying the treasure's map for hours.

أقام جيم فى منزل السيد تريلاونى مع خادمه ريدروث يدرسوا خريطة الكنز لساعات.

6. Mr Trelawney found a ship called Hispaniola that belonged to a good man called Blandly to use it to look for the treasure.

وجد السيد تريلاونى سفينة تسمى هيسبانيولا تخص رجل طيب يدعى بلاندلى ليستخدموها فى البحث عن الكنز.

7. Mr Trelawney found a crew including a good cook called Long John Silver who was ready to work on the ship.

وجد السيد تريلاونى طاقم بحارة من بينهم طباخ جيد يدعى لونج جون سيلفر ، و كان مستعداً للعمل على السفينة.

8. Mr Trelawney told the crew all about the treasure. This surprised Jim as it was a secret.

السيد تريلاونى أخبر طاقم البحارة عن الكنز مما أدهش جيم حيث أن ذلك كان سراً.

9. Jim said goodbye to his mother and travelled to Bristol to take part in looking for the treasure.

ودع جيم والدته و سافر لمدينة بريستول ليشترك فى البحث عن الكنز.

II Questions with their suggested answers:

1. Do you think Jim hid from the blind man's men in a good place? How do you know?

هل تعتقد أن جيم إختبأ من رجال الرجل الكفيف فى مكان جيد؟ كيف عرفت ذلك؟

– Yes, because he could see the road well.

نعم ، لأنه كان يرى الطريق بشكل جيد.

2. Why were the attackers surprised when they reached the inn?

لماذا شعر المهاجمين بالدهشة عندما وصلوا للفندق؟

– They were surprised to see the inn door open.

شعروا بالدهشة لأنهم رأوا باب الفندق مفتوح.

PART 1

3. "Someone has opened the box!" "Is it there?" said the blind man. What do you think the speaker meant by the pronoun "it"?

«شخص ما فتح الصندوق! «هل هى موجودة؟» قال الرجل الكفيف. ما تعتقد كان المتحدث يعنى بالضمير «هى»؟

– The pronoun "it" refers to the map.

أعتقد أن الضمير «هى» يشير للخريطة.

4. Why do you think the men were looking for Jim and his mother?

فى رأيك، لماذا كان الرجال يبحثون عن جيم و والدته؟

– They thought that Jim and his mother found the map they were looking for.

كانوا يعتقدون أن جيم و والدته قد وجدوا الخريطة التى كانوا يبحثون عنها.

5. Was telling the police about those attackers a good decision ? Why / Why not?

هل كان إخبار الشرطة عن المهاجمين قرار جيد؟ لماذا نعم / لا؟

– I think it was a good decision as the police would protect Jim and his mother from them.

أعتقد أنه كان قرار جيد لأن الشرطة ستحمى جيم و والدته منهم.

6. In your opinion, was it better for Jim's mother to go to the village or to come back to the inn? Why?

فى رأيك ، هل كان من الأفضل لوالدة جيم أن تذهب للقرية أم أن تعود للفندق؟ لماذا؟

– It was better for her to go to the village to be safe from the attackers who would come back to the inn at any time.

من الافضل لها أن تذهب للقرية لتكون فى أمان من المهاجمين الذين قد يعودوا للفندق فى أى وقت.

7. Was it a good decision for the attackers to escape in different directions? Why / Why not?

هل كان قرار جيد للمهاجمين أن يهربوا فى إتجاهات مختلفة؟ لماذا نعم / لا؟

– Yes, because running in different directions made it very difficult for the police to chase them all.

نعم ، لأن الجرى فى إتجاهات مختلفة جعل من الصعب جدًا على الشرطة أن تطاردهم جميعاً.

8. In Dr Livesy and the other men's opinion, what were the attackers looking for?

فى رأى دكتور ليفسى والرجال الآخرون ، ما الذى كان المهاجمون يبحثون عنه؟

– They were looking for Flint's map.

كان المهاجمون يبحثون عن خريطة فلينت.

9. Why do you think Dr Livesy asked Jim's permission to look at the papers?

فى رأيك، لماذا قام دكتور ليفسى بطلب الإذن من جيم ليلقى نظرة على الأوراق؟

– I think because Jim was the one who found the papers, so they belonged to him.

أعتقد لأن جيم هو من وجد الوثائق ، لذلك فهم يخصون جيم.

10. Do you think Jim and the other men should move quickly or they have enough time? Why?

هل تعتقد ان جيم والرجال الاخرون يجب ان يتحركوا بسرعة أم أنهم لديهم وقت كاف؟ لماذا؟

– I think they should move quickly to get the treasure before the attackers.

أعتقد أنهم يجب عليهم التحرك بسرعة ليصلوا للكنز قبل المهاجمين.

PART 1

III General Exercises on chapter Two :

1. Were Jim and his mother right when they thought that they were in danger? Why / Why not?
2. What did the attackers discover when they reached the inn after Bill's death?
3. "If you find it, you'll all be rich!" said the blind man. What do you think this sentence means ?
4. How do you think Jim and his mother feel when they saw Dr Livesy and the other men under the bridge ? Why?
5. Do you think the police and the other men came on time? Why / Why not?
6. In your point of view, why couldn't the police catch the attackers?
7. In your point of view, why weren't the attackers interested in the money in the box?
8. If you were with Jim and the other men, what would you suggest?
9. After looking at the papers, what do you think the attackers were looking for? Why?
10. Would it be easy for Jim and the other men to look for the treasure? Why? Why not ?
11. Why do you think Mr Trelawney said that Jim would be the ship's boy and Dr Livesy would be its doctor?
12. "We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know." Do you agree with Dr Livesy? Why / Why not?
13. "I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret." What do you think of Jim's words?
14. Mr Trelawney was a cooperative person شخص متعاون. Do you agree? Why / Why not?
15. If you were Mr Trelawney, would you tell the crew about the treasure? Why / Why not?

CHAPTER 3



I Chapter Three in points :

نقاط هامة على الفصل الثالث :

1. Mr Trelawney sent Jim with a note to Silver's inn where Jim saw Black Dog.

أرسل السيد تريلاونى جيم برسالة لفندق سيلفر ، و هناك رأى جيم بلاك دوج.

2. Jim knew that the blind man was called Pew and he used to come to Silver's inn with Black Dog.

عرف جيم أن الرجل الكفيف يدعى «بو» و اعتاد أن يأتى لفندق سيلفر مع بلاك دوج.

3. Captain Smollett didn't like the crew or the idea of looking for the treasure.

كابتن سموليت لم يحب طاقم البحارة و لا فكرة البحث عن الكنز.

4. Smollett asked Dr Livsey and Mr Trelawney to be at the front of the ship keeping guns with them and not to show the map to anyone.

سموليت طلب من د. ليفسى و السيد تريلاونى أن يكونوا فى مقدمة السفينة و أن يحتفظوا بمسدسات معهم و ألا يعرضوا الخريطة لأى أحد

5. Dr Livesy thought Captain Smollett was a good man, but Mr Trelawney and Jim didn't like him.

د. ليفسى اعتقد أن كابتن سموليت رجل صالح ، ولكن السيد تريلاونى و جيم لم يحبوه.

6. One night by chance, Jim heard Silver telling the crew that he had sold his inn and gave the money to his wife.

فى أحد الليالى بالصدفة ، سمع جيم سيلفر يخبر طاقم البحارة أنه باع فندقه و أعطى المال لزوجته.

7. Silver told the crew about his plan to kill Mr Trelawney and his friends after taking the map and then they would ask Smollett to take them back home.

أخبر سيلفر طاقم البحارة بخطته لقتل السيد تريلاونى و أصدقائه بعد أن يأخذ الخريطة و عندها سيطلبون من سموليت أن يعيدهم لموطنهم.

8. The pirates were about to see Jim, but one of the sailors called "I can see land" which saved Jim as they went to see the land.

كان القراصنة على وشك أن يروا جيم ، ولكن احد البحارة نادى «أرى اليابسة» و هو ما أنقذ جيم حيث أنهم ذهبوا ليروا اليابسة.

II Questions with their suggested answers:

1. How do you think Jim felt when he learned about Silver's true character ?

فى رأيك ما هو شعور جيم عندما عرف شخصية سيلفر الحقيقية ؟

– I think he became frightened.

أعتقد أنه أصبح خائفًا.

2. Why do you think Silver was surprised when he saw Jim in the inn?

لماذا تعتقد أن سيلفر كان مندهش عندما رأى جيم فى الحانة؟

– I think because he didn't expect a note from Mr Trelawney and he didn't know Jim.

أعتقد لأنه لم يتوقع رسالة من السيد تريلاونى ولم يكن قد تعرَّف على جيم من قبل.

3. Do you think Silver knew Black Dog? Why?

هل تعتقد أن سيلفر كان يعرف بلاك دوج؟ لماذا؟

– I think Silver knew him because he was one of his fellow pirates.

أعتقد أن سيلفر كان يعرفه لأنه كان أحد رفقائه القراصنة.

4. Silver was an experienced sailor. Illustrate.

سيلفر كان بحار ذو خبرة. وضح.

– Silver was an experienced sailor as he knew everything about ships and the sea.

سيلفر كان بحار ذو خبرة لأنه كان يعرف كل شيء عن السفن و البحر.

5. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man." What can we guess from this quotation?

«آه ، نعم. رأيته في الفندق الخاص بي من قبل. أحياناً يأتي مع رجل كفيف.» ما الذي يمكن أن نخمنه من هذا الإقتباس؟

– We can guess Silver knew Black Dog and the blind man. Silver was one of the pirates.

نستطيع أن نخمن أن سيلفر كان يعرف بلاك دوج و الرجل الكفيف. كان سيلفر أحد القراصنة.

6. Keeping secrets is very important to succeed in your work. What do you think of this ?

الحفاظ على السر شيء مهم للنجاح في عملك. ما رأيك في هذا ؟

– Mr Trelawney made a big mistake when he told the crew that they were looking for a treasure which should have been kept as a secret.

السيد تريلاوني إرتكب خطأ كبير عندما أخبر طاقم البحارة أنهم يبحثون عن كنز و هو ما كان من المفترض أن يتم الحفاظ عليه كسر.

7. If you were one of the crew, would you join the journey to look for the treasure? Why / Why not?

لو كنت أحد طاقم البحارة ، هل كنت ستنضم للرحلة للبحث عن الكنز؟ لماذا نعم / لا؟

– Yes, I would because it would be a good chance to get a lot of money.

نعم ، سأنضم لأنها قد تكون فرصة جيدة للحصول على الكثير من المال.

– No, I wouldn't because it would be very dangerous.

لا ، لن أنضم لأنها قد تكون خطيرة جداً.

8. "If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you." What does this quotation show us?

«لو أني سأبحر معهم ، أريدكم أن تكونوا على مقدمة السفينة طيلة الرحلة و أن تحتفظوا بالأسلحة معكم.» ماذا يوضح لنا هذا الإقتباس؟

– It shows that Smollett didn't like the crew and he didn't trust them.

يوضح لنا أن سموليت كان لا يحب طاقم البحارة و لم يكن يثق بهم.

9. Silver's disability didn't affect his work. Illustrate.

لم تؤثر إعاقة سيلفر على عمله. وضح.

– Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch.

كان سيلفر قادراً على التجول في السفينة برجل واحدة مستخدماً عكاز.

10. Jim was terrified by what he had heard on the ship. If you were Jim, how would you feel? Why?

كان جيم مرعوب مما سمعه على السفينة. لو كنت جيم ، كيف كنت ستشعر؟ لماذا؟

– I would feel terrified because Silver was planning to kill Jim and all his friends.

كنت سأشعر بالرعب لأن سيلفر كان يخطط لقتل جيم وكل أصدقائه.

PART 1

III General Exercises on chapter three :

1. Do you think Silver's inn was a good one? Why?
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

2. Both Jim and Silver called "Stop him." Why do you think they wanted to stop him?
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

3. "Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home." Do you think Jim made a mistake by telling Silver about Black Dog? Why / Why not?
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

4. "Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver. Why do you think they must return to Mr Trelawney?
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

5. Although Jim was worried when he saw Black Dog, Mr Trelawney didn't do anything. Discuss.
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

6. Why was Captain Smollett unhappy with the journey?
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

7. Captain Smollett had some comments about the journey. Illustrate.
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

8. What do you think of Smollett's opinion about the crew?
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

9. Why do you think Silver called his parrot Captain Flint?
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

PART 1

10. Do you think the members of the crew worked with each other before? Why / Why not?

....

....

....

11. Do you think Silver trusted his wife ? Why ? Why not ?

....

....

....

12. In your point of view, why couldn't Silver and his gang attack Mr Trelawney and his men on the ship during the voyage to Treasure Island ?

....

....

....

13. Silver was more than a cook. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

....

....

....

14. How do you think luck saved Jim from death before they reached Treasure Island ?

....

....

....

CHAPTER 4



I Chapter Four in points :

نقاط هامة علي الفصل الرابع :

1. **Silver told them that he knew the island well, so Smollett gave him a map, but not the one that the treasure was marked on.**

أخبرهم سيلفر بأنه يعرف الجزيرة جيداً ، لذلك أعطاه سموليت خريطة ، ولكنها لم تكن الخريطة التي تم تحديد مكان الكنز عليها.

2. **Jim told Dr Livesy, Mr Trelawney and Captain Smollett about what he had heard.**

اخبر جيم د. ليفسى و السيد تريلاونى و كابتن سموليت عن ما سمعه.

3. **The men thanked Jim for the news and Mr Trelawney admitted his mistake about Silver.**

شكر الرجال جيم على الأخبار و اعترف السيد تريلاونى بخطئه فى تقييم سيلفر.

4. **They decided to continue and try to know the good people who could help them against the pirates.**

قرر الرجال ان يستمروا و ان يحاولوا معرفة الناس الطيبين الذين من الممكن أن يساعدوهم ضد القراصنة.

5. **Captain Smollett had a plan to get the ship by asking the sailors to spend a day on the island.**

كان لدى كابتن سموليت خطة للحصول على السفينة بان يطلب من البحارة قضاء يوم على الجزيرة.

6. **Silver was careful and left six of his men on the ship, so it was difficult for Captain Smollett and his men to take the ship.**

كان سيلفر حريصاً فترك ستة من رجاله على السفينة ، لذلك كان من الصعب على كابتن سموليت ورجاله السيطرة على السفينة.

7. **Jim reached the island and hid on a tree. He heard Silver talking with a sailor called Tom persuading him to join his gang.**

وصل جيم للجزيرة و اختبأ على شجرة. سمع جيم سيلفر و هو يتحدث مع بحار يدعى توم محاولاً إقناعه بالإنضمام لعصابته.

8. **Tom heard Alan's (one of the sailors) terrible shout and warned Silver not to hurt him, but Silver hit Tom with his crutch and killed him with his knife.**

سمع توم صرخة ألان (أحد البحارة) المرعبة و حذر سيلفر من ألا يؤذيه، ولكن سيلفر ضرب توم بعكازه ثم قتله بالسكين.

9. **Jim was afraid and tried to escape. Silver blew a whistle to collect his men and Captain Smollett fired his gun which meant coming back to the ship; Jim didn't know what to do.**

كان جيم خائفاً و حاول أن يهرب. اطلق سيلفر صافرته ليجمع رجاله و أطلق كابتن سموليت النار من مسدسه مما يعنى العودة للسفينة
ولم يعرف جيم كيف يتصرف.

II Questions with their suggested answers:

1. **On the ship, Jim was lucky. Illustrate with an example.**

كان جيم محظوظاً على السفينة. وضح بمثال.

– Jim was lucky when he heard the conversation between Silver and his men by accident. He was also lucky when the pirates ran to see the island, he managed to climb out of the barrel.

كان جيم محظوظًا عندما سمع محادثة سيلفر ورجاله بالصدفة. كان أيضًا محظوظًا عندما جرى القراصنة لكى يروا الجزيرة فتمكن من الخروج من البرميل.

PART 1

2. Silver was careful to get the map of the treasure on the ship, but in vain. Discuss.

كان سيلفر حريصاً على الحصول على الخريطة التى بها الكنز على السفينة، و لكن دون جدوى. ناقش.

Smollett said that he had the map of the island, so Silver was excited to get it. Smollett gave it to him, but it wasn't the one with the treasure marked on.

قال سموليت أن خريطة الجزيرة كانت معه ، لذلك كان سيلفر متحمساً للحصول عليها. سموليت أعطاها له ، لكنها لم تكن الخريط التى بها علامة على مكان الكنز.

3. Why do you think Jim's feelings towards Silver were different after reaching the island?

فى رأيك لماذا، كانت مشاعر جيم نحو سيلفر مختلفة بعد الوصول للجزيرة؟

– I think Jim was afraid of Silver after the conversation he heard between Silver and the other pirates. Silver killed a pirate called Tom.

أعتقد أن جيم كان خائفاً من سيلفر بعد المحادثة التى سمعها بين سيلفر والقراصنة الأخرين. لقد قتل سيلفر قرصانا يدعى توم.

4. Silver managed to deceive the people around him by his friendly way. To what extent do you agree with this sentence? Why?

تمكن سيلفر من أن يخدع الناس المحيطين به بطريقته الودودة. لأى مدى تتفق مع هذه الجملة؟ لماذا؟

– Silver used to talk in a friendly way to the other people. He managed to hide his wicked plans from the other people and to appear as the kind tolerant man.

إعتاد سيلفر التحدث بطريقة ودودة للأخرين. تمكن من أن يخفى خططه الشريرة من الأخرين و أن يظهر كرجل طيب متسامح.

5. Why do you think Jim and Mr Trelawney should apologize for Captain Smollett?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيم و السيد تريلاونى يجب أن يعتذروا الكابتن سموليت؟

I think because Captain Smollett warned them from the crew and that he didn't like them as they weren't good people, but they didn't listen to him.

أعتقد لأن كابتن سموليت حذرهم من طاقم البحارة و أنه لم يحبهم لأنهم لم يكونوا أشخاص جيدين ولكن لم يستمعوا له.

6. In your point of view, what was the first step Jim and his friends should take on the ship ? Why?

من وجهة نظرك ، ما الخطوة الأولى التى يجب على جيم و أصدقائه ان يقوموا بها على السفينة؟ لماذا؟

– They should know the people they can trust to plan how to face those pirates.

يجب عليهم معرفة الأشخاص الذين يمكنهم أن يثقوا بهم لكى يخططوا كيفية مواجهة هؤلاء القراصنة.

7. What do you think of Captain Smollett's character?

ما رأيك فى شخصية كابتن سموليت؟

– I think he was a sensible man. He had the ability to judge people well.

أعتقد أنه شخصية عاقلة متزنة. كان لديه القدرة على الحكم على الناس بشكل جيد.

8. In your opinion, why were all the crew happy to spend a day on the island?

فى رأيك ، لماذا شعر جميع طاقم البحارة بالسعادة لقضاء يوم على الجزيرة؟

– I think they needed to refresh their energy and relax. Also, they might think that it was a good chance to look for the treasure on the island.

أعتقد أنهم كانوا فى حاجة لتجديد طاقتهم و ان يستريحوا. ربما اعتقدوا أنها فرصة جيدة ليبحثوا عن الكنز فى الجزيرة.

9. Silver proved to be a violent criminal. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

أثبت سيلفر أنه مجرم عنيف. هل توافق؟ لما / لما لا؟

– Silver was ready to kill all the people who refused his bad plans.

كان سيلفر على إستعداد لقتل جميع الناس الذين رفضوا خططه السيئة.

10. If you were Jim, what would you do when you saw Silver kill Tom ?

لو كنت مكان «جيم»، ماذا كنت ستفعل عندما ترى سيلفر يقتل «توم» ؟

– I would hide in a safe place.

كنت سأختبئ فى مكان آمن.

III General Exercises on chapter four :

1. Despite his disability, Silver had great experience in sailing. Do you agree? Why / Why not?
....
....
....

2. If you were Jim, how would you behave after knowing Silver's plan?
....
....
....

3. Jim didn't trust anyone of the crew on the ship. Say why in your opinion.
....
....
....

4. If you were Jim would you play the role which Dr Livesy asked you to do? Why / Why not?
....
....
....

5. Not all the people on board were bad; there were good ones. Illustrate.
....
....
....

6. Why do you think the crew had no desire to work after reaching the island?
....
....
....

7. Why do you think Jim went to the island and didn't stay on the ship?
....
....
....

8. "Despite being young, Jim was a wise sensible person." What do you think of this ?

....

....

....

9. If you were Tom, would you join Silver's group to save yourself? Why / Why not?

....

....

....

10. Tom was deceived by Silver as Jim and his friends. Is this right ? Why / Why not ?

....

....

....

11. If you were Jim, would you leave the island or stay on it?

....

....

....

12. "Good people pay for their honesty أمانة." If you think this is right, give one or two examples from the story.

....

....

....

CHAPTER 5



I Chapter five in points ?

نقاط هامة على الفصل الخامس :

1. **While running on the island, Jim met a man called Ben Gun who had been on the island for three years.**

بينما كان جيم يجرى على الجزيرة ، قابل رجل يدعى بن غان و هو كان على الجزيرة لمدة ثلاث سنوات.

2. **Ben Gun seemed to have found the treasure. He knew Silver and his men well and he didn't like working with them.**

كان يبدو أن بن غان قد وجد الكنز. كان يعرف سيلفر و رجاله جيداً و لكنه لم يكن يحب العمل معهم.

3. **Ben Gun was on Flint's ship when Captain Flint hid the treasure, but he didn't tell anyone about its place.**

كان بن غان على سفينة فلنت عندما خبأ كابتن فلنت الكنز ، ولكنه لم يخبر اى أحد عن مكانه.

4. **Ben Gun came back with some sailors looking for the treasure, but they didn't find anything and he was left alone on the island looking for the treasure.**

عاد بن غان للجزيرة مرة اخرى مع بعض البحارة للبحث عن الكنز ، ولكنهم لم يجدوا أى شيء، و بقى هو وحيداً على الجزيرة للبحث عن الكنز.

5. **Ben Gun agreed to work for Mr Trelawney and he would tell him about the place of the treasure.**

وافق بن غان على العمل مع السيد تريلاونى و أن يخبره عن مكان الكنز.

6. **Ben Gun indirectly helped Jim to come back to the ship by a boat he had made before.**

ساعد بن غان بشكل غير مباشر جيم فى العودة للسفينة بالمركب الذى كان قد صنعه من قبل.

II Questions with their suggested answers:

1. **In your point of view, how did Jim feel when he saw Ben Gun?**

من وجهة نظرك ، كيف شعُر جيم عندما رأى بن غان ؟

I think he felt afraid and worried.

أعتقد أنه كان خائفاً و قلقاً.

2. **Why do you think Jim began to feel safer after meeting Ben Gun?**

لماذا تعتقد أن جيم بدأ يشعر بالأمان بعد مقابلة بن جن؟

I think because he remembered having a gun with him.

أعتقد لأنه تذكر أن معه مسدس.

3. **Ben Gun had a hard life on the island. Illustrate.**

عاش بن غان حياة صعبة على الجزيرة. وضح.

He had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of an old sail. He lived on fish and fruit.

كان له شعر طويل و جلد محترق من الشمس. ملابسه كانت متسخة و مصنوعة من شراع سفينة قديم. كان يعيش على السمك و الفاكهة.

4. **"I'm very rich, too!" What do you think Ben Gun meant by these words?**

«أنا غنى جداً أيضا.» فى رأيك ما الذى كان يعنيه بن غان بهذه الكلمات؟

I think he meant that he found the treasure.

أعتقد أنه كان يعنى أنه قد وجد الكنز.

PART 1

5. Although Jim thought Ben Gun was crazy at first, he realised that he could help them after that. In your point of view, when did Jim change his opinion about Ben Gun?

بالرغم من أن جيم اعتقد أن بن غان مجنون فى البداية ، إلا أنه ادرك أنه يمكنه مساعدته بعد ذلك. من وجهة نظرك، متى قام جيم بتغيير رأيه عن بن جن؟

– I think Jim changed his opinion about Ben Gun when he asked Jim if he had come on Flint's ship.

جيم غير رأيه عن بن غان عندما سأل جيم لو أنه كان قد حضر فى سفينة فلينت.

6. Silver wasn't just a cook. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

لم يكن سيلفر مجرد طاهى. هل تتفق؟ لماذا نعم / لا؟

– Yes, I agree; he was the leader of the pirates.

نعم، اتفق؛ لقد كان قائداً للقراصنة.

7. There would be a mutual benefit between Ben Gun and Jim. Discuss.

قد يكون هناك فائدة متبادلة بين بن غان و جيم. ناقش.

– Ben Gun would tell Jim and his friends about the treasure. Jim and his friends would take Ben Gun with them on their ship back to his homeland.

بن غان قد يخبر جيم و أصدقائه عن مكان الكنز. جيم و أصدقائه قد يأخذوا بن جن معهم على السفينة فى عودتهم لموطنه.

8. The idea of looking for Flint's treasure wasn't a new one. Discuss.

فكرة البحث عن كنز فلنت لم تكن فكرة جديدة. ناقش.

– Jim and his friends weren't the first to look for the treasure. Ben Gun and his friends looked for it. That's why Ben Gun was on the island.

جيم و أصدقائه لم يكونوا أول من بحث عن الكنز. بن غان و أصدقائه بحثوا عنه. لهذا السبب كان بن غان موجود على الجزيرة.

9. Do you think Ben Gun's friends should have been more patient in their looking for the treasure? Why / Why not?

هل تعتقد أن أصدقاء بن غان كان يجب عليهم أن يكونوا أكثر صبراً فى بحثهم عن الكنز؟ لماذا نعم / لا؟

– Yes, I think so. If they had been more patient, they could have found it as Ben Gun did.

نعم ، أعتقد ذلك. لو أنهم كانوا أكثر صبراً ، كان من الممكن أن يجدوه مثلما فعل بن غان.

10. In your point of view, why did Ben Gun make a boat?

من وجهة نظرك ، لماذا قام بن غان بعمل مركب؟

– I think he had much free time. He might have thought to sail home using it.

أعتقد أنه كان لديه وقت فراغ و أنه ربما فكر فى الإبحار به للعودة إلى موطنه.

III General Exercises on chapter five :

1. Why do you think Jim felt afraid of Ben Gun at first?

....

....

....

2. What do you think of Ben Gun's behaviour towards Jim?

....

....

....

PART 1

3. "I dream of eating good food again." What can you infer from this sentence?
....
....
....

4. In your point of view, was Ben Gun crazy as Jim thought? Why / Why not?
....
....
....

5. "If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said. What do you think Ben Gun meant by this sentence?
....
....
....

6. Do you think Ben Gun was a good man? Why / Why not?
....
....
....

7. Flint was a dangerous man. To what extent do you agree with this sentence? Why?
....
....
....

8. How do you think Flint threatened هدد the people who wanted to look for the treasure?
....
....
....

9. Ben Gun was wise in taking decisions. Do you agree? Why / Why not?
....
....
....

10. If you were Jim, would you trust Ben Gun? Why / Why not?
....
....
....

11. Why do you think Ben was more energetic than Jim?
....
....
....

12. Why do you think Jim and Ben were worried on hearing more guns?
....
....
....

CHAPTER | 6



I Chapter Six in points :

نقاط هامة على الفصل السادس :

1. Dr Livesy went to the island with a man called Hunter to save Jim, but they found a fort by accident.

ذهب د. ليفسى للجزيرة مع رجل يدعى هانتر لينقذوا جيم ، ولكنهم وجدوا حصن بالصدفة.

2. Dr Livesy came back to the ship and told Mr Trelawney and Captain Smollett about the fort.

عاد د. ليفسى للسفينة و أخبر السيد تريلاونى و كابتن سموليت عن الحصن.

3. They decided to take the foods and the guns to the fort and they threatened Silver's men not to try to contact Silver or they would be dead.

قرروا أن يأخذوا الطعام و المسدسات للحصن و أن يهددوا رجال سيلفر ألا يحاولوا الاتصال بسيلفر و إلا سيقتلوهم.

4. Hunter and another man called Joyce helped Dr Livesy to take the food and the guns to the beach.

ساعد هانتر و رجل آخر يدعى جويس د. ليفسى أن يأخذ الطعام و الأسلحة للشاطىء.

5. Dr Livesy came back to take the rest of the food and the weapons to the fort.

عاد د. ليفسى ليأخذ باقى الطعام و الأسلحة للحصن.

6. Mr Trelwaney and the rest of the men climbed into the boat which became heavy and slow and the journey was very difficult.

ركب السيد تريلاونى وبقية الرجال المركب الذى أصبح ثقيلاً وبطىء وأصبحت الرحلة صعبة جداً.

7. Silver's men who were on the ship prepared the cannon, but Mr Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.

جهز رجال سيلفر الذين كانوا على السفينة مدفع ، ولكن السيد تريلاونى وقف بمسدسه و أطلق النار على القراصنة، و سقط أحدهم.

8. Mr Trelawney and his men managed to get to the fort. The pirates were surprised when they saw the fort and there was a fire and Redruth was shot.

تمكن السيد تريلاونى و رجاله من الوصول للحصن. وكان القراصنة مندهشين عندما رأوا الحصن ، وكان هناك إطلاق نار و أصيب ريدروث.

9. Jim managed to get to the fort with his friends.

تمكن جيم من الوصول للحصن مع أصدقائه.

II Questions with their suggested answers:

1. How do you think the wind prevented Mr Trelawney and his men from taking the ship?

فى رأيك كيف منعت الرياح السيد تريلاونى و رجاله من أن يأخذوا السفينة؟

– I think because there was no wind to help them sail the ship.

أعتقد لأنه لم يكن هناك رياح لتساعدهم للإبحار.

2. How do you think Dr Livesy and the other men could benefit from the fort?

فى رأيك، كيف كان بإمكان دكتور ليفسى و الرجال الآخرون الإستفادة من الحصن؟

– I think it could protect them from the pirates' attacks.

أعتقد أنه من الممكن ان يحميهم من هجمات القراصنة.

3. After exploring the fort, why do you think Dr Livesy and Hnuter didn't stay in the fort and came back to the ship?

بعد إستكشاف الحصن ، لماذا لم يمكث دكتور ليفسى و هانتر فى الحصن و عادوا للسفينة؟

They had to come back to the ship to fetch the food supplies, medicines, guns and the other people.

كان يجب عليهم أن يعودوا للسفينة ليحضروا إمدادات الطعام و الأدوية و الأسلحة و الناس الأخرين.

4. Why do you think Mr Trelawney and his men had an advantage over the pirates?

فى رأيك، لماذا كان السيد تريلاونى و رجاله لديهم ميزة عن القراصنة؟

I think they had guns and the fort and this gave them an advantage.

أعتقد أنهم كان لديهم أسلحة (مسدسات) والحصن وهذا أعطى لهم ميزة.

5. Captain Smollett proved that he was a good leader. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

أثبت الكابتن سموليت أنه كان قائداً جيداً. هل تتفق؟ لماذا نعم / لا؟

– Yes, I agree. When they were on the sea and the men were worried, he comforted them.

نعم ، أتفق مع ذلك. عندما كانوا على البحر، كان الرجال يشعروا بالقلق، قام بطمأنتهم.

6. Do you think Mr Trelawney was a good shooter? How did you know?

هل تعتقد أن السيد تريلاونى كان قناص جيد؟ كيف عرفت ذلك؟

– Yes, he was because he managed to shoot one of the pirates easily while sailing to the island in a small boat.

نعم أعتقد ذلك ، لأنه تمكن من أن يصيب أحد القراصنة بسهولة بينما كان يبحر للجزيرة فى قارب صغير.

7. Surprise was one of the men's weapons against the pirates. Illustrate.

كانت المفاجأة أحد أسلحة الرجال ضد القراصنة. وضح.

– When the pirates reached the fort, they were surprised to see it for the first time which gave the men the opportunity to fire guns and make them run away from the fort.

عندما وصل القراصنة للحصن ، شعروا بالدهشة من رؤية الحصن لأول مرة مما منح الرجال فرصة لإطلاق النار و جعلهم يهربوا بعيداً عن الحصن.

8. Why do you think the men had to risk their lives and go back to the sea after getting to the fort?

لماذا تعتقد أنه كان على الرجال أن يخاطروا بحياتهم و يعودوا للبحر بعدما وصلوا للحصن؟

– I think because they lost many supplies which they needed badly to be able to stay in their fort.

أعتقد أنهم فقدوا كثيراً من الإمدادات التى كانوا يحتاجونها بشدة ليتمكنوا من البقاء فى الحصن.

III General Exercises on chapter six :

1. Why do you think Dr Livesy went to the island with Hunter ?

....

2. The fort had some advantages. Discuss.

....

3. Do you think it was necessary for Dr Livesy to leave Hunter and Joyce at the fort? Why / Why not?

....

4. Why do you think the second journey to the island was more difficult than the first one?

....

5. Despite taking the weapons, the food supplies and the medicines, Mr Trelawney and his men were very worried. Discuss.

....

6. Despite comforting the other men, Captain Smollett was very worried. To what extent do you agree with that sentence? Why ?

....

7. Getting to the fort quickly was a turning point نقطة تحول in the men's fight against the pirates. Do you think this is true? Why / Why not?

....

8. Running quickly to the fort was a double-edged weapon سلاح ذو حدين. Do you agree with this? Why / Why not?

....

9. Why do you think the men were sad despite winning their race to the fort?

....

10. Why do you think it was very necessary to get the missing supplies in the sea?

....

11. Captain Smollett had a strange opinion about keeping a flag on the fort. What do you think of it?

....

12. The men received good news after the bad news of Redruth's death. What do you think of it?

....

PART 2 | 15 Sample Tests



Sample Test 1

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Can you repeat your question in other words ? It is not clear. The antonyms of "clear" are ....
   a. ambiguous b. obvious c. vague d. bright e. cloudy
2. A good leader should have some qualities as being ....
   a. extremist b. fair c. violent d. wise e. stubborn

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This party is boring. We ....a good time.
   a. don't have b. aren't having c. didn't have d. hadn't had
2. Children like listening to and reading ....
   a. locks b. rhymes c. rhythms d. gravels
3. I .... my computer very often.
   a. am not using b. am not used c. doesn't use d. don't use
4. There's .... /s/ sound in the word 'city'.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
5. I was made .... a fine for not wearing the seat belt.
   a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid
6. Have you sent all the invitations .... ? That's so fast!
   a. already b. just c. yet d. ever
7. The teacher wrote the names of the winning students on the ....
   a. chat broad b. noticeboard c. guard room d. changing room
8. A/An .... is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful than them.
   a. bully b. biologist c. expert d. archaeologist
9. The ....between smoking and cancer is very clear.
   a. connection b. disconnection c. donation d. transplant
10. The strict diet he follows makes him go ....
    a. healthy b. powerful c. pale d. strong
11. Do you know the most enormous animal on land ? Another word for "enormous" in this question is ....
    a. passive b. gigantic c. positive d. fantastic
12. After the match, he preferred to .... with a cup of tea.
    a. stress b. sleep c. worry d. relax
13. My grandpa once .... me a present.
    a. is giving b. gives c. gave d. giving
14. I suggest Rodayna .... engineering like her mother.
    a. studies b. studying c. have studied d. study

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A friend of mine once had an amusing experience on a bus. He very **rarely** travels by bus because he has been driving his own car for many years. But it so happened that his car broke down near his home. He was going to buy a fridge after he had taken out of the bank five thousand pounds that could cover the price of the set. He put the money in an envelope in one of his pockets and got on a bus. He met an old friend on the bus and had a conversation with him.

Unconsciously, every now and then he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly he felt it had gone. He looked at the faces of the people around him but couldn't know which was the thief. **He didn't lose his nerve** and with a smile said to his friend, " A foolish thief has taken from my pocket an envelope which is full of newspaper cuttings about a subject. I am going to write an article for my paper. I think the fool thought it was full of money."

Everybody heard what he said and the man looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it. As he was anxious to count the money in it, he left the bus the next stop. He was happy to find all the five thousand pounds in the envelope.

1. The writer's friend pretended to be a ....
   a. bus driver b. journalist c. policeman d. thief
2. The thief threw the envelope on the bus floor because ....
   a. it contained five thousand pounds
   b. he was tricked into believing that it had no money
   c. he was tricked into believing that it didn't have newspaper cuttings
   d. he was afraid of being arrested
3. The writer's friend had his money back ....
   a. because he knew the thief at once
   b. because he knew the thief but didn't arrest him
   c. because he behaved wisely
   d. because he didn't know the thief at all
4. The thief was really ....
   a. intelligent b. nervous c. foolish d. happy
5. The underlined sentence "**He didn't lose his nerve**" which is mentioned in the passage means most likely that ....
   a. the writer's friend stayed calm
   b. the writer's friend became nervous
   c. the writer's friend became furious
   d. the writer's friend stayed tensioned

6. After the writer's friend found the envelope, he was .... to count the money in it.

a. wise b. worried c. intelligent d. foolish

7. The word "**rarely**" can be replaced by ....

a. seldom b. always c. usually d. often

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Everybody should have a goal in their life. It is also important to do our best to achieve our goals.

ⓐ يجب أن يكون لكل شخص هدف في حياته، وهي مهمة أيضًا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتحقيق أهدافنا.

ⓑ يجب أن يكون لكل شخص مرمى في حياته، ومن المهم أيضًا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتحقيق أهدافنا.

ⓒ يجب أن يكون لكل شخص هدف في حياته، ومن المهم أيضًا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتحقيق أهدافنا.

ⓓ يجب أن يكون لكل شخص هدف في حياته، ومن المهم فقط أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتحقيق أهدافنا.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لعلك تعلم أن المال وحده لا يمكن أن يجعل الإنسان سعيداً. فكل من السعادة والصحة مثلاً لا يُمكن شرائهما بالمال.

a. You may know that money alone cannot make a person happy. For example, both happiness and health cannot be bought with money.

b. You know that money alone cannot make a person happy. For example, both happiness and health cannot be bought with money.

c. You may know that money alone cannot make a person happily. For example, both happiness and health cannot be bought with money.

d. You may know that money alone cannot make a person happy. For example, all happiness and health cannot be bought with money.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **What do you think of what the Captain gave the inn owner ?**

....

....

2. **If you were Mr. Trelawney, would you tell the crew about the treasure ? Why / Why not ?**

....

....

3. **Why do you think Jim felt afraid of Ben Gun at first ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

The four seasons of the year are characterized by different kinds of weather and activities Which season is your favourite and why ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 2

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. It is not good to avoid your problem. The opposites of "avoid" in this sentence are ....

   a. ignore b. face c. follow d. improve e. confront

2. I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was boring. The antonyms of "boring" are ....

   a. interesting b. tiring c. annoying d. amazing e. exhausting

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Before joining the university, I .... living away from my family.

   a. used b. didn't use to c. used to d. wasn't used to

2. I want to get a carpenter .... the front door of my house.

   a. fix b. fixed c. to fix d. be fixed

3. I know the names of all people in our street, ... little children.

   a. include b. including c. includes d. included

4. My sister has a flat on .... 2nd floor.

   a. a b. an c. the d. no article

5. My job here is to .... customers.

   a. deserve b. help c. owe d. extract

6. I prefer .... in the New Capital as it is modern.

   a. to living b. live c. lives d. living

7. You need to work in .... with your team members.

   a. location b. destination c. pollution d. collaboration

8. A/An .... is the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another.

   a. experience b. transplant c. exploration d. transmission

PART 2

9. Sometimes, a/an .... can be as loving as a real parent.

a. father b. stepfather c. orphan d. attendant

10. Artificial .... will play a more important role in the future.

a. review b. machinery c. cloth d. Intelligence

11. He is accused of .... That means trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them.

a. phishing b. fishing c. emptying d. catching

12. My mother used to nurse us when we were ill. The opposite of "nurse" is to ....

a. support b. look after c. care about d. ignore

13. When .... this house built ?

a. does b. was c. did d. will

14. She is stubborn عنيدة. It .... easy to make her agree to this plan.

a. won't be b. isn't going to be
c. isn't being d. is

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Walking in the street at night, I found a purse full of money and an identity card. I found a photo of a pretty young lady, I put it back in the purse and went directly to the police station. The sergeant made a note of my name and address. Last Friday, I was invited to a party in my friend's house in Shoubra. A neighbour of my friend came to visit his wife. When I looked at her face, I found it familiar to me although we hadn't met before. After a short time, I remembered that she was the lady I had seen in the photo.

I was able to describe the purse and the sum of money accurately. She was surprised and we went together to the police station to get the purse back. After getting out of the police station, she thanked me a lot. She told me that she had looked for her purse for a long time until she lost hope to find it. I went home feeling happy as I was able to make this lady happy. It is good to feel **satisfied** with yourself.

1. The writer met the purse owner in ....

a. the police station b. street
c. their first school d. his friend's house

2. The purse owner was astonished because ....

a. she lost her purse
b. she met the person who found her purse accidentally
c. the person who found her purse was honest
d. she met the writer at her house

3. This passage is extracted from a ....

a. comic b. science book
c. religion book d. story

4. If the lady didn't visit the wife of the writer's friend, she would ....
   a. not know about her purse
   b. not forget about her purse
   c. forget about the money
   d. find her purse
5. If you find a sum of money, it's honest to ....
   a. give it to the police
   b. give it to your friends
   c. share it with others
   d. share it with the police
6. The word "**satisfied**" means ....
   a. angry
   b. happy
   c. cross
   d. nervous
7. The lady lost hope about ....
   a. getting to the police station
   b. getting her purse back
   c. getting married
   d. making money

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Dreams do not come true by luck or by themselves. One needs to fight to achieve their goal.

(a) الأحلام لا تتحقق بالحظ أو من تلقاء نفسها، فالمرء يحتاج للقتال لتحقيق هدفه.
(b) الأحلام لا تتحقق بالفرصة أو من تلقاء نفسها، فالمرء يحتاج للقتال لتحقيق هدفه.
(c) الأحلام لن تتحقق بالحظ أو من تلقاء نفسها، فالمرأة تحتاج للقتال لتحقيق هدفها.
(d) أحلام لا تحقق بالحظ أو من تلقاء نفسها، فالمرأة تحتاج للقتال لتحقيق هدفها.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يجب علينا جميعاً أن نحافظ على أنفسنا بصحة جيدة، والصحة الجيدة تتطلب الحصول على طعام صحي ونوم كافٍ وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام.

a. We must all keep ourselves healthily. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.
b. We must all keep ourselves health. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.
c. We must all keep ourselves healthy. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.
d. We must all keep ourselves healthy. Good health enquires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **After looking at the papers, what do you think the attackers were looking for ? Why ?**

   ....

   ....

2. **Do you think Silver was a good one ? Why ?**

   ....

   ....

3. **If you were Jim, how would you behave after knowing Silver's plan ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Famous Egyptian women"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 3

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. When I read two .... of the poem, I liked it very much.

   a. lines b. poets c. verses d. rhymes e. plots

2. Global warming is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved.

   a. rules b. reviews c. roles d. issues e. problems

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Our teacher asked us to avoid .... our time in useless things.

   a. waste b. to waste c. wasting d. to wasting

2. I can't meet you at five because I .... my duties.

   a. won't have finished b. will be finished
   c. may have finished d. had finished

3. If you want to .... good health, avoid smoking.

   a. follow b. be c. enjoy d. having

4. Many writers .... by Shakespeare, the great English playwright.

   a. influenced b. have influenced c. were influenced d. were influencing

5. **A:** Why have you got so much vegetables?
   B: Because I .... a meal for ten people.

   a. cook b. am going to cook c. will cook d. have cooked

6. What time .... home last night?

   a. did you get b. were you getting c. had you got d. were you got

7. My parents warned me not to .... liars.
 a. trust b. think c. connect d. distrust
8. .... pay for the tickets, but children travel for free.
 a. Infants b. Adults c. The young d. The poor
9. The police have found a/an .... that he is the thief.
 a. clue b. cross c. island d. idea
10. He .... much money from exporting vegetables abroad.
 a. makes b. gives c. gains d. does
11. When the little boy went back home, he asked his brother for .... about a science problem.
 a. donation b. verse c. advice d. rhyme
12. When my little brother does anything wrong , I become ....
 a. delighted b. over the moon c. furious d. satisfied
13. The moon .... round the earth.
 a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved
14. She .... for work an hour ago.
 a. has left b. left c. is leaving d. will leave

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many animals in the world today are in danger. For many of them, the biggest danger is humans. People have always killed animals for their meat or their skins, others are killed because they eat crops or animals which belong to farmers. Certain animals, such as tigers and elephants, used to live in great numbers in countries like India. People have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive. However, there are now laws to stop this.

In South America, many different birds and animals have lost their natural homes in the forests because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then used the land for farming or for building roads and towns.

We are too late to save some animals. A few are now **extinct**. This means there are none left anywhere in the world. Others are only in zoos or special parks. Zoos such as the one in Giza, are important because they can help some animals to live . It also make us able to provide **care** for animals and learn more about them in zoos.

1. After the trees have been cut down, the forest land in South America is not used for ....
 a. roads b. farms c. towns d. zoos
2. According to the passage, zoos are important for animals because ....
 a. they save animals from death b. we enjoy visiting them
 c. animals can be seen there d. people can eat meat there
3. The underlined word "**extinct**" in the passage means ....
 a. active b. not active
 c. existing d. no longer existing
4. The best title to the passage is "........... ".
 a. Animal protection b. Pollution
 c. Climate change d. Animals' life

5. .... do their best to keep animals safe.

a. Conservationists
b. Hunters
c. Policemen
d. Environmentalists

6. The verb "**care**" can be replaced by ....

a. look for
b. look after
c. look behind
d. look out

7. People used animals' land for ....

a. cutting down trees
b. milking cows
c. planting crops
d. building zoos

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

I think doctor Magdy Yacoub is the best role model for young generations. He has always worked hard for the good of patients.

ⓐ أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدي يعقوب هو نموذج يحتذى به للأجيال الشابة، فلقد عمل دائمًا بجد من أجل خير المرضى.

ⓑ أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدي يعقوب هو أفضل نموذج يحتذى به للأجيال الشابة، فلقد عمل دائمًا بجد من أجل المرضى الجيدين.

ⓒ أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدي يعقوب هو أفضل نموذج يحتذى به للأجيال الشابة، فلقد عمل دائمًا بجد من أجل خير المرضى.

ⓓ أعتقد أن الدكتور مجدي يعقوب هو أفضل دور نموذجي للأجيال الشابة، فلقد عمل دائمًا بجد من أجل خير المرضى.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لابد أن يكون لك هدف عظيم في الحياة، ولابد أن تخطط جيداً وتعمل جيداً من أجل تحقيق هذا الهدف.

a. You must have a great goal in life. You must also plant well and work well in order to achieve this goal.

b. You must have a great goal in life. You must also plan well and work well in order to achieve this goal.

c. You must have a great goal in life. You must also plan well and work well in order to fail this goal.

d. You must have a great goal in life. You must also plan will and work well in order to achieve this goal.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Do you think Ben Gun a good man ? Why / Why not ?**

....

....

2. **Why do you think the Captain looked pale on seeing Black Dog ?**

....

....

3. **Although Jim was worried when he saw Black Dog, Mr Trelawney didn't do anything. Discuss.**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Exploring the space"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 4

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. It's a long walk from my house to the club. The word "walk" can be replaced by ....
   a. route b. flight c. path d. destination e. voyage
2. It's better to invite them all, ... Adham.
   a. generally b. rarely c. loudly d. especially e. particularly

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We decided .... in a five-star hotel.
   a. to stay b. staying c. to staying d. stay
2. **A:** What would you like to start with? **B:** I .... lentil soup, please.
   a. would have b. am having c. will have d. going to have
3. I don't have .... friends; just three close ones.
   a. any b. lot of c. many d. a few
4. It's two months since we .... in Cairo.
   a. have stayed b. were staying c. stayed d. are staying
5. English .... all over the world.
   a. speaks b. is spoken c. is speaking d. spoke
6. If he .... the label, he'd know what this drink consists of.
   a. read b. reads c. is reading d. was read

7. A / An .... is a dishonest plan to steal money.
   a. import b. deal c. scam d. export
8. Sara's .... with Noha started at primary school.
   a. friendship b. diversity c. salutation d. expression
9. I know how to overcome this difficult situation as I have .... it before.
   a. extracted b. married c. owed d. experienced
10. People who .... the law must be fined.
   a. save b. obey c. follow d. break
11. The .... were taken to the public hospital.
   a. solutions b. victims c. spices d. adverts
12. To keep the gravel walk means to stay on the ....
   a. Indian Wars b. barrow c. path d. wall
13. .... means too full of people or things.
   a. Awful b. Crowded c. Local d. Brilliant
14. To me, either answer .... acceptable.
   a. are b. were c. is d. has

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The average age of the population of many countries is getting older. This means that businesses in those countries must adjust to older customers. In fact, many companies are working to respond the special needs of the elderly. One example of this is the medical industry. New medicines and technologies are being developed especially for the health problems of older people. Another business that offers services for the elderly is the tourist industry. Many travel agencies offer special trips for groups of older people. And finally, there are many different kinds of products made for the elderly. These include everything from shoes and shampoos to magazines and furniture.

In industrialized countries today, many elderly people face the **danger** of living alone and lonely. That leads to the feeling of depression. In the past, older people usually lived with other members of the family. They usually had some responsibilities around the home. For example, older women could help take care of the children or prepare meals. These days, married adults often prefer to live **on their own**, far away from other parents. Older people sometimes feel that they do not concern anyone.

1. The best summary to the passage can be "...........".
   a. Medicine industry develops special drugs b. Serving the elderly
   c. Tourist companies d. Serving the environment
2. Some elderly people feel they are cut off from the world when ....
   a. they can help their sons b. they can't help their sons
   c. their sons and daughters live far from them d. they face health problems

3. The idiom "**on their own**" in the passage means ....

a. alone b. belonging to

c. possess d. without help from anyone

4. Those who serve the elderly are ....

a. helpful b. impatient c. evil d. unkind

5. The antonym of "**danger**" is ....

a. responsibility b. safety c. opportunity d. depression

6. Many travel agencies .... special trips for the elderly.

a. request b. travel c. offer d. pick

7. Living alone and lonely leads to the feeling of ....

a. depression b. confidence c. hope d. pride

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

To work in a team, you need to be sociable and cooperative. In a team, each member plays a role to achieve the whole task.

(a) يجب أن تكون اجتماعيًا ومتعاونًا لكيلا تعمل ضمن فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دورًا لتحقيق المهمة بأكملها.

(b) يجب أن تكون اجتماعيًا ومتعاونًا لكي تعمل ضمن فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دورًا لتحقيق كل المهام.

(c) يجب أن تكون اجتماعيًا ومتعاونًا لكي تعمل ضمن فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دورًا لتحقيق المهمة بأكملها.

(d) يجب أن تكون جامعياً ومتعاونًا لكي تعمل ضمن فريق، فكل عضو في الفريق يلعب دورًا لتحقيق المهمة بأكملها.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تلعب الأم كما نعلم جميعاً الدور الأكثر أهمية في حياة كل إنسان، فلا أحد يستطيع أن يستغني عن أمه أو أن ينساها.

a. The mother, as we all know, plays the most important role in the life of every human being. No one can do with their mother or forget her.

b. The mother, as we all know, play the most important role in the life of every human being. No one can do without their mother or forget her.

c. The mother, as we all know, plays the most important role in the life of every human being. No one can do without their mother or forget her.

d. The mother, like we all know, plays the most important role in the life of every human being. No one can do without their mother or forget her.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Running quickly to the fort was a double-edged weapon. Do you agree with this sentence ? Why / Why not ?**

....

....

2. **How do you think the Captain would feel after Black Dog's visit ?**

....

....

3. **If you were Jim, would you leave the island or stay on it ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

Everywhere we go, we use many modern inventions which help us live a better life. In your opinion, what is the most important invention in your life ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 5

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. We have faced many major problems. The antonyms of "major" are ....
   a. important b. main c. minor d. unkind e. unimportant
2. Brilliant scientists .... new devices all the time to make life easier.
   a. discover b. create c. explore d. invite e. invent

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Do you think that Cairo .... bigger in the future?
   a. is b. is going to be c. will be d. is being
2. He is collecting all the paintings which his friend ....
   a. drew b. had drawn c. draws d. has drawn
3. This playground .... for training.
   a. used b. is used c. uses d. is using
4. "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means: ....
   a. They help sick people b. They should help sick people
   c. They must be helped by sick people d. They might have helped sick people

5. .... yesterday evening ?
   a. What were you doing b. What you were doing
   c. What doing you were d. What were doing you
6. I want .... bottle of cold water.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. A / An .... is a steep piece of land or rock.
   a. scar b. cliff c. area d. island
8. The problem was discussed a lot on the ....
   a. media b. room c. mid d. middle
9. The .... decided that the man was innocent بريء and set him free.
   a. pirate b. sailor c. cook d. magistrate
10. .... conclusion , I'd like to thank you for your attendance.
   a. In b. At c. On d. About
11. It's important to lock your house before going out. The antonym of "lock" is to ....
   a. shout b. separate c. open d. rob
12. I needed help, so I asked my friend to .... me a favour.
   a. push b. take c. send d. do
13. Try .... the aerial over there, it might work better.
   a. to put b. putting c. will put d. put
14. Nurses .... after patients in hospitals. It's their job.
   a. are looking b. looked c. look d. looks

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two groups, winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great effect on us as we grow, we are born hopeless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes, they do their own thinking, they listen to, think of what they say and then they make their decisions.

Although they may fall at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners **overcome** their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can give it up if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many reasons why people can become losers: disease, poor food, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences, these can slow down the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers don't do anything and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

1. The passage is mainly about ....
   a. winners and losers b. winners
   c. losers d. all people

PART 2

2. When the winners fall at times, they ....

a. are afraid to try new things
b. keep their self-confidence
c. spend their time waiting
d. repeat their own mistakes

3. Winners can change their own ideas by ....

a. using their mistakes as excuses
b. blaming others for mistakes
c. being in charge of their own lives
d. waiting for something wonderful

4. The verb "**overcome**" can have the meaning of ....

a. get up
b. get on
c. get by
d. get over

5. Losers need ....

a. not to change their mind
b. not to change their ideas
c. to use their mistakes as excuses
d. to learn from their mistakes

6. Which of the following is **correct** ?

a. People may fail at times but not all times.
b. People can't change their mind.
c. Winners can't get over their bad experiences.
d. Winners can't fight dangerous situations.

7. Winners are ....

a. responsible
b. evil
c. bad
d. careless

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

It has become a must to employ modern technology in education. Technology can make education easier, more enjoyable and more effective.

(a) لقد أصبح من الضروري استخدام التكنولوجيا في التعليم، فالتكنولوجيا يمكنها أن تجعل التعليم أسهل وأكثر إمتاعًا وفاعلية.

(b) لقد أصبح من الضروري استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم، فالتكنولوجيا لا يمكنها أن تجعل التعليم أسهل وأكثر إمتاعًا وفاعلية.

(c) لقد أصبح من الضروري عدم استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم، فالتكنولوجيا يمكنها أن تجعل التعليم أسهل وأكثر إمتاعًا وفاعلية.

(d) لقد أصبح من الضروري استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم، فالتكنولوجيا يمكنها أن تجعل التعليم أسهل وأكثر إمتاعًا وفاعلية.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن الأُسرة الناجحة هي أساس المجتمع الناجح، فالأُسرة تعلمنا كيف نكون أعضاء صالحين ومفيدين في مجتمعاتنا.

a. A successful family is the source of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be good and useful members of our societies.
b. A successful family is the foundation of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be good and useful members in our societies.
c. A successful family is the foundation of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be good and useful numbers of our societies.
d. A successful family is the foundation of a successful society. The family teaches us how to be a good and useful members of our societies.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think Jim, the narrator of the story forgot all about the Captain's story ?

....

....

2. "If you find it, you'll all be rich !" said the blind man. What do you think this sentence means ?

....

....

3. Despite his disability, Silver had great experience in sailing. Do you agree ? Why / Why not ?

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"A review of a novel you have read"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 6

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. These two mobile phones are similar. The antonyms of "similar" are ....
   a. unlike b. alike c. comparable d. resembling e. different
2. I think Adham can do this job .... He is very clever.
   a. properly b. negatively c. correctly d. improperly e. wrongly

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Esraa .... on her mobile when suddenly the battery went dead.
   a. didn't talk b. wasn't talking c. was talking d. has talked
2. When I was young, I .... much free time, so I played a lot with my friend.
   a. used to having b. don't use to have
   c. used to have d. didn't use to have

3. Rokaya .... the washing-up when her father arrived home.
   a. has done   b. was doing   c. is doing   d. does
4. I spent .... useful time in the library.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
5. He prepared everything. He ....
   a. was showering   b. has showered
   c. will shower   d. is going to shower
6. I really hate .... alone.
   a. to living   b. living   c. lives   d. live
7. Every member of the .... must respect the freedom of others.
   a. experience   b. beliefs   c. community   d. merchant
8. My children, Rodayna and Ahmed, are ready to........... and hurt each other for any reason.
   a. call   b. populate   c. fight   d. avoid
9. Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone is called ....
   a. applying   b. sharing   c. blogging   d. cyberbullying
10. I'd like to speak to the head of the department. The word "head" in this sentence is ....
   a. a part of a body   b. a leader of a place   c. a way of thinking   d. a place to stay in
11. I spent the whole day .... on the beach.
   a. spicing   b. impacting   c. sunbathing   d. increasing
12. The governor is giving a .... in the conference.
   a. talk   b. talks   c. talking   d. to talk
13. Snow has prevented .... with the outside world for three days.
   a. security   b. safety   c. collection   d. communication
14. If something .... wrong with the machine, call me.
   a. has   b. does   c. makes   d. goes

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans who send them letters and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses.

The rulers of the world, kings, presidents, politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far wide. Anyhow, fame is not easily obtained but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

But, the life of famous people is not an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact they are unhappy, and **their time is arranged for them**. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about their private lives and this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desires to get fame.

PART 2

1. Famous people may appear happy ....
   a. although they are not wealthy
   b. despite being far from happiness
   c. in spite of having time arranged for them
   d. because their fame has gone far and wide
2. Famous people feel furious when ....
   a. they are well known all over the world
   b. they have fans
   c. their private lives are talked about
   d. their photographs are hung on the walls
3. The underlined sentence "**their time is arranged for them**" most likely means that famous people ....
   a. have free time as they like
   b. are free to do what they like
   c. are not always busy and have spare time
   d. aren't free to do what they like
4. According to the passage, the life of famous people is ....
   a. an easy one
   b. full of hardships and duties
   c. full of fun and pleasure
   d. an enjoyable one
5. The best title of the passage is "...........".
   a. Sportsmen
   b. Champions
   c. Film stars
   d. Famous people
6. A great number of people desire to get fame. This means they .... to get fame.
   a. want
   b. detest
   c. meet
   d. mistake
7. Fame is not easily .... but it is the result of hard work and suffering.
   a. given
   b. achieved
   c. desired
   d. got

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Tourism is no doubt a very important economic and cultural activity. It is an important source of hard currency.

a) السياحة بلا شك نشاط اقتصادي وثقافي مهم للغاية، إنه مصدر مهم للعملة الصعبة.
b) السياحة بلا شك نشاط اقتصادي وثقافي مهم للغاية، فهي مصدر مهم للتيار الصعب.
c) السياحة بلا شك نشاط اقتصادي وثقافي مهم للغاية، فهي مصدر مهم للعملة الصعبة.
d) السياحة بكل شك نشاط اقتصادي وثقافي مهم للغاية، فهي مصدر مهم للعملة الصعبة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لا يمكن للطالب قضاء كل وقته في مذاكرة دروسه فقط، فلابد أن يكون هناك وقت للاسترخاء وممارسة الهوايات المفيدة.

a. A student cannot spend all their time studying their lessons alone. There must be time to relax and practise useful hobbies.
b. A student cannot spend all their time studying their lessons only. There must be time to relax and practise useful hobbies.
c. A student cannot spend all of their time studying there lessons only. There must be time to relax and practise useful hobbies.
d. A student cannot spend all of their time studying their lessons only. Their must be time to relax and practise useful hobbies.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. "I dream of eating good food again." What can you infer from this sentence ?

....

....

2. Why do you think Dr Livesy went to the island ?

....

....

3. If you were with Jim and the other men, what would you suggest doing ?

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Staying healthy"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 7

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. She did a/an .... search for the good hotels in this area.
   a. offline b. online c. disconnected d. connecting e. internet
2. To make sure that no one can use your mobile when you are away, it's better to have a/an ....
   a. lock b. argument c. software d. passport e. password

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My elder brother .... maths easier because he was good at it.
   a. helped me learn b. helped me learning
   c. helped me from learning d. helped me to learning
2. This is the most interesting novel I've .... read.
   a. never b. yet c. ever d. since
3. The trumpet is a musical instrument that .... by musicians all over the world.
   a. is played b. used to play c. is playing d. plays
4. He walked for a long time till he finally got .... his destination.
   a. of b. off c. on d. to
5. I'm looking forward .... the new art exhibit.
   a. to see b. to be seen c. seeing d. to seeing

6. He was so active that he took .... in different activities at his school .
   a. place b. part c. after d. in
7. The author of this book is a famous man of arts. The best word to replace "author" is ....
   a. designer b. warrior c. writer d. worker
8. Her .... changed once she heard of her success.
   a. expression b. experiment c. disease d. coast
9. I didn't know a lot about them because we didn't get in .... for long.
   a. conduct b. connect c. contract d. contact
10. White blood cells ....the body against infection.
   a. defend b. defence c. offend d. offence
11. They built a .... to protect them against the enemy attacks.
   a. forte b. fruit c. fort d. forty
12. **A:** Could you lend me L.E. 100? **B:** ....
   a. Certain b. Certainly c. Currently d. Curtain
13. How long ago .... you visit your uncle ?
   a. do b. does c. did d. had done
14. They plotted .... the new manager fail.
   a. to make b. against making c. to making d. making

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Now all our free time is regulated by TV. We rush home to be in time for this or that programme. We have given up sitting at table and having an evening meal of the day together.
A sandwich will be enough to enjoy the programme to the full. The TV demands absolute silence and attention. If any member of the family dares to open his mouth during a programme, he is quickly **silenced.**

Whole generations are growing addicted to TV. Food is left uneaten, homework undone and sleep is lost. To keep the children quiet, mothers put their children in the living room and turn on the TV. **It doesn't matter** that the children will watch **rubbishy** programmes of crimes and violence, so long as they are quiet. Some say that TV is a waste of time. But it is said that you have the choice. If you don't like it, don't buy a set or switch it off. If you boast you don't watch TV, it's like boasting you don't read books."

1. According to the passage, while watching a programme on TV, ...
   a. nobody can talk
   b. the family are chatting to each other
   c. everybody can give their opinion of the programme
   d. the members of family make noise

2. Nowadays , people rush home to be ....

a. early enough for a TV programme
b. on time for a TV programme
c. late for a TV programme
d. silenced for a TV programme

3. The sentence "**It doesn't matter**" can be replaced by "...........".

a. It is not your business
b. It hasn't happened
c. It is not important
d. Don't care

4. The summary of the last paragraph is "..........."

a. Everyone has the choice.
b. We should watch TV.
c. We shouldn't watch TV.
d. Don't read books.

5. The word **rubbishy** can be replaced by ....

a. cheap
b. expensive
c. bad
d. good

6. Mothers turn TV on to keep their children ....

a. happy
b. calm
c. angry
d. full

7. The verb "**silence**" means stop ....

a. eating
b. watching
c. talking
d. daring

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Cutting down rainforests destroys the natural environment of thousands of animals. In addition, the trees we cut give us oxygen.

a) إن قطع الغابات المطيرة يدمر البيئة الطبيعية لآلاف الحيوانات. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن الأشجار التي نقطعها تزودنا بالأكسجين.
b) إن تقليل الغابات المطيرة يدمر البيئة الطبيعية لآلاف الحيوانات. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن الأشجار التي قطعناها تزودنا بالأكسجين.
c) إن قطع الغابات المطيرة يدمر البيئة الطبيعية لآلاف الحيوانات. برغم ذلك، فإن الأشجار التي قطعناها تزودنا بالأكسجين.
d) إن قطع الغابات المطيرة يدمر البيئة الطبيعية لآلاف الحيوانات. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن الأشجار التي قطعناها تمتص الأكسجين.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

هل تريد أن تكون ناجحًا فى حياتك الشخصية والمهنية ؟ لذا عليك أن تضع خطة لكل فعل تود القيام به.

a. Do you want to be successful in your personal and professional life? So, you have to do a clear plan for every action you want to do.

b. Do you want to be successful in your special and professional life? So, you have to make a clear plan for every action you want to do.

c. Do you want to be successful in your personal and professional life? So, you have to make a clean plan for every action you want to do.

d. Do you want to be successful in your personal and professional life? So, you have to make a clear plan for every action you want to do.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Do you think the Captain's stories were boring ? Why ?**

....

....

2. **Do you think Captain Smollett was unhappy ? Why / Why not ?**

....

....

3. **What do you think of Ben Gun's behaviour towards Jim ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"An important event or competition that you have taken part in recently and what you've achieved."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 8

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. He told me that there is no possibility for him to attend the meeting. "Possibility" can be replaced by words as ....
   a. responsibility b. potentiality c. actuality d. capability e. reality
2. My sister will .... a presentation next week, so she is worried.
   a. make b. save c. give d. take e. get

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Would you like .... in Aswan forever?
   a. to live b. living c. to living d. live
2. I expect the manager .... accept your request.
   a. will b. is going to c. is d. was
3. I think the Nile is the longest river in the world. Are there .... rivers longer than it?
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
4. The injured woman .... to the public hospital.
   a. takes b. took c. has taken d. has been taken
5. Wait here until the manager .... back at the office.
   a. arrive b. arrives c. have arrived d. had arrived

6. While .... a cold drink, my car was being checked.
a. had b. was having c. was had d. I was having

7. The .... of large cities suffer from pollution and traffic jams.
a. resorts b. damages c. residents d. councils

8. The villagers suffer from the .... of lions that kill their livestock.
a. attackers b. attacks c. attacked d. attacking

9. I have the free time needed to do .... work for a nearby charity.
a. paid b. voluntary c. criminal d. disabled

10. A .... is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.
a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard

11. He is known for his intelligence. The antonym of "intelligence " is ....
a. stupid b. stupidity c. selfish d. selfishness

12. The energy of the .... and their desire to succeed make them the hope of the future.
a. ancestors b. old-aged c. infants d. youth

13. Law does not .... smoking in public places الأماكن العامة.
a. allowing b. allows c. allowed d. allow

14. In winter, most European families sit by the ....
a. labour b. fireplace c. cottage d. condition

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was a very dark night and extremely cold. I remember that night quite well. It was in the early eighties of the previous century. Electricity had just arrived at our little village some months earlier but on that particular night, it went off. Everybody had already entered their houses and closed their doors. Strong wind began to blow followed with a loud sound of thunder, then I heard some shots of a gun mixed with the horrible sounds of dogs barking. Being a little child, I was really frightened.

When it was early morning and we set out for dawn prayer at the little mosque of our village, we found uncle Fahmy was killed. His body lying on the dusty road by the Nile. I will never forget this scene. Uncle Fahmy used to be a very kind and humble man. I had never heard him shouting. He used to attend prayer at the mosque with us.

I was extremely sad and asked people around me, "Why was he killed?" I was told that he was killed because his grandfather once killed a member of the other family".
I wondered as that wasn't uncle Fahmy's fault. Some people neglected my words, others looked at me with a sad face.

1. The passage is a........... .
a. poem b. story
c. real accident d. scientific fact

2. Electricity had just arrived at the little village ....
   a. in the 16th the previous century
   b. in the 19th of the previous century
   c. in the 18th of the previous century
   d. in the 20th of the previous century
3. The weather that night was .... cold.
   a. very   b. as   c. not   d. absolutely
4. The moral of the story is ....
   a. we shouldn't take revenge in blood
   b. we should be indoors during the storm
   c. we should have memories from the past
   d. we shouldn't care of others in our village
5. Some people looked at the writer with a sad face as they wanted to say that he was ....
   a. right   b. shy   c. guilty   d. sad
6. "Some people neglected my words" this means that they didn't .... my words.
   a. speak   b. dare   c. face   d. care about
7. Uncle Fahmy was killed ....
   a. without any guilt   b. as he was a killer
   c. without any hurt   d. because he was guilty

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

When we face a problem, we may need others to lend us a hand. That's why we must support others whenever they need help.

ⓐ قد نحتاج إلى مساعدة الآخرين لنا عندما نواجه مشكلة، لهذا السبب يجب علينا دعم الآخرين كلما احتجنا إلى المساعدة.
ⓑ قد لا نحتاج إلى مساعدة الآخرين لنا عندما نواجه مشكلة، لهذا السبب يجب علينا دعم الآخرين كلما احتاجوا إلى المساعدة.
ⓒ نحتاج إلى مساعدة الآخرين لنا عندما نواجه مشكلة، لهذا السبب يجب علينا دعم الآخرين كلما احتاجوا إلى المساعدة.
ⓓ قد نحتاج إلى مساعدة الآخرين لنا عندما نواجه مشكلة، لهذا السبب يجب علينا دعم الآخرين كلما احتاجوا إلى المساعدة.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن مصر دولة عظيمة ذات تاريخ عريق على مر العصور، فمصر هي التي علمت العالم بأشره أسس الزراعة والطب وغيرها من العلوم.

a. Egypt is a great country with a long date over ages. It is Egypt that taught the whole world the basics of agriculture, medicine and other sciences.
b. Egypt is a great country with a long history over ages. It is Egypt that learnt the whole world the basics of agriculture, medicine and other sciences.
c. Egypt is a great country with along history over ages. It is Egypt that taught the whole world the basics of agriculture, medicine and other sciences.
d. Egypt is a great country with a long history over ages. It is Egypt that taught the whole world the basics of agriculture, medicine and other sciences.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. How do you think Jim and his mother feel when they saw Dr. Livesy and the other men ? Why ?

   ....

   ....

2. In your point of view, why couldn't Silver and his gang attack Mr. Trelawney and his men ?

   ....

   ....

3. In your point of view, was Ben Gun crazy as Jim thought ? Why / Why not ?

   ....

   ....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Travelling is a useful and enjoyable hobby."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 9

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. El-Moasser always provides us with many questions to .... our skills.
   a. prove b. avoid c. improve d. develop e. destroy
2. You should be quiet when you .... an important decision.
   a. do b. damage c. take d. protect e. make

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When I .... my friend on my way back home, he was doing shopping .
   a. was meeting b. met c. has met d. had met
2. During the previous conference, he .... a speech.
   a. gives b. has given c. gave d. had given
3. He said that he .... doing his maths homework after he wrote the essay .
   a. will finish b. would finish c. have finished d. had finished

4. **A:** How is Sama getting to the airport ?
B: She said that her brother .... her a lift.
a. would have given b. should have given c. was giving d. is giving
5. The firefighter ordered .... the building at once.
a. to everyone leaving b. everyone to be left
c. everyone to leave d. leaving everyone
6. I forgot .... the report with me, so I had to go back to get it.
a. to take b. to taking c. taking d. take
7. He is a good captain of our team because he has a good ....
a. person b. character c. family d. company
8. She has done voluntary work for a charity. As a volunteer, she works for the charity for ....
a. free b. pleasure c. treasure d. money
9. In oil industry, a .... is the unit of measurement.
a. bottle b. ton c. metre d. barrel
10. A group of criminals who work together is called a ....
a. tank b. bang c. gang d. bank
11. The woman dressed her children quickly because she was late. The opposite of "dressed" is ....
a. took off b. took on c. looked up d. looked after
12. He always has a .... expression on his face. He never looks happy.
a. miser b. miserable c. miserly d. misread
13. We .... the email and replied to it.
a. received b. receive c. have received d. would receive
14. This poor man lives in miserable ....
a. labours b. fireplaces c. machinery d. conditions

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Searching for a job is not an easy task. You have to keep reading daily newspapers and magazines. Sometimes, advertisers use the most expensive way of advertising. It is the TV advertisement, so, applicants have also to follow watching television. When you reply to a job advertisement, there are some things you should put in your letter. You should show that you are interested in **current** affairs. You should write about your qualities that make you suitable for it. You also need to write the name of someone who can say that you are an honest and good worker. The person who recommends you is a referee. To be a successful applicant, you should have good command of English. You should be efficient and well organized. You should also have some computing skills. General knowledge is a must. An applicant who says " Maldives in Africa " will certainly lose probable new job during his interview.

1. According to the passage, a referee ....
   a. may know the applicant
   b. should know the applicant
   c. should know the adviser
   d. should be interested in current affairs
2. Applicants should write about ....
   a. their qualifications and characteristics
   b. their neighbours' qualities
   c. why they left their current jobs
   d. the person who can say that they are selfish
3. As mentioned in the passage, the applicant should .... English.
   a. provide
   b. eradicate
   c. master
   d. neglect
4. The best title of the passage is "........... ".
   a. How to interview an applicant
   b. How to be a good applicant
   c. How to lose a job
   d. What are the bad qualities of an interviewer
5. To be a successful applicant, you should have some .... skills.
   a. computing
   b. eating
   c. cooking
   d. industrial
6. The word "**current**" means ....
   a. past
   b. recent
   c. future
   d. ancient
7. General knowledge is .... to get the job.
   a. not important
   b. interested
   c. essential
   d. devised

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

There is no doubt that bullying is a bad social phenomenon. It makes people feel scared and may lead to committing crimes.

a) لا شك أن التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة تجعل الناس يشعرون بالخوف وقد تؤدي إلى ارتكاب جرائم.
b) لا شك أن التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة يجعل الناس يشعرون بالخوف وقد يؤدي إلى ارتكاب جرائم.
c) لا شك أن التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة تصنع الناس يشعرون بالخوف وقد تؤدي إلى ارتكاب جرائم.
d) لا شك أن التنمر ظاهرة اجتماعية سيئة تجعل الناس يشعرون بالخوف وقد تؤدي إلى التعليق علي الجرائم.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن ممارسة الرياضة بشكل منتظم يساعدنا بطرق مختلفة، فعن طريق الرياضة نحافظ على صحتنا ولياقتنا ونكون صداقات جديدة.

a. Exercising regularly helps us in different ways. Through exercise, we maintain our health and fatness and make new friends.
b. Exercising regularly help us in different ways. Through exercise, we maintain our health and fitness and make new friends.
c. Exercising regularly helps us in different ways. Though exercise, we maintain our health and fitness and make new friends.
d. Exercising regularly helps us in different ways. Through exercise, we maintain our health and fitness and make new friends.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **If you were Mr Trelawney, would you tell the crew about the treasure ? Why ? Why not ?**

   ....

   ....

2. **In your opinion, why did Ben Gun need a boat ?**

   ....

   ....

3. **What do you think about the blind man's message for the Captain ?**

   ....

   ....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"What would you like to be after leaving school ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 10

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Modern technology has .... It isn't good all the time, so we should make the best use of it.
   - a. pros and cons
   - b. wrong and correct
   - c. advantages and disadvantages
   - d. causes and results
   - e. speakers and listeners
2. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are ....
   - a. annoying
   - b. interesting
   - c. terrifying
   - d. exciting
   - e. frightening

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A gang of thieves .... into my house yesterday night.
   - a. were breaking
   - b. had broken
   - c. broke
   - d. break
2. While you .... on holiday, just relax and do not think about work.
   - a. are
   - b. are being
   - c. were
   - d. were being

3. I .... five clients عملاء today.
   a. have met   b. have been met   c. was met   d. meet
4. My brother wants to play .... piano in the future.
   a. an   b. the   c. no article   d. a
5. This old-aged tree isn't safe to sit under. It .... at any time.
   a. will fall   b. is falling   c. is going to fall   d. falls
6. I haven't finished .... all my jobs yet.
   a. do   b. to do   c. to doing   d. doing
7. It was unusual that no one has made any .... on the meeting.
   a. face   b. part   c. connect   d. comment
8. "Brown" rhymes with "...........".
   a. clown   b. glue   c. draw   d. naughty
9. To .... is to steal something from a person, shop, etc.
   a. give   b. donate   c. hide   d. rob
10. He wanted to drink, but his bottle was empty. The antonym of "empty" is ....
   a. fill   b. full   c. dull   d. busy
11. I don't think you are fat. You are only ....
   a. clumsy   b. obese   c. plump   d. crescent
12. Mr Nasser is a .... friend of mine. He is always helpful and never stops supporting me.
   a. true   b. teenager   c. physical   d. false
13. She gave me .... binoculars.
   a. much   b. some   c. any   d. a
14. Becoming a world champion in your sport is an amazing ....
   a. competition   b. winner   c. medal   d. achievement

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

When a family climbs into a vehicle to go on a trip or even a short ride, it is important that everyone is as safe as possible. We know that terrible accidents can **occur**. That's why devices like seatbelts and airbags have been invented and put into cars, vans and trucks.

Unfortunately, devices that are meant to save lives can be a threat to life. The airbag is such a device. Airbags were designed to inflate quickly in an accident. They were designed to stop an average adult male who didn't **bother** to fasten his seatbelt from smashing into or through the front of a car. Therefore, they inflate at approximately 200 miles per hour. It delivers a blow that can seriously injure or kill a child or a small adult.

Children shouldn't sit in the front passenger seat of a vehicle that has a passenger side airbag. They are always safer in the center rear seat. That day will come when vehicles are equipped with smart airbags that automatically adjust their force to the size and weight of a passenger.

1. Airbags inflate .... in accidents.
   a. manually   b. rapidly   c. gradually   d. slowly

2. Airbags save .... life.
   a. a fat adult's
   b. children's
   c. an average adult's
   d. a thin adult's
3. The main idea of the passage is that ....
   a. people should take care of car safety
   b. people should go to short rides
   c. families should travel together
   d. cars shouldn't be safe
4. The verb "**bother**" can be replaced by ....
   a. get
   b. treat
   c. annoy
   d. deal
5. The word "**occur**" can have the meaning of ....
   a. take place
   b. take after
   c. look for
   d. resemble
6. According to the passage, which of the following is not true? ....
   a. Airbags inflate quickly
   b. Airbags were designed to protect travellers
   c. Airbags don't have cons
   d. Airbags endanger people's lives
7. The passage is about ....
   a. car safety
   b. trips
   c. families
   d. short rides

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

School is the place where we learn, do activities and make new friends. It plays an important role in our lives.

(a) المدرسة هي المكان الذي نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوّن صداقات جديدة، فهي تلعب قاعدةً مهمةً في حياتنا.
(b) إن المدرسة هي المكان الذي نعلِّم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوّن صداقات جديدة، فهي تلعب دورًا مهمًا في حياتنا.
(c) إن المدرسة هي المكان الذي نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوّن صداقات جديدة، فقد تلعب دورًا مهمًا في حياتنا.
(d) إن المدرسة هي المكان الذي نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوّن صداقات جديدة، فهي تلعب دورًا مهمًا في حياتنا.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة الآن دوراً كبيراً في مجال التعليم، فطلاب المرحلة الثانوية مثلاً يمكنهم استذكار دروسهم وأداء الامتحانات على الكمبيوتر اللوحي الخاص بهم.

a. Modern technology now plays a big role in the field of education. Secondary school students, for example, can study their lessons and take exams on their tablets.

b. Modern technology now plays a big rule in the field of education. Secondary school students, for example, can study their lessons and take exams on their tablets.

c. Modern technology now plays a big role in the field of education. Secondary school students, for example, can study there lessons and take exams on their tablets.

d. Modern technology now play a big role in the field of education. Secondary school students, for example, can study their lessons and take exams on their tablets.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Do you think the Captain was happy to see Black Dog ? Why ?**

....

....

2. **If you were the Captain, what would you do after Black Dog's visit ?**

....

....

3. **What do you think of Smollett's opinion about the crew ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Lifelong learning"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 11

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. **Nabil** : Do you think Noha can do this exam alone ?
   Adham : Yes, I think so because she is ....
   a. stubborn b. brilliant c. foolish d. tolerant e. intelligent
2. Elephants are one of the giant animals on land now. The synonyms of "giant" are ....
   a. tiny b. enormous c. delighted d. gigantic e. ancient

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I think I .... well in the next exam .
   a. do b. am going to do c. am doing d. will do
2. Take a taxi when you .... to leave.
   a. want b. will want c. are going to want d. wanted
3. The bag .... into pieces when it fell down .
   a. tear b. was tearing c. tore d. was torn
4. Athletes play well and .... against each other to win medals.
   a. complete b. compete c. complement d. compliment

5. **A:** .... visited London? **B:** I hope I'll go there one day.
   a. Do you ever b. Did you ever c. Had you ever d. Have you ever
6. They .... many subjects since the teacher told them to write their opinion.
   a. have studied b. studied c. are studying d. were studying
7. The child's parents or .... must give their consent إقرار بالموافقة before she has the operation.
   a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors
8. A scientist who studies the natural processes of living things is a/an ....
   a. actor b. physician c. activist d. biologist
9. Students need to be .... to continue their work readily.
   a. donated b. endangered c. encouraged d. scared
10. The police are looking for .... to find the real criminal.
    a. clues b. glues c. officers d. policemen
11. Thanks to your donations, the .... was able to continue its work.
    a. volunteer b. aid c. charity d. belief
12. The .... on the plane did their best to make the passengers pleased.
    a. staff b. stuff c. crow d. crew
13. The thief was seen .... away.
    a. running b. to run c. to running d. a & b
14. I expect uncle Omar .... us tonight.
    a. will visit b. is visiting c. is going to visit d. visited

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Horses are beautiful creatures. They can be different in colours, and can run quickly. People like to watch horses because they are strong and powerful.

Horses are mammals. The mother horse generally has one baby in the spring, and feeds the baby milk. Horses have long legs, and big eyes that can see almost all the way around them. They can walk, trot, gallop and jump.

Young horses that are one year old or younger are called foals. A young female horse is called a filly, and a young male horse is called a colt. After 4 years, a horse is considered an adult. Many people think that a pony is a young horse, but that is incorrect. A pony is a type of horse that does not grow very large.

Horses can live up to 20 or 25 years. Sometimes people can tell how old a horse is by looking at its teeth! They generally sleep standing up, so that if a killer animal approaches, they can run away quickly. Horses only need about three hours of sleep per day! Their hooves need to be taken care of.

For food, horses eat foods such as grass, hay, oats, corn, apples, and carrots. They are herbivores, meaning they do not eat other animals. Their stomachs are small, so they need small, frequent feeding.

There are wild horses, but many people have horses as pets, too. They ride the horses and may teach the horses tricks. When people first started to take horses as pets, they were just used for work. The horses would pull carriages so people could ride tractors, or ploughs so the farmers could more easily tend their fields. Horses were also used to move goods from place to place by carrying objects on their backs. Some horses now work as therapy horses. When these strong creatures are treated with care, they make wonderful companions.

1. The mother horse gives birth to .... a year.
   a. one horse   b. two horses   c. no horses   d. three horses
2. The best summary of the text is ....
   a. horses are beautiful   b. kinds of horses
   c. horses' habitat   d. mammals
3. Generally, horses sleep ....
   a. upside down   b. standing up   c. sitting down   d. in beds
4. A horse can be a friend when ....
   a. you are kind to him   b. you are cruel to him
   c. you are greedy with him   d. you are sad with him
5. According to the passage, which of the following is **correct** ?
   a. A pony is a young horse.   b. A pony is an old horse that doesn't work.
   c. A pony is a small type of horse.   d. A pony is a large type of horse.
6. The best title for this passage is "...........".
   a. Horses   b. Animal life   c. Kinds of horses   d. Horses' food
7. According to the passage, horses ....
   a. cannot do anything   b. can do many things
   c. can do one thing only   d. cannot learn anything at all

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Egypt has always been one of the leading countries in the world. It is our great homeland and we are really proud of it.

(a) لقد كانت مصر دائما واحدة من الدول النادرة في العالم، فهو وطننا العظيم ونحن فخورون به حقًا.
(b) لقد كانت مصر دائما واحدة من الدول الرائدة في العالم، فهي وطننا العظيم ونحن فخورون بها حقًا.
(c) قد تكون مصر دائما واحدة من الدول الرائدة في العالم، فهي وطننا العظيم ونحن فخورون بها حقًا.
(d) لقد كانت مصر دائما واحدة من الدول الرائدة في العالم، فهي أرض بيتنا العظيم ونحن فخورون بها حقًا.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يحلم كل طالب أن يحقق النجاح في كل شيء في حياته. فجميع الطلاب يرغبون في الحصول على وظيفة جيدة و وضع اجتماعي مرموق.

a. Every student dream of achieving success in everything in their life. All students want to have a good job and a prestigious social status.
b. Every student dreams of achieving success in everything in their life. All students want to have a good job and a prestigious social status.
c. All student dreams of achieving success in everything in their life. All students want to have a good job and a prestigious social status.
d. Every student dreams of achieving success in everything in their life. All students wants to have a good job and a prestigious social status.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Mr. Trelawney was a cooperative person. Do you agree ? Why / Why not ?**

....

....

2. **Silver was more than a cook. Do you agree ? Why / Why not ?**

....

....

3. **"If you work for Silver, I'm finished." What do you think Ben Gun meant by this sentence ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"How can all the society be helpful towards the disabled المعاقين ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 12

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. They all admire Mr. Tarek because he is a .... person.
   a. generous b. stingy c. miser d. rude e. kind
2. Farmers usually care about their .... They feed them well.
   a. plants b. cattle c. kettle d. villagers e. livestock

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She has stopped .... some milk for the hungry baby.
   a. buying b. to buying c. to buy d. buys
2. He's booked his ticket. He .... to the USA tomorrow.
   a. is travelling b. is going to travel c. travels d. will travel
3. Someone who's .... broken leg finds it difficult to walk.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
4. He is furious as a tricycle .... his new car.
   a. hits b. was hitting c. has hit d. is hitting
5. Giraffes .... on meat. They are vegetarian animals.
   a. feed b. fed c. don't feed d. didn't feed
6. I .... to preparing my meals when I started to live away from my family.
   a. used b. got used c. get used d. become used
7. The Red Sea coast is a tourist ....
   a. party b. paradise c. trip d. flight
8. Mohammed Salah is the best .... in Liverpool.
   a. final b. football c. footballer d. cup
9. Different societies have different ....
   a. cultures b. experience c. prison d. believes
10. Mr Mohammed is always .... You can chat with him at any time.
    a. website b. blog c. online d. offline
11. To .... is to believe that someone is honest أمين or will not do anything bad or wrong.
    a. blow b. doubt c. lie d. trust
12. .... is something that sheep and goats can eat.
    a. Meat b. Iron c. Hay d. Kebab
13. There was an emergency, so the school was ....
    a. serviced b. navigated c. evacuated d. injured
14. I .... Chinese. I've passed three modules so far.
    a. studied b. 'm studying c. was studying d. have studied

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people like to eat pizza, but not everyone knows how to make it. Making the perfect pizza can be **complicated**, but there are lots of ways for you to make a more basic version at home.

When you make pizza, you must begin with the crust. The crust can be hard to make. If you want to make the crust yourself, you will have to make dough using flour, water, and yeast. You will have to knead the dough with your hands. If you do not have enough time to do this, you can use a prepared crust that you buy from the store.

After you have chosen your crust, you must then add the sauce. Making your own sauce from scratch vegetables can take a long time. You have to buy tomatoes, peel them, and then cook them with spices. If this sounds like too much work, you can also **purchase** jarred sauce from the store. Many jarred sauces taste almost as good as the kind you make at home.

Now that you have your crust and your sauce, you need to add the cheese. Cheese comes from milk, which comes from cows. Do you have a cow in your backyard? Do you know how to milk the cow? Do you know how to turn that milk into cheese? If not, you might want to buy cheese from the grocery store instead of making it yourself.

When you have the crust, sauce, and cheese ready, you can add other toppings. Some people like to put meat on their pizza, while other people like to add vegetables. Some people even like to add pineapple! The best part of making a pizza at home is that you can customize it by adding your own favourite ingredients.

1. The writer's main purpose in writing this passage is to ....
   a. describe the history of pizza
   b. teach a healthier way to make pizza
   c. outline steps to make a basic pizza at home
   d. provide tips about how to make your pizza especially delicious
2. The author asked a series of questions in paragraph four to ....
   a. support the idea that most people cannot make homemade cheese
   b. reinforce the idea that most people probably live on farms
   c. prove that store-bought cheese tastes better than homemade cheese
   d. emphasize the superiority of homemade cheese over store-bought cheese
3. To .... is to mix the ingredients together using your hand.
   a. scratch   b. purchase   c. knead   d. peel
4. When you make pizza, you must begin with the ....
   a. vegetables   b. crust   c. fruits   d. meat
5. As used in paragraph one, which word means the opposite of "**complicated**" ?
   a. Difficult   b. Simple   c. Hard   d. Complex
6. As used in paragraph three, which is the best synonym for **purchase**? ....
   a. forget   b. buy   c. ask   d. cook
7. Eating at restaurants ....
   a. costs much money   b. is so healthy
   c. costs less money   d. is as healthy as eating at home

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Unfortunately, reading is no longer a common hobby among young people. It was deeply affected by the introduction of social media.

(a) للأسف، القراءة ليس أطول هواية شائعة بين الشباب، فلقد تأثرت بشدة باختراع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

(b) للأسف، لم تعد القراءة هواية شائعة بين الشباب، فلقد تأثرت بشدة باختراع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

(c) للأسف، لم تعد القراءة هواية شائعة بين الناس الصغار، فلقد أثرت بشدة باختراع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

(d) للأسف، لم تكن القراءة هواية شائعة بين الشباب، فلقد تأثرت بشدة باختراع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تبذل الدولة جهوداً كبيرة من أجل تطوير العملية التعليمية، فهناك قنوات تعليمية متعددة وكذلك منصات تعليمية مجانية على الإنترنت.

a. The state is exerting great efforts to develop the educational process. There are multiple educational channels as well as free educational platforms on the Internet.

b. The state is making great efforts to develop the teaching operation. There are multiple educational channels as well as free educational platforms on the Internet.

c. The state is making great efforts to develop the educational process. There are multiple educational canals as well as free educational pavements on the Internet.

d. The state is making great effects to develop the educational process. There are multiple educational channels as well as free educational platforms on Internet.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Do you think the Captain's stories were boring ? Why ?**

....

....

2. **"I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret." What do you think of Jim's words ?**

....

....

3. **Good people paid for their honesty. Illustrate giving two examples.**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Spare time is a double edged weapon سلاح ذو حدين "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 13

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Be careful ! When you travel to any place for the first time, it is easy to .... so you should have a map and the important numbers of this place.
   a. get promoted b. go missing c. get lost d. go snorkelling e. go losing
2. The doctor asked me to monitor my grandfather because of his illness. "Monitor" can be replaced by ....
   a. observe b. look for c. watch d. see off e. collect

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When they met their friend, he .... the homework his teacher gave him .
   a. does b. doing c. is doing d. was doing
2. It .... my habit to have coffee at this café when I worked there.
   a. is b. was c. has been d. had been
3. Going back home, I found that the window .... So, I went to get new glass for it.
   a. broken b. was broken c. is breaking d. break
4. We .... met our friend lately . He is still away.
   a. have b. haven't c. had d. hadn't
5. .... in the office, he received a call from his wife .
   a. During b. On c. While d. After
6. He exerts great efforts. They all think his work is ....
   a. amaze b. amazing c. amazed d. amazingly
7. To have a good building, you need to have a good .... first.
   a. donor b. design c. guardian d. ecotourist
8. His good company صُحْبَة had a good .... on his life.
   a. impact b. cause c. reason d. connection
9. He doesn't know much in science. His science knowledge is ....
   a. limit b. limiting c. limitless d. limited
10. Living near the .... gave him the chance to sit by the sea often.
   a. bleach b. peach c. beach d. cost
11. A lot of rain fell and this caused to .... our streets from the neighbouring ones.
   a. flood b. isolate c. connect d. link
12. The way he tackled the problem was a/an .... one. No one else had had that idea before.
   a. unique b. common c. ordinary d. unsuccessful
13. Khaled loves his job because it's very ....
   a. stressful b. rewarding c. qualified d. boring
14. He refused .... for what he had done.
   a. apologise b. apologised c. apologising d. to apologise

PART 2

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouse gases because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun which sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The **destruction** of the big rainforests, which **absorb** carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

What can be done to prevent this situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rainforests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

1. To help, people can use ....
   a. their private cars　　b. their old buses
   c. private cars and bicycles　　d. public transport
2. Trees are important because they ....
   a. take in oxygen and produce carbon dioxide　　b. create infrared radiation
   c. produce carbon dioxide　　d. take in carbon dioxide and emit oxygen
3. If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature will ....
   a. decrease　　b. reduce　　c. increase　　d. improve
4. The best title to this passage is "........... ".
   a. Driving environment friendly car　　b. Climatic changes
   c. Effects of nature　　d. Using public transport
5. The word "**destruction**" can be replaced by "........... " .
   a. building　　b. construction　　c. damage　　d. education
6. Carbon dioxide is considered one of the .... gases.
   a. beneficial　　b. greenhouse　　c. rainforest　　d. decreasing
7. The word "**absorb**" can have the meaning of ....
   a. take off　　b. take in　　c. indulge　　d. melt

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Loving homeland and sacrificing for it is a national duty. To be a good citizen, carry out your duties before asking for your rights.

a) إن حُب الوطن والتضحية من أجله واجب وطني، ولكي تكون مواطنًا صالحًا احمل بواجباتك قبل المطالبة بحقوقك.

b) إن حُب الوطن والتضحية من أجله واجب وطني، ولكي تكون مواطنًا صالحًا قم بواجباتك قبل المطالبة بحقوقك.

c) إن حُب الوطن والتضحية من أجله واجب دُولي، ولكي تكون مواطنًا صالحًا قم بواجباتك قبل المطالبة بحقوقك.

d) إن حُب الوطن والتضحية من أجلي واجب وطني، ولكي تكون مواطنًا صالحًا قم بواجباتك قبل المطالبة بحقوقك.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

من المهم جداً أن يكون لكل إنسان أصدقاء جيدين، أما رفقاء السوء فيدمرون حياتنا ويجعلوننا نكتسب عادات سيئة.

a. It is very important for every person to do good friends, but bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

b. It is very important for every prison to have good friends, but bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

c. It is very important for every person to have good friends, so bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

d. It is very important for everyone to have good friends, but bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Why do you think the Captain was very surprised to see the blind man ?**

....

....

2. **Were Jim and his mother right when they thought that they were in danger ? Why ? Why not ?**

....

....

3. **How do you think luck saved Jim from death ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Recycling is a way to solve many problems."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 14

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. They were .... for the missing ring all the night.
   a. thanking b. looking c. shouting d. searching e. leaving
2. It's good to donate blood to save other people's lives. The antonyms of "donate" are ....
   a. keep b. send c. receive d. offer e. give

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... the party, I met several old friends.
   a. On b. During c. While d. As
2. You .... too much sugar to my coffee. It tastes too sweet.
   a. had added b. were adding c. were added d. have added
3. Rodayna isn't in her office. I think she .... home.
   a. will go b. was gone c. has been d. has gone
4. She is carrying too ....
   a. many luggage b. much luggage c. a few luggage d. luggages
5. You look very ill. I .... you to the doctor.
   a. take b. will take c. am taking d. am going to take
6. We intend .... the next weekend on the beach.
   a. to spend b. to be spending c. to spending d. spend
7. He paid back all his .... because he didn't want to go to prison.
   a. skills b. debts c. tips d. steps
8. They had a / an .... about the best solution to the problem of air pollution.
   a. debate b. salutation c. teammate d. effect
9. .... means to be connected to the internet or available on the internet.
   a. Network b. Website c. Online d. Offline
10. To achieve your jobs in time, you need to .... your time well.
    a. waste b. do c. make d. use
11. He is known to be severe with his children. The antonym of the word "severe" is ....
    a. cruel b. hard c. gentle d. violent
12. He was very young and weak, so older students .... him.
    a. drove b. gave c. bullied d. went
13. We should always put our plastic rubbish in a separate ....
    a. wrap b. bin c. dust d. floor
14. It's two weeks .... I last met aunt Nadia.
    a. ago b. for c. since d. as

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was the end of the weekend and Nadia was worried. She had still not done her homework. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill. She had phoned her friend Azza and asked what homework their teacher had **set** for the summer holiday. Azza had told her that the teacher had asked them to write a composition. Nadia had written down the title. **It** was "The best things in life are three".

Nadia didn't know what to write. When she thought about the best things in life, they didn't seem to be "three" at all. She thought about her parents. There were two of them. Her

brothers and sisters, there were four of them. She thought about happiness, love and nature. She couldn't count these at all. On the first day at school, Nadia's teacher asked her to read her composition to the class. Nadia stood up and began. "I don't think the best things in life are three at all," she said. "I think they are things you can't count".
The other students started to laugh. "Nadia," said her teacher stopping her,
The title of the composition was: "The best things in life are free not three."

1. The passage is ....
   a. scientific b. narrative c. imaginative d. historical
2. Nadia disagreed with the title of the composition because ....
   a. she wrote it down wrongly
   b. she couldn't count the best things in life
   c. she didn't want to write the composition
   d. she didn't have time to write the composition
3. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. the homework title b. the book they read
   c. the summer holiday d. the telephone
4. Nadia's teacher was .... with Nadia.
   a. happy b. pleased c. angry d. worried
5. **Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill.**
   This means she was .... from school.
   a. absent b. present c. over the moon d. worried
6. The best title of the passage is ....
   a. freedom is not worthy b. freedom is not the best thing
   c. the best things in life are free d. freedom is worthy
7. The word "**set**" can have the meaning of ....
   a. determined b. dealt c. counted d. lived

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**
It is extremely necessary to conserve our planet. Pollution, which leads to climate change, affects the earth badly.

(a) من الضروري للغاية الحفاظ على طبقنا، التلوث الذي يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ يؤثر بشكل سيء على الأرض.
(b) من الضروري للغاية نتحدث إلى كوكبنا، فالتلوث الذي يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ يؤثر بشكل سيء على الأرض.
(c) من الضروري الحفاظ على كوكبنا، فالتلوث الذي يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ يؤثر بشكل سيء على الأرض.
(d) من الضروري للغاية الحفاظ على كوكبنا، فالتلوث الذي يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ يؤثر بشكل سيء على الأرض.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**
يلعب التعليم الجيد دوراً بارزاً في تقدم وازدهار كل الدول، فبدون التعليم المتطور ينتشر الجهل والفساد وتكثر الجرائم.

a. Good education play a prominent role in the progress and prosperity of all countries. Without advanced education, ignorance and corruption spread and crimes multiply.
b. Good education plays a prominent role in the progress and prosperity of all counties. Without advanced education, ignorance and corruption spread and crimes multiply.
c. Good education plays a prominent role in the progress and prosperity of all countries. Without advanced education, ignorance and corruption spread and crimes increase.
d. Good education plays a prominent role in the progress and prosperity of all countries. Without advanced education, ignorance and corruption spreads and crimes multiply.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. **Not all the people on board were bad; there were good ones. Illustrate.**

....

....

2. **Despite comforting the other men, Captain Smollett was very worried. To what extent do you agree with that sentence ?**

....

....

3. **Who do you think Black Dog was ? Why did he look for the Captain ?**

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"Without cooperation, there is no success."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 15

1. Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. She refused to admit breaking the camera. The antonyms of "admit" are ....
   a. deny b. conceal c. adopt d. consist e. agree
2. All the countries around the world give a great interest to the .... because they are the backbone of any nation.
   a. disabled people b. old people c. children d. youth e. young people

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The little bird .... by its mother till it can fly.
   a. feeds b. is fed c. fed d. was fed
2. **A:** .... your work yet ? **B:** I'm about to finish it, sir.
   a. Do you do b. You haven't done c. Have you done d. Are you doing
3. Miss Amany is a nurse, so she .... be very caring.
   a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. have to

4. My father was delighted with my results. The word "delighted" can be replaced by ....
   a. satisfied b. angry c. amazed d. astonished
5. While .... the experiment, my teacher had a severe headache.
   a. did b. were doing c. are doing d. doing
6. They .... here since their grandfather built the house.
   a. have lived b. had lived c. are living d. were living
7. I .... you a lot for your help.
   a. own b. owe c. lend d. borrow
8. They were .... in the lift for an hour when electricity went off.
   a. struck b. stuck c. sick d. stick
9. They had .... of things to do. This means they were very busy.
   a. lot b. loaf c. loaves d. loads
10. They were .... when they won the prize. This means they were pleased.
   a. over the moon b. under the moon c. in a tight corner d. out of the blue
11. Some thieves broke .... the old man's house yesterday.
   a. on b. onto c. into d. in
12. .... you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?
   a. Able b. Dare c. Brave d. Courageous
13. Your grandmother needs help .... some bags into her flat.
   a. carries b. to carry c. carrying d. carried
14. We hardly heard .... news of him since he left the company
   a. any b. some c. many d. much

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are many reasons to use alternative energy sources. One reason is to reduce pollutants and greenhouse gases. Alternative or renewable energy sources help to reduce the amount of toxins that are a result of traditional energy use. These alternative energy sources help protect against the harmful by-products of energy use and help to preserve many of the natural resources that we currently use as energy sources.

There are many alternative energy sources. Wind power, solar power, geothermal power, and hydroelectric power are some examples.

Wind power is the ability to **capture** the wind in a way to propel the blades of wind turbines. When the blades **rotate**, this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. In older windmills, wind energy turned mechanical machinery to do the physical work like pumping water to get water. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced.

Geothermal means "earth heat". This energy captures the heat energy under the Earth. Hot rocks under the ground help to heat water to produce steam. If holes are dug in this area of the ground, then the steam shoots up and is purified and used to drive turbines, which in turn gives power to electric generators. The advantages of this type of energy is that there are no harmful by-products, it is self-sufficient, and the plants are generally small so there is no negative visual effect on the area surrounding the plant.

1. In geothermal energy, the main factor of doing the work is ....
   a. the heat of the earth b. steam coming out
   c. digging the earth d. using hard rocks
2. According to the passage wind power is ....
   a. discovered in modern ages b. used along history
   c. used only for generating electricity d. always harmful
3. The suitable title of passage is ....
   a. alternative energy b. electricity
   c. windmills d. population
4. In the future, the more pollution we get, ...
   a. the wider ozone layer hole is b. the narrower ozone layer hole is
   c. the bigger planet is d. the larger planet is
5. The underlined word **"capture"** may be replaced by "...........".
   a. catch b. leave c. change d. fix
6. The word **"rotate"** can have the meaning of ....
   a. turn off b. turn around c. turn on d. turn out
7. According to the passage, traditional energy use is .... to the environment.
   a. useful b. friendly c. useless d. toxic

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Thanks to modern technology in the field of communication, we can communicate with others all over the world.

(a) بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجال الاتصالات، يمكننا التواصل مع الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم.
(b) شكرًا للتكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجال الاتصالات، يمكننا التواصل مع الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم.
(c) أعتقد أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجال الاتصالات، يمكننا التواصل مع الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم.
(d) بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجال الاتصالات، يمكننا التواصل مع الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يُعتبرَ محمد صلاح نموذجاً يُحتذى به لمعظم الشباب في الوقت الحاضر، فهو شاب ناجح في عمله ومشهور في كل ارجاء العالم.

a. Mohamed Salah is considered a role model for most young people nowadays. He is a successful young man in his work and he is famous all over the scientist.
b. Mohamed Salah is considered a role medal for most young people nowadays. He is a successful young man in his work and he is famous all over the world.
c. Mohamed Salah considers a role model for most young people nowadays. He is a successful young man in his work and he is famous all over the world.
d. Mohamed Salah is considered a role model for most young people nowadays. He is a successful young man in his work and he is famous all over the world.

5. Answer the following questions :

1. In your point of view, why weren't the attackers interested in the money ?

....

....

2. Why do you think Silver called his parrot Captain Flint ?

....

....

3. Why do you think Silver had been to the island before ?

....

....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"What's the role of the society towards old people ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

PART 3

For Al-Azhar students



1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Science Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often (1)............ and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited (2)............ on the local environment and to educate tourists about (3)............ Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea (4)............ Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Sami and Hani are talking about spending the mid-year holiday.

Sami: Hi ! Where will you spend the mid-year holiday ?

Hani: In Aswan. (1) .... ?

Sami: Well, the weather is fine in Aswan. Who will you go with ?

Hani: (2) ....

Sami: (3) .... ?

Hani: We will stay at my uncle's house.

Sami: How long will you stay there ?

Hani: (4) ....

Sami: Have a nice trip!

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My neighbour was sent to prison because he was heavily in ....
   a. debt b. profit c. indebted d. debate
2. Before the operation, a nurse should check the blood .... of the patient.
   a. leisure b. temperature c. pressure d. treasure
3. Yesterday evening, my family .... a very wonderful film together.
   a. were watching b. watch c. has watched d. are watching
4. My account was easily .... into as my password was so easy.
   a. broken b. picked c. backed d. hacked
5. Some kinds of mobiles .... in Egypt.
   a. are made b. are making c. have made d. had been made
6. .... girl who I met yesterday, is my new neighbour.
   a. A b. The c. An d. No article

C. Reading Comprehension



Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The word **cyberbullying** refers to bullying on the internet or on a smartphone. Most teenagers have experienced some kind of cyberbullying, and it affects both girls and boys. One problem is getting offensive messages on social media, in texts or by email. Another problem is when bullies post personal information or pictures of someone. Sometimes it can be anonymous, and that means the victims don't know who is attacking them, which can be very stressful.

Teenagers need to know that they can talk to an adult about what is happening. It's important to report bullies on websites and the police can also help. Any kind of bullying can have serious consequences, so most schools have systems to deal with cyberbullying. It is very important to report any problems and help everyone stay safe online.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What are the best ways of staying safe online ?
2. What can you do if you discover someone you know is a cyberbully ?
3. Why do some people become bullies ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. Cyberbullying affects ....
   a. boys b. girls c. boys and girls d. smartphones
5. To stay safe online, it's important to .... any problem.
   a. deny b. cover c. report d. ignore

D. Novel



A. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think Jim hid in a good place ? How do you know ?
   ....
   ....
2. Silver was careful to get the map of the treasures but in vain. Discuss.
   ....
   ....
3. "I've found my friend Bill !" Do you think they are really friends ? Why ?
   ....
   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. The ship .... helped each other to control the situation well.
   a. gang b. staff c. crew d. team
2. The Captain had a .... to save the ship from the gang.
   a. plane b. plain c. plan d. pain
3. At silver's inn, Jim saw ....
   a. the blind man b. Black Dog c. Smollett d. pew

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (80) words on :

"Your role model"

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

رغبة صلاح فى مساعدة الآخرين هى أنه يريد أن يمنح الشباب فرصة للنجاح.

....

....

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Science Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

Donating blood can help people if they have been badly (1)........... or need regular blood transplants because they have a (2)........... illness. Giving blood can also have health benefits. All donors have their blood (3)........... and iron levels checked before (4)..........., so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

A tourist is buying a ticket at a railway station.

Assistant : Good afternoon. What can I do for you ?

Tourist : Good afternoon. (1) ....

Assistant : (2) .... ?

Tourist : A return ticket, please. I'm coming back from Luxor on Tuesday.

Assistant : That's 100 LE.

Tourist : When will the next train leave ?

Assistant : (3) ....

Tourist : (4) .... ?

Assistant : The train leaves from platform 4.

Tourist : Thanks a lot.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The tennis player is .... for doing a lot of voluntary work.

a. admired   b. not respected   c. interested   d. disliked

2. The Galapagos Island in Ecuador are famous for the .... animals such as the turtles which live there.
   a. unknown b. unique c. wild d. huge
3. The police .... the young man of stealing the money.
   a. excused b. thanked c. accused d. rewarded
4. When Aya visited me, I .... my room. So, she offered to help me.
   a. decorate b. was decorating c. am decorating d. decorating
5. I remember .... that young man last summer when I was in Sharm El Sheikh.
   a. to see b. see c. seeing d. had seen
6. Sadly, my uncle has been ill .... he was a young man.
   a. for b. when c. ago d. since

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The sun is a star. The sun is at the centre of the solar system. The sun is the largest object in the solar system. From Earth, the sun looks like a yellow ball in the sky. A long time ago, people didn't know what the sun was. People in many countries told stories about the sun. In some stories, people thought that the sun was a God. Some people gave names to the sun. The Greeks named it Helios. The Romans named it Sol. The name Solar System comes from the Roman name Sol.

People, animals and plants need the sun's heat and light to live. Plants make food with sunlight. People and animals eat the plants. Plants also use the sun to make oxygen. People and animals need to breathe oxygen. Today, people do not tell stories about the sun. Today, people do not think the sun is a God. But, people know that the sun is necessary for life on earth.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the sun ?
2. How did the ancient people think of the sun ?
3. Why do people, animals and plants need the sun ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. The name Solar System comes from the .... name.
   a. Roman b. Greek c. Egyptian d. Chinese
5. It's .... to look directly at the sun.
   a. safer b. OK c. dangerous d. not known

D. Novel

5 A. Answer the following questions :

1. "If you find it, you'll all be rich !" said the blind man. What do you think this sentence means ?

....

....

2. Not all the people on board were bad; there were good ones. Illustrate.

....

....

3. What do you think of Ben Gun's behaviour towards Jim ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. Captain Smollett had a .... to save the ship from Silver and his men.
   a. plane b. plan c. plain d. pain
2. Pew is .... ; he has lost his sight.
   a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. crippled
3. Flint and his men are .... They attack ships and take money and goods by force.
   a. pirates b. drivers c. pilots d. divers

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (80) words on :

"Tourism in Egypt and how to encourage it"

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

A muslim must believe in Allah the One and Mohammed is His Apostle.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

أفضل طريقة لعمل صداقات هو أن تنضم لنوادى أو تؤدى ألعاب جماعية.

....

....

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Science Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

Playing video games, watching a movie, or listening to music can ease your (1)........... . Physical activities such as walking or sports can help, too. Sometimes, taking a (2)........... can clear your mind. If you think about your problems later, maybe you can come up with answers. Talking to a (3)........... friend can help. Even if he or she doesn't have the answers, it helps to express what's (4)........... you. Avoid drugs and alcohol, though they may seem to offer an easy escape from problems. But sooner or later, they become problems, too.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Atef and Hatem are talking about a famous footballer.

Atef : I see that you're busy reading.
Hatem : Yes. (1) ....
Atef : (2) .... ?
Hatem : It is about Mohamed Salah, the famous Egyptian footballer.
Atef : Why is he famous ?
Hatem : Because he plays for Liverpool and scores most of its goals.
Atef : Does he score goals for the Egyptian national team ?
Hatem : (3) ....
Atef : (4) .... ?
Hatem : Sure, I will watch his matches.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My son got angry when his classmates .... him rudely.
   a. honoured b. paid c. bullied d. pampered
2. He suggested .... to the club.
   a. goes b. went c. to go d. going
3. There are very few of these kinds of giraffes now, they are ....
   a. endangered b. dangerous c. safe d. isolated
4. My brother is saving money, he .... a new bike.
   a. is buying b. is going to buy c. will buy d. is going buying
5. It is taken for .... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we must change.
   a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
6. Egyptian cotton clothes .... all over the world.
   a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Online Education allows students to attend classes without going to the school building. The online community means students can share their opinions and discuss what they are learning with other students and their teachers. Courses use advanced video technology so that students can speak, make notes on the screen and write on a shared whiteboard with other students.

There are a variety of reasons for choosing online education. Some students live in remote areas and it is difficult to travel long distances every day. Others have been the victims of bullying at school. The flexibility of this way of learning means that it also appeals to students who have special needs and students who are unable to go to a traditional school. All you need is a computer with a high speed connection to the internet and ability to learn.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do you need to learn online ?
2. What are the reasons for choosing online education ?
3. What does the online community mean ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. Online education is a ....
   a. traditional learning
   b. modern school building
   c. group of students who work together
   d. way of learning using technology
5. Which of these students might prefer to learn online ?
   a. a bully
   b. a disabled student
   c. a student who likes travelling
   d. a student with no connection to the internet

D. Novel

5 A. Answer the following questions :

1. In your opinion, why were all the crew happy to spend a day on the island ?

....

....

2. What do you think the blind man's message for the Captain meant ?

....

....

3. Why do you think Dr.Livesy went to the island ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. Jim Hawkins was the .... of the story.
   a. narrator b. scar c. captain d. doctor
2. Hispaniola was a .... owned by Mr. Blandley.
   a. car b. plane c. ship d. carriage
3. When Dr.Livesy and Hunter reached the island, they walked a little way and then they found a small ....
   a. castle b. fort c. gun d. knife

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (80) words on :

"How to protect the environment"

....

....

7 **A. Translate into Arabic :**

Don't fear when your enemies criticise you. Beware when they applaud.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومية حلمًا يسعى إليه الشباب الطموح.

....

....

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Science Department)

A. Usage

1 **Listen and complete :**

Literature comes in a variety of forms : poetry, novels, travel books and (1)........... are just a few. Reading literature from different times helps us learn about the world we live in, about important modern (2)........... and about how much (3)........... has changed. When you read any piece of literature, it's helpful to consider your own opinion - why you like or dislike a (4)........... character or whether you have experienced something similar to what you've read in a poem.

2 **Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :**

Yasmeen and Hoda are talking about Hoda's new mobile phone.

Yasmeen : What a nice mobile ! When did you buy it ?

Hoda : Thanks, Yasmeen. (1) ....

Yasmeen : (2) .... ?

Hoda : 1200 pounds.

Yasmeen : It's not expensive. Can you come with me to buy one for my dad ?

Hoda : Sure.

Yasmeen : (3) .... ?

Hoda : We can go this evening.

Yasmeen : Where can we meet ?

Hoda : (4) ....

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. If you have a .... , you should go to hospital.
   a. branch b. share c. ill d. disease
2. Khaled .... into the forest this morning.
   a. trekked b. trek c. is trekking d. treks

3. I usually .... my grandparents by phone and e-mail.
   a. communicate b. contact c. phone d. call
4. The first lesson .... at 8:15.
   a. started b. starts c. will start d. is starting
5. We .... much to our great teachers.
   a. take b. blend c. owe d. borrow
6. He has .... phoned me.
   a. ever b. yet c. so far d. never

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Aswan is the best place I have ever visited. I was very happy when my uncle invited us to stay for two weeks there. My uncle took me to Nubian Museum in Aswan. It was opened in 1998, it contains more than 5000 objects which can teach us a lot about the history and life of the Nubian people. There is also an outdoor museum where you can look at statues in a beautiful garden. I enjoyed seeing the big statues there very much. It was really a great experience. I am very proud of Aswan and its kind people and I hope to go back there one day.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best place the writer has ever visited ?
2. When was the Nubian Museum opened ?
3. What does the Nubian Museum contain ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. The writer could learn about ....
   a. geography b. history c. location d. map
5. The writer stayed in Aswan for .... days.
   a. 12 b. 13 c. 14 d. 16

D. Novel

5 A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think the Captain gave the inn owner some gold coins ?

....

....

2. "If you work for Silver, I'm finished." What do you think Ben Gun meant by this sentence ?

....

....

3. Why was the captain, Smollett unhappy with the journey ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. Jim's father was afraid of the captain and didn't .... to ask him for more money.
   a. dare b. enjoy c. interest d. accept
2. Their boat left the ....
   a. airport b. harbour c. station d. road
3. At the end of the basketball match, the referee blow his ....
   a. fire b. gun c. voice d. whistle

E. Writing

6 Write an e-mail of (80) words :

to a friend, telling him about the good and bad things about moving to a new school in another town.

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Donating blood is very useful for all people and also for the healthy.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

تستطيع بعض الحيوانات تغيير لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمى نفسها من حيوانات أقوى.

....

....

5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Science Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous (1)........... . He is admired for his (2)........... and ability to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup (3)........... since 1990. Salah has been praised for his kind and generous donations to charity in Egypt. He donated money to his (4)........... of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Mr Ahmed and Mr Tamer are talking about an advertisement on the internet.

Mr Ahmed : Have you read the advertisement on the internet today ?
Mr Tamer : No, I haven't. What is it about ?
Mr Ahmed : (1) ....
Mr Tamer : A bank clerk sounds a very interesting job.
Mr Ahmed : Do you want to get it ?
Mr Tamer : (2) ....
Mr Ahmed : (3) .... ?
Mr Tamer : The skill of using the computer and speaking English.
Mr Ahmed : Do you know the expected salary المرتب المتوقع ?
Mr Tamer : (4) ....

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Villagers build their houses with local ....
   a. tourists b. environments c. animals d. materials
2. The email said it was from a bank, but we all knew it was really a ....
   a. software b. lock c. scam d. map
3. It is taken for .... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we must change.
   a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
4. While I was revising my lesson, my mother .... dinner.
   a. prepares b. is preparing c. preparing d. was preparing
5. I .... my friend since September.
   a. didn't see b. hadn't seen c. haven't seen d. wasn't seen
6. Egyptian clothes .... all over the world.
   a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Deforestation is a word that means cutting down forests. People are used to cutting down rainforests to get more space to plant more crops needed for food. The increasing population in many countries resulted in more need for more crops to feed people. Some governments began to cut down vast areas of forests. **They** didn't consider the bad effects they are causing to the environment. Forests are the natural habitat for many species of animals and deforestation causes a lot of these animals to disappear because they lose their normal place to hunt and live. Forests also produce oxygen and absorb harmful gases that keep the normal balance of air gases, so in the recent years conservationists are trying hard to stop people from cutting down forests.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the word deforestation mean ?
2. Why did some forest animals begin to disappear ?
3. What does the underlined word "**They**" refer to ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. People cut forests to ....
   a. plant crops b. destroy habitats c. chase animals d. increase oxygen
5. To help the environment, we should .... deforestation.
   a. increase b. make use of c. enjoy d. stop

D. Novel



A. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think the Captain was happy to see Black Dog ? Why ?

....

....

2. Both Jim and Silver called "Stop him". Who do you think the pronoun "him" refer to ?

....

....

3. The fort had some advantages. Discuss.

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. The thief had a long curved .... on his face, so we could recognize him.
   a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
2. A .... is a large container made of wood or metal.
   a. tin b. jar c. barrel d. cup
3. One of the sailors led a/an .... against the Capitan.
   a. invasion b. murder c. mutiny d. mirror

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (80) words on :

"The age you think children start using the internet"

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Street children are a timed bomb that can explode at any time.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

تحقيق النجاح يحتاج الكثير من العمل والجهد.

....

....

6 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Literature Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the (1)........... books that he wrote. He was a great (2)........... . Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult (3)........... . When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to (4)........... his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

"Tom is talking with his Egyptian friend Ahmed about his journey to Egypt"

Tom : I have been to the Valley of the Kings.
Ahmed : (1)........................ ?
Tom : I saw the Temple at Karnak.
Ahmed : (2)........................ ?
Tom : It was fantastic.
Ahmed : Did you take photos there ?
Tom : (3)........................ .
Ahmed : (4)........................ ?
Tom : I'll visit the Egyptian Museum next.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I always try to .... food and clothes to my local charity.
   a. sell b. want c. owe d. donate
2. Most people take clean water for ...., but not all place have it.
   a. granted b. given c. having d. done
3. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big ....
   a. skim b. scar c. scam d. scan
4. While I was doing my homework, my mother .... dinner.
   a. prepares b. preparing c. is preparing d. was preparing
5. I lived in London .... 2016.
   a. for b. since c. in d. ago
6. .... school holidays are starting soon.
   a. The b. An c. A d. No article

C. Reading Comprehension



4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In 1957, scientists said that nothing could live in the waters of River Thames. The river was polluted by the waste which came from hundreds of homes, waste from factories is very dangerous as some of **which** was full of poison, also ran into the river. Things began to change in 1990. Now the river is very clear. It is thought that about 125 kinds of fish live there today. It's a place where many animals visit including dolphins and even whales. Today the river faces a different problem. There is more and more plastic which people dump into the Thames.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why couldn't anything live in the waters of the Thames ?
2. What problem does the river face now ?
3. What should you do to keep rivers clean ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. What does the underlined word "**which**" refer to ?
   a. the factories b. the river
   c. the waste from homes d. the waste from factories
5. .... in the River Thames in 1957.
   a. Fish started to live b. Nothing lived
   c. Pollution was worst d. Plastic pollution started

D. A Glimpse of Revelation

5 A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is "Faith" is Islam ?
   ....
   ....
2. What are the five pillars of Islam ?
   ....
   ....
3. Why are Angels created ?
   ....
   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. There is only one God worthy of ....
   a. partnership b. workshop c. worship d. friendship
2. Belief in Allah is the central .... of the Islamic faith.
   a. tenon b. tent c. tenet d. rent
3. Angels have .... roles.
   a. the same b. no c. similar d. different

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (60) words on :

"Friendship"

....
....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Eco-tourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

....
....

B. Translate into English :

بفضل التقدم الهائل فى وسائل التواصل والمواصلات تحول العالم إلى قرية صغيرة.

....
....

7 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Literature Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

In future, people should think more about the (1)........... and local people when they are (2)........... . For example, they should use public (3)........... if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are (4)........... of each other !

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

A customer has internet connection problems so he is talking to the customer service centre.

Assistant : Hello, we are Customer Service, how can I help you ?
Customer : Hi, (1)...................... ?
Assistant : I'm sorry to hear that (2)...................... ?
Customer : My connection is dropping out and the speed is very slow.
Assistant : Let me check (3)...................... .
Customer : My phone number is 0123456789.
Assistant : Thank you . I'll send technician to your house.
Customer : Okay, (4)...................... home then.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Be careful, the car .... you. It's very near.
   a. will hit   b. is going to hit   c. will be hitting   d. hits
2. There are very few of these kinds of giraffes now, they are ....
   a. safe   b. isolated   c. endangered   d. dangerous
3. The .... of other people have to be respected.
   a. rumours   b. crimes   c. beliefs   d. shots
4. The old family house is .... by my grandparents.
   a. populated   b. population   c. polluted   d. populating
5. As a child, I always .... when I took my medicine.
   a. crying   b. cries   c. cried   d. was crying
6. I have had lunch ....
   a. already   b. yet   c. just   d. so far

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day, Tom woke up and saw that it was snowing outside. He decided to go out. There was enough snow to go sledging. He went into the garden shed to find his sledge. He took off the old sheet his father used for covering the sledge and looked at it. His mother called to him, "Take your gloves with you in case your hands get cold". Tom took them and ran towards the big hill where all his friends were playing in the snow.

PART 3

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What was the weather like ?
2. Why did Tom go to the garden shed ?
3. How did Tom's father protect the sledge ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. Tom's mother asked him to take his ....
   a. sledge b. gloves c. sheet d. clothes
5. Tom was ....
   a. obedient b. disobedient c. rude d. lazy

D. A Glimpse of Revelation

5 A. Answer the following questions :

1. How much time does every prayer take ?

....

....

2. What is the last article of faith ?

....

....

3. What is the purpose of Zakah ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. Angels were created for the .... of worshipping Allah.
   a. purpose b. prose c. prize d. purposeful
2. The Qur'an is .... for all mankind.
   a. lovely b. loyalty c. mercy d. likely
3. Muslims .... in all Allah's messengers.
   a. doubt b. believe c. question d. disbelieve

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (60) words on :

"How can you keep the environment clean"

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

It's the first time I have ever done voluntary work.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

إن مصر تطور السياحة البيئية لكى تحمى الطبيعة على ساحل البحر الأحمر.

....

....

8 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Literature Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

You can only make friends if you (1)........... time with them! The best way to do this is to (2)........... clubs or do team sports you like. Go online or look at the (3)........... at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates will feel connected to you and that connection could become a (4)........... .

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nader is talking to Ali who has been on holiday.

Nader : Hi! Where have you been ?

Ali : (1) ....

Nader : How was your holiday ?

Ali : It was the best holiday in my life.

Nader : (2) .... ?

Ali : I went to the North Coast. It's fantastic.

Nader : Really! Did you go with your parents ?

Ali : (3) .... I went with my cousins.

Nader : (4) .... ?

Ali : Yes, I'll post them on my Facebook page today. You can check them.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My father .... with pride when he heard that I had come first.
   a. showed b. rose c. swelled d. puffed
2. To be a .... , work hard to a plan.
   a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed
3. .... is considered a crime.
   a. Uploading b. Downloading c. Phishing d. Fishing
4. I suggest that Rodayna .... engineering like her mother.
   a. studies b. studying c. has studied d. study
5. The local people benefit when lions ....
   a. is protected b. isn't protected c. are protected d. protects
6. The match .... at 10 o'clock.
   a. will start b. starts c. is going to start d. is starting

C. Reading Comprehension



Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them helping drowning sailors have been common since Roman times. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that their society is more complex than people previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weakest in the community, as we do. Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language but it is much more probable that they communicated with each other without needing words. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man ? Certainly the most common argument in favour of man's superiority over them that we can kill them more easily than they can kill us is the least satisfactory. On the contrary, the more we discover about these remarkable creatures, the less we appear superior when we destroy them.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. How do you think dolphins are like humans ?
2. What reason for man's superiority to dolphins does the writer mention ?
3. In what way can we be wrong about our superiority to dolphins ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. Dolphins have been .... sailors.
   a. drowning   b. saving   c. sinking   d. tricking
5. Dolphins live in .... and have cooperative societies.
   a. isolation   b. loneliness   c. families   d. individuals

D. A Glimpse of Revelation

5 A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the challenge in the Qur'an ?

....

....

2. What are the five pillars of Islam ?

....

....

3. What is monotheism ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. A pilgrim is strictly prohibited from entering any ....
   a. dispute   b. contribute   c. discussion   d. challenge

2. Wealth is .... by paying Zakah.
   a. modified b. qualified c. testified d. purified

3. Allah created ....
   a. Heaven b. Earth c. Hell d. everything

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (60) words on :

"Teamwork"

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

To better your income, you must be patient, hardworking and ambitious.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

اضطررت أن أعيد كتابة واجب اللغة الإنجليزية لأنى أجبت على سؤال بطريقة خاطئة.

....

....

9 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Literature Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

If you want to pass your exams, my (1)........... is to always do your homework. Remember the (2)........... that your teacher gives you about the exam because it will help you. For a week or two before any exams, don't go out with your (3)........... Save your money and do some extra (4)........... instead. It'll be really useful!

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nader and Hany are talking about a holiday.

Nader : (1)...................... ?
Hany : I went to the North Coast.
Nader : Really! Did you go there with your family ?
Hany : (2)...................... . I went there with friends.
Nader : (3)...................... ?
Hany : We went by bus.
Nader : When did you come back ?
Hany : (4)...................... .

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. When .... you finish your work ?
   a. are b. have c. has d. did
2. We all .... Mohamed Salah as he is polite and generous.
   a. hate b. respect c. discourage d. avoid
3. How .... light is there in the cave ?
   a. much b. many c. often d. far
4. Village people build their houses with local ....
   a. tourists b. environments c. animals d. materials
5. I've already booked the tickets, we .... abroad today.
   a. are travelling b. travel c. travels d. travelled
6. Every year, more and more people are .... to the internet in Egypt.
   a. connected b. connect c. connection d. contact

C. Reading Comprehension

4 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent **survey** found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone. In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films. Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do many people use the internet for ?
2. Why don't many people use the internet ?
3. Why do people use apps on their phones ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**survey**" means ....
   a. questionnaire b. quiz c. competition d. match
5. Many people thought that their computer might be ....
   a. connected b. hacked c. lost d. stolen

D. A Glimpse of Revelation

5 **A. Answer the following questions :**

1. How does fasting affect Muslims ?

....

....

2. What constitutes faith ?

....

....

3. What are the lessons that the pilgrim learns during the Hajj ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. The belief in the "Last Day" is ....
   a. essential b. optional c. unimportant d. unnecessary
2. Allah sent prophets to guide man to the light of ....
   a. dualism b. polytheism c. atheism d. monotheism
3. Muslims believe that the wealth they own is held in ....
   a. trust b. last c. fast d. rust

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (60) words on :

"The person I admire most"

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Everything can be useful or harmful according to the way we use it.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

من الممكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استغلاله فى تطوير شخصية المرء.

....

....

10 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif (Literature Department)

A. Usage

1 Listen and complete :

Sometimes teenagers experience (1)........... because they look different, have different (2)........... or different opinions and experiences. Parents and teachers are there to give advice when bullying (3)........... . If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also (4)........... to help the person tell their parents.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

"Hazem is talking to a tourist."

Hazem : Have you enjoyed your visit to Egypt ?

Tourist : (1)...................... .

Hazem : (2)...................... ?

Tourist : The Pyramids, the Citadel and the Egyptian Museum.

Hazem : Have you been to Upper Egypt ?

Tourist : Not yet ! (3)...................... Aswan ?

Hazem : By plane, by train or on a Nile cruise.

Tourist : That sounds good. Thank you very much.

Hazem : (4)...................... . Have a nice trip!

B. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The police .... the young man of stealing the money.
   a. excused b. thanked c. accused d. rewarded
2. A novel is a long written ....
   a. article b. history c. poem d. story
3. Sadly, my uncle has been ill .... he was a young man.
   a. for b. when c. ago d. since
4. It is taken for .... that bullying is as bad behaviour which we all must change.
   a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
5. Dalia didn't have .... friends when she started at her new school.
   a. the b. some c. a d. any
6. I suggest that Rodayna .... engineering like her mother.
   a. studies b. studying c. has studied d. study

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Reading is fun. It's the food of the mind. Through reading, we gain the experience of others. It provides us with information in all branches of knowledge. Reading has a good effect on our behaviour. It shows us the best conduct to follow. So, it helps us acquire good qualities to be good citizens. Moreover, reading helps us develop our characters and widen our horizons.

It enables us to understand the world we live in. Reading enriches our cultural life and creates generations of thinkers, writers and scientists.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What does reading provide us with ?
2. What does reading create ?
3. How can we gain the experience of others ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. Reading .... our information.
   a. decreases b. reduces c. increases d. provides
5. Reading affects our behaviour ....
   a. well b. bad c. badly d. good

D. A Glimpse of Revelation

5 A. Answer the following questions :

1. What were Angels created from ?

....

....

2. What does a believer renew during prayer ?

....

....

3. Why were all prophets' messages the same ?

....

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. Recitation of Shahada marks the .... to Islam.
   a. conversion b. convenient c. inversion d. invention
2. Zakah is a/an .... part of Islam.
   a. optional b. not required c. obligatory d. free
3. Belief in Allah is the .... of faith.
   a. stone b. corner c. cornerstone d. care

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (60) words on :

"Voluntary work"

....

....

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world.

....

....

B. Translate into English :

يساعدنا السفر فى التعرف على لغات وعادات المجتمعات.

....

....

PART 4

Listening Texts

Test one (Science Department)

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation. Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials.

Test Two (Science Department)

Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured or need regular blood transplants because they have a long-term illness. Giving blood can also have health benefits. All donors have their blood pressure and iron levels checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems.

Test Three (Science Department)

Playing video games, watching a movie, or listening to music can ease your tension. Physical activities such as walking or sports can help, too. Sometimes, taking a break can clear your mind. If you think about your problems later, maybe you can come up with answers. Talking to a trusted friend can help. Even if he or she doesn't have the answers, it helps to express what's bothering you. Avoid drugs and alcohol, though they may seem to offer an easy escape from problems. But sooner or later, they become problems, too.

Test Four (Science Department)

Literature comes in a variety of forms : poetry, novels, travel books and biographies are just a few. Reading literature from different times helps us learn about the world we live in, about important modern issues and about how much society has changed. When you read any piece of literature, it's helpful to consider your own opinion - why you like or dislike a particular character or whether you have experienced something similar to what you've read in a poem.

Test Five (Science Department)

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired for his speed and ability to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990. Salah has been praised for his kind and generous donations to charity in Egypt. He donated money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo.

Test Six (Literature Department)

Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the great books he wrote. He was a great writer. Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

PART 4

Test Seven (Literature Department)

In future, people should think more about the environment and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate of each other !

Test Eight (Literature Department)

You can only make friends if you spend time with them! The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports you like. Go online or look at the noticeboard at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates will feel connected to you and that connection could become a friendship.

Test Nine (Literature Department)

If you want to pass your exams, my advice is to always do your homework. Remember the information that your teacher gives you about the exam because it will help you. For a week or two before any exams, don't go out with your friends. Save your money and do some extra practice instead. It'll be really useful!

Test Ten (Literature Department)

Sometimes teenagers experience bullying because they look different, have different abilities or different opinions and experiences. Parents and teachers are there to give advice when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer to help the person tell their parents.